

ONTARIO
HIGH SCHOOL
EATING BOOK

THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

Constance

19. h. m. Alpine
Lower
h. b. l.

Robert Thomas
June 2
7. P. O.

Walter Gammon
over XIV

Phone 2899.
H. Thomas

McArthur
McArthur
McArthur
207
Agnes Ferguson
XIV

Wilfrid Chase

2899.

32.

46

62.

K. McAlpine,

L^{VI}. L.C.P.

Piano L. Rydman 1920
 H. M. Alpine

Walter Gammon
Lower XIV

Phone 1930.

We are We are the London East boys.
We can. we can make a whole
of a lot of noise.

Come on, Come on Come on & yell with us
we don't give a damn for any tyrant man
That. Don't give a damn for us.

That's that

~~London East
Boys~~

~~W. O. O'Connell~~

Heterogeneous = one word
having a number.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

~~Habe~~
~~haben~~
modelle 8
CCC

ONTARIO HIGH SCHOOL LATIN BOOK

BY

J. C. ROBERTSON, M.A.
VICTORIA COLLEGE, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

AND

ADAM CARRUTHERS, M.A.
UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

AUTHORIZED BY THE MINISTER OF EDUCATION FOR ONTARIO

THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK CO. LIMITED
TORONTO

(3)

Copyright, Canada, 1917, by THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK COMPANY
of Toronto, Limited.

PREFACE.

THE first part of this book was published in 1906 under the title of *Latin Lessons for Beginners*, and was intended to be no more than an introductory Latin book, preparing the pupils of the lower forms in High Schools for the reading of Caesar. As such it has since been authorized by the Department of Education in nearly every province of the Dominion. The second and newer portion of the book has been added in response to the desire expressed by many teachers to have, within the same cover as the introductory lessons, additional material to serve the needs of pupils who have reached the stage of reading a Latin author and are preparing for Junior Matriculation or some equivalent examination. These needs are threefold: a more systematic review and a more complete statement of Latin syntax; suitable material for practice in elementary prose composition; and a reference book for the explanation of difficult or novel usages which are met with in the prescribed texts. Similarly the Appendix has been extended to include such exceptional or irregular forms as occur in the authors commonly read in schools.

In preparing the introductory lessons the most careful attention was given to the vocabulary. The object was to enable the student of Latin to build up gradually and surely a vocabulary of some 600 words chosen with great care as being likely (from their nature or their frequency) to be of the greatest service to him in his later reading. The method adopted was to introduce not more than ten new words in any one exercise; wherever possible, to group together words related in form, derivation, usage, or meaning; and to see that words and phrases (as well as constructions and forms) once learned should be continually repeated and reviewed.

A second feature of the introductory lessons on which much thought was bestowed was the series of stories in Latin inserted at frequent intervals. These stories are drawn from the great Roman legends and illustrate the characteristic Roman virtues of resolution, sense of duty, and devotion to country. They are not adaptations of existing Latin narratives; they have been built up out of the material

afforded by the previous vocabularies and exercises, and are thus in a real sense review lessons which should prove of great value. For it must greatly stimulate interest and develop confidence when pupils find that the knowledge they have already gained enables them to read actual Latin with considerable ease and success. The story of Ulysses, written in Caesarean Latin, will be found useful at a later stage, either as preparatory to the more difficult Latin of Caesar, or as affording practice in sight translation while reading Caesar; and the subject matter of the story should not prove the less interesting because it affords a change from the records of military campaigns.

The second portion of the book, entitled Latin Syntax and Composition, is an adaptation and revision of material already published in other forms and familiar to those who have used the authors' *Primary Latin Book* or their *Matriculation Latin*. In the statement of the rules of Latin syntax advantage has been taken, as far as possible, of the explanations and illustrative examples contained in the introductory lessons. These have been supplemented by new material, that printed in large type dealing with rules and usages with which the student at this stage should carefully familiarize himself; the matter in small type is rather for occasional reference. Attention is called to the sections in which are illustrated the various ways of rendering into Latin clauses introduced by *that*, clauses containing *would* or *should*, the infinitive with *to*, and the gerund in *-ing*.

Two series of exercises in prose composition are given; the one (the A-series) based on the vocabulary already familiar from the introductory lessons, and therefore suitable for all who have studied that portion of the book; the other (the B-series) based on indicated chapters of Caesar's account of his invasions of Britain. A few pages of continuous narrative prose have been added of the same type as the passages now set for the Middle School Examination in Ontario. These may serve also as an introduction to the more advanced work in Latin prose composition required in the higher grades.

The illustrations (with the descriptive matter on pages 470-473) should give the pupil not only more accurate ideas of the meaning of various Latin terms, but a sense also of the grandeur and massive impressiveness of the great monuments of Roman civilization.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS.

LESSON	PAGE
Introduction	1
I. First and Second Conjugations: Present Indicative Active	13
II. First and Second Declensions: Nominative Singular and Plural	16
III. First and Second Declensions: Accusative Singular and Plural	18
IV. First and Second Declensions: Genitive Singular and Plural	20
V. First and Second Declensions: Dative Singular and Plural. Accusative with <i>ad</i>	22
VI. First and Second Conjugations: Imperfect Indicative Active	24
VII. First and Second Declensions: Ablative Singular and Plural	26
VIII. First and Second Declensions Reviewed: Vocative Case. Predicate Nouns and Appositives	28
Word List I. Reading Lesson I. (<i>Romulus and Remus and the Founding of Rome</i>)	32
IX. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-um</i> . Gender	34
X. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	37
XI. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i> . Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions in <i>-er</i>	40
XII. Third and Fourth Conjugations: Present Indicative Active	43
Word List A. Reading Lesson II. (<i>The Romans and their Neighbours</i>)	46
XIII. Third Declension: Consonant Stems	47
XIV. Third and Fourth Conjugations: Imperfect Indicative Active	52
XV. Third Declension: Consonant Stems (continued)	54
XVI. Prepositions	57

LESSON	PAGE
XVII. Perfect Indicative Active	59
XVIII. Perfect Indicative Active (continued)	61
Word List II. Reading Lesson III. (<i>The Seizure of the Sabine Maidens</i>)	64
XIX. Adjectives of the Third Declension	67
XX. Sum : Present Indicative	70
XXI. Present Infinitive Active. Complementary Infinitive	73
XXII. Pluperfect Indicative Active	76
XXIII. Fourth Declension	79
Word List B. Reading Lesson IV. (<i>The Battle of the Horatii and the Curiatii</i>)	81
XXIV. Principal Parts. Perfect Indicative Passive	84
XXV. Ablative of Agent. Ablative of Means	88
XXVI. Imperfect Indicative of Sum . Pluperfect Indicative Passive	91
XXVII. Fifth Declension. Ordinal Numerals	95
XXVIII. Accusative and Ablative of Time	97
Word List III. Reading Lesson V. (<i>The Battle of the Horatii and the Curiatii—concluded</i>)	99
XXIX. Present Indicative Passive	101
XXX. Regular Comparison of Adjectives	104
XXXI. Dative with Adjectives. Partitive Genitive	107
XXXII. First and Second Conjugations : Future Indicative Active	110
Word List C. Reading Lesson VI. (<i>The Seven Kings of Rome</i>)	113
XXXIII. Third Declension : I-Stems	115
XXXIV. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	120
XXXV. Third and Fourth Conjugations : Future Indicative Active	123
XXXVI. Irregular Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	126
XXXVII. Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive	130
XXXVIII. Cardinal Numerals	132
Word List IV. Reading Lesson VII. (<i>How Horatius Kept the Bridge</i>)	135
XXXIX. Future Perfect Indicative, Active and Passive	138
XL. Mille . Accusative of Extent of Space	142

LESSON	PAGE
XLI. Present Infinitive Passive. Adverbs: Regular Formation and Comparison	146
XLII. Quam with Comparatives. Ablative of Comparison	149
XLIII. Adverbs: Irregular Formation and Comparison. Quam with Superlatives	152
Word List D. Reading Lesson VIII. (<i>The Story of Mucius Scaevola</i>)	155
XLIV. Relative Pronoun. Quod	157
XLV. Perfect Participle Passive	162
XLVI. Personal Pronouns	166
XLVII. Present Participle Active. Dum	170
XLVIII. Reflexive Pronoun. Possessives	174
Word List V. Reading Lesson IX. (<i>Camillus and the Schoolmaster of Falerii</i>)	179
XLIX. Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō	182
I. Demonstrative Pronouns: Hic, Ille, Is	185
LI. Ablative Absolute	189
LII. Perfect Participle Passive (continued). Demonstrative Pronouns: Ipse, Idem	193
LIII. Deponent Verbs	198
Word List E. Reading Lesson X. (<i>Rome Taken by the Gauls</i>)	202
LIV. Accusative and Infinitive	205
LV. Accusative and Infinitive (continued)	209
LVI. Accusative and Infinitive (continued)	212
LVII. Questions. Interrogative Pronoun	216
LVIII. Active and Passive Periphrastic Conjugations	221
Word List VI. Reading Lesson XI. (<i>Rome Delivered from the Gauls</i>)	225
LIX. Dative of Agent. Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs. Ablative with ūtor	228
LX. Subjunctive of Sum . Indirect Questions	233
LXI. Subjunctive Active	236
LXII. Subjunctive Passive. Subjunctive of Result	240
LXIII. The Compounds of Sum	244
Word List F. Reading Lesson XII. (<i>Titus Manlius Torquatus</i>)	248
LXIV. Genitive and Ablative of Quality.	252

LESSON		PAGE
LXV.	The Subjunctive in Clauses of Purpose	254
LXVI.	Ferô	258
LXVII.	Subjunctive with Cum	261
LXVIII.	Volô, Nôlô, Mâlô. Dative of Purpose and Interest	265
LXIX.	Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse	270
	Word List VII. Reading Lesson XIII. (<i>The Self-Devotion of Decius</i>)	273
LXX.	Ablative of Specification. Ablative of Manner	276
LXXI.	Eô, Fiô	279
LXXII.	Substantive Clauses of Purpose	284
LXXIII.	Review of Genitive and Dative Cases	287
LXXIV.	Review of Accusative and Ablative Cases	291
	Word List G. Reading Lesson XIV. (<i>The Honour of Fabricius</i>)	296
LXXV. ✓	Gerund	300
LXXVI.	Gerundive Construction	304
LXXVII.	Indefinite Pronouns. Review of Pronouns	307
LXXVIII. ✓	Imperative. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses	312
LXXIX.	Supine. Review of Verb-forms	315
LXXX.	Conditional Sentences. Review of Subjunctive	319
	Word List VIII. Reading Lesson XV. (<i>The Story of Regulus</i>)	325
	<i>The Story of Ulysses</i>	328

SYNTAX AND PROSE COMPOSITION.

	Introductory.—Order of Words and Clauses, Concords	339
I.	The Accusative and Infinitive	343
II.	Complementary Infinitive	345
III.	Final Clauses (Clauses of Purpose)	348
IV.	Consecutive or Result Clauses. Clauses of Characteristic	351
V.	Questions, Direct and Indirect	354
VI.	The Present and Perfect Participles	357
VII.	The Ablative Absolute	360
VIII.	Verbs Completed by the Dative, Genitive, or Ablative. The Impersonal Passive	364
IX.	Conditional Sentences	368
X.	Clauses of Concession. Clauses of Proviso. Conditional Clauses of Comparison	370

LESSON	PAGE
XI. Uses of the Accusative	373
XII. Uses of the Dative	376
XIII. Uses of the Genitive	380
XIV. Uses of the Ablative	383
XV. Verbal Nouns—Infinitive, Gerund, Supine	387
XVI. Verbal Adjectives—Gerundive, Participles	390
XVII. Expressions of Place and Time	393
XVIII. Imperative. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive	396
XIX. Verbs of Fearing. Uses of <i>Quin</i> and <i>Quominus</i>	399
XX. Duty, Necessity, Possibility, Permission	402
XXI. Causal Sentences. Uses of <i>Cum</i>	404
XXII. Temporal Clauses	407
XXIII. Personal, Demonstrative, Reflexive, and Possessive Pronouns	410
XXIV. Indefinite Pronouns	413
XXV. The Relative Pronoun	415
XXVI. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse	418
XXVII. Tenses of the Indicative	421
XXVIII. Indirect Discourse (<i>Ōratiō Obliqua</i>)	424
XXIX. Noun, Adjective, and Adverbial Clauses	430
XXX. Continuous Narrative Prose	434

APPENDIX.

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS	442
DESCRIPTION OF ILLUSTRATIONS	471
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	474
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	493
INDEX	509

FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS.

(For description, see page 471.)

	PAGE
Appian Way and Claudian Aqueduct	Facing 50
Tomb of Caecilia Metella	" 67
Pantheon	" 115
Colosseum	" 130
Forum, looking east	" 211
Forum, looking west	" 226
Trajan's Column	" 291
Arch of Constantine	" 306

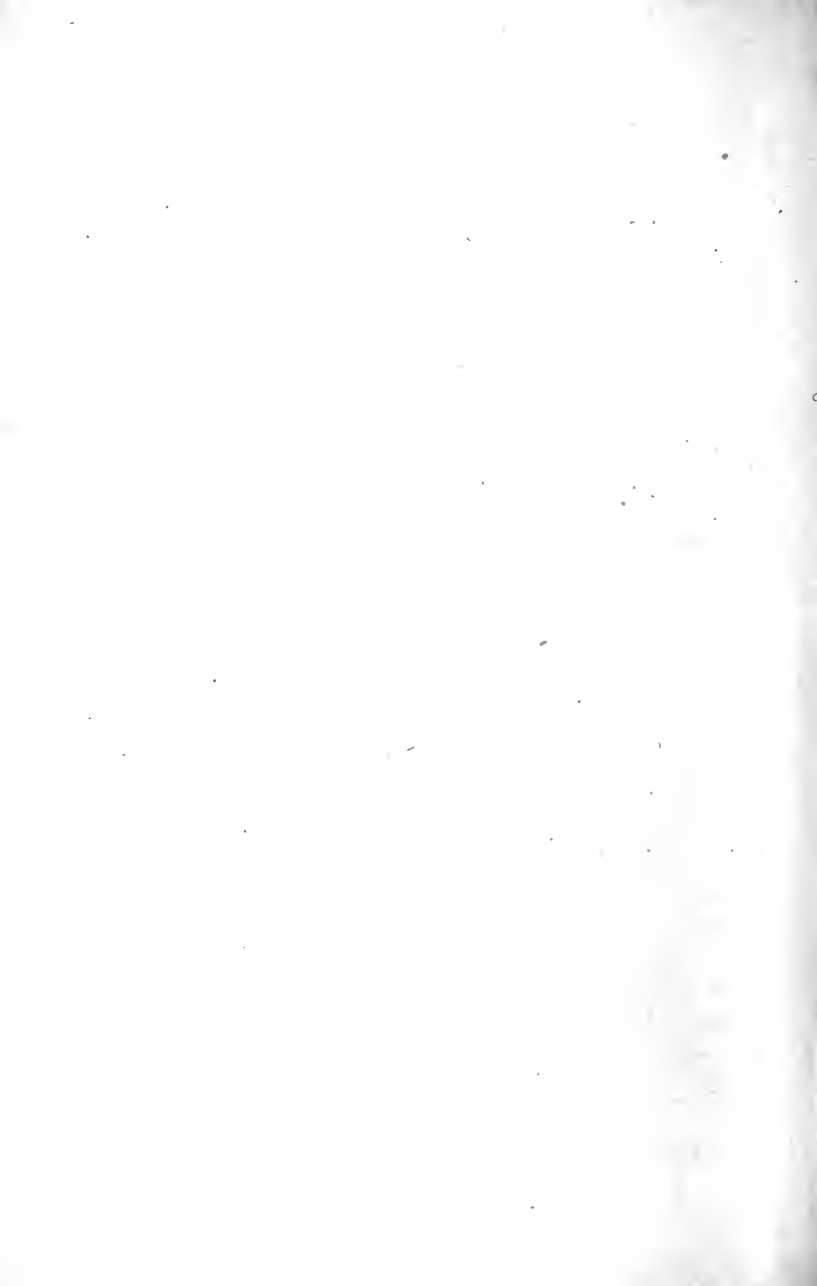
MAPS.

Italy and Gaul	338
Rome	470

ILLUSTRATIONS IN THE TEXT.

Roman Coins	4
Roman Eagle	12
Sword	15
Soldier	21
Spear	25
The Wall of Romulus	36
Remains of Roman Camp	39
Standard	45
Caius Julius Caesar. (<i>British Museum</i>)	51
Soldiers on the March	62
Arms and Weapons	66
Writing Implements and Materials. (<i>Wall Painting at Pompeii</i>)	78
Porta Appia	83
Rampart and Trench	89
Military Standards	94
Tomb of the Horatii and Curiatii near Alba	101
War-galleys. (<i>Wall-painting at Pompeii</i>)	119
War-ship. (<i>Praeneste Relief</i>)	127
Roman Coin	137
Statue of Augustus. (<i>Vatican Museum, Rome</i>)	145

Transport Ship. (<i>Ancient Relief</i>)	172
Cicero Addressing the Senate. (<i>Fresco in Palace of the Senate,</i> <i>Rome</i>)	192
Soldier's Pack	197
Attack on a Walled City	232
Aqueduct at Nîmes	239
The Dying Gaul. (<i>Museum of the Capitol, Rome</i>)	251
Soldiers Crossing a Bridge of Boats. (<i>Trajan's Column</i>)	269
Coin of Hadrian	283
Roman Fleet in Harbour	303
Temple at Nîmes	327
Coin of Antoninus Pius	337



EATING LESSONS FOR BEGINNERS.

INTRODUCTION.

THE LATIN LANGUAGE AND THE ROMAN PEOPLE.

1. Latin is the language that was spoken by the people of ancient Rome. The word *Latin* is derived from the adjective *Latinus*, meaning *belonging to Latium*. Latium was the district occupying the plain south of the river Tiber, and its inhabitants, the Latins, possessed several towns and strongholds, among which was Rome. In time Rome came to be the strongest of all these Latin towns, so that the other Latins, at first the kinsmen and allies of the Romans, became at length their subjects. Accordingly from a very early date the word Latin ceased to be applied to the people and city of Rome, and was used only of the other inhabitants of Latium, although it was always retained in speaking of the language common to Romans and Latins.

2. For several centuries after the founding of their settlement, the Romans were but an inconspicuous people, holding amid constant struggles a very small portion of Italian territory. From about 350 B.C., however, their power extended rapidly; within a century they had conquered the whole peninsula of Italy; and by the beginning of the Christian era,

Rome was mistress of all the lands bordering on the Mediterranean, virtually, that is, of the then known world. The Roman empire thus established lasted unbroken for over 400 years, and for more than 1,000 years thereafter the influence of Rome was paramount in Europe.

3. This supremacy of the Roman people was based on certain qualities which we find them possessing from the beginning of their history. The Romans were extremely resolute, daunted by no reverse or misfortune, strenuous and untiring; stern and ruthless, though on the whole honourable in their dealings; they were conspicuous for their self-denying patriotism and their high sense of duty; they lacked refinement and imagination, but were clear-headed, business-like and efficient; and finally they were not a mere fighting race, but one gifted above all other nations with the power of governing, framing laws and organizing. Roman law, Roman organization and Roman institutions persist to this day over most of continental Europe; and when in the middle ages the power of the Roman empire passed over to the Roman church, this genius for organization and government was not lost. Quite as important, too, as these contributions to modern civilization is the fact that Rome, after conquering the ancient world, gathered up into her own civilization all that Greece, Egypt and Asia had of value for mankind in science, literature, art, philosophy and religion, and preserved it for the modern world.

4. During the long centuries of Roman supremacy in Europe, Latin came to have a peculiar preeminence which no other language has ever enjoyed. French,

Italian, Spanish and Portuguese are merely the modern representatives of Latin as it was spoken in various parts of the Roman empire (whence they are known as the *Romance* languages). Moreover all through the middle ages and down to quite modern times, Latin was the language of learning and diplomacy; an educated man in any part of Europe knew Latin as well as his own language, and both wrote and spoke it freely. Partly for this latter reason, and partly because of England's close relations with France from the time of the Norman Conquest, the English language also has been profoundly influenced by Latin.* Countless words, originally Latin, have been introduced from French, especially during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries; and innumerable words also have been taken directly from Latin during the whole period from the time of the Roman occupation of Britain to the present day, but particularly since 1500 A.D. It has been estimated that fully forty per cent. of our English vocabulary has thus come, directly or indirectly, from Latin.

THE ALPHABET.

5. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that **W** is never used. **K** occurs in but a few words and always as an initial letter; even here it is replaced by **C** in many books; as **Karthāgō** or **Carthāgō**, *Carthage*.

* English belongs to a different group of languages from Latin and French, and is more akin to Dutch, German, Danish and Norse. This group of languages is called Teutonic, and the Teutonic and Latin groups seem to have descended from some still earlier common language. Hence there are resemblances between English and Latin words, even where it is certain that the English word has not come even indirectly from Latin; as e.g. *mother* and *mater*, *two* and *duo*. Such related words are called *cognates*; words which have come to us from Latin are called *derivatives*.

Y and **Z** began to be used in the first century B.C., in a few words borrowed from the Greeks, to represent sounds foreign to Latin. The Romans themselves used but one sign **V** for both the vowel **U** and the semi-consonantal **V** (pronounced *v*), and similarly one sign **I** for both the vowel **I** and the semi-consonantal **J** (pronounced *y*). For the sake of convenience and clearness, however, many modern books (especially those for beginners in Latin) follow the custom that arose in the middle ages, of using distinct signs for the different sounds.

Only the capital letters (*majuscles*) were used by the Romans; while the use of the smaller "Roman" letters (*minuscules*) dates from the eighth century A.D.



DIVVS IVLIVS



IVDAEA CAPTA

Divus Julius: The Divine Julius. Judaea Capta: Judea Conquered.

Roman Coins.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

Vowels.

6. Each of the five* vowels, **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, has but two sounds, a long and a short. The long sounds differ from the short chiefly in requiring a distinctly longer time to utter them.

* **Y**, which rarely occurs, has a sound between *u* and *i* (French *u* or German *ü*).

ā is sounded like *a* in *father* or *amen* (pronounced as in singing), when these words are uttered slowly, or like the second *a* in *aha*.

a " " " *a* in *father* or *amen* when uttered briskly, or like the first *a* in *aha*.

ē " " " *e* in *they*, *veil*, or *a* in *fate*.

e " " " *e* in *met*, *end*.

ī " " " *i* in *machine*, *police*.

i " " " *i* in *sit*, *is*.

ō " " " the second *o* in *propose*, or like *o* in *heroic* or *holy*.

o " " " the first *o* in *propose*, or like *o* in *heroine* or *obey*.*

ū " " " *u* in *rule*, or *oo* in *cuckoo*, *boot*, *poor*.

u " " " *u* in *pull*, *cuckoo*, or *oo* in *foot*, *good*.

N.B.—Latin does not appear to have had the common English short sounds of *a*, *o*, and *u* as in *hat*, *hot*, and *hut*, or the *you* sound of *u* as in *pure*, *use*.

7. It should also be observed that in Latin a long vowel often precedes a combination of consonants before which, in English, a single vowel is regularly short; as, *infēnsus*, *adēptum*, *crēscō*.

Many foreign geographical or biographical names illustrate the values of the Roman vowels; as *Tokio*, *Rio de Janeiro*, *Pisa*, *Upsala*, *Tripoli*, *Saloniki*, *Yenisei*, *Yokohama*, *Amur*, *Mikado*, *Iago*, *Galileo*, *Rossini*, *Hegel*, *Buddha*, *Hindu*; so also many musical terms borrowed from the Italian; as *trio*, *do*, *re*, *mi*, *fa*.

* The open sound of short *o* does not occur in English in accented syllables, although found in other modern languages. A close approximation is the short *o* in *continent* or *popular*, pronounced with definitely rounded lips.

Diphthongs.

8. The diphthongs in Latin have all arisen from two vowels sounded in their proper order, but slurred so that they occupy the time of a single long vowel. Latin has six diphthongs, of which only **ae** and **au** occur frequently.

ae is sounded like *ai* in *aisle*.

au " " " *ou* in *house*.

oe " " " *oi* in *boil*.

ei " " " *ei* in *vein*.

eu " " " *ě-oo* in rapid succession.

ui " " " *oo-i* in rapid succession.

Among the Romans themselves in Imperial times, there was a tendency to replace the diphthongal sound of **ae** by the long sound of **e** (like *ai* in *pain*), and this from about 300 A.D. became the regular pronunciation.

Consonants.

9. The consonants have each a single sound, which in most cases is that usual in English. The following points deserve special attention :

c is sounded as in *come*, *sceptic*, never as in *cent*, *sceptre*.

g " " " *get*, *give*, never as in *gem*, *gin*.

s " " " *this*, *gas*, never as in *his*, *has*.

t " " " *mightiest*, never as in *righteous*.

x " " " *exercise* (*x* = *ks*), never as in *exert*
(*x* = *gz*).

j " " " *y* in *yet*, or as *j* in *Hallelujah*.

v " " " *w* in *wet*, *beware*.

r is distinctly sounded in all positions.

- n** before **c**, **g**, **qu**, **x**, is sounded as *ng*, or as *n* in *ankle*.
b " **s** or **t**, is sounded as *p*.
u in the combinations **qu** and **ngu**, as also in the words **suādeō**, **suāvis** and **suēscō**, has the sound of *w*.
ch is sounded as *k*.*

10. A consideration of the following may help to throw some light on the sounds of certain of the consonants as pronounced in Latin :

- c**, *Kaiser* from *Caesar* ; *Acilēs* and *pulcer*, the older spelling of *Achillēs* and *pulcher* ; the variant spellings *recuperō* and *reciperō*.
g, *Nōn Anglī sed Angelī* (the exclamation of Pope Gregory) ; related words like *genu*, *gonu* and *knee* or *genus*, *gonos* and *kin*.
j, related words like *jugum* and *yoke* ; *juvenis*, *jūnior* and *young* ; the identity of *major* and *mayor* ; *Jan* and *Ian* ; *yawl* and *jolly boat* ; *Yiddish* and *Jüdisch* ; the pronunciation of such foreign words as *Jena*, *Jungfrau*, *Pompeii*.
s, *caussa* and *hiemps*, variant spellings for *causa* and *hiems*.
v, related words like *vīcus* and *-wick* (as in *Berwick*, *Wickham*) ; *ventus* and *wind* ; *vāllum* and *wall* ; *vīnum* and *wine* ; *volō* and *will* ; *vespa* and *wasp* ; *vāstus* and *waste* ; *vir* and *wer* (in *werwolf*) ; *prūdēs* shortened from *prōvidēs*, *jūnior* from *juvenior*, *auspex* from *avisplex*, *nōlō* from *ne-volō* ; the confusion of *Cauneās* with *cavē nē eās* (Cicero), or of the cawing of a crow with *Avē* (Phaedrus).

* It is properly not a Latin combination, but being borrowed from the Greek to represent a character in the Greek alphabet, it came to be used in a few Latin words in place of an earlier **c**.

SYLLABLES.

11. In dividing written or printed Latin words into syllables, the rule is to place at the beginning of each syllable all the consonants that could be pronounced at the beginning of a word ; * as, **su-pe-ri-or**, **su-prē-mus**, **sē-pa-rā-te**, **mōn-strum**, **ser-vō**, **mit-tō**. In compounds, however, the several parts are kept distinct ; as **ab-est**, **dis-turbō**, **di-stant**.

12. When a consonant is doubled in a Latin word, the sound of the consonant is heard in each syllable ; as, **ap-pel-lō**, **com-mit-tō** (contrasted with the English words *appellant*, *committee*, in which the consonant, though occurring twice, is pronounced but once).†

13. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*, the one next to the last the *penult*, and the last syllable but two the *antepenult*.

ACCENT.

14. Illustrative Examples.

de'-dit,	va'-dō,	an'-nus,	su'-ō,
dē'-dit,	rī'-pās,	cōn'-sul,	nau'-tae.

These representative words will show on which syllable (penult or ultimate) the accent falls in Latin words of two syllables.

15. Illustrative Examples.

spē-rā'-mus,	Rō-mā-nō'-rum,	cōn-sēn'-sū,
re-lī'-quī,	sa-lū'-tem,	po-ten'-tis.
ge'-ne-ra,	ex-cel'-si-or,	cōn-sēn'-se-rās,
re'-li-quī,	i-dō'-ne-us,	cī'-vi-tās.

* Some authorities hold that in the case of two or more consonants the division comes before the last consonant, except in the case of a mute followed by a liquid, and would divide thus, **mōns-trum**, **cas-tra**.

† So in English contrast tattoo with tatter, soulless with solace, penknife with penny, unknown with unowned, missent with missing.

These representative words of more than two syllables are arranged in two groups. In the words in the two upper lines the vowel of the penult is either a long vowel, or a short vowel followed by two consonants; in the two lower lines the vowel of the penult is a short vowel not followed by two consonants.

On which syllable (penult or antepenult) does the accent fall in these two classes respectively?

N.B.—In the matter of accent, **x** is treated as a double consonant, **qu** as a single consonant. So also when the two consonants consist of **r** or **l**, preceded by a different consonant, the word is accented as though there were but one consonant: for example, **ar'bitror**, **mul'tiplex**, **ten'ebræ**; but **impul'sus**, **vexil'lum**, **adver'tō**, **incur'rō**, according to the general rule.

For the purposes of accentuation a diphthong is treated as a long vowel.

16. There are no silent letters in Latin; it follows that there are as many syllables in each Latin word as there are vowels and diphthongs.

Pronounce accordingly the following Latin words:

Mīles, **fīne**, **cōnsūmēs**, **furōre**, **beātus**, **excelsior**, **dēsīgnō**,
honor, **legiōnis**, **scēna**, **salvē**, **ōrātiō**, **aliēnus**, **mīlitia**.

17. Practice in the pronunciation of Latin may be obtained from the measured and careful reading of the following lines, which are a portion of the version by Professor R. Y. Tyrrell, of Dublin, of Hood's "Bridge of Sighs," in the metre of the original:

Ā ! misera sortis
Pondere fessa !
Ā ! temerē mortis
Viam ingressa !

Tollite facile
Onus tam bellum,
Onus tam gracile
Tamque tenellum.

Nē fastidientēs
Corpus attingite,
Sed flēbilem flentēs
Animō fingite ;
Quod fēcerit male
Dōnāte tam bellae ;
Nīl restat nī quāle
Decōrum puellae.

Ā ! hūmānārum
Quam rārō homullōs
Miseriārum
Miseret ūllōs !
Ēheu, quam flēbilis,
Urbe tam plēnā,
Jacuit dēbilis,
Tēctī egēna.

THE ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

18. The pronunciation of Latin in use in ancient times came to be gradually modified in certain respects, but in all its essential features it was retained for centuries; and as Latin was a constant medium for oral communication between various parts of Europe throughout the middle ages, the pronunciation was practically uniform over Europe. By the sixteenth century, however, England had become so isolated from continental Europe, through her separate political

and religious development, that the traditional pronunciation of Latin was abandoned, and Latin words were treated as if they were English.

As a result of this, in our English speech Roman names and many familiar expressions and phrases borrowed from the Latin have long been pronounced according to the English method, e.g. *Caesar, Julius, Augustus, Horātius, sine diē, et cētera, primā faciē, vivā vōce, excelsior, ē plūribus ūnum, vōx populī*. In such cases even those who do not follow the English method of pronunciation in reading Latin, yet retain the English pronunciation when these names or phrases are used in English.*

19. (a) In the English method of pronouncing Latin, the vowels are given the common long or short English sounds :

ā as in *cane*, a as in *can*.

ē " *me*, e " *met*.

ī " *pine*, i " *pin*.

ō " *no*, o " *not*.

ū " *use*, u " *us*.

But very often vowels really long are sounded as short, and vowels really short as long, either through the influence of similar English words or for ease of utterance. No absolutely fixed rules can be given for these exceptions, but some of the more regular variations are as follows :

*Exactly the same thing occurs in the case of such modern foreign names as Paris, Napoleon, Pyrenees; Luther, Berlin, Munchausen; Madrid, Manila, Don Quixote. We give each of these words one pronunciation when we are reading or speaking English, and quite another when we are reading or speaking the foreign language to which it belongs.

Long vowels are sounded as short (*a*) before two consonants or **x**; (*b*) in most final syllables ending with a consonant; e.g. **dēnsus, dūxit, brevitās.**

Short vowels are sounded as long (*a*) before another vowel or diphthong or **h**; (*b*) in the first syllable of dissyllabic words before a single consonant, e.g. **aluit, nihil, senex, caput.**

(b) The diphthongs **ae** and **oe** are sounded as *e* in *me*; **au** as in *author*; **eu** as in *feud*; **ei** and **ui** as *i* in *pine*.

(c) Of the consonants, **c** and **g** are given the soft sound of *s* and *j* respectively before *e* and *i* sounds (that is before **e, i, y, ae, oe**); e.g. **Cicerō, rēgīna**; **s** when final is often sounded like *z*, as it is occasionally in other places also through the analogy of some English word, e.g. **pars, causa**; and **c, s,** and **t** are often sounded as *sh* before *i* (unaccented) followed by another vowel, e.g. **socius, ratiō**; **j** is sounded as in *jar*, and **v** as in *vine*.

N.B.—The rules for accent in the English method are the same as are given above in 14 and 15.



Roman Eagle.

LESSON IFIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS : PRESENT
INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

20. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnat, <i>he fights.</i>	Pūgnant, <i>they fight.</i>
Vocat, <i>he calls.</i>	Vocant, <i>they call.</i>
Habet, <i>he has.</i>	Habent, <i>they have.</i>
Videt, <i>he sees.</i>	Vident, <i>they see.</i>

a. Notice (1) that in these English sentences the subject of the verb is expressed by a *separate word*.

(2) that in the Latin equivalent the change of subject is indicated by a change in the final letters of the verb.*

21. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnāmus, <i>we fight.</i>	Vidēmus, <i>we see.</i>
Vocās, <i>you call.</i>	Habēs, <i>you have.</i>
(addressed to one person)	
Vocātis, <i>you call.</i>	Habētis, <i>you have.</i>
(addressed to more than one person)	

a. What final letters in these Latin words serve to express the idea of *we* and *you* (singular and plural)?

Such final letters, indicating changes of person and number in the subject of the verb, are called Personal Endings.

NOTE * This change in the form of a word to show its grammatical relation is called inflection. Latin is an inflected language, while English is almost wholly an uninflected one.

- b. In two of these Latin verbs the personal endings, it should be noticed, are preceded by the vowel *ā*, and in the other two verbs by the vowel *ē*. This common part (e.g. *vocā-*, *habē-*) to which the various personal endings are attached is known as the Present Stem.

Before which personal endings are these vowels *ā* and *ē* shortened?

22. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnō, *I fight*.

Videō, *I see*.

Vocō, *I call*.

Habēō, *I have*.

- a. What personal ending expresses *I* in these verbs?

Notice that before this ending, *ā* is dropped, while *ē* is shortened.*

23. These two classes of verb (the *ā*- verbs and the *ē*-verbs) are ordinarily called verbs of the First and Second Conjugations respectively.† In Latin vocabularies or dictionaries "*āre*" is added to indicate a verb of the First Conjugation, "*ēre*" a verb of the Second Conjugation.‡

24. Paradigms.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

First Conjugation.

Second Conjugation.

SINGULAR.

1.	<i>amō</i> (<i>I love</i>)	<i>ō</i>	<i>moneō</i> (<i>I advise</i>)	-e- <i>ō</i>
2.	<i>amās</i>	- <i>ā</i> -s	<i>monēs</i>	- <i>ē</i> -s
3.	<i>amat</i>	- <i>a</i> -t	<i>monet</i>	-e-t

* It is a rule of Latin that a vowel immediately preceding another vowel or diphthong is short.

† There are in all four conjugations in Latin, that is, four divisions of verbs according to the form of the present stem.

‡ For the further significance of these endings *āre* and *ēre* see Lesson XXI.

PLURAL.

1. amāmus	-ā-mus	monēmus	-ē-mus
2. amātis	-ā-tis	monētis	-ē-tis
3. amant	-ant	monent	-ent

25.

VOCABULARY.

habeō, ēre, *have.*

pūgnō, āre, *fight.*

moveō, ēre, *move.*

teneō, ēre, *hold.*

necō, āre, *kill, slay.*

vāstō, āre, *lay waste.*

pāreō, ēre, *be obedient.*

videō, ēre, *see.*

parō, āre, *prepare, procure.*

vocō, āre, *call*

EXERCISES.

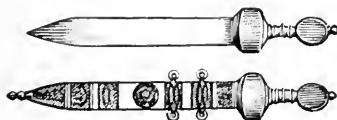
26.

I.

1. Vāstat, necat, tenet, movet. 2. Necant, tenent, movent, vāstant. 3. Vocāmus, vocātis, vocō. 4. Habēs, habēmus, habētis. 5. Movēs, vident, vāstātis. 6. Videt, pūgnāmus, moveō. 7. Necātis, pūgnant, videō. 8. Parō, pārēs, pārent, parāmus.

II.

1. They call, they prepare, they have, they see. 2. He sees, he fights, he holds, he slays. 3. You (sing.) hold, you (plur.) fight, we lay waste. 4. He is obedient, he prepares, I am obedient. 5. We slay, I hold, you lay waste. 6. We move, he calls, I fight.



Gladius : Sword.

LESSON II.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: NOMINATIVE
SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

27. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnāmus,	<i>we fight or we are fighting.</i>
Vocō,	<i>I call or I am calling.</i>
Movent,	<i>they move or they are moving.</i>
Parat,	<i>he (she or it) prepares or is preparing.</i>
Tenet,	<i>he (she or it) holds or is holding.</i>

- a. Notice (1) the twofold translation of each form in the present tense.
(2) the use of the personal ending **-t** to indicate also *she* or *it*.

28. Illustrative Examples.

Rōmānus,	<i>a Roman, the Roman.</i>
Rōmānī,	<i>Romans, the Romans.</i>
Filius,	<i>son, a son, the son.</i>
Filiī,	<i>sons, the sons.</i>
Nauta,	<i>a sailor, the sailor.</i>
Nautae,	<i>sailors, the sailors.</i>
Fīlia,	<i>a daughter, the daughter.</i>
Fīliae,	<i>daughters, the daughters.</i>

- a. By what change of the endings **-us** and **-a**, is the plural of these Latin nouns formed? Form similarly the plurals of the nouns in the following vocabulary.
- b. Notice that, as Latin has no article, the words *a* or *the* may be added or omitted in translating a Latin noun, according to the requirements of the context.

29.

Illustrative Examples.

Filius parat,	<i>the son prepares.</i>
Filiī parant,	<i>the sons prepare.</i>
Filia pāret,	<i>the daughter is obedient.</i>
Filiae pāreut,	<i>daughters are obedient.</i>
Filius et filia pārent,	<i>the son and the daughter are obedient.</i>

- a. Notice that the personal ending of these Latin verbs is retained when a noun is the subject, and when in the English sentence *he, she* or *they* is no longer found.

Rules. -- (1) The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

(2) Two singular subjects may take the verb in the plural.

30.

VOCABULARY.

Belga,	<i>Belgian.</i>	Gallus,	<i>Gaul.</i>
Britannus,	<i>Briton.</i>	Germānus,	<i>German.</i>
et,	<i>and.</i>	nauta,	<i>sailor.</i>
filia,	<i>daughter.</i>	Rōmānus,	<i>Roman.</i>
filius,	<i>son.</i>	servus,	<i>slave.</i>

EXERCISES.

31.

I.

1. Rōmānus pūgnat; Rōmānī pūgnant. 2. Nauta videt; nautae vident. 3. Britannī habent; Belga habet. 4. Gallī et Germānī necant et vāstant. 5. Filius et filiae movent. 6. Nauta et servī parant. 7. Vocās, tenēmus, movētis, vocō.

II.

1. He holds; the Briton is holding; the Britons hold. 2. She is calling; the daughter calls; the daughters are calling. 3. A sailor is slaying; slaves

- prepare. 4. The Gaul and the German are fighting.
 5. The Belgians are laying waste; the Germans see.
 6. It has; we move; you (sing.) are obedient; you (plur.) are preparing.
-

LESSON III.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

32.

Illustrative Examples.

Rōmānus nautam videt,	<i>the Roman sees the sailor.</i>
Rōmānī nautās vident,	<i>the Romans see the sailors.</i>
Nauta Rōmānum videt,	<i>the sailor sees the Roman.</i>
Nautae Rōmānōs vident,	<i>the sailors see the Romans.</i>
Filiōs et filiās habet,	<i>he has sons and daughters.</i>
Belgam et Gallum necant,	<i>they slay a Belgian and a Gaul.</i>

- a. What differences are found in the endings of these Latin nouns, in the singular and the plural, when they are used as the subject, and when they are used as the object of the verb?
- b. The form used as the subject of a finite verb is said to be in the *Nominative* case, that used as the object, in the *Accusative* case.*
- c. How does the order of these Latin sentences differ from that of the English?

33. The order followed in the sentences of 32 (subject, object, verb) is the normal, but by no means the

* These correspond to the English nominative and objective cases. For similar changes in the form of English words compare the pronouns *him, them, whom*.

invariable, order in Latin, and should be retained by the beginner as being the general rule. It is most important to observe that in Latin, unlike English, a change of order will not involve a change of syntactical relation. The first sentence in 32 will have the same meaning (with slight differences of emphasis only) if it be written **Nautam Rōmānus videt** or **Nautam videt Rōmānus** or **Videt Rōmānus nautam**.

34.

VOCABULARY.

cōpia (in singular), <i>plenty,</i>	nūntiō, āre, <i>announce.</i>
<i>supply, abundance;</i>	nūntius, <i>messenger.</i>
(in plural) <i>forces, troops.</i>	prōvincia, <i>province.</i>
dō, are,* <i>give.</i>	terreō, ēre, <i>frighten,</i>
equus, <i>horse.</i>	<i>terrify.</i>
fuga, <i>flight.</i>	vulnerō, āre, <i>wound.</i>
locus, <i>place.</i>	

EXERCISES.

35.

(I.)

1. Filium et filiam habet. 2. Belgās et Germānōs terrētis. 3. Cōpiae locum vāstant. 4. Germānī cōpiās et equōs parant. 5. Fugam nūntiāmus; equum dās; cōpiam habēs. 6. Nūntiōs et nautās vulnerant.

(II.)

1. You have horses; we have plenty. 2. I see the place; they lay waste the provinces. 3. The messenger is wounding the horse. 4. The forces hold the province. 5. The flight terrifies the forces. 6. They give a slave; a slave is announcing the flight.

* The verb **dō** is exceptional, in having short **a** in the stem, except in the forms **dās**, **dāns** (271) and **dā** (463).

ann
as
un
ts

LESSON IV.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: GENITIVE
SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

36. Illustrative Examples.

Filium nautae videt,	<i>he sees the sailor's son ; or, he sees the son of the sailor.</i>
Filium servī videt,	<i>he sees the slave's son.</i>
Fugam cōpiārum nūntiat,	<i>he announces the flight of the forces.</i>
Fugam Rōmānōrum nūntiat,	<i>he announces the flight of the Romans.</i>

a. What endings in these Latin nouns indicate the relation expressed by the English preposition *of* or the English possessive case ?

b. Nouns with these endings are said to be in the *Genitive* case.

The genitive is placed more frequently after than before the noun it modifies.

c. If the first sentence above were written in the order **Nautae filium videt**, could it mean, *The sailors see the son*? What two meanings could **Servī filium vident** have?

37. VOCABULARY.

animus,	<i>spirit, heart.</i>	porta,	<i>gate.</i>
cōfirmō, āre,	<i>encourage,</i>	portō, āre,	<i>carry, bear.</i>
	<i>arouse.</i>	praeda,	<i>plunder, booty.</i>
imperō, āre,	<i>give orders.</i>	socius,	<i>ally.</i>
lēgātus,	<i>ambassador,</i>	superō, āre,	<i>conquer.</i>
	<i>envoy ; lieutenant.</i>	victōria,	<i>victory.</i>

EXERCISES.

38.

I.

1. Cōpiam servōrum habet; socii cōpiam equōrum habent. 2. Victōria animum Belgae cōfirmat; victōriae animōs Belgārum cōfirmant. 3. Cōpiās lēgātī superat; lēgātī imperant. 4. Praedam portās; portās vidēmus. 5. Filius lēgātī cōpiās sociōrum superat. 6. Animōs cōpiārum terret. 7. Belgae cōpiās parant; cōpiae Belgārum pārent. 8. Filii nautae nūntium vocant.

II.

1. He is announcing the victory of the lieutenant. 2. The horse is carrying the ambassador's son. 3. The troops conquer the allies of the Belgians. 4. He conquers the forces of the allies. 5. The forces of the province are fighting. 6. The victory arouses the Britons' spirits. 7. They give a horse; he is giving orders. 8. You are wounding the sons of the sailor and of the messenger. 9. The slaves have the plunder; I see the slave's booty; they kill the envoys' slaves.



Miles: Soldier.

Nom.	
a	des
al	at
am	sum
as	os
Gen.	
ae	ū
arum	orum.
at	o
is	is
ae	e

LESSON V.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: DATIVE SINGULAR
AND PLURAL. ACCUSATIVE WITH *ad*.

39. Illustrative Examples.

Lēgātō victōriam nūntiat, *he announces the victory to the lieutenant.*

Praedam servīs dat, *he gives the plunder to the slaves.*

Prōvinciae imperat, *he gives orders to the province.*

Belgīs pārent, *they are obedient to the Belgians.*

a. What endings in the Latin nouns indicate the relation expressed in the English sentences by the preposition *to*?

b. Nouns with these endings are said to be in the *Dative* case.

The dative expressing the indirect object is more frequently placed before than after the direct object of the verb.

40. Illustrative Examples.

Ad locum cōpiās movet, *he moves the forces to the place.*

Ad portam servōs vocat, *he calls the slaves to the gate.*

Ad cōpiās et sociōs praedam portant, *they are carrying the plunder to the forces and the allies.*

a. When the preposition *to* is used in an English phrase implying motion or direction, the dative should not be used in the corresponding Latin. In what way is *to* expressed in these sentences?

41.

VOCABULARY.

ad,	to, towards.	reportō, āre,	carry back,
aqua,	water.		bring back
insula,	island.	respondeō, ēre,	reply.
mūrus,	wall.	retineō, ēre,	hold back,
ōceanus,	the ocean.		restrain.
removeō, ēre,	move back,	revocō, āre,	call back,
	remove, withdraw.		recall.
		spectō, āre,	look, face.

N.B.—Observe that **re-** is used in compounds to denote *back* or *again*; so **renūntiō**, *bring back word, report*.

EXERCISES.

42.

I.

1. Lēgātus nautis imperat; nautae lēgātō pārent.
 2. Sociōs ad insulam vocat; ad mūrōs cōpiās revocāmus.
 3. Lēgātus ad prōvinciās cōpiās reportat. 4. Lēgātis servōs et equum datis. 5. Belgae respondēs; equum Belgae removet; Belgae pūgnant. 6. Ad ōceanum prōvinciae spectant.

NOTE: UNUSQUE

II.

1. The slaves reply to the sailor; the sailor is replying to the slaves. 2. They are recalling the ambassador to the island. 3. We announce to the lieutenant the flight of the forces. 4. She is carrying a supply of water to the place. 5. He moves the troops back to the walls; it restrains the allies. 6. The island faces* towards the province; I give orders to the provinces.

*The English verb *face* is more commonly used transitively, with the preposition omitted: "He faces the province."

De la
P. io is

LESSON VI.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: IMPERFECT
INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

43. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnābant, *they were fighting* or *they used to fight.*Movēbat, *he was moving* or *he used to move.*Tenēbāmus, *we were holding* or *we used to hold.*Spectābat, *it was facing* or *it used to face*

- a. What new element is found in these Latin verbs between the present stem and the personal ending?
- b. Notice that these new forms may be translated in two ways, past time being indicated in both cases.*

44. Paradigms.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*First Conjugation.**Second Conjugation.*

SINGULAR.

1. amābam	-ā-ba-m	monēbam	-ē-ba-m
2. amābās	-ā-bā-s	monēbās	-ē-bā-s
3. amābat	-ā-ba-t	monēbat	-ē-ba-t

PLURAL.

1. amābāmus	-ā-bā-mus	monēbāmus	-ē-bā-mus
2. amābātis	-ā-bā-tis	monēbātis	-ē-bā-tis
3. amābant	-ā-ba-nt	monēbant	-ē-ba-nt

- a. What new personal ending is used instead of -ō in the first person singular of this tense?
- b. What is the quantity of the final **a** or **e** of the stem? Before which endings is the **a** in **ba** short, and before which is it long?

* *To the teacher.* The translation of the Imperfect by the English simple past tense should not be referred to at this stage; see 109.

45.

VOCABULARY.

Britannia, <i>Britain.</i>	gladius, <i>sword.</i>
firmō, āre, <i>strengthen.</i>	hasta, <i>spear.</i>
fossa, <i>trench, moat.</i>	hiemō, āre, <i>winter, pass the</i>
Gallia, <i>Gaul (the coun-</i>	<i>winter.</i>
<i>try now called France).</i>	Ītalia, <i>Italy.</i>
Germānia, <i>Germany.</i>	pūgna, <i>battle, fighting.</i>

EXERCISES.

46.

I.

1. Fīrmābant, fīrmābāmus, fīrmābat. 2. Tenēbās, tenēbam, tenēbātis. 3. Pārēbant, parābat, pārēt, parant. 4. Gladiōs et hastās reportābat. 5. Ad Germāniam et Ītaliā cōpiās removēbam. 6. Nautae gladium dabās; nautis respondēbant. 7. Britannia ad Galliam spectat; pūgnam Germānīs nūntiat. 8. Hiemant; cōpiae hiemābant.

II.

1. He was giving; they used to give; they give. 2. They were terrifying; it used to terrify; she terrifies. 3. You were strengthening the place; I was wintering. 4. It used to have walls and trenches. 5. We were procuring an abundance of swords and spears. 6. The lieutenant was holding Gaul and Britain; the Gauls and Britons were fighting. 7. We were replying to the messenger; the slave used to carry water to the trench.



Hasta : Spear.

LESSON VII.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: ABLATIVE
SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

47. Illustrative Examples.

Servum hastā necat, *he kills the slave with a spear.*

Servum gladiō necat, *he kills the slave with a sword.*

Nūntium cum nautā et servō necat, *he kills the messenger together with the sailor and the slave.*

Locum mūrīs et fossis firmat, *he strengthens the place with walls and trenches.*

Cum cōpiīs hiemat, *he is wintering with the forces.*

Cum Gallīs pūgnant, *they are fighting with the Gauls.*

- a. What endings in these Latin nouns indicate the relations expressed in the English sentences by the preposition *with*?

Notice where, in these examples, this new case (known as the *Ablative*) has forms identical with the dative. Notice also the difference in the quantity of *a* in the ablative and in the nominative.

- b. Observe that in some of these sentences *with* has the force of *by means of*,* in others of *together with* or *along with*. In which sense is the Latin preposition *cum* used with the ablative case?

48. Illustrative Examples.

In Galliā hiemat, *he is wintering in Gaul.*

In mūrō pūgnant, *they are fighting on the wall.*

Cōpiās ab Italiā revocat, *he recalls the troops from Italy.*

Cōpiās ā pūgnā revocat, *he recalls the troops from battle.*

Ab lēgātō et sociīs equōs parat, *he procures horses from the lieutenant and the allies.*

* Often *by means of* may be replaced by the preposition *by* instead of *by with*; as, *to perish by (means of) the sword*; *to restrain by (means of) force*.

- a.* What ideas does the ablative case express in these sentences? What prepositions are used with the ablative to express these ideas?*
- b.* Notice that, while **ab** is found before vowels and consonants alike, **ā** is not used before a vowel.

49.

VOCABULARY.

collocō, āre, place together, station.	contineō, ēre, hold together, confine, restrain.
comparō, āre, get together, procure.	convocō, āre, call together, summon.
compleō, ēre, fill full, fill.	injūria, wrong-doing,
comportō, āre, bring together, collect.	wrong.
cōfirmō, āre, strengthen (fully), encourage.	nātūra, nature.
	silva, wood, forest.

N.B.—In Latin compounds **com**, **con** or **col**, representing **cum**, denotes (a) *together* or (b) *completely*.

EXERCISES.

50.

I.

1. Cum cōpiīs in Ītaliā hiemābāmus. 2. Belgae locum mūrō et fossā cōfirmābant. 3. Rōmānōs ā silvā revocābam. 4. Gallōs in portis et in mūrō collocat; equōs gladiīs vulnerant. 5. Fossās aquā complēmus; cōpiās cum sociīs ā locō removēs. 6. Sociōs ab insulā convocātis; sociōs ad insulam revocō. 7. Lēgātus cōpiās ab injūriā continēbat. 8. Praedam ad locum comportābant.

*The Latin Ablative case represents three main ideas (at one time represented by three distinct cases): that of *from*, which gives it the name *ablative*; that of *with*, called the *instrumental* use; and that of *in, on or at*, called the *locative* use. The prepositions **ab**, **cum** and **in**, are used with the ablative to make clearer the particular use intended.

II.

1. The slave was fighting with the sailor ; he wounds the sailor with a spear. 2. He used to procure troops and horses from the provinces. 3. We see islands in the ocean ; I see a forest on the island. 4. He fills the walls and the gates with troops ; they fight with swords on the walls. 5. You used to winter in Britain with the lieutenant and the allies. 6. The nature of the place restrains the Britons from fighting. 7. From the walls they announce the victory to the ambassador. 8. They were summoning the messengers to the wall.

LESSON VIII.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS REVIEWED: VOCATIVE CASE. PREDICATE NOUNS AND APPOSITIVES.

51. To give all the forms of a Latin noun in the order in which the cases are usually arranged is called *declining* the noun, and the different series of endings found in Latin nouns are called the *Declensions*. These are five in number ; the nouns already learned which in the nominative singular end in **-a** belong to the First Declension, those which end in **-us** to the Second Declension.

As it happens that no two of the declensions have the same ending in the genitive singular, in Latin vocabularies and dictionaries the nominative and genitive singular of each noun are regularly indicated, in order to show to which of the five declensions the noun belongs. (Compare 56.)

52.

Paradigms.

FIRST DECLENSION. **F.**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nominative</i>	mēnsa (<i>table</i>)	-a	mēnsae	-ae
<i>Genitive</i>	mēnsae	-ae	mēnsārum	-ārum
<i>Dative</i>	mēnsae	-ae	mēnsīs	-īs
<i>Accusative</i>	mēnsam	-am	mēnsās	-ās
<i>Vocative</i>	mēnsa	-a	mēnsae	-ae
<i>Ablative</i>	mēnsā	-ā	mēnsīs	-īs

SECOND DECLENSION. **M.**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	servus (<i>slave</i>)	-us	servī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	servī	-ī	servōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	-ō	servīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	-um	servōs	-ōs
<i>Voc.</i>	serve	-e	servī	-ī
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	-ō	servīs	-īs

53. The Vocative case (like the nominative of address in English) is used in speaking to a person; as, **Victōriam, Rōmānī, nūntiāmus**, *we announce a victory, Romans.*

Except in the singular of nouns of the second declension ending in -us, the vocative is in form always identical with the nominative, and is accordingly often omitted in giving the paradigms of declension.

54.

Illustrative Examples.

Britannia est īnsula, *Britain is an island.*
Īnsulam Britānniam vocant, *they call the island Britain.*
Nūntium, filium lēgātī, vident, *they see the messenger, a son of the lieutenant.*

56.

VOCABULARY.

amīcitia, ae, *friendship*.incola, ae, *inhabitant*.amīcus, ī, *friend*.Rhēnus, ī, *Rhine*.fluvius, ī, *river*.rīpa, ae, *bank (of a river)*.habitō, āre, *dwelt*.vīcus, ī, *village*.est, *he (she or it) is*; sunt, *they are*; nōn, *not*.Phrase: amīcitiam cōfirmō, *establish friendship*.

EXERCISES

57.

I.

1. Britannī sunt incolae Britanniac. 2. In Galliā, prōvinciā Rōmānōrum, habitāmus. 3. Cōpiās ā ripā fluvīi revocat. 4. Gallia nōn est īnsula; Rōmānī Galliam prōvinciam vocābant. 5. Filiōs et filiās in silvīs collocant. 6. Amīcitiam cum Gallīs, Rōmānī, cōfirmātis. 7. Germānōs, sociōs Belgārum, superat. 8. Gallī sunt Rōmānōrum amīcī; Rōmānī Gallōs amīcōs vocant. 9. Vīcus mūrōs habet; vīcum mūrīs firmāmus. 10. Cōpiae in ripā fluvīi pūgnābant.

II.

1. We call the inhabitants of the island Britons; an inhabitant of the island is a Briton. 2. The Romans used to dwell in Italy. 3. They call the Belgians friends; we summon (our) friends, the Belgians. 4. The flight of the Germans, (their) allies, terrifies the inhabitants. 5. We are establishing friendship with the province. 6. You used to have friends, lieutenant. 7. They used to call the ocean a river; the ocean is not a river. 8. You were not obedient to (your) lieutenant. 9. They lay waste the villages from the banks of the Rhine to the ocean. 10. He stations (his) troops on the banks.

58.

WORD LIST. I.

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION.

amīcitiā	fossa	injūria	praeda
aqua	fuga	insula	prōvincia
Belga	Gallia	Italia	pūgna
Britannia	Germānia	nātūra	rīpa
cōpia	hasta	nauta	silva
filia	incola	porta	victōria

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION.

amīcus	fluvius	locus	Rōmānus
animus	Gallus	mūrus	servus
Britannus	Germānus	nūntius	socius
equus	gladius	ōceanus	vīcus
filius	lēgātus	Rhēnus	

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

collocō	firmō	parō	spectō
comparō	habitō	portō	superō
comportō	hiemō	pūgnō	vāstō
cōfirmō	imperō	reportō	vocō
convocō	necō	revocō	vulnerō
dō	nūntiō		

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION.

compleō	moveō	removeō	teneō
contineō	pāreō	respondeō	terreō
habeō		retineō	videō

MISCELLANEOUS.

et	nōn	est	sunt
----	-----	-----	------

READING LESSON I.

ROMULUS AND REMUS AND THE FOUNDING OF ROME.
(753 B.C.)

59. (Amulius, the rightful king of Alba, an ancient town of Latium in Italy, was supplanted by his brother Numitor. To secure himself on his throne, Numitor slew the sons of Amulius, and when twin sons were born to his daughter Rhea Silvia, he ordered them to be thrown into the river Tiber. As it turned out, the children were not drowned, but being cast ashore were found and suckled by a she-wolf as if they had been her own young. Soon they were discovered by a shepherd, who brought up the children in his own home, until they became hardy youths and leaders among their comrades. At last their parentage was revealed; and, slaying the usurper Numitor, the brothers placed their grandfather once more upon his rightful throne, and then set out to found a city upon the spot where they had so wonderfully been preserved.)

VOCABULARY.

Rōma, *Rome*.**Socius**, *comrade*.

In Ītaliā habitābat Rhēa Silvia. Rhēa duo (*two*) filiōs habet,* Rōmulum et Remum. Rōmulus et Remus, filii Rhēae, amicōs et sociōs convocant. Locum in ripā fluvii occupant (*they seize*). Dum (*while*) locum mūrīs firmant, Rōmulus et Remus contrōversiam (*dispute*) habent, et pūgnant. In pūgnā Rōmulus Remum necat. Tum (*then*) Rōmulus rēgnat (*is king*), et amicī et sociī filiōrum Rhēae Rōmulō pārent. Itaque (*and so*) locum Rōmam ex (*from, with abl. case*) Rōmulō vocāmus, et incolās vocāmus Rōmānōs.

* In Latin, as in English, the present may be used to represent vividly past events or situations. This is known as the Historical Present.

LESSON IX.

SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN **-um**. GENDER.

60. In the Second Declension are found not only nouns like **servus**, ending in the nominative singular in **-us**, but others also which end in **-um** and which differ from **servus** in certain other case-endings.

Paradigm.

SECOND DECLENSION (continued).

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	templum (<i>temple</i>)	-um	templa	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	templī	-ī	templōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	templō	-ō	templīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	templum	-um	templa	-a
<i>Voc.</i>	templum	-um	templa	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	templō	-ō	templīs	-īs

N.B.—**Castra**, *camp*, a plural noun with singular meaning, is declined like the plural of **templum**; viz., *Nom. castra*, *Gen. castrōrum*, *Dat. castrīs*, *Acc. castra*, *Voc. castra*, *Abl. castrīs*.

61. Gender in Latin has certain peculiarities not found in English. As in English, all names of males are masculine, and all names of females are feminine. But the gender of what is neither male nor female is not always neuter, as we regard it in English grammar, but, as a rule, is determined by the ending of the noun. This is sometimes called *Grammatical Gender* as distinguished from *Natural Gender*.

In the First Declension the nouns ending in **-a** are feminine, with the exception of words like **incola**, **nauta** and **Belga** which, as they usually refer to males, are masculine.

In the Second Declension the nouns ending in **-us** are masculine, and those ending in **-um** are neuter.

In Latin vocabularies and dictionaries the gender is regularly indicated by the letters *m.*, *f.* and *n.*

62.

VOCABULARY.

bellum, ī, n.	war.	oppidum, ī, n.,	town.
castra, ōrum, n.,	camp.	oppugnō, āre,	attack,
expugnō, āre,	storm,		assault.
	take by storm.	praesidium, ī, n.,	garrison.
frumentum, ī, n.,	grain,	proelium, ī, n.,	battle.
	corn.	-que,	and.
imperium, ī, n.,	command,	renovō, āre,	renew.
	control, rule.		

N.B. — **-que** never stands alone, but is always appended to the second of the two words grouped together; as Rōmānus Gallusque (= Rōmānus et Gallus) *a Roman and a Gaul*.*

63.

EXERCISES.

I.

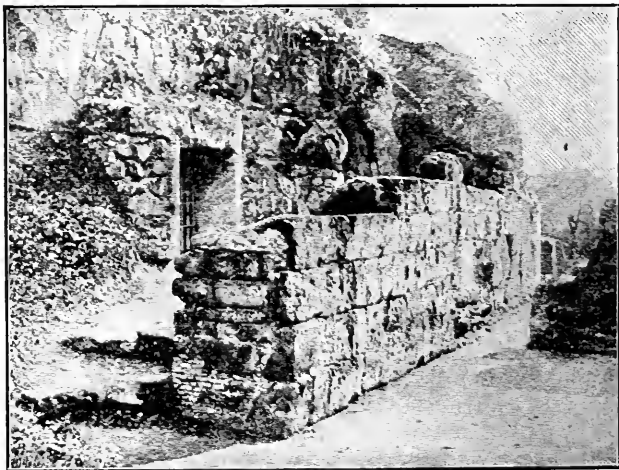
1. Frumentum comportābant; cōpiam frumentī comportant. 2. Portam castrōrum vidēmus; portās oppidī vidētis. 3. Praesidium in oppidō collocat. 4. Castra fossā firmābat. 5. Oppida vicōsque habēmus. 6. Cōpiās ā proeliō continet. 7. Praesidiō imperō. 8. Cōpiae pūgnant; mūrū oppidī oppūgnant; cōpiae oppidum castraque expūgnant. 9. Imperium prōvinciae filiō dat. 10. In castrīs Rōmānōrum hiemātis. 11. Imperium in bellīs habent.

* When a word has **-que** appended, the accent is shifted to the syllable preceding **-que**; e.g. Gallus but Gallusque.

6 P. 39.

II.

add # 6. They renew the war with the Romans. 2. We hold the towns with garrisons. 3. He recalls the Romans from battle. 4. They were killing the garrisons of the towns. 5. We station the troops in the camp. 6. You are obedient to the rule of the Romans. 7. He summons (his) allies, the Britons, to the town. 8. The Gauls move (their) camp. 9. We used to fight with the Britons; we were attacking the place; we take the village by storm. 10. An abundance of water and grain is in the town. 11. He recalls the troops from the camp to the towns.



The Wall of Romulus.

MITCHEL High School

LESSON X.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

64.

Illustrative Examples.

Māgnus vīcus,	<i>a large village.</i>
Māgnus est vīcus,	<i>the village is large.</i>
Māgna īnsula,	<i>a large island.</i>
Māgnum oppidum,	<i>a large town.</i>
In māgnō vīcō,	<i>in a large village.</i>
Māgnae īnsulae,	<i>large islands.</i>
Ad māgna oppida,	<i>to the large towns.</i>

- a. Notice how the Latin adjective, unlike the English, changes its forms when used with nouns differing in gender or in number or in case.

Rule.—The adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number and case.

65.

Paradigm.

ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus (<i>good</i>)	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Notice that the masculine of **bonus** is declined like **servus**, the feminine like **mēnsa** and the neuter like **templum**.

66. The position of the adjective is freer in Latin than in English. Very frequently the adjective follows its noun; so regularly, **populus Rōmānus**, *the Roman people*, while *a good slave* is either **bonus servus** or **servus bonus**. When emphatic or when denoting size, the adjective commonly precedes; as **māgnae cōpiae**, *large forces*.

67.

VOCABULARY.

altus, a, um,	<i>high, deep.</i>	numerus, ī, m.,	<i>number.</i>
lātus, a, um,	<i>broad, wide.</i>	parvus, a, um,	<i>small.</i>
longus, a, um,	<i>long.</i>	paucī, ae, a,	<i>few (used</i>
māgnus, a, um,	<i>great, large.</i>		<i>in the plural only).</i>
multus, a, um,	<i>much;</i>	periculum, ī, n.,	<i>danger.</i>
	<i>(in plural) many.</i>	populus, ī, m.,	<i>people, nation.</i>
		Rōmānus, a, um	<i>(as adjective), Roman.</i>

EXERCISES.

68.

I.

1. The island (sword, garrison) is large. 2. The islands (swords, garrisons) are small. 3. The swords (wars, spears) are long. 4. The trench (river, gate) is wide. 5. The danger (number, abundance) is great. 6. The river (trench) is deep; the walls are high. 7. Many (few) provinces (towns, villages.)

II.

1. Parvās īnsulās et māgnū oppidū habent. 2. Multa oppida oppūgnat; paucōs vicōs expūgnat. 3. Locū fossā lātā et mūrō altō fīrmant. 4. Periculū

populī Rōmānī vidēmus. 5. Māgnis cum cōpiis* bellum renovant. 6. Multae prōvinciae populō Rōmānō pārēbant. 7. Longās hastās et parvōs gladiōs habēbātis. 8. Multa oppida mūrōs et portās habent. 9. Māgnum numerum longārū hastārū parat. 10. Fluvii altī lātique Rōmānōs continent.

III.

1. We have many provinces and few allies. 2. They were strengthening the camp with broad and deep trenches. 3. They establish friendship with the Roman people. 4. It encourages the hearts of many Gauls. 5. To many friends he gives a large number of slaves. 6. The camp has a wide gate. 7. He recalls the troops from the small camp to the large camp. 8. The Roman people is in great danger. 9. In (*literally*, by means of) a long war he conquers many nations. 10. He stations a large garrison in the small island.

*This order (adjective, preposition, noun) is very frequent. Translate as if the order were **cum māgnis cōpiis**.



Remains of Roman Camp.

LESSON XI.

SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN **-er** AND **-ir**. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS IN **-er**.

69. Besides the nouns ending in **-us** or in **-um**, the second declension has others which in the nominative singular end in **-er** or **-ir**. These nouns are all masculine, and are declined as follows :—

70.

Paradigms.

SECOND DECLENSION (continued).

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	puer (<i>boy</i>)	ager (<i>field</i>)	vir (<i>man</i>)
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	ager	vir
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

- a. Notice that these nouns have the same case-endings as the nouns in **-us** (52), except that in the nominative and vocative singular, case-endings are omitted.
- b. Most nouns in **-er** are declined like ager (having **e** before **r** only in the nominative and vocative singular), rather than like **puer** (with **e** retained throughout).

71. There are also adjectives of the first and second declensions which end in **-er** in the nom. sing. masc.; of these some are declined like **puer** and retain **e** before **r** in all genders throughout; others are declined like **ager** and have **e** before **r** in the nominative and vocative singular masculine only.

72.

Paradigms.

ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS IN **-er**.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber (<i>free</i>)	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Voc.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Voc.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	aeger (<i>sick</i>)	aegra	aegrum
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
<i>Voc.</i>	aeger	aegra	aegrum
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō

PLURAL.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
<i>Voc.</i>	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

73. A Latin vocabulary or dictionary shows whether a noun ending in **-er** is declined like **puer** or **ager**, by indicating the form of the genitive singular; and also shows whether an adjective ending in **-er** is declined like **liber** or like **aeger**, by indicating the form of the feminine and neuter nominative; as, **faber, -brī, a workman**; **vesper, -erī, evening**; **asper, era, erum, rough**; **pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful**.*

74. When an adjective agrees with its noun, it does not necessarily follow that the adjective ends with the same letters as the noun, as may be seen in such combinations as **puer bonus, a good boy**; **ager parvus, a small field**; **multī nautae, many sailors**; **paucōrum Belgārum, of a few Belgians**. In what, then, does the agreement consist? See 64.

75.

VOCABULARY.

ager, agrī, m., land, field,	liberī, ōrum, m. (in plural territory.
crēber, bra, brum, numerous,	puella, ae, f., girl.
frequent.	puer, erī, m., boy.
integer, gra, grum, fresh	reliquus, a, um, remaining.
liber, era, erum, free.	vir, virī, m., man.

* Neither the nouns nor the adjectives of the second declension ending in **-er** are nearly so numerous as those ending in **-us**.

† Usually **reliquus** may be best translated by "the rest of"; for example, **reliquī Belgae, the remaining Belgians**, or better, **the rest of the Belgians**.

EXERCISES.

76.

I.

1. Periculum viri vidētis. 2. Pueri puellam terrent.
 3. Oppida expūgnant agrōs(que) vāstant. 4. Integrīs
 2 cum cōpiīs mūrū oppūgnābat. 5. Liberī virīs nōn
 3 pārēbant. 6. Paucī Belgae multōs nautās superant.
 7. Reliquīs Germānīs agrōs dant. 8. Crēbra praesidia
 agrum Rōmānum tenent. 9. Imperium reliquae prō-
 5 vinciae tenēbam. 10. Ad parvum agrum reliquam
 praedam comportant. 11. Puerōs puellāsque liberōs
 vocāmus. 12. Liberum populum superābāmus.

II.

1. The Germans were laying waste the lands of the Belgians. 2. He announces numerous victories. 3. The slaves are obedient to the man, not to the boy. 4. With (the rest of) the troops we winter in the camp. 5. He gives fresh horses to the men. 6. He was calling together (the rest of) the Belgians. 7. You were announcing the flight of many sailors. 8. They call the man a slave, not free. 9. He recalls (his) troops from the Roman territory. 10. They reply to the frequent messengers. 11. He stations fresh forces in the town. 12. The boy he calls (his) son, the girls (his) daughters.

LESSON XII.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: PRESENT
INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

77. Latin has in all four conjugations of the verb. In the first and second conjugations the present stem ends in -ā and -ē respectively (21. b); in the third

conjugation in **-e** (preceded by a consonant or **u**)*; in the fourth conjugation in **-ī**. In vocabularies, verbs of the third conjugation are indicated by **ere** (not **ēre** as in the second conjugation); verbs of the fourth conjugation by **īre**.

78.

Paradigms.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

<i>Third Conjugation.</i>		<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>	
		SINGULAR.	
1. regō (<i>I rule</i>)	-ō	audiō (<i>I hear</i>)	i-ō
2. regis	i-s	audīs	ī-s
3. regit	i-t	audit	i-t
		PLURAL.	
1. regimus	i-mus	audīmus	ī-mus
2. regitis	i-tis	audītis	ī-tis
3. regunt	u-nt	audiunt	īu-nt

a. Notice (1) that in the third conjugation, as given above, the stem vowel **-e** is lost before **-ō**, becomes **-u** before **-nt** and elsewhere becomes **-i**; and (2) that in the fourth conjugation, **-ī** becomes **-īu** before **-nt**.

b. In all four conjugations long stem vowels (**-ā**, **-ē**, **-ī**) are shortened before **-t** and **-nt**, and are either shortened or omitted before **ō**. See also 24.

(79)

VOCABULARY.

audiō, īre,	hear.	mittō, ere,	send.
cōgō, ere,	bring together, collect.	mūniō, īre,	fortify, protect.
conveniō, īre,	come together, assemble.	redūcō, ere,	lead back.
dūcō, ere,	lead.	relinquō, ere,	leave behind, leave.
gerō, ere,	conduct.	veniō, īre,	come.

Phrase: bellum gerō, wage war.

* There are also a few verbs of the third conjugation in **-īō**. See 287.

EXERCISES.

80.

I.

1. Cōpiās cōgit ; cōpiās dūcis ; cōpiās mittunt ; cōpiās redūcimus ; cōpiās relinquitis. 2. Cōpie conveniunt ; bellum gerunt ; castra mūniunt ; agrōs vāstant ; incolās terrent. 3. Nūntius venit ; nūntium audīmus. 4. Castra lātā fossā mūnit. 5. Bellum longum in Galliā gerimus. 6. Cōpiās ā proeliō redūcō. 7. Lēgātī ā reliquīs Britanīs veniunt. 8. Māgnum numerum amīcōrum cōgis. 9. Crēbrōs nūntiōs ad castra mittunt. 10. Lēgātōs Germanōrum audītis. 11. Paucae liberī ad locum conveniunt. 12. Praedam in silvā relinquit.

II.

1. They fortify ; they send ; they leave ; they give ; they see. 2. You hear ; you lead ; you call ; you hold. 3. We come ; you assemble ; he collects ; we lead ; I lead back. 4. They come with the plunder to the camp. 5. We are fortifying the place with a wall. 6. He sends the lieutenant to the province with a large number of Gauls. 7. I collect the rest of the men. 8. She is leading a small horse to the bank. 9. The boys and girls come from the fields to the gate of the camp. 10. You are leaving a large garrison in the camp. 11. They wage wars with the Roman people. 12. He leads the rest of the allies back to (their) lands.



Signum : Standard. M. A. Pine.

81.

WORD LIST A.

PERSONS.

boy	man	ally	lieutenant
girl	children	ambassador	inhabitant
son	slave	messenger	people
daughter	friend	sailor	(= nation)

LANDSCAPE.

place	wall	water	forest
village	gate	ocean	river
town	field	island	bank

WAR.

NOUNS.

VERBS.

troops	war	fight	wage (war)
camp	battle	kill	renew (war)
trench	fighting	wound	summon (troops)
garrison	danger	conquer	procure (troops)
spear	flight	lay waste	station (troops)
sword	victory	fortify	restrain (troops)
command	plunder	attack	collect (troops)
		take by storm	pass the winter

MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

horse	grain	province	abundance
-------	-------	----------	-----------

MISCELLANEOUS VERBS.

have	lead	call	collect
give	move	carry	assemble
hold	see	fill	give orders
come	hear	prepare	be obedient
send	reply	frighten	strengthen
leave	announce	recall	establish
remove	carry back	face	dwell

READING LESSON II.

THE ROMANS AND THEIR NEIGHBOURS.

I 82. Primō (*at first*) Rōma parvus est vicus, et paucōs incolās habet. Multī populī in Ītaliā habitant, et bella proeliaque sunt crēbra. Oppida mūrōs portāsque habent; incolae parvīs gladiīs et longīs hastīs pūgnant. Rōmānī parvōs agrōs habent et multōs finitimōs (*neighbours*). Saepē (*often*) finitimī agrum Rōmānum vāstant et Rōmānōs servōsque in agrīs necant. Nūntius ad reliquōs Rōmānōs venit; periculum populō nūntiat; Rōmānī cōpiās cōgunt; paucōs virōs in mūrīs relinquunt et cum reliquīs cōpiīs finitimōs oppūgnant.

Rōmānī fortiter (*bravely*) pūgnant et victōriae sunt crēbrae. Etiam (*also*) saepe oppida finitimōrum expūgnant, et multōs liberōs populōs superant. Postrēmō (*at last*) populus Rōmānus imperium Ītaliae habet; ad pauca oppida praesidia mittit; agrōs Rōmānis dat et oppida māgnīs praesidiīs tenet. Haec (*these, neut. acc.*) oppida Rōmānī colōniās (*colonies*) vocant. Cum reliquīs finitimīs amīcitiam cōfirmant et incolās sociōs vocant.

LESSON XIII.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT STEMS.

83. Nouns of the third declension have their genitive singular ending in *-is*, and the great majority have their stem ending in a consonant. This consonant stem may be obtained by omitting the genitive ending *-is*. The regular endings of masculine and feminine nouns are shown in the following paradigm.

Paradigm.

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT STEMS.

Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	hiems (<i>winter</i>) -s		hiemēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hiemis -is		hiemum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	hiemī -ī		hiemibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hiemem -em		hiemēs	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	hiems -s		hiemēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	hieme -e		hiemibus	-ibus

84. Very few nouns of this declension, however, are declined exactly like **hiems**. The combination of a stem ending in a consonant with the **-s** of the nominative singular leads to various changes, among which the following are the most important and frequent :—

- I. Stems ending in **g** or **c** have their nominative singular in **x** (= **gs** or **cs**); as, **rēx**, **rēgis** (stem **rēg-**); **dux**, **ducis** (stem **duc-**).
 - II. Stems ending in **t** or **d** omit these letters before **-s** of the nominative singular; as, **virtūs**, **virtūtis** (stem **virtūt-**); **pēs**, **pedis** (stem **ped-**).
 - III. Stems ending in **l** or **r** omit **s** in the nominative singular; as, **cōsul**, **cōsulis** (stem **cōsul-**); **agger**, **aggeris** (stem **agger-**).
- N.B.—**Pater** (*father*), **māter** (*mother*), and **frāter** (*brother*), whose stems end in **tr**, insert **e** before **r** in the nominative and vocative singular; as, **pater**, **patris** (stem **patr-**).
- IV. Stems ending in **n** omit both **n** and **s** in the nominative singular and change the vowel preceding **n** to **ō**; as, **legiō**, **legiōnis** (stem **legiōn-**); **homō**, **hominis** (stem **homin-**).

v. Further, with very few exceptions, the words of more than one syllable whose stem ends in **p**, **g**, **c**, **t**, or **d**, and which have short **e** in the final syllable of the nominative and vocative singular, have in the other cases short **i**; as, **prīnceps**, **prīncipis** (stem **prīncip-**); **mīles**, **mīlitis** (stem **mīlit-**); **obses**, **obsidis** (stem **obsid-**).

85. It follows, therefore, that in order to decline a masculine or feminine noun of the third declension, it will be necessary to know both the nominative and the genitive singular, both of which are clearly indicated in Latin vocabularies and dictionaries.

86.

Paradigms

THIRD DECLENSION: MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

Mute Stems.*

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	virtūs	prīnceps	mīles
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	virtūtis	prīncipis	mīlitis
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	virtūtī	prīncipī	mīlitī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	virtūtem	prīncipem	mīlitem
<i>Voc.</i>	rēx	virtūs	prīnceps	mīles
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	virtūte	prīncipe	mīlite

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	rēgēs	virtūtēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgum	virtūtum	prīncipum	mīlitum
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgibus	virtūtibus	prīncipibus	mīlitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgēs	virtūtēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs
<i>Voc.</i>	rēgēs	virtūtēs	prīncipēs	mīlitēs
<i>Abl.</i>	rēgibus	virtūtibus	prīncipibus	mīlitibus

* Consonants are classed as *mutes*, including **b**, **d**, **g**, **p**, **t**, **c**; *liquids* (**r**, **l**); *nasals* (**m**, **n**); and *spirants* (**s**, **f**).

Liquid and Nasal Stems.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsul	pater	legiō	homō
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulis	patris	legiōnis	hominis
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulī	patri	legiōnī	hominī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulem	patrem	legiōnem	hominem
<i>Voc.</i>	cōsul	pater	legiō	homō
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsule	patre	legiōne	homine

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	patrēs	legiōnēs	hominēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulum	patrum	legiōnum	hominum
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	patribus	legiōnibus	hominibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	patrēs	legiōnēs	hominēs
<i>Voc.</i>	cōsulēs	patrēs	legiōnēs	hominēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	patribus	legiōnibus	hominibus

87.

VOCABULARY.

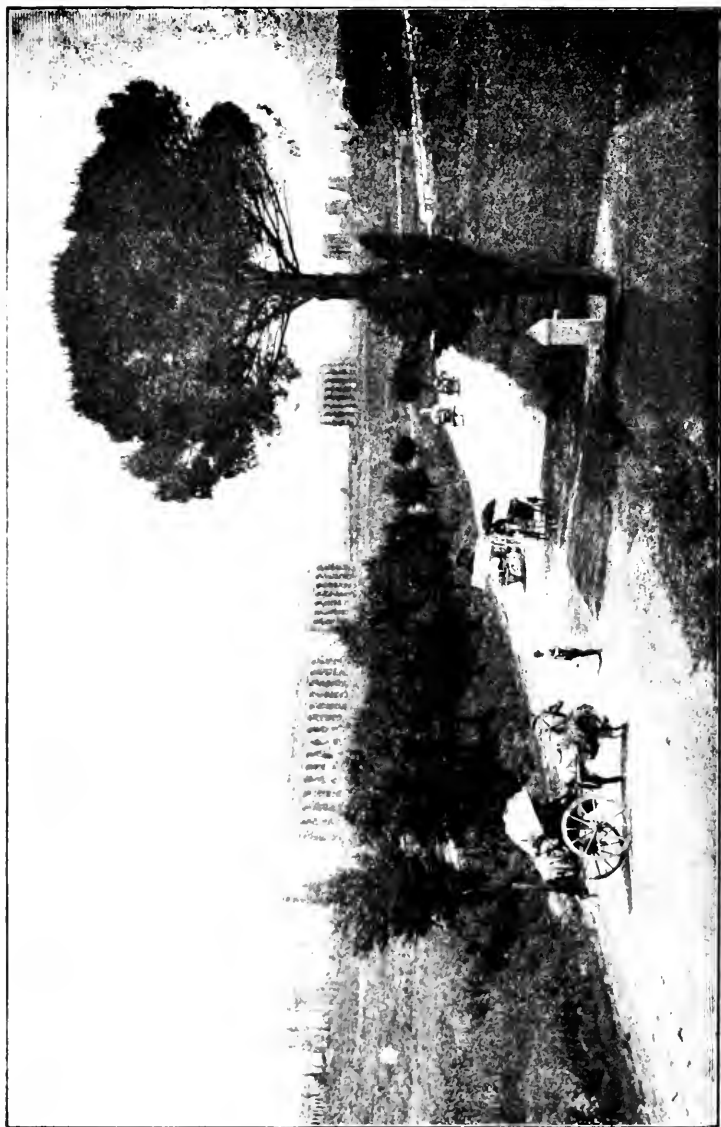
Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Caesar*. obses, obsidis, m., *hostage*.
 contendō, ere, *hasten*. princeps, principis, m., *leader*.
 eques, equitis, m., *horse*. ing man, chief man, chief.
soldier; plural, *cavalry*. rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.
 legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion*. signum, ī, n., *signal*.
 miles, militis, m., *soldier*. *standard*.
 mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, f., *fortification*.

EXERCISES.

88.

I.

1. Militēs equitēsque mittit; legiōnem militum cum equitibus mittit. 2. Militēs ā rēge veniunt; ad Caesarem conveniunt. 3. Praedam legiōnī dat; reliquam praedam equitibus dabat. 4. Amicitiam cum principibus cōfirmant; bellum cum Caesare gerunt. 5. Periculū legiōnis videō; legiō signum videt. 6. Militēs cum



THE APPIAN WAY AND RUINS OF THE CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT.



equitibus castra mūniunt; castra mūnitiōnibus firmāmus. 7. Rēx obsidēs Caesārī dat; prīncipēs māgnū numerum obsidum ad Caesarem mittunt. 8. Caesar multās legiōnēs cōgit; paucōs equitēs in prōvinciā cōgunt. 9. Signum proeliī (literally *of, freely for*) dat; cōpiā ad mūnitiōnēs contendunt.

II. ✓

1. The king is waging war with the chief men; the chiefs are waging war with the king. 2. He is recalling the legion from the fortifications; he is leading back the soldiers of the legion. 3. We are sending hostages to Caesar; we give the control of the legions to Caesar. 4. He hastens with a legion to the camp; he fills the camp with soldiers. 5. A few soldiers were fighting with a large number of cavalry; we conquer the soldiers. 6. He gives orders to the chief men; the chief men are not obedient to the king. 7. We see the king's standard; we hasten to the standard. 8. The cavalry have a large number of horses; he gives the horses of the cavalry to the hostages. 9. He is wintering in the camp with the cavalry; the rest of the soldiers he leaves in (their) fortifications.



Caius Julius Caesar. (100-44 B.C.)

K. F. IV

1. 6. - 1. 7.

LESSON XIV.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: IMPERFECT
INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

89. Paradigms.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*Third Conjugation.**Fourth Conjugation.*

SINGULAR.

1. regēbam	-ē-ba-m	audiēbam	-iē-ba-m
2. regēbās	-ē-bā-s	audiēbās	-iē-bā-s
3. regēbat	-ē-ba-t	audiēbat	-iē-ba-t

PLURAL.

1. regēbāmus	-ē-bā-mus	audiēbāmus	-iē-bā-mus
2. regēbātis	-ē-bā-tis	audiēbātis	-iē-bā-tis
3. regēbant	-ē-ba-nt	audiēbant	-iē-ba-nt

- a. Compare these forms with the imperfect indicative active of the first and second conjugations (44), and observe that in the third conjugation the final -e of the stem is lengthened to -ē, and that in the fourth conjugation the final -ī of the stem is replaced by -iē. Thus in all four conjugations the tense-sign -ba- is preceded by a long vowel.

90. Illustrative Examples.

Agrōs nōn habent, *they have not lands, or they do not have lands.*

Nōn regēbat, *he was not ruling, or he did not rule.*

- a. The present and imperfect indicative may be translated also by means of *do* and *did* respectively, chiefly with a negative or in a question, but sometimes also for the sake of emphasis.

91.

CASTRUM

VOCABULARY.

arma, ōrum, n.,(in plural only) *arms*.auxilium, ī, n.,*aid, help*; in plural, *auxiliaries, reinforcements*.

dēfendō, ere,

defend.

discēdō, ere,

depart, withdraw.hiberna, ōrum, n.,(in plural only) *winter camp, winter quarters*. *hibernate*impedimentum, ī, n., *hindrance*; in plural, *baggage*.

impediō, īre,

hinder, impede.

petō, ere,

ask, seek.

pōnō, ere,

place.

trādō, ere,

give up, surrender.*Phrase: castra pōnō, pitch a camp.*N.B.—Review the declension of **castra** (60).

EXERCISES.

92.

I.

1. Portam castrōrum dēfendēbāmus; castra mūniēbāmus. 2. Castra pōnēbant, locumque mūnitiōnibus firmābant. 3. Ab hibernis discēdit; ad Caesarem venit. 4. Auxilium ā Caesare nōn petēbam. 5. Obsidēs populō Rōmānō trādunt. 6. Silva equitēs nōn impediēbat. 7. Amicōs ad arma vocābās. 8. Legiōnēs cum impedimentis veniēbant. 9. Viri liberōs Caesarī trādēbant. 10. Auxilia māgnō in periculō sunt. 11. Rēgem ab injūriā dēfendēbātis. 12. Legiōnēs in silvā pōnit. 13. Ab agris discēdēbant et ad hiberna contendēbant. 14. Impedimenta armis dēfendunt. 15. Impediēbam; pōnitis; petēbās; nōn audiunt.

II.

1. They surrender (their) arms and baggage. 2. We were seeking the friendship of the king and the leading men. 3. A deep trench hinders the flight of the auxiliaries. 4. They were withdrawing from the war. 5. You were not waging war; we do not wage war. 6. We were pitching (our) camp. 7. They were fortifying (their) winter camp. 8. The legions with the auxiliaries defend the fortifications. 9. It did not hinder the war. 10. They used to leave (their) baggage in the woods. 11. We place a garrison in the island. 12. She announces the victory of the legion to the cavalry. 13. They were withdrawing from Britain to their winter quarters. 14. Few* defend the king; many seek flight; the rest give up (their) arms.

LESSON XV.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT STEMS (continued).

93. In the third declension, as in the second, neuter nouns have the nominative, accusative and vocative cases alike in each number, and in the plural these cases end in *-a*. In the nominative singular, neuter nouns of the third declension have no case-ending, but consist merely of the stem, generally with some change in the vowel of the final syllable; as, *caput*, *capitis* (stem *capit-*); *flūmen*, *flūminis* (stem *flūmin-*); *jūs*, *jūris* (stem *jūr-*); *tempus*, *temporis* (stem *tempor-*); *opus*, *operis* (stem *oper-*).† Especially irregular is *iter*, *itineris* (stem *itiner-*).

* The adjective is often used with the force of a noun; *few*=*few men*.

† The stems of *jūs*, *tempus* and *opus* really ended in *-s*, but it was the rule in Latin for *s* between vowels to become *r*.

94.

Paradigms.

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT STEMS.

Neuter Nouns.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmen	corpus	iter	
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminis	corporis	itineris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminī	corporī	itinerī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmen	corpus	iter	—
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmen	corpus	iter	—
<i>Abl.</i>	nōmine	corpore	itinere	-e

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	nōmina	corpora	itinera	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	nōminum	corporum	itinerum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	nōminibus	corporibus	itineribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	nōmina	corpora	itinera	-a
<i>Voc.</i>	nōmina	corpora	itinera	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	nōminibus	corporibus	itineribus	-ibus

95.

VOCABULARY.

ag-men, -minis, n., *line of* , pal-ūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh*.
march, column. pec-us, -oris, n., *cattle*,
 flū-men, -minis, n., *river.* () *herd.*
 iter, itineris, n., *road, march.* sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., *safety.*
 lat-us, -eris, n., *side, flank.* virt-ūs, -ūtis, f., *valour.*
 op-us, -eris, n., *work.* vuln-us, -eris, n., *wound.*

Phrases: magnīs itineribus, *by forced marches.*
 in itinere, *on the march.*
 ā latere, *on the flank.**

* Latin tends to look upon many actions as proceeding or as viewed from a certain quarter, where in English they would be considered as happening in that quarter; as, *ex equō pugnābat*, *he was fighting on horseback.*

N.B.—Nouns of the third declension are regularly neuter when they end in **-men**, or in **-us** with genitive in **-ris**. Those ending in **-ūs** with the genitive in **-dis** or **-tis** are regularly feminine. Feminine also are nouns ending in **-tās**, **-tūdō**, **-iō**, **-x**, or in **-s** preceded by a consonant. Nouns ending in **-or**, **-er**, or in **-es** are regularly masculine. (But nouns referring to males are of course masculine, as **rēx**, *a king*, and nouns referring to females are feminine, as **mulier**, *a woman*. See 61.)

EXERCISES.

96.

I.

1. Ab opere discēdunt. 2. Salūtem nōn petēbant. 3. Palūdēs iter agminis impediēbant. 4. Māgnā cum virtūte in flūmine pūgnat. 5. In palūdibus silvisque pecora relinquunt. 6. Multa vulnera habent; multī vulnera habent. 7. Agmen ā latere oppūgnant. 8. Britanni māgnum pecoris numerum habēbant. 9. Māgnis itineribus ad rīpam flūminis contendimus. 10. Flūmen palūdēsque reliqua latera castrōrum mūniunt.

II.

1. They see the long columns. 2. The rivers did not hinder the march of the soldiers. 3. On the march they come to a river and a large marsh. 4. The herds and the rest of the plunder he gives to the soldiers. 5. In valour is safety. 6. They see the great works of the Romans. 7. He has a wound in (his) side. 8. The remaining side of the island looks towards Gaul. 9. They were leading the cattle to the marshes. 10. The columns did not have an abundance of grain, horses, and cattle.

LESSON XVI.

PREPOSITIONS.

97. Besides the four prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **cum** and **in**, Latin has many others, some governing the accusative case, some the ablative, and a few both accusative and ablative. No prepositions govern the genitive or the dative case.

98.

Illustrative Examples.

Ā flūmine contendunt,	<i>they hasten from the river.</i>
Ad rīpam veniunt,	<i>they come to the bank.</i>
Ante pūgnam discēdit,	<i>he withdraws before the battle.</i>
Contrā Gallōs pūgnat,	<i>he fights against the Gauls.</i>
Cum legione contendit,	<i>he hastens with a legion.</i>
Dē proeliō audit,	<i>he hears about the battle.</i>
Ex agrīs conveniunt,	<i>they assemble out of (or from) the fields.</i>
In prōvinciā hiemat,	<i>he winters in the province.</i>
In prōvinciam venit,	<i>he comes into (or to) the province.</i>
Inter silvās est flūmen,	<i>the river is between the forests.</i>
Per silvam venit,	<i>he comes through the forest.</i>
Post pūgnam discēdit,	<i>he withdraws after the battle.</i>
Propter palūdēs discēdit,	<i>he withdraws on account of the marshes.</i>
Sine periculō venit,	<i>he comes without danger.</i>
Trāns Rhēnum contendunt,	<i>they hasten across the Rhine.</i>

- a. The meaning of each of these prepositions should be learned, and also the case which follows it. Notice especially the difference between **in** with the accusative, and **in** with the ablative; **ab** and **ex** with the ablative; and **ad** and **in** with the accusative.

99.

VOCABULARY.

cōgnōscō, ere, <i>learn, find</i>	inopia, ae, f., <i>want, scarcity.</i>
<i>out, ascertain.</i>	māgnitū-dō,-dinis, f., <i>great-</i>
cōnsilium, ī, n., <i>plan, design.</i>	<i>ness, extent.</i>
explōrā-tor,-tōris, m., <i>scout.</i>	pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace.</i>

Phrase: dē pāce [REDACTED] to treat for peace,
to seek peace.

EXERCISES.

100.

I.

1 Sine impedimentis per provinciam in Italiam contendebamus. 2. Post proelium legati ad Caesarem de pace et amicitia veniunt. 3. Auxilia ex hibernis et a Caesare conveniunt. 4. Propter magnitudinem munitio-
num castra non oppugnant. 5. Copias trans Rhenum contra Germanos ducis. 6. Ante proelium equites inter legiones et auxilia collocat. 7. Propter periculum in insula cum copiis non hiemabat. 8. In itinere per exploratores de salute legionis cognoscit. 9. Frumentum ex agris in castra comportabatis. 10. Sine equitibus a Caesare ad legatum veniunt. 11. Ex obsidibus iter cognoscimus. 12. Crebros exploratores trans flumina mittebat.

II.

1. We used to have lands across the river Rhine in Gaul. 2. On account of the scarcity of corn he leads the troops back from Britain into Gaul. 3. They come without danger through the woods and marshes to Caesar. 4. He stations the auxiliaries on the bank of the river. 5. Envoys come from the Britons to treat for peace. 6. They were fighting between the rivers against the cavalry. 7. Before the war they ask aid

from the Roman people. 8. After the victory we were ascertaining from scouts the plans of the leading men. 9. On account of the greatness of the danger they strengthen the place with extensive (māgnus) fortifications. 10. Out of a large number few surrender (their) arms to Caesar. 11. Without a wound we defend the camp against the legions. 12. On account of the wounds of the soldiers he leads the column back across the marsh into the land of (his) allies, the Belgians.

LESSON XVII.

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

101.

Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnāvī,	<i>I have fought,</i>	or	<i>I fought.</i>
Pūgnāvistī,	<i>you (s.) have fought,</i>	or	<i>you fought.</i>
Pūgnāvit,	<i>he has fought,</i>	or	<i>he fought.</i>
Pūgnāvimus,	<i>we have fought,</i>	or	<i>we fought.</i>
Pūgnāvistis,	<i>you (pl.) have fought,</i>	or	<i>you fought.</i>
Pūgnāverunt,	<i>they have fought,</i>	or	<i>they fought.</i>

- a. The personal endings of this tense, known as the Perfect Indicative Active, are **-ī, -istī, -it, -imus, -istis, -ērunt**. Observe the twofold translation, both by the present perfect tense (with *have*) and by the simple past tense of English.

102. In the same way as **pūgnāvī** is formed from **pūgnō**, may be formed the perfect indicative active of **collocō, firmō, nūntiō, parō, superō, vāstō, vocō, vulnerō**, and their compounds. Similarly the perfect of **compleō** is **complēvī**; of **petō, petivī**, and of **mūniō, munivī**.

The personal endings of all perfects in **-vī** are identical, no matter to which conjugation the verb belongs.

103.

VOCABULARY.

appellō, āre, āvī, <i>name, call.</i>	multitū-dō, -dinis, f.,
dēspērō, āre, āvī, <i>despair ;</i>	<i>large number, amount.</i>
(with <i>dē</i> and abl., = <i>of</i>).	obtineō, ēre, <i>hold, possess.</i>
exspectō, āre, āvī, <i>await.</i>	occupō, āre, āvī, <i>seize.</i>
homō, hominis, m., <i>man.</i>	postulō, āre, āvī, <i>demand.</i>

EXERCISES.

104.

I.

1. Frūmentum in oppidum comportāvērunt. 2. Castra oppugnāvit. 3. Principēs convocāvistī. 4. Locum hominibus complēvimus. 5. Imperium occupāvī. 6. Contrā populum Rōmānum pugnāvistis. 7. Praedam postulant. 8. Armīs Galliam obtinēmus. 9. Locum mūniēbās. 10. Auxilium petimus. 11. Auxilia petīvimus. 12. Dē salūte dēspērāvit. 13. Multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs convocāvērunt. 14. Cōpiās exspectāvimus. 15. Insulam Britanniam appellant. 16. Agrōs vāstāvistis. 17. Locum mūnitiōnibus firmāvērunt.

II.

1. They have not despaired of victory. 2. We have seized the town. 3. You conquered the Belgians. 4. He recalled the soldier. 5. He has taken the town by storm. 6. They wounded a man. 7. He was ascertaining the number of men. 8. They seek safety. 9. They have sought safety by flight. 10. We have called the king friend. 11. We fortified the camp. 12. They demanded aid. 13. They hold control of the province. 14. You announced the battle. 15. We have laid waste the rest of the island. 16. He summoned the soldiers. 17. They filled the trench with water.

LESSON XVIII.

PERFECT INDICATIVE (continued).

105. There are in all, four ways of forming the perfect tense in Latin.

(1) The perfect in *-vī* (101).

(2) The perfect in *-uī*, as :—

vetō, āre, vetuī (*forbid*). habeo, ēre, habuī (*have*).

colō, ere, coluī (*till*). aperio, īre, aperuī (*open*).

(3) The perfect in *-sī* (often with euphonic changes through combination with a consonant immediately preceding), as :—

mancō, ēre, mānsī (*remain*). jubeō, ēre, jussī (*order*).

scribō, ere, scripsī (*write*). dūcō, ere, dūxī (*lead*).

mittō, ere, misi (*send*). regō, ere, rēxī (*rule*).

gerō, ere, gessi (*conduct*). sentiō, īre, sēnsī (*feel*).

(4) The perfect in *-ī*, as :—

dēfendō, ere, dēfendī cōstituō, ere, cōstituī
(*defend*). (*determine*).

Sometimes accompanied by reduplication, as :—

dō, dare, dedi (*give*). cadō, ere, cecidi (*fall*).

Sometimes accompanied by vowel lengthening, as :—

juvō, āre, jūvī (*aid*). moveō, ēre, mōvī (*move*).

videō, ēre, vīdī (*see*). legō, ere, lēgī (*read*).

agō, ere, ēgī (*do*). veniō, īre, vēmī (*come*).

106. Notice especially that—

a. No one of the four methods of forming the perfect is restricted to one conjugation; nor does any conjugation use only one method. It will be found, however, that in the first and fourth conjugations, the perfect in *-vī* is most frequent; in the second conjugation, the perfect in *-uī*; in the third conjugation, the perfect in *-sī* or in *-ī*.

- b. Though the methods of formation are so various, yet all perfects have the same personal endings, viz.,

-ī	-imus
-istī	-istis
-it	-ērunt

107.

Paradigms.

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.

	SINGULAR.			
1.	amāvī	monuī	rēxī	audīvī
2.	amāvistī	monuistī	rēxistī	audivistī
3.	amāvit	monuit	rēxit	audivit
	PLURAL.			
1.	amāvimus	monuimus	rēximus	audivimus
2.	amāvistis	monuistis	rēxistis	audivistis
3.	amāvērunt	monuērunt	rēxērunt	audivērunt



Agmen : Soldiers on the March.

<i>amō</i> - <i>love</i> .	VOCABULARY	<i>legō</i> - <i>to read</i> .
<i>amō</i> - <i>love</i> .		<i>juvō</i> - <i>order</i> .
<i>cado</i> - <i>fall</i> .		<i>mittō</i> , ere, <i>misī</i> , <i>send</i> .
<i>cōgnōscō</i> , ere, <i>cōgnōvī</i> , <i>learn</i> .		<i>moveō</i> , ēre, <i>movī</i> , <i>move</i> .
<i>cōgō</i> , ere, <i>coēgī</i> , <i>collect</i> .		<i>petō</i> , ere, <i>petivī</i> , <i>ask, seek</i> .
<i>compleō</i> , ēre, <i>complēvī</i> , <i>fill</i> .		<i>pōnō</i> , ere, <i>posuī</i> , <i>place</i> .
<i>contendō</i> , ere, <i>contendī</i> , <i>hasten</i> .		<i>relinquō</i> , ere, <i>reliquī</i> , <i>leave</i> .
<i>dēfendō</i> , ere, <i>dēfendī</i> , <i>defend</i> .		<i>respondeō</i> , ēre, <i>respondī</i> ,
<i>discēdō</i> , ere, <i>discessī</i> , <i>withdraw</i> .		<i>REGO</i> - <i>rule</i> .
<i>dō</i> , dare, <i>dedī</i> , <i>give</i> .		<i>SCRIBO</i> - <i>write</i> .
<i>dūcō</i> , ere, <i>dūxī</i> , <i>lead</i> .		<i>trādō</i> , ere, <i>trādīdī</i> , <i>surrender</i> .
<i>gerō</i> , ere, <i>gessī</i> , <i>wage</i> .		<i>veniō</i> , īre, <i>vēnī</i> , <i>come</i> .
<i>habeō</i> - <i>have</i> .		<i>videō</i> , ēre, <i>vidī</i> , <i>see</i> .

N.B.—The perfect active stem is got by omitting -ī of the first person singular as given in the vocabulary.

EXERCISES.

109.

I.

1. Gessimus, gessērunt. 2. Trādidit, trādidistī.
3. Mīsī, mīsistī. 4. Mōvit, reliquit, relinquit. 5. Con-
vērunt, vērunt. 6. Coēgimus, cōgimus, disces-
simus, discēdimus. 7. Respondet, respondit. 8. Movē-
mus, mōvimus. 9. Venīmus, vēnimus. 10. Dēfenditis,
contendistis, dēfendistis.

II.

1. He has sent, we sent. 2. They have sought, you
have sought. 3. I placed, you have placed. 4. We
have given, we have filled. 5. You left, you have
learned. 6. They surrendered, they withdrew. 7. He
sees, he saw. 8. We defend, we have defended.
9. They are collecting, they have collected. 10. They
have lands, they have had lands.

110.

WORD LIST II.

NOUNS: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

ager	frūmentum	liberī	praesidium
arma	hīberna	numerus	proelium
auxilium	impedimentum	oppidum	puella
bellum	imperium	periculum	puer
castra	inopia	populus	signum
cōnsilium			vir

NOUNS: THIRD DECLENSION.

agmen	iter	mūnitiō	princeps
Caesar	latus	obses	rēx
eques	legiō	opus	salūs
explōrātor	māgnitūdō	palūs	virtūs
flūmen	mīles	pāx	vulnus
homō	multitūdō	pecus	

ADJECTIVES.

altus	lātus	māgnus	parvus
crēber	līber	multus	paucī
integer	longus		reliquus

VERBS: FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

appellō	expūgnō	obtimeō	oppūgnō
dēspērō	expectō	occupō	postulō

VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.

audiō	dēfendō	mittō	redūcō
cōgnōscō	discēdō	mūniō	relinquō
cōgō	dūcō	petō	trādō
contendō	gerō	pōnō	veniō
conveniō	impediō		

READING LESSON III.

THE SEIZURE OF THE SABINE MAIDENS.

111.

VOCABULARY.

mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*

Sabīnī, ōrum, m., *the Sabines,* a tribe living near Rome.

Prīmō (*at first*) Rōma māgnūm numerum virōrum habēbat sed (*but*) paucās mulierēs. Propter inopiam mulierum Rōmulus, rēx Rōmānōrum, hōc (*this*) cōnsilium cēpit (*adopted*). Incolās multōrum oppidōrum ad lūdōs (*games*) convocāvit. Māgna multitūdō Sabīnōrum cum mulieribus liberisque convēnit. Dum (*while*) Sabīnī in agrīs lūdōs spectant (*are watching*), subitō (*suddenly*) Rōmulus sīgnūm Rōmānīs dat. Rōmānī ad mulierēs contendunt, et multās filiās Sabīnōrum in mūnitiōnēs portant. Tum (*then*) principēs Sabīnōrum lēgātōs ad Rōmulum mīsērunt et filiās postulāvērunt, sed Rōmānī praedam nōn trādidērunt. Itaque (*therefore*) propter māgnitudinem injūriæ, Sabīnī bellum cum populō Rōmānō gessērunt, et auxilium ab reliquīs incolīs Italiæ petivērunt.

Prīmō cōpiæ Rōmānōrum Sabīnōs superāvērunt; multōs hominēs necāvērunt, et pecora frūmentumque abripuērunt (*carried off*), et multa oppida expūgnāvērunt. Sed post multa proelia, Tarpeia, puella Rōmāna, portam explōrātōribus Sabīnōrum prōdidit (*betrayed*). Sabīnī per portam māgnās cōpiās in mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum mīsērunt. Rōmānī et Sabīnī ācritēr (*fiercely*) pūgnant, et proclium diū (*for a long time*) est dubium (*undecided*). Subitō filiae Sabīnōrum inter milītēs contendunt; nōn sine māgnō periculō cōpiās ā proeliō retinent; Sabīnōs et Rōmānōs ad pācem et amicitiam vocant. Itaque

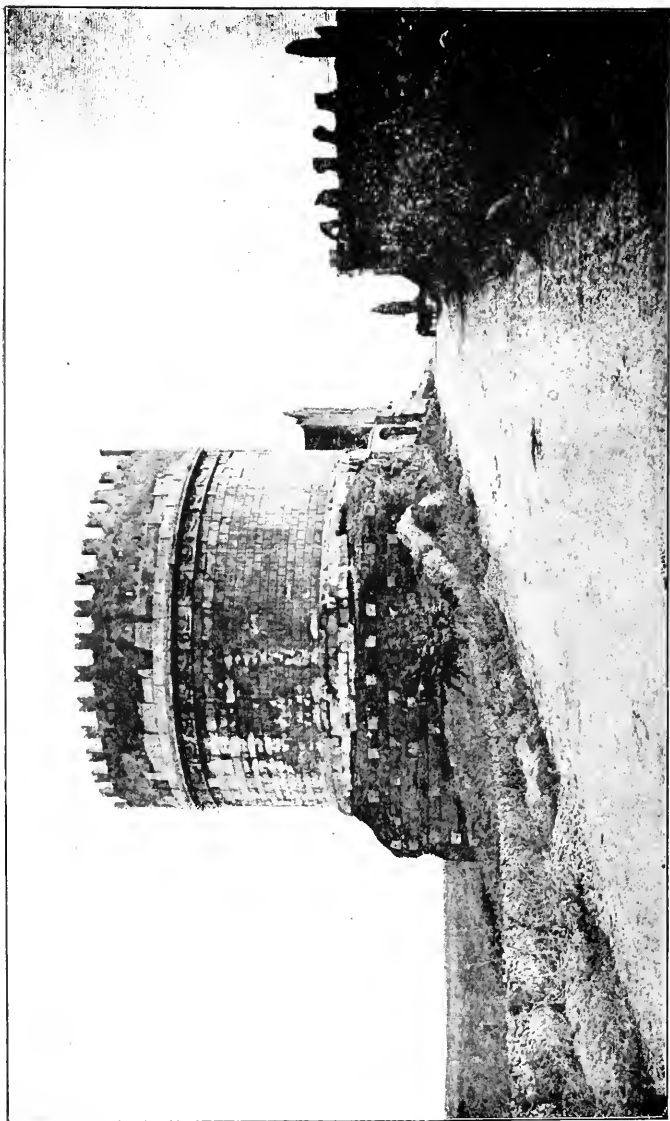
militēs arma dēposuērunt (*laid aside*) ; et Rōmulus pācem et amicitiam cum principibus Sabīnōrum cōfirmāvit. Sabīnī ex suīs (*their own*) oppidīs vicisque discēdunt et cum Rōmānīs habitant. Ita (*thus*) Rōma numerum incolārum duplicat (*doubles*).

(Tarpeia was punished for her treachery. She bargained with the Sabine leader that for reward she should receive what the soldiers wore on their left arms, meaning their gold bracelets. They, however, either mistaking her meaning or despising her treason, threw upon her the heavy shields which also they wore on their left arms. The weight of these soon crushed her to death.)



Arma : Arms.





TOMB OF CAECILIA METELLA ON THE APPIAN WAY.

LESSON XIX.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

112. Adjectives of the third declension are classified as adjectives of one, two or three terminations, according to the number of forms used in the nominative singular for the different genders.

Adjectives of three terminations end in **-er**, m., **-ris**, f., **-re**, n., and are all declined like *ācer*; adjectives of two terminations end in **-is**, m. and f., **-e**, n., and are all declined like *fortis*; adjectives of one termination for the most part end in **-s** or in **-x**, m., f., n., and are declined like *prūdēns* and *fēlix* respectively.

113. Paradigms.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

(a) *ācer*, sharp.

SINGULAR.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

(b) **fortis**, *brave*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MAS. & FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	fortēs	fortia
<i>Voc.</i>	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

(c) **fēlix**, *happy*.

<i>Nom.</i>	fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Gen.</i>	fēlicis	fēlicis	fēlicium	fēlicium
<i>Dat.</i>	fēlicī	fēlicī	fēlicibus	fēlicibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fēlicem	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Voc.</i>	fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicia
<i>Abl.</i>	fēlicī	fēlicī	fēlicibus	fēlicibus

(d) **prūdēns**, *prudent*.

<i>Nom.</i>	prūdēns	prūdēns	prūdētēs	prūdēntia
<i>Gen.</i>	prūdētis	prūdētis	prūdētium	prūdētium
<i>Dat.</i>	prūdētī	prūdētī	prūdētibus	prūdētibus
<i>Acc.</i>	prūdēntem	prūdēns	prūdētēs	prūdēntia
<i>Voc.</i>	prūdēns	prūdēns	prūdētēs	prūdēntia
<i>Abl.</i>	prūdētī	prūdētī	prūdētibus	prūdētibus

114. (a) Observe carefully the case-endings of these adjectives as compared with the case-endings of the nouns of the third declension, given in 86 and 94. In which cases are the endings identical in noun and adjective? In which cases are the endings different?

(b) Notice, further, that Latin vocabularies give the nominative only of adjectives of two or three terminations, but the nominative and genitive of adjectives of one termination. See 115.

115.

VOCABULARY.

2	commūnis, e,	common, general, public.
1	du-plex, -plicis,	twofold, double.
3	eques-ter, -tris, -tre,	of cavalry, cavalry.
2	incolumis, e,	safe, unharmed, intact.
2	omnis, e,	all.
1	pār, paris,	equal. —
~	ped-es, -itis, m.,	<u>foot-soldier; in plur., infantry.</u>
3	pedes-ter, -tris, tre,	of infantry, infantry.
~	pēs, pedis, m.,	foot.
1	rec-ēns, -entis,	new, recent.

EXERCISES.

116.

I.

1. Translate the following phrases*: — Commūnis salūs, commūne cōsiliū, duplex fossa, duplex mūrus, equestre proelium, omnēs Gallī, omnis Gallia, omnia arma, omnēs peditēs, omnēs pedēs, incolumis legiō, pār numerus, pedestrēs cōpiae, recēns injūria, recēns victōria.

II.

1. Animōs omnium sociōrum cōfīrmat. 2. Peditēs omnia arma equitibus trādidērunt. 3. Dē commūni salūte dēspērāvimus. 4. Cum pedestribus cōpiis salūtem fugā† petīvit. 5. Pareū numerum pedum omnēs hominēs habent. 6. Omnēs peditēs trāns duplicem fossam dūcēbat. 7. Propter recentēs injūriās Gallōrum

* These phrases all occur in Exercises II. and III. These and similar combinations should be given the pupil for practice in declension.

† Translate **fugā** here by *in flight* (literally, *by means of flight*).

obsidēs postulāvit. 8. Cum incolumī legiōne ex oppidō discessī. 9. Ante equestre proelium auxilium ā prīncipibus petīvit. 10. Pedestrēs cōpiās in omnibus oppidīs collocat.

III.

1. They have fortified the camp with a double wall. 2. He does not see the danger of a cavalry battle. 3. He has learned the common plan of all the Gauls. 4. All came safe through the marshes. 5. Caesar has terrified all Gaul by (his) recent victory. 6. With an equal number of foot-soldiers and auxiliaries he was laying waste all the lands. 7. He hastens into Italy without (his) forces of infantry. 8. He replied to all the messengers. 9. They wounded the soldier's foot and side. 10. After the cavalry battles they sent envoys to treat for peace.

LESSON XX.

Sum: PRESENT INDICATIVE.

117.

Paradigm.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **sum**.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. **sum**, *I am*.1. **sumus**, *we are*.2. **es**, *thou art, you are*.2. **estis**, *you are*.3. **est**, *he (she or it) is*.3. **sunt**, *they are*.

- a. How far do the personal endings agree with those already learned? (The stem is **es-**, from which, in certain forms, **e** is omitted.)
- b. Review 54 and 64 on the agreement of a predicate noun or adjective with the subject.

118.

Illustrative Examples.

Iter est per prōvinciam, *(there) is a road through the province.*
Sunt itinera per silvam, *(there) are roads through the forest.*
Nōn est cōpia frūmentī, *(there) is not a supply of grain.*

- a. Note that Latin has no equivalent for the unemphatic introductory word there; the subject (which in English is transposed) is, of course, in the nominative case.

119. Hitherto the imperfect indicative has been translated quite differently from the perfect indicative; as,

dūcēbat, *he was leading, he used to lead;*
dūxit, *he led, he has led;*
appellābat, *he was calling, he used to call;*
appellāvit, *he called, he has called.*

But in such a sentence as *He led his forces annually against the enemy*, it is clear that *he led* has the force of *he used to lead*, and the Latin equivalent would therefore be **dūcēbat**, not **dūxit**.

So in the sentence *They called the island Britain*, if the meaning is that they were in the habit of so calling it, we should use **appellābant**, but **appellāvērunt** should be used if the sentence refers to the first naming of the island.

The English past tense, therefore, when used to express what was habitual or repeated, will be translated by the Latin imperfect indicative; when used merely to state that something happened in past time, by the Latin perfect indicative.

120.

VOCABULARY.

aequus, a, um, <i>fair, right.</i>	inimicus, a, um, <i>unfriendly,</i>
amicus, a, um, <i>friendly.</i>	<i>hostile.</i>
certus, a, um, <i>fixed, certain.</i>	iniquus, a, um, <i>unfair,</i>
fortis, e, <i>brave.</i>	<i>unjust.</i>
gravis, e, <i>heavy, severe,</i>	jubeō, ēre, jussī, <i>order.</i>
<i>serious.</i>	levis, e, <i>light, slight,</i>
idōneus, a, um, <i>fit, suitable.</i>	<i>unimportant.</i>

N.B.—Notice the use of the prefix in- to negative the meaning of the adjective to which it is joined ; so also incertus, *uncertain*, and impār, *unequal*.

EXERCISES.

121.

I.

1. Belgae sunt fortēs. 2. Amīcī sumus. 3. Nōn inimicus es. 4. Locus nōn est idōneus. 5. Aequum est. 6. Māgnō in periculō estis. 7. Castra parva sunt. 8. Flūmen est inter equitēs et castra. 9. Insula ad Galliam spectābat. 10. Oppidum occupāvimus ; oppida tenēbāmus. 11. Jubēmus, jubēbāmus, jussimus. 12. Equestria proelia sunt levia. 13. Grave est beilum. 14. Rēx sum. 15. Oppida mūrīs et fossīs mūniēbant. 16. Certum numerum militum mīsistī. 17. Fossa est ante oppidum. 18. Imperium Caesarī, virō fortī et idōneō, dedērunt. 19. Cōsilium est iniquum. 20. In Galliā sunt vicī et oppida. 21. Imperium obtinēbat.

II.

1. The men are brave and free. 2. The danger is slight. 3. The wounds are serious. 4. you are brave soldiers. 5. You are the king's daughter. 6. There is

great danger. 7. You are a leading man of the Britons. 8. You are leading. 9. They had lands across the river in Gaul. 10. The Britons dwelt in villages. 11. He ordered ; he orders. 12. They were hastening. 13. There is a scarcity of grain. 14. The troops are fresh. 15. Victory is certain. 16. The camp is in a suitable place. 17. They brought their grain into the towns. 18. He named the town Rome ; they called the inhabitants Romans. 19. There are brave men in the legion. 20. It is unfair. 21. The garrisons are equal.

LESSON XXI.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

122. The formation of the present infinitive in each of the four conjugations and in the irregular verb **sum** may be learned from the following paradigms.

Paradigms.

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

<i>First Conjugation.</i>	amāre, <i>to love.</i>
<i>Second Conjugation.</i>	monēre, <i>to advise.</i>
<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	regere, <i>to rule.</i>
<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>	audire, <i>to hear.</i>
<i>Irregular Verb sum.</i>	esse, <i>to be.</i>

a. Notice that it is the present infinitive endings that are given in vocabularies, in order to show to which of the conjugations a verb belongs.

123.

Illustrative Examples.

- Locum oppugnāre contendit, *he hastens to attack the place.*
 Cōpiās locum tenēre jubet, *he orders the troops to hold the place.*
 Discēdere contendunt, *they hasten to depart.*
 Sociōs jubent convenīre, *they order the allies to assemble.*

a. In each of these sentences notice how one verb completes the meaning of the other. The form so used is in Latin, as in English, the infinitive.

b. In the first and third sentences the infinitive has the same subject as the principal verb. In the second and fourth sentences the subjects of the two verbs are different, and that of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

NOT c. The infinitive used in this way is called the Complementary Infinitive. Usually it precedes the governing verb, and is itself preceded by its subject and object (if expressed).

Rule.—The subject of the infinitive, when separately expressed, is put in the accusative.

124.

Illustrative Examples.

- Aequum est respondēre, *it is right to reply.*
 Nōn aequum est Gallōs bellum gerere, *it is not right for the Gauls to wage war.*

a. In these sentences notice (1) that the infinitive is used as the subject of the verb *est*, (2) that neither the introductory *for* nor the representative subject *it* is expressed in Latin by a separate word, and (3) that the predicate adjective modifying the subject infinitive is neuter.

125.

VOCABULARY.

audeō, ēre,	venture, dare.
coepī* (used in the perfect tenses only),	began.
cōgō, ere, coēgī,*	compel, force.
cōstit-uō, ere, -uī,	determine.
cotīdiē (adverb),	daily, every day.
difficilis, e,	difficult, hard.
facilis, e,	easy.
per-moveō, ēre, -mōvī,	influence; alarm.
perterreō, ēre, uī,	terrify, frighten.
per-veniō, īre, -vēnī,	come.

Phrases : pervenīō ad or in with acc., arrive at, reach.
discēdō ab with abl., leave.

N.B.—In compounds **per** has the force of (1) *through*, and (2) more frequently of *thoroughly, completely*.

EXERCISES.

126.

I.

1. Bellum gerere cōstituunt; bellum cum populō Rōmānō gerere nōn audēmus. 2. Ab signīs discēdebant; milītēs ab signīs discēdere coepērunt. 3. Difficile est Rōmānōs perterrere. 4. Frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra comportābant. 5. Ad flūmen pervenīmus; ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnimus. 6. Nōn aequum est Gallōs agrōs sociōrum vāstare. 7. Lēgātum cum omnibus equitibus locum tenēre jussit. 8. Britannōs arma trādere coēgit et obsidēs dare. 9. Nōn facile est Caesarem permovere. 10. Prīncipēs cotīdiē ad Caesarem veniēbant.

* In **coepī**, **oe** is a diphthong; in **coēgī**, **o** and **e** belong to different syllables.

II.

1. The cavalry began to lay waste the lands of the allies. 2. Daily, with all (his) cavalry, Caesar laid waste the lands of the Britons. 3. They determined to send ambassadors to treat for peace; the envoys reached the camp. 4. I determined to hasten to seek safety by flight. 5. It is difficult for the scouts to find out the road. 6. He ordered the soldiers to leave the fortifications. 7. It is not easy to compel the legions to be obedient. 8. We began to be in great danger. 9. It terrifies the chief men; it does not influence the king. 10. They did not venture to pitch (their) camp on the bank of the river.

LESSON XXII.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

127.

Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnāvī, <i>I have fought.</i>	Pūgnāveram, <i>I had fought.</i>
Mīsī, <i>I have sent.</i>	Miserās, <i>you (s.) had sent.</i>
Jussī, <i>I have ordered.</i>	Jusserat, <i>he had ordered.</i>
Vēnī, <i>I have come.</i>	Vēnerāmus, <i>we had come.</i>
Dedī, <i>I have given.</i>	Dederātis, <i>you (pl.) had given.</i>
Tenuī, <i>I have held.</i>	Tenuerant, <i>they had held.</i>

- a. In the forms given in the second column of Latin words, notice (1) the personal endings, (2) the new element -era- added to the perfect stem in each form, (3) the translation by means of had. This tense is known as the Pluperfect Indicative Active.*

*The Latin pluperfect is equivalent to the English past perfect (or pluperfect), and is used to mark an act as completed or taking place before some point in past time mentioned or implied.

128. *past.* Paradigms.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

Had loved First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.

SINGULAR.

1. amāveram	monueram	rēxeram	audīveram
2. amāverās	monuerās	rēxerās	audīverās
3. amāverat	monuerat	rēxerat	audīverat

PLURAL.

1. amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	audīverāmus
2. amāverātis	monuerātis	rēxerātis	audīverātis
3. amāverant	monuerant	rēxerant	audīverant

129. Paradigms.

 PERFECT OF **sum.**

 PLUPERFECT OF **sum.**

SING.

PLUR.

SING.

PLUR.

1. fui	fuimus	fueram	fuerāmus
2. fuistī	fuistis	fuerās	fuerātis
3. fuit	fuērunt	fuerat	fuerant

130. VOCABULARY.

 altitū-dō, -dinis, f., *height, depth.*

 com-mittō, ere, -mīsī, *send or bring together.*

 dexter, tra, trum, *right.*

 fortitū-dō, -dinis, f., *bravery.*

 lātītū-dō, -dinis, f., *width.*

 littera, ae, f., *letter (of alphabet); in plural, a despatch, a letter, or despatches, letters.*

 longitū-dō, -dinis, f., *length.*

 māgnitū-dō, -dinis, f., *greatness, extent, size.*

 multitū-dō, -dinis, f., *large number, amount.*

 sinister, tra, trum, *left.*

 Phrase : proelium committō, *join (or begin) battle, engage.*

 N.B.—The suffix **-tūdō** is used to form from adjectives abstract nouns denoting quality or condition. It appears in English in the form *-tude*.

EXERCISES.

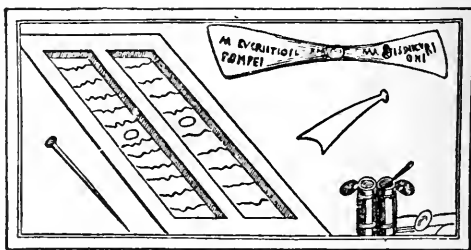
131.

I.

1. Iter cōgnōverant. 2. Litterās miseram. 3. Cotīdiē litterās ad Caesarem mittēbāmus. 4. Cōpiās proelium committere jusserat. 5. Proelium equestre commiserātis. 6. Legiōnem ā dextrō latere oppūgnāverant. 7. Sinistrum latus vulnerās ; dextrum latus vulnerāverās. 8. Cum fortitūdine pūgnāvērunt ; māgnā cum fortitūdine pūgnāverant. 9. Propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem oppidum oppūgnāre nōn audēbāmus. 10. Māgnā cum multitudine equitum bellum gesserās. 11. Cōpiis cotīdiē imperat ; principibus imperāverat. 12. Ex nūntiīs litterisque māgnitudinem periculī cōgnōverant. 13. Rēx fuerat ; amīci fuistis.

II.

1. He has hastened ; he had hastened. 2. They were pitching (their) camp ; they had pitched (their) camp. 3. We had collected a large number of men. 4. You had compelled the men to surrender (their) arms. 5. On account of the depth of the river we had not reached the island. 6. The chief man we called king. 7. They



Writing Implements and Materials.

had grain and cattle ; they had had an abundance of grain and cattle. 8. They had begun to join battle on the left flank. 9. The scouts had learned the length of the right side of the camp. 10. It is not right to surrender (one's) arms ; we had surrendered (our) arms. 11. From despatches I had found out about the width of the river Rhine. 12. On account of the extent of the marshes we had determined to leave the place.

LESSON XXIII.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

132. Nouns of the fourth declension have their genitive singular in **-ūs**. Most nouns of this declension end in -us in the nominative singular and are masculine ; a few end in -ū and are neuter.

133.

Paradigms.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

		SINGULAR.	
<i>Nom.</i>	fructus (<i>fruit</i>)	-us	cornū (<i>horn</i>)
<i>Gen.</i>	fructūs	-ūs	cornūs
<i>Dat.</i>	fructui	-ui	cornū
<i>Acc.</i>	fructum	-um	cornū
<i>Voc.</i>	fructus	-us	cornū
<i>Abl.</i>	fructū	-ū	cornū
		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	fructūs	-ūs	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	fructuum	-uum	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	fructibus	-ibus	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fructūs	-ūs	cornua
<i>Voc.</i>	fructūs	-ūs	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	fructibus	-ibus	cornibus

134.

VOCABULARY.

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival,*
approach.

cornū, ūs, n., *horn*; (of an
army), *wing.*

discessus, ūs, m., *departure,*
withdrawal.

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*

exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*

lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*

peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbour.*

principātus, ūs, m., *leader-*
ship.

senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

N.B.—Equitātus and peditātus are collective nouns, used in the singular with the same meaning as the plurals equitēs and peditēs.

EXERCISES.

135.

I.

1. Omnem senātum convenire jussit. 2. Lēgātōs ab omnibus exercitibus convenire jusserat. 3. In dextrō cornū omnem equitātum collocat. 4. Ā lacū ad ōceanum contenderāmus. 5. Caesarī principātum et imperium trādunt. 6. Cum omnibus cōpiīs peditātūs equitātūsque ad portum pervēnī. 7. Dē adventū Caesaris cōgnōverāmus. 8. Post discessum exercitūs litterās ad senātum mīsit. 9. Cum equitātū proelium commiserant. 10. Dē māgnitūdine portuum cōgnōscit.

II.

1. We hastened from the harbour to the lake. 2. The plunder he had given to the cavalry. 3. With the rest of the infantry he hastened to the right wing. 4. Few harbours are suitable. 5. We had determined to await Caesar's arrival. 6. He slew the leading men and all the senate. 7. He holds the leadership of Gaul. 8. He found out through scouts about the departure of the armies. 9. He gave orders daily to the armies. 10. All had come safe to the harbours.

136.

WORD LIST B.

ABSTRACT NOUNS.

plenty	number	safety	bravery
scarcity	extent	peace	valour
length	amount	friendship	spirit
width	arrival	wrongdoing	leadership
height	departure	nature	design
depth			aid

MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

river	marsh	king	man
lake	road	chief	cattle
harbour	territory	senate	work

WAR : NOUNS.

army	scout	baggage
legion	auxiliaries	standard
soldier	right wing	arms
foot-soldier	left wing	fortification
horse-soldier.	flank	winter quarters
infantry	column	cavalry battle
cavalry	march	wound

MILITARY PHRASES.

pitch a camp	send despatch	ask aid
leave (a place)	await reinforcements	seize
reach (a place)	demand hostages	hold command
hinder the march	surrender hostages	defend
learn the plans	come to treat for	join battle
give the signal	peace	lead back
by forced marches	establish friendship	fresh troops

VERBS WITH COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

order	venture	determine
began	compel	hasten

ADJECTIVES.

large	many	easy	safe
small	few	hard	suitable
high	all	heavy	brave
long	remaining	light	free
wide	frequent	fair	double
deep	fixed	unfair	new

READING LESSON IV.

THE BATTLE OF THE HORATHI AND THE CURIATHI.

137.

VOCABULARY.

Albānī, ōrum, m., *the Albans*, the people of Alba.

frā-ter, -tris, m., *brother*.

sed, conjunction, *but*.

Diū (*for a long time*) fuerant Albānī et Rōmānī amīcī. Sed Tullus Hostīlius, tertius (*third*) rēx Rōmānōrum, propter levēs injūriās bellum cum Albānīs gerere cōstituit, (et māgnās cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque contrā Albānōs mīsit.) Prīncipēs Albānōrum, ubi (*when*) dē cōsiliō rēgis cōgnōvērunt, cōpiās omnēs convenire jussērunt et sociōs cōgere coepērunt. Exercitūs nōdum (*not yet*) proelium commiserant, cum (*when*) nūntius ā senātū Albānōrum ad rēgem Tullum vēnit. "Tullē," inquit (*said*) nūntius, "mē (*me*) misērunt Albānī. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī petimus, sed adventus exercitūs Rōmānī nōn nōs (*us*) perterret. Nōn dē victoriā dēspērāmus. Difficile est liberum populum superāre; (māgnās cōpiās equestrēs pedestrēsque habēmus.) et milites Albānōrum fortēs integrīque sunt. Sed nōn aequum est multōs amīcōs necāre propter injūriās paucōrum inimicōrum (*enemies*)."

Tullus nūntium audīvit et respondit, "Inīquum est, et omnēs incolae Itāliae amīcī esse dēbent (*ought*). Sed populus Rōmānus prīncipātum et imperium omnis Itāliae obtinēre cōstituit, et Albānī liberī esse cōstituērunt neque (*and not*) imperiō populī Rōmānī pārēre. ✓ Sed facile est exercitūs ā procliō revocāre et parvum numerum militum jubere prō (*on behalf of, prep. with abl. case*) reliquīs dē prīncipātū pūgnāre." Hōc (*this*) cōsiliū Albānī probāvērunt (*approved*). In exercitū Rōmānōrum fuērunt trēs (*three*) fortēs frātēs, quōs (*whom*) appellābant Horātiōs. Hōs (*these*) Tullus jussit prō reliquīs Rōmānīs pūgnāre. Albānī parem numerum frātrum dēlēgērunt (*chose*), quōs appellābant Cūriātiōs.

(Concluded in 163.)



Murus et Porta : City Wall and Gate.
The Porta Appia in the Aurelian Wall, Rome.

LESSON XXIV.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

138. (a) The Principal Parts of a Latin verb are certain forms from which, as starting points, the whole verb may be inflected. In the regular Latin verb the Principal Parts are four in number, three of which have already been met with in the preceding lessons (namely, the present indicative active, the present infinitive active and the perfect indicative active).

(b) The four Principal Parts of the model verbs of the several conjugations are as follows :—

<i>Conj. I.</i>	amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum
<i>Conj. II.</i>	moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
<i>Conj. III.</i>	regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	audiō	audire	audīvī	audītum

The first and second of these principal parts give the *present* stem and the conjugation; the third gives the *perfect* stem, from which the perfect active system is formed; the last gives the *participial* stem (or, as it is also called, the *supine* stem), from which the perfect passive system is formed.

139.

Illustrative Examples.

Amātus sum,	<i>I have been loved,</i>	or	<i>I was loved.</i>
Amātus es,	<i>you (s.) have been loved,</i>	or	<i>you were loved.</i>
Amātus est,	<i>he has been loved,</i>	or	<i>he was loved.</i>
Amātī sumus,	<i>we have been loved,</i>	or	<i>we were loved.</i>
Amātī estis,	<i>you (pl.) have been loved,</i>	or	<i>you were loved.</i>
Amātī sunt,	<i>they have been loved,</i>	or	<i>they were loved.</i>

Similarly,

Monitus sum,	<i>I have been advised,</i>	or	<i>I was advised.</i>
Rēctus sum,	<i>I have been ruled,</i>	or	<i>I was ruled.</i>
Audītus sum,	<i>I have been heard,</i>	or	<i>I was heard.</i>

a. In these compound forms (known as the Perfect Indicative Passive) observe (1) the relation of the first element in each to the principal parts in 138; (2) the use of the present indicative of **sum** to complete the form; (3) the twofold translation. Compare the twofold translation of the perfect indicative active (101).

140.

Illustrative Examples.

Filia monita est, the daughter was advised.
Auditum est, it has been heard.
Cōpiae collocātae sunt, the troops were stationed.
Oppida firmāta sunt, the towns have been strengthened.

a. Observe how the form (known as the Perfect Participle Passive) which is combined with the verb **sum** to make the perfect indicative passive, changes in gender and number to agree with the subject.

141. There are no uniform or regular ways of forming the perfect indicative passive from either the present or the perfect stem, and recourse must be had to the fourth of the principal parts. But, as a rule, verbs whose perfect active ends in **-āvī** have **-ātus sum**,

"	"	"	"	"	"	-īvī	"	-ītus sum ,
"	"	"	"	"	"	-uī	"	-itus sum ,
"	"	"	"	"	"	-sī or -ī	"	-tus* sum .

The vocabulary which follows gives the principal parts of the most important verbs which have occurred in the previous lessons. Compounds (like **reducō** and **committō**) are like the simple verbs. For other words the pupil is referred to the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

* Where the verb stem ends in a consonant, **-tus** often becomes **-sus** or **-xus**.

142.

VOCABULARY.

First Conjugation.

The verbs hitherto used, like **amō**, have **-ō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**.

But **dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum**.

Second Conjugation.

Habeō and **terreō**, like **moneō**, have **-eō**, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**.

But **compleō**, **ēre**, **complēvī**, **complētum**,
jubeō, **ēre**, **jussī**, **jussum**,
moveō, **ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**,
videō, **ēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsum**.

Third Conjugation.

Cōgnōscō, **ere**, **cōgnōvī**, **cōgnitum**,
cōgō, **ere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum**,
dūcō, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**,
gerō, **ere**, **gessī**, **gestum**,
mittō, **ere**, **mīsī**, **missum**,
petō, **ere**, **petīvī**, **petitum**,
pōnō, **ere**, **posuī**, **positum**,
relinquō, **ere**, **reliquī**, **relictum**,
trādō, **ere**, **trādidī**, **trāditum**.

Fourth Conjugation.

Mūniō and **impediō**, like **audiō**, have **-iō**, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-itum**.

But **veniō**, **īre**, **vēnī**, **ventum**.

EXERCISES.

143. (a) *On Conjugations I. and II.*

I.

1. Oppidum occupātum est. 2. Agrī vāstātī sunt.
 3. Mīlītēs perterritī sunt. 4. Sīgnum datum est. 5.
 Belgae superātī sunt. 6. Fossa complēta est. 7. Vul-
 nerātus sum. 8. Servī venīre jussī sunt. 9. Servōs

venire jussī. 10. Revocātī estis ; territa es. 11. Convocātī sumus. 12. Proelia nūntiāta sunt. 13. Hiberna expūgnāta sunt. 14. Equus vulnerātus est. 15. Eques vulnerātus est. 16. Virī vīsī sunt. 17. Castra mōta sunt. 18. Britannī permōtī sunt. 19. Remōtae sumus. 20. Oppida oppūgnāta sunt.

II.

1. The province has been laid waste. 2. The leading men have been called together. 3. The legions were recalled. 4. The army was terrified. 5. Hostages have been given. 6. The camp was filled. 7. We were seen. 8. You have been ordered. 9. The lands were seized. 10. They have been wounded. 11. The camp was moved. 12. The allies were alarmed. 13. The horse has been removed. 14. The cavalry were stationed. 15. The place (the town, the camp) was attacked. 16. The armies (the troops, the reinforcements) have been conquered.

(b) *On Conjugations III. and IV.*

III.

1. Cōnsilia cōgnita sunt. 2. Bellum gestum est. 3. Hiberna mūnita sunt. 4. Cōpiae reductae sunt. 5. Multitūdō coācta est. 6. Missus sum ; missī estis. 7. Proelium commissum est. 8. Reducta es ; reductae sumus. 9. Auditum est ; hominēs auditī sunt. 10. Praesidium relictum est ; legiōnēs relictae sunt. 11. Ripa mūnita est. 12. Obsidēs trāditi sunt. 13. Auxilium petītum est. 14. Exercitus ductus est ; exercitūs reductī sunt. 15. Iter impeditum est. 16. Auxilia missa sunt ; impedimenta missa sunt.

IV.

1. Peace was sought. 2. The place has been fortified.
 3. Scouts have been sent. 4. It has been ascertained.
 5. Troops were collected. 6. The legions have been led; I was led. 7. A letter was sent; letters were sent; we were sent. 8. Wars have been waged. 9. The plunder was left; the baggage was left. 10. The arms have been surrendered. 11. The envoys were heard. 12. You have been compelled. 13. The foot-soldiers have been hindered. 14. Messengers were sent. 15. The column was led back; the camp was pitched. 16. The children were surrendered.

LESSON XXV.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

144.

Illustrative Examples.

Cōpiae agrōs vāstāvērunt, troops have laid waste the fields.

Agri ā cōpiīs vāstātī sunt, the fields have been laid waste by troops.

Caesar Gallōs superāvit, Caesar conquered the Gauls.

Gallī ā Caesare superātī sunt, the Gauls were conquered by Caesar.

a. Observe that in changing to the passive voice (1) the *object* of the active verb becomes the *subject* of the passive verb, and (2) the *subject* of the active verb is expressed by the ablative case governed by the preposition *ā* (or *ab*).

This ablative is called the Ablative of the Agent.

b. In what other way also is the preposition *ā* or *ab* translated? (48).

145.

Illustrative Examples.

abf. means.
Fossa aquā complēta est, *the trench was filled with water.*
Locus fossā mūnitus est, *the place was protected by a trench.*
Māgnitudine periculī permōtī sunt, *they were influenced by the greatness of the danger.*

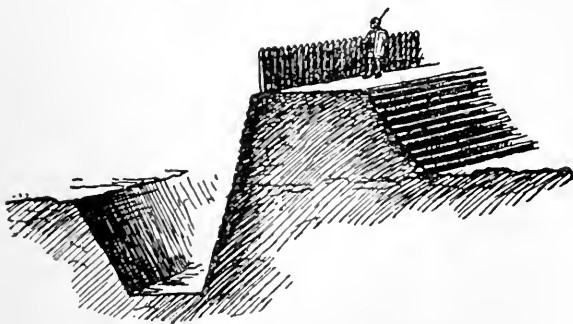
- a. Observe how the ablative without a preposition is used to express that *by means of which* something is done. This is called the Ablative of the Means or Instrument. In English sometimes *by* and sometimes *with* is the preposition used.
- b. In what other ways may *with* and *by* be translated into Latin? (47 and 144).

146.

Illustrative Examples.

Britannia est īnsula, *Britain is an island.*
Īnsula Britannia appellāta est, *the island was called Britain.*
Māgnus appellābātur, *he was called great.*
Caesar rēx nōn factus est, *Caesar was not made king.*

- (a) Observe that a predicate nominative (noun or adjective) may follow the passive voice of certain verbs, such as verbs of *calling*, *choosing*, *making* and *regarding*, as well as the verb *sum*. (Compare 54.)



Fossa et Vallum : Trench and Rampart.

147.

VOCABULARY.

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum,	<i>give way, retire.</i>
com-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum,	<i>drive (together).</i>
con-cēdō, ere, -cessī, cessum,	<i>grant, yield.</i>
ē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,	<i>lead out.</i>
ē-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum,	<i>send out.</i>
ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum,	<i>withdraw.</i>
ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum,	<i>drive out.</i>
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum,	<i>drive, defeat.</i>
re-pellō, ere, reppulī, -pulsum,	<i>drive back, repulse.</i>
vāllum, ī, n.,	<i>wall, rampart.</i>

N.B.—Observe the use of *ē* or *ex* in compounds, with the force of *out*. Also note the difference in form between *pellō* and its compounds in the perfect active.

EXERCISES.

148.

I.

1. Obsidēs ā Gallīs Caesarī datī sunt ; obsidēs ā Galliā ad Italiam missī sunt. 2. Castra lātō vāllō et duplicī fossā ā militibus mūnīta sunt. 3. Ab opere revocātus sum ; ā prīncipibus rēx appellātus es. 4. Ex silvīs ab equitibus expulsī sumus. 5. Altitudīne mūrōrum repulsī sumus. 6. Per servōs * Caesar discessum Gallōrum cōgnōvit. 7. Ā Caesare per explōrātōrēs cōgnitum est. 8. Fugā sociōrum permōti sunt. 9. Cōpiae pulsae sunt ; cēdere coāctae sunt. 10. Ā senātū multitudō hominum ex agrīs coācta est. 11. Jussī estis ā lēgātō ex proeliō excēdere. 12. Legiō longō itinere † ēducta est ; māgnīs itineribus ad ōceanum pervēnit. 13. Cum omnī equitātū ā rēge ēmissus est. 14. Praeda militibus

* *Per* with the accusative is frequently used to express the person *through* whom anything is done, that is, the *secondary agent*. It is so used with both the active and the passive voice.

† The route by which one goes is included under the Ablative of Means.

concessa est. 15. In flūmen ā Germānīs compulsi sunt. 16. Adventū cōpiārum perterrita est. 17. Jussus sum ā lēgātō omnēs cōpiās ex hibernīs ēdūcere.

II.

1. Envoys were sent by Caesar ; they came from the province. 2. The walls were filled with men ; the trench was filled by the men. 3. They were terrified by the departure of the leading men. 4. They were driven back by the cavalry ; they were repulsed by the fortifications. 5. The troops repulsed the Britons from the ramparts. 6. The place was called Rome ; the inhabitants were called Romans. 7. The land was laid waste by the Germans. 8. We have been called friends by the senate of the Roman people. 9. We have been driven out of (our) lands by the senate and the Roman people. 10. The town was fortified by the inhabitants with a wall and a trench. 11. You were compelled by the king's son to grant land to all the leading men. 12. All the cattle have been driven out of the fields. 13. The cavalry were led out by the lieutenant. 14. He sent out the cavalry by the left gate. 15. We were not ordered by Caesar to retire with the rest of the army. 16. All the towns were taken by storm by the Roman armies. 17. We were alarmed by the scarcity of grain.

LESSON XXVI.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF **Sum**. PLUPERFECT
INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

149. The Imperfect Indicative of the irregular verb **sum** has not the **-ba-** which in the four regular conjugations is characteristic of that tense.

Paradigm.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF *sum*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. eram, <i>I was (I used to be).</i>	erāmus, <i>we were.</i>
2. erās, <i>you were.</i>	erātis, <i>you were.</i>
3. erat, <i>he (she or it) was.</i>	erant, <i>they were.</i>

150. Review the formation of the pluperfect indicative active (128) and of the perfect indicative passive (139) before learning the following paradigms of the pluperfect indicative passive.

Paradigms.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

First Conjugation.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. amātus eram (<i>I had been loved</i>)	amātī erāmus
2. " erās	" erātis
3. " erat	" erant

Similarly,

Second Conjugation. monitus eram

Third Conjugation. rēctus eram

Fourth Conjugation. auditus eram

- a. How far does the pluperfect indicative passive resemble in form the pluperfect indicative active? How far does it resemble the perfect indicative passive? The changes in gender and number noted in 140 are found in the pluperfect tense also.

151. Illustrative Examples.

Missus est,	<i>he was (or has been) sent.</i>
Rōmānus est,	<i>he is a Roman.</i>
Jussī sunt,	<i>they were ordered.</i>
Fortēs sunt,	<i>they are brave.</i>
Missus erat,	<i>he had been sent.</i>
Rōmānus erat,	<i>he was a Roman.</i>

- a. Observe the difference in translation according as the predicate of the verb **sum** is the perfect participle passive or is an adjective or noun.

152.

VOCABULARY.

ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum,	<i>bring ; influence.</i>
circum-veniō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum,	<i>surround.</i>
cōn-sistō, ere, -stitī,	<i>take up position, halt.</i>
dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>hesitate, have doubts.</i>
faciō, ere, fēcī, factum,	<i>do, make.</i>
impetus, ūs, m.,	<i>attack, onset.</i>
in-struō, ere, -strūxī, -strūctum,	<i>draw up, arrange.</i>
militāris, e,	<i>military.</i>
sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,	<i>withstand, sustain, endure.</i>
ūsus, ūs, m.,	<i>experience.</i>

Phrases : impetum faciō,* *make an attack.*
 militāris ūsus, *experience in war.*

EXERCISES.

153.

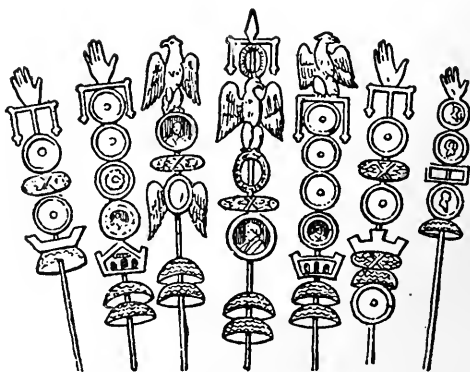
I.

1. Pāx ā senātū facta erat ; senātus pācem fēcerat.
2. Locus erat idōneus ; locus idōneus mūnītus erat.
3. Proelium committere dubitāverātis.
4. Inopiā frūmentī adductus eram.
5. Militārem ūsum habēbat.
6. Fossa erat ante oppidum.
7. Militēs in dextrō cornū cōstiterant.
8. Circumventī sumus ; circumventī erāmus.
9. Impetus ab omnibus equitibus factus erat.
10. Equitātum peditātumque instrūxerat ; cōpiæ equitātūs peditātūsque instrūctæ erant.
11. Castra parva erant.
12. {Silva est inter flūmina}
13. Impetum cum fortitūdine sustinuimus.
14. Vir fortis erat ; vir fortis erat appellātus.
15. Homō sum.
16. Facile est ; difficile erat.
17. Coeperant in māgnō periculō esse.

* With this phrase *on* is to be translated by *in* with the accusative.

II.

1. He was a slave ; the slave was made king. 2. They had brought hostages to Caesar ; hostages had been brought. 3. The column had been compelled to halt. 4. He had had doubts about the column. 5. The columns had been surrounded by the cavalry. 6. The allies used to be free. 7. You had had great experience. 8. All the rest of the Belgians were in arms. 9. The military standards had been left behind. 10. I had been ordered to draw up the forces ; the forces had been drawn up. 11. We were in Caesar's army. 12. Messengers were sent from all the villages. 13. It was not right. 14. It had not been done by the boys. 15. An attack has been made ; we made an attack. 16. You had withstood the legions. 17. There was a great abundance of cattle.



Signa Militaria : Military Standards.

LESSON XXVII.

FIFTH DECLENSION. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

154. (a) Nouns of the fifth declension have their genitive singular in **-eī**. Nouns of this declension are feminine, with the exception of **diēs** and its compound **merīdiēs**, which are masculine.

(b) Most nouns of this declension are used only in the singular; a few are occasionally found also in the nominative and accusative plural. **Diēs** and **rēs** alone exhibit the complete declension.

155.

Paradigms.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	diēs (<i>day</i>)	rēs (<i>thing</i>)	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	reī	-ēī (eī)
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	reī	-ēī (eī)
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	-em
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	-ē

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

a. Note that in the genitive and dative singular, the ending is **-ēī** after a vowel, but **-eī** after a consonant.

156. (a) The ordinal numerals (denoting *first, second, third*, etc.) are declinable, like other adjectives in Latin, and agree in gender, number and case with the nouns

they qualify. They are all of the first and second declensions, like **bonus** (65).

(b) The following ordinals should be learned first ; a more complete list is given in 727. *b*.

primus , a, um,	<i>first.</i>	sextus , a, um,	<i>sixth.</i>
secundus , a, um,	<i>second.</i>	septimus , a, um,	<i>seventh.</i>
tertius , a, um,	<i>third.</i>	octāvus , a, um,	<i>eighth.</i>
quārtus , a, um,	<i>fourth.</i>	nōnus , a, um,	<i>ninth.</i>
quīntus , a, um,	<i>fifth.</i>	decimus , a, um,	<i>tenth.</i>

157.

VOCABULARY.

aciēs , eī, f.,	<i>line of battle, line</i>
diēs , ēī, m.,	<i>day.</i>
fidēs , eī, f.,	<i>faith, faithfulness, fidelity.</i>
hōra , ae, f.,	<i>hour.</i>
merīdiēs , ēī, m.,	<i>midday, noon.</i>
rēs , reī, f.,	<i>thing, affair, circumstance.</i>
spēs , speī, f.,	<i>hope.</i>

Phrase : rēs militāris, the art of war.

EXERCISES.

158.

I.

1. Militēs in aciē īnstrūctī erant. 2. Cum tertiā legiōne in prōvinciā hiemāmus. 3. Post diem septimum equitātus revocatū erat. 4. Multīs rēbus adductī erant. 5. Dē fidē quīntae legiōnis dubitābat. 6. Inter aciēs ante merīdiem proelium equestre commīsērunt. 7. Animī militum spē auxilii cōfirmātī erant. 8. Ā sextā hōrā prima aciēs erat in periculō. 9. Fidem principum rēx cōgnōverat. 10. Numerus diērum et hōrārum nōn cōgnitus erat. 11. Propter inopiam omnium rērum nōnam legiōnem in hiberna reducit. 12. Omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnimus. 13. Rēs nūntiāta est. 14. Duplicem aciem īnstrūxit.

II.

1. The troops were influenced by the hope of plunder.
2. The forces had been led back to camp after the fourth day.
3. The second line has been surrounded.
4. He had had great experience in the art of war.
5. They do not withstand the first attack.
6. The tenth legion has faith.
7. After midday a double line of battle was drawn up.
8. The affair had been learned through scouts.
9. They reached the camp before the eighth hour of the day.
10. They had come into Gaul not without great hope of booty.
11. We had been influenced by the want of everything (*literally*, all things).
12. Everything had been procured.

LESSON XXVIII.

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME.

159.

Illustrative Examples.

Hōrā septimā proelium commisit, he joined battle at the seventh hour.

Tertiō diē ad Caesarem vēnerunt, the third day they came to Caesar.

Adventū Caesaris lēgātōs mīserunt, on Caesar's approach they sent envoys.

Multōs diēs agrōs vāstant, they lay waste the fields for many days.

Omnem tertium diem pūgnābant, all the third day they fought.

Impetum paucās hōrās sustinuērunt, they withstood the attack (for) a few hours.

- a. Which of these sentences express *time when*? Which express *time how long*? By what cases are these ideas respectively expressed in the Latin sentences?

- b. From the above examples it will be observed that Latin requires no preposition to express the idea of *time when* or *time how long*, while in English, as a rule, various prepositions (*on, at, in; for, during*) are used, though sometimes they are omitted.

160.

VOCABULARY.

annus, ī, m., <i>year</i> .	pars, partis, f., <i>part</i> .
circiter, adverb, <i>about</i> .	posterus, a, um, <i>next, following</i> .
lūx, lūcis, f., <i>light</i> .	
medius, a, um, <i>middle, mid</i> .	temp-us, -oris, n., <i>time</i> .
nox, noctis, f., <i>night</i> .	vigilia, ae, f., <i>watch</i> .*

Phrases: prīma lūx, daybreak, dawn.

media nox, midnight.

EXERCISES.

161.

I.

1. Prīmā lūce cōpiās ēdūxit; septimā hōrā cōpiae reductae sunt. 2. Posterō diē castra oppūgnant. 3. Multōs diēs pācem petunt. 4. Nocte ad flūmen Rhēnum contendit. 5. Propter tempus annī bellum nōn gesserant. 6. Ā prīmā vigiliā ad mediam noctem pūgnāverant. 7. Ante merīdiem acicm instruere coepit. 8. Certō annī tempore convenīre jussī erāmus. 9. Tertiam partem Galliae paucōs annōs obtinuerāmus. 10. Discessū Caesaris hīberna oppūgnāre audent.

II.

1. On the third day they moved the camp; they moved (their) camp daily at daybreak. 2. For a large part of the year we waged war. 3. At midnight they withdraw

* The Romans divided the daytime into twelve equal hours; the night-time into four equal watches.

from the village. 4. In the second watch he sends out the troops with all the baggage. 5. We reached the harbour the next night before dawn. 6. For many hours we were strengthening the place with fortifications. 7. In the third year of the war they had seized the island. 8. We had withstood the cavalry's attacks from the fourth hour to the first watch. 9. On the first approach of reinforcements the Belgians began to give way. 10. They had begun to be unfriendly the next year.

162.

WORD LIST III.

NOUNS: FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

altitūdō	lātitūdō	nox	tempus
annus	littera	pars	vāllum
fortitūdō	longitūdō	pedes	vigilia
hōra	lūx	pēs	

NOUNS: FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

aciēs	equitātus	lacus	prīncipātus
adventus	exercitus	merīdiēs	rēs
cornū	fidēs	peditātus	senātus
diēs	impetus	portus	spēs
discessus			ūsus

ADJECTIVES.

aequus	duplex	incolumis	omnis
amicus	equester	inimicus	pār
certus	facilis	inīquus	pedester
communis	fortis	levis	posterus
dexter	gravis	medius	recēns
difficilis	idōneus	mīlitāris	sinister

VERBS.

addūcō	committō	ēducō	pellō
audeō	compellō	ēmittō	permoveō
cēdō	concēdō	excēdō	perterreō
circumveniō	cōsistō	expellō	perveniō
coepī	cōstituō	īnstruō	repellō
cōgō	dubitō	jubeō	sustineō

ADVERBS

circiter	cotidiē
----------	---------

READING LESSON V.

THE BATTLE OF THE HORATII AND THE CURIATII.

(Concluded from 137.)

163. Cōpiaē quae (*which*) in aciē īnstrūctae erant, jam (*now*) in castra reductae sunt. Posterō diē, primā lūce, omnēs Rōmānī et Albānī ad locum idōneum convēnērunt. Horātii et Cūriātiī ēductī sunt. Signum proelii datum est. Frātrēs proelium committere nōn dubitāvērunt, sed māgnā cum fortitūdine impetum facere contendērunt. Primō impetū, duo (*two*) ex* Rōmānīs cecidērunt (*fell*) et omnēs Albānī vulnerātī sunt. Animī omnium Albānōrum spē victōriae cōfirmātī sunt; sed exercitus Rōmānus permōtus est māgnitūdine periculī.

Tum (*then*) trēs (*the three*) Albānī Rōmānum circumvenīre coepērunt, et Horātius in māgnō erat periculō. Impetum Cūriātiōrum nōn diū (*long*) sustinuit; coactus est cedere et salutem fugā petere. Rōmānī fugā Horātiī perterritī sunt, et Albānī conclāmāvērunt (*shouted*) "Victōria est certa; superātī sunt Rōmānī."

* Translate **ex** by *of* after numerals, **pauci** and **multi**,

Sed Horātius māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habuerat, et quoniam (*since*) ipse (*he himself*) integer erat et Cūriātii omnēs vulnerātī erant, simulāre (*to feign*) fugam cōstituerat et Cūriātiōs distrahere (*to separate*). Itaque (*accordingly*) propter gravia vulnera Albānōrum, facile erat trēs frātrēs distrahere et singillātīm (*one by one*) necāre. Tum Horātius ā Rōmānīs incolumis ad castra reductus est.



Tomb of Horatii and Curiatii at Alba.

LESSON XXIX.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

164. In the perfect and pluperfect tenses the passive voice in Latin, as has been observed, has compound forms (as in English), and the personal endings of the auxiliary verb **sum** are those of the active voice (139, 150); but in the present tense the difference between active and passive is expressed by using different personal endings.

ACTIVE.

-ō

-s

-t

-mus

-tis

-nt

PASSIVE.

-or

-ris

-tur

-mur

-minī

-ntur

165.

Paradigms.

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.
 1. 2. 3. 4. SINGULAR.

1. amor	moncor	regor	audior
2. amāris	monēris	regeris	audiris
3. amātur	monētur	regitur	audītur

PLURAL.

1. amāmur	monēmur	regimur	audīmur
2. amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī
3. amantur	monentur	reguntur	audiuntur

- a. In the present indicative, are the passive and active voices formed from the same principal part (138)?
 Is this the case in the perfect indicative (141)?

166.

Illustrative Examples.

Agrōs dant, <i>they give lands.</i>	Agrī dantur, <i>lands are given.</i>
Castra movent, <i>they are moving the camp.</i>	Castra moventur, <i>the camp is being moved.</i>
Cōpiās nōn mittit, <i>he does not send troops.</i>	Cōpiāe nōn mittuntur, <i>troops are not sent.</i>
Locum nōn mūnit, <i>he is not fortifying the place.</i>	Locus nōn mūnītur, <i>the place is not being fortified.</i>

- a. Examine the various ways in which the present tense is translated in the active and in the passive voice.

167.

VOCABULARY.

audāx, -ācis,	<i>bold, daring.</i>
con-tineō, ēre, uī, -tentum,	<i>restrain, hem in, enclose.</i>
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum,	<i>say, tell, speak.</i>
exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>think, consider.</i>
fīnitimus, a, um,	<i>neighbouring, adjacent; nom. plur.</i>
as substantive, <i>neighbours.</i>	
nihil, indeclinable, n.,	<i>nothing.</i>
periculōsus, a, um,	<i>dangerous.</i>
potēns, -entis,	<i>powerful.</i>
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum,	<i>keep, prevent.</i>
videor, passive of videō,	<i>1. be seen; 2. seem.</i>

N.B.—**Prohibeō** takes the present infinitive (complementary, 123), to be translated by *from* with the gerund in *-ing*, e.g. **prohibeor venīre**, *I am prevented from coming.*

EXERCISES.

168.

I.

1. Revocātur, revocāmur; cōguntur, cōgeris. 2. Impedior, impedimī; continēris, continentur. 3. Acies instruitur; castra mūniuntur. 4. Dīcitur; auditur. 5. Cōsiliū est audāx; nōn est periculōsum. 6. Nihil dedimus; nihil habēmus. 7. Exīstimantur pācem petere; pāx petitur. 8. Locī nātūrā continēmur. 9. Cōpiās comparāre videntur; cōpie comparantur. 10. A finitimis agrī Germānōrum vāstantur. 11. Multōs vicōs habēre dīcimī. 12. Circumvenimī; circumventī estis. 13. Caesarī, virō potentī, parēmus. 14. Coeperat dēspērāre; dēspērāre vīsus erat. 15. Finitimōs agrōs vāstāre prohibēmur. 16. Posterō diē castra moventur. 17. Paucās hōrās impetus sustinētur.

II.

1. He orders, he is ordered ; he compels, he is compelled. 2. They are stationing, they are being stationed; they are surrounding, they are being surrounded. 3. You (s) are ordered, we are compelled, I am stationed, you (pl) are being surrounded. 4. They give nothing; nothing is given. 5. It is dangerous; we are safe; there is a double trench. 6. We are enclosed by broad and deep rivers. 7. You are awaited by the consul. 8. We are not alarmed by the departure of the allies. 9. The town is being fortified; it is announced to Caesar. 10. He said nothing; nothing had been said. 11. You are called bold and powerful men. 12. We are prevented from sending messengers; messengers are sent to Caesar. 13. You are considered to have great experience. 14. We do not wage war with (our) neighbours. 15. The troops are seen from the camp; the army seems to be giving way. 16. The camp is being pitched across the river. 17. Part of the adjacent province is being laid waste.

LESSON XXX.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

169.

Illustrative Examples.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Lātus (gen. <i>lāti</i>), <i>broad</i> ;	lātior , <i>broad</i> er ;	lātissimus , <i>broad</i> est.
Fortis (gen. <i>fortis</i>), <i>brave</i> ;	fortior , <i>brave</i> r ;	fortissimus , <i>brave</i> st.
Audāx (gen. <i>audācis</i>), <i>bold</i> ;	audācior , <i>bold</i> er ;	audācissimus , <i>bold</i> est.
Potēns (gen. <i>potentis</i>), <i>powerful</i> ;	potentior , <i>more powerful</i> ;	potentissimus , <i>most powerful</i> .

- a.* The regular method of forming the comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives is illustrated above. What is substituted for the genitive ending (-ī or -is) to form the comparative? What is substituted to form the superlative?
- b.* The superlative degree is frequently used in Latin, as it sometimes is in English also, to indicate a high degree of the quality; as, **inīquissimum est**, *it is most (or very) unfair*.

170. The comparative and superlative degrees, like the positive, are declined, and agree in gender, number and case with the substantives to which they refer. The superlatives are all of the first and second declensions and are declined like **bonus** (65). The comparatives are of the third declension and are declined as follows:—

Paradigm.

COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES.

SINGULAR.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortior	fortius
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius
<i>Voc.</i>	fortior	fortius
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Voc.</i>	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

- a. Examine the ablative singular and the genitive plural of all genders, and also the nominative and accusative plural neuter. Are the endings like those of the nouns of the third declension (83 and 94), or like those of positive adjectives of the third declension (113)?

171.

VOCABULARY.

<i>brevis</i> , e, <i>short, brief.</i>	<i>nōbilis</i> , e, <i>noble, famous.</i>
<i>dēnsus</i> , a, um, <i>thick, dense.</i>	<i>novus</i> , a, um, <i>new.</i>
<i>fidēlis</i> , e, <i>faithful.</i>	<i>prūdēns</i> , -entis, <i>discreet.</i>
<i>fīrmus</i> , a, um, <i>strong.</i>	<i>ūtilis</i> , e, <i>useful.</i>

Phrases : iter faciō, march.

*certiōrem faciō dē, inform of, literally make (some one) more certain about.**

N.B.—*Novus* has no comparative and the superlative means *last, latest*, as in *novissimum agmen, the rear*. For *newer, newest* the comparative and superlative of *recēns* are used.

EXERCISES.

172.

I.

1. Flūmine lātissimō et altissimō continentur. 2. Longiōre itinere dūcimur. 3. Per dēnsissimās silvās iter fēcerant. 4. Tertiō diē ad flūmen lātius perveniunt. 5. Noctēs sunt breviōrēs; socii nōn erant fidēlēs. 6. Virō nōbilissimō et potentissimō filiam dat. 7. Caesarem dē novō cōsiliō certiōrem fēcērunt. 8. In novissimum agmēn merīdiē impetus factus erat. 9. Castra lātiōribus fossis mūniuntur. 10. Locus firmissimis praesidiis tenētur. 11. Prudentissima est puella; cōsiliū est ūtilius. 12. Multae rēs Gallōs ūtilēs amīcōs esse prohibent.

*In this phrase *certior* agrees with the object of the verb in the active voice; but with the subject if the verb is passive.

II.

1. They sought denser forests. 2. Deeper rivers seem to hem in the allies. 3. The daughters are discreet; the daughters were most discreet. 4. A stronger garrison is left. 5. We had marched the rest of the night. 6. The time is short; the time is shorter; the time is very short. 7. The hostages are the children of the noblest men. 8. They give their daughters to the sons of the more powerful chiefs. 9. He had been informed of the king's departure. 10. The bravest legions are stationed in the rear. 11. For many years he was a most useful and faithful friend. 12. He was informed by a famous soldier; you are hemmed in by a broader river.

LESSON XXXI.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

173. Illustrative Examples.

Caesarī est inimicus, *he is unfriendly to Caesar.*

Finitimī sunt Galliae, *they are adjacent to Gaul.*

Populō Rōmānō periculōsum est, *it is dangerous to the Roman people.*

- a. Observe how in these Latin sentences the adjective is completed by a dative denoting that to which the feeling or quality in question is directed.

This *Dative with Adjectives* is similar to the *Dative of the Indirect Object* with verbs (39) and is similarly translated.

- b. The adjectives so defined or completed are chiefly those meaning near, friendly, like, useful, agreeable, known, and their opposites.

174. Illustrative Examples.

Omnium Gallōrum sunt fortissimī, *of all the Gauls they are the bravest.*

Partem prōvinciae vāstant, *they lay waste part of the province.*

- a. Observe how the genitive is used in Latin to denote the *whole* of which a part is taken. The genitive thus expressing the whole is termed the *Partitive Genitive*.

175. Illustrative Examples.

Reliquās legiōnēs mittit, *he sends the rest of the legions (the remaining legions).*

In mediō flūmine est, *it is in the middle of the river (in mid-stream).*

- a. Certain relations, as *the remainder*, and such local parts of anything as the *top, middle, bottom, beginning, end*, Latin prefers to express not by the partitive genitive, but by an adjective in agreement, which regularly precedes its noun.

176.

VOCABULARY.

dis-similis, e, <i>unlike, dissimilar.</i>	pa-ter, -tris, m., <i>father.</i>
frā-ter, -tris, m., <i>brother.</i>	pū-blicus, a, um, <i>belong-</i>
incō-gnitus, a, um, <i>unknown.</i>	<i>ing to the people, public.</i>
inū-tilis, e, <i>useless.</i>	similis, e, <i>like, similar.</i>
mā-ter, -tris, f., <i>mother.</i>	sor-or, -ōris, f., <i>sister.</i>
nō-tus, a, um, <i>known, familiar.</i>	

Phrases : rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, f., the public interest, public business, the state.

pār esse, be a match (for).

EXERCISES

177.

I.

1. Frāter sorōrī incōgnitus erat. 2. Gallī finitimī Belgīs erant. 3. Caesarī es fidēlis. 4. Potentissimus principum est. 5. Dē rē pūblicā nōn dēspērāmus. 6. Mediā circiter nocte ad reliquum exercitum perveniunt. 7. Gallī nōn parēs sunt Belgīs. 8. Caesarī esse inimicī exīstimāmur. 9. Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sumus. 10. Filii patrī et mātīrī pārent. 11. Cōnsilium rei pūblicae periculōsum est. 12. Periculūm commūne omnibus esse vidētur. 13. Ītalia Britanniae* dissimilis est. 14. Media īnsula incolīs est inūtilis. 15. Multis militum nihil nōtum erat.

II.

1. They had sent the noblest of the Britons to Caesar. 2. They seem to be friendly and faithful to Caesar. 3. The harbours are unknown to the Gauls. 4. The war began to be dangerous to the state. 5. At dawn they joined battle in the middle of the forest. 6. They had marched for a large part of the day. 7. The daughter is like* (her) father; the sons are like (their) mother. 8. Nothing was more useful to the senate. 9. The brothers are unfriendly to (their) sister. 10. He had been informed by the more daring of the brothers. 11. Peace is not similar to war. 12. The nights are unlike the days. 13. The slave's faithfulness is known to all. 14. The lakes are like large rivers. 15. Children do not give orders to (their) fathers and mothers.

* After *like* and *unlike*, the preposition *to* is now generally omitted.

LESSON XXXII.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS : FUTURE
INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

178. Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnābit, *he will fight.* Vidēbimus, *we shall see.*Vocābis, *you will call.* Tenēbitis, *you will hold.*

- a. What new element is found in these Latin verbs between the present stem and the personal ending ?
- b. Notice the translation of these Latin forms, which, like their English equivalents, are said to be in the *Future Tense*.

179. Paradigms.

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

*First Conjugation.**Second Conjugation.*] *I SHALL FIGHT.* SINGULAR.

1. amābō	-ā-b-ō	monēbō	-ē-b-ō
2. amābis	-ā-bi-s	monēbis	-ē-bi-s
3. amābit	-ā-bi-t	monēbit	-ē-b-it

PLURAL.

1. amābimus	-ā-bi-mus	monēbimus	-ē-bi-mus
2. amābitis	-ā-bi-tis	monēbitis	-ē-bi-tis
3. amābunt	-ā-bu-nt	monēbunt	-ē-bu-nt

- a. Notice that in the first person singular *i* of **-bi-** is omitted before **-ō**, and that in the third person plural **bi** becomes **bu** before **-nt**. What is the quantity of the vowel in **-bi-** ?

180. In Latin, as in English, adjectives are often used as substantives, especially in the plural, the masculine denoting a class of persons, the neuter a class or number of things; as omnēs, all people, everybody;

omnia, all things, everything; bonī, good people, the good; bona, goods, property. So multī, multa, paucī, reliquī, and many others.

N.B.—In the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, where the gender is not determined by the case-ending, rēs should be used instead of the neuter; as, omnium rērum, of everything.

181.

VOCABULARY.

causa, ae, f., cause, reason.

dē, prep. with abl., 1, down from, from; 2, concerning. — *down from.*

dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead off, withdraw.

dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, lay down; deposit.

dē-siliō, ire, -siliuī, -sultum, leap down.

dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum, (frighten off) deter, hinder.

dē-tineō, ēre, uī, -tentum, detain, delay.

imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, demand, require. *ask*

locus, ī, m., place; in plural, loca, ōrum, n., places, ground, district.

per-tineō, ēre, uī, -tentum, extend, tend. *ask + accurate*

Phrases with causa (notice the order throughout):

multīs dē causīs, for (literally from) many reasons

Hum - pācis causā, for the sake of peace (literally from the reason of peace).

frūmentī causā, for the purpose of (getting) corn; to get corn.

N.B.—(a) The prefix dē is used in compounds to denote (1) *down*, (2) *from*, *off*.

(b) With imperō, the dative denotes the person to whom orders are given; the accusative denotes that which is demanded or ordered; as,

Equitibus imperat, he gives orders to the cavalry;

Equitēs rēgī imperat, he demands cavalry from the king.

EXERCISES.

182.

I.

1. Multis dē causis in Galliā hiemābimus. 2. Rēx cōpiās parābit; cōpiae rēgī pārēbunt. 3. Nihil vidēbitis. 4. Adventum auxiliōrum nōn exspectābō. 5. Obsidibus imperat; obsidēs Gallis imperābat; māgnū numerum obsidum Galliae imperābit. 6. Belgae pertinent ad flūmen Rhēnum. 7. Rei pūblicae causā impetum sustinēbimus. 8. Dē omnibus rēbus dēspērās; omnia relinquis. 9. Mīlitēs dē vāllō dēdūcit. 10. Omnia loca occupābimus. 11. Amicitiae causā agrōs finitimis concēdere nōn dubitābis. 12. Nihil exercitum dētīnēbit. 13. Multa Caesarem dēterrēbunt. 14. Ex equīs ad pedēs dēsiluērunt. 15. Bonōs necābunt; bona nōbilium habēbunt. 16. Bellī causā cōpiās comparābō. 17. Imperium dēposuit.

II.

1. We shall not fight without reason. 2. At dawn they will move the camp. 3. I shall give the signal. 4. You will have everything; we shall have an abundance of everything. 5. For the sake of the common safety they will give hostages. 6. They leap down from the wall. 7. I shall demand cavalry and infantry from the rest. 8. You will not venture to wage war for a slight cause. 9. The forest used to extend to the bank of the river Rhine. 10. The place is unknown to all; the ground was known to everybody. 11. Nothing will deter the senate and Roman people. 12. Everything had been withdrawn from the fields. 13. It will tend to (ad) the safety of the good. 14. He has many to assist him (*literally*, for the sake of aid). 15. On account of the lack of everything we shall not hesitate

to lay down (our) arms. 16. You will not delay the victory. 17. He will demand a large supply of corn from the king's brother.

183.

WORD LIST C.

TIME.

day	daybreak	night	year
daily	noon	midnight	time
next day	hour	watch	

FAMILY.

father	brother	son	children
mother	sister	daughter	

MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

faith	thing	rampart	reason
hope	nothing	ground	light
experience	everything	part	state

 ADJECTIVES WITH *to* : IN LATIN WITH DATIVE.

adjacent	like	common	known
friendly	unlike	useful	unknown
unfriendly	equal	useless	dangerous
faithful			

MISCELLANEOUS ADJECTIVES.

bold	noble	thick	military
discreet	new	strong	famous
powerful	following	short	

VERBS.

say	prevent	influence	extend
think	hinder	alarm	drive
seem	restrain	terrify	lead out
inform	detain	grant	send out
name	hesitate	require	drive out
demand			leap down

WAR.

halt	yield	lay down arms
march	defeat	draw up line of battle
retire	drive back	make an attack
the rear	surround	withstand an attack
repulse	give way	the art of war
withdraw (transitive and intransitive)		

READING LESSON VI.

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME (753-510 B.C.)

184.

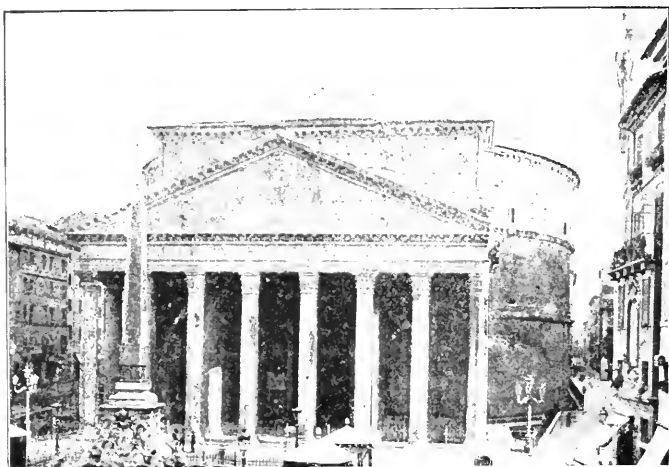
VOCABULARY.

creō, āre, āvī, ātum, *elect, choose.*Etrūria, ae, f., *Etruria*, the district north of Rome.Latīnī, ōrum, m., *the Latins*, dwelling in Latium.lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*nūllus, a, um, *no (adjective).*urbs, urbis, f., *city.*

Primō (*at first*) populus Rōmānus rēgibus pārēbat. Septem (*seven*) rēgēs Rōmae (*at Rome*) imperium obtinēbant. Primus rēx, Rōmulus, urbem condidit (*founded*). Rōmam mūrīs mūnīvit et multitudinem hominum in urbem coēgit. Senātum creāvit et senātōrēs (*the senators*) Patrēs appellāvit. Multa bella cum finitimīs gerēbat.

Numa, rēx secūndus, nūllum bellum gessit, sed nūllus rēx ūtilior rei pūblicae erat. Lēgēs aequās populō Rōmānō dedit, et multa templa (*temples*) īstituit (*established*).

Tertius rēx, Tullus Hostīlius, vir fortissimus erat et audācissimus. Bella cum finitimīs renovāvit et māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbat. Levi dē causā bellum cum Albānīs gessit et multōs finitimōs superāvit.



THE PANTHEON.



INTERIOR OF THE PANTHEON.

Ancus Mārcius, rēx quārtus, Tullō dissimilis erat, et Numae similior. Salūtis commūnis causā Rōmam novīs mūrīs firmāvit et portum fēcit apud (*at*) ōstium (*the mouth*) flūminis Tiberis.

Tum (*then*) Tarquinius Priscus, quī (*who*) in urbem ab Etrūriā pervēnerat, rēx creātus est. Tarquinius in bellō et in pāce nōbilis erat. Multa oppida occupāvit et agrum Rōmānum lātiōrem fēcit.

Servius Tullius, rēx sextus, prūdentissimus erat omnium rēgum. Pauca bella gessit sed multa cōsilia cēpit (*formed*) quae (*which*) ad salūtem rei pūblicae pertinēbant. Pācem cum Latinīs cōfirmāvit et princīpātum omnium finitimōrum populōrum obtinēbat. Septem collēs (*hills*) māgnīs et firmīs mūnitiōnibus cīnxit (*surrounded*). Post multōs annōs ā Tarquiniō, filiō rēgis quīnti, necātus est.

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus (*last*) rēgum, homō iniquus et audāx erat. Filium habēbat quem (*whom*) Sextum appellābat. Propter injūriās ipsius (*of himself*) et Sexti, rēx imperium dēpōnere coāctus est et ex urbe expulsus est.

Post discessum Tarquiniōrum, senātus et princīpēs rem pūblicam administrābant (*governed*), et Rōmānī cōsulēs (*consuls, acc. case*) creāre coepērunt.

LESSON XXXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION : I-STEMS.

185. The Third Declension includes also nouns whose stem ends in **i**, instead of in a consonant as in Lessons XIII. and XV. The difference is observable chiefly in the genitive plural, which, in **i**-stems, has **-ium** instead of **-um**, and in the nominative and accusative plural of

neuters, which have **-ia** instead of **-a**. Occasionally the ablative singular ends in **-ī** (regularly so in the neuter nouns), and more rarely the accusative singular ends in **-im**. Otherwise the declension of consonant stems and **i**-stems is identical.

186.

Paradigms.

THIRD DECLENSION, I-STEMS.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	hostis (<i>enemy</i>)	nūbēs (<i>cloud</i>)	animal (<i>animal</i>)
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	nūbis	animālis
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	nūbī	animālī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	nūbem	animal
<i>Voc.</i>	hostis	nūbēs	animal
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	nūbe	animālī

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	nūbēs	animālia
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	nūbium	animālium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostēs (īs)*	nūbēs (īs)*	animālia
<i>Voc.</i>	hostēs	nūbēs	animālia
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	nūbibus	animālibus

187. (a) Most masculine and feminine **i**-stems have **-is** in the nominative singular and are declined like **hostis**. A few like **īgnis** and **nāvis** have **-ī** as well as **-e** in the ablative singular.†

(b) Notice the difference between nouns in **-es** or **-ēs** increasing (i.e. in number of syllables) in the genitive, and nouns in **-ēs** not increasing in the genitive. The

* The accusative plural in **-īs**, as **hostīs**, **nūbīs**, is avoided in introductory books.

† Unless some irregularity is specially mentioned, nouns in **-is** used in this book should be declined like **hostis**.

former are consonant stems (see 86), as *mīles*, *eques*, *pēs*; the latter are *i*-stems. (So also with nouns in *-is*.)

(c) The only frequently occurring neuter *i*-stem is *mare*, *the sea*; Singular, Nom., Acc. and Voc. *mare*, Gen. *maris*, Dat. and Abl. *marī*. Plural, Nom., Acc. and Voc. *maria*, Gen. only once found, in the form *marum*, Dat. and Abl. *maribus*.

188. Certain consonant stems of the third declension have been so far affected by the nearly similar declension of the *i*-stems that they may be classed separately as *mixed stems*. These include masculine and feminine nouns of three kinds: (a) nouns ending in *-ns* or *-rs*, (b) monosyllables in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a consonant, and (c) nouns in *-tās*. These are declined like consonant stems in the singular; like *i*-stems in the plural. The nouns in *-tās*, however, have both *-um* and *-ium* in the genitive plural.

189.

Paradigms.

THIRD DECLENSION: MIXED STEMS.

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cohors</i> (<i>cohort</i>)	<i>urbs</i> (<i>city</i>)	<i>cīvitās</i> (<i>state</i>)
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cohortis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>cīvitātis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cohortī</i>	<i>urbī</i>	<i>cīvitātī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cohortem</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>cīvitātem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>cohors</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>cīvitās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cohorte</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>cīvitāte</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>cohortēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>cīvitātēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cohortium</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>cīvitātum or cīvitātium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cohortibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>cīvitātibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>cohortēs (īs)</i>	<i>urbēs (īs)</i>	<i>cīvitātēs (īs)</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>cohortēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>cīvitātēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>cohortibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>cīvitātibus</i> .

190. (a) Review the case-endings of adjectives of the third declension (113) which, it will be seen, regularly follow the declension of *i*-stems.

(b) Review also the rules for gender in the third declension (95), to which should now be added the following :

Nouns in *-is* (with many important exceptions), and nouns in *-ēs* not increasing in the genitive, are feminine; nouns in *-e*, *-al* and *-ar* are neuter.

191.

VOCABULARY.

cīvis, is, m. f., *citizen*.

cīvi-tās, -tātis, f., *citizenship; state, country*.

fīnis, is, m., *end; in plural, borders, territory*.

hostis, is, m. (usually in plural), *enemy*.

mare, is, n., *sea*.

mōns, montis, m., *mountain*.

nāvis, is, f., *ship*.

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.

Tamesis, is, m. (acc. -im, abl. -ī), *the Thames*.

Tiberis, is, m. (acc. -im, abl. -ī), *the Tiber*.

Phrase: *nāvis longa*, *war-ship, war-galley*.

navis oneraria
EXERCISES.

192.

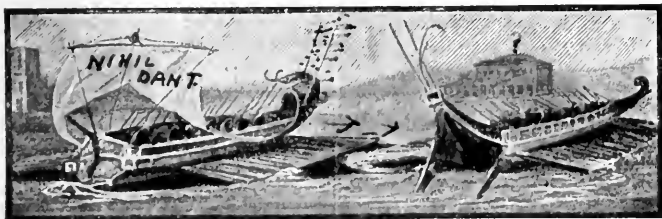
I.

1. *Cīvis Rōmānus sum; cīvitatē habeo.* 2. *Dē nāvibus dēsiliunt.* 3. *In fīnibus hostium hiemābunt.* 4. *Propter altitudinem maris ex nāvī dēsilire nōn audent.* 5. *Castra in altissimō monte posita erant.* 6. *Mare est ūtile; maria sunt ūtiliōra.* 7. *Fīnitimīs cīvitatibus nāvēs longās imperābit.* 8. *Māgnīs itineribus ad flūmen Tamesim hostēs contendunt.* 9. *Posterā nocte cīvibus fugam hostium nūntiāvi.* 10. *In ōceanō et in reliquīs maribus multās nāvēs longās habēbant.* 11. *Lēgātī ā*

reliquis civitatibus venerant. 12. Finēs lātissimōs habere videntur. 13. Rēs pūblica nāvi similis esse dicitur. 14. Impetum hostium māgnam partem diēi sustinent. 15. Multis civitās data est.

II.

1. They assembled from all parts of the state. 2. The forest extends from the mountains to the sea. 3. He collects a large number of soldiers and of war-ships. 4. The mountains had been seized by the enemy. 5. The leading men of all the states assembled at midnight. 6. There was a bridge over (*literally* on) the river Tiber. 7. We had marched from the enemy's territories to the neighbouring state. 8. They hasten by night through the midst of the enemy. 9. The seas are thought to be dangerous. 10. The Romans called the river Tiber. 11. On account of the scarcity of ships they had made a bridge. 12. The sea is enclosed by very high mountains. 13. On account of the height of the mountains they left part of (their) baggage. 14. He will carry back the goods of the Roman citizens in the war-galleys. 15. I have said nothing about citizenship.



Naves Longae : War-galleys.

LESSON XXXIV.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

193. Adjectives ending in **-er** (whether of the first and second declensions or of the third declension) form the comparative regularly (169), but form the superlative by changing **-er** to **-errimus**; as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
liber	liberior	liberrimus
acer	acrior	acerrimus

194. Six adjectives in **-ilis** form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by changing **-ilis** to **-illimus**; as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis	facilior	facillimus
similis	similior	simillimus

These adjectives are **facilis**, **difficilis**, **similis**, **dissimilis**, **gracilis** (*slender*), **humilis** (*low*). Other adjectives in **-ilis**, e.g. **nobilis** and **utilis**, are regular; as, **nobilis**, **nobilior**, **nobilissimus**.

195. Many adjectives in common use are in Latin, as in English, quite irregular in their comparison. The following are the most important of these:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus , <i>good</i> .	melior , <i>better</i> .	optimus , <i>best</i> .
malus , <i>bad</i> .	pējor , <i>worse</i> .	pessimus , <i>worst</i> .
māgnus , <i>great, large</i> .	mājor , <i>greater, larger</i> .	māximus , <i>greatest, largest</i> .
parvus , <i>small, little</i> .	minor , <i>smaller, less</i> .	minimus , <i>smallest, least</i> .
multus , <i>much, many</i> .	plūs , <i>more</i> .	plūrimus , <i>most</i> .

196. The positive of the following is either lacking or rare :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
	prior, <i>former.</i>	prīmus, <i>first.</i>
	xpropior, <i>nearer.</i>	proximus, <i>nearest,</i> <i>next.</i>
	ulterior, <i>farther.</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest.</i>
exterus, <i>outside.</i>	exterior, <i>outer.</i>	extrēmus (extimus), <i>outermost.</i>
inferus, <i>below.</i>	inferior, <i>lower.</i>	īnfimus, īmus, <i>lowest.</i>
superus, <i>above.</i>	superior, <i>higher,</i>	suprēmus, <i>last ;</i> <i>upper ; former.</i>
		summus, <i>highest.</i>

197.

Paradigm.

DECLENSION OF plūs.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

N.B.—**Complūrēs** (used in the plural only), *several*, is a compound of **plūrēs**, and is declined like it.

* a. Plūs in the singular occurs only in the neuter, which is used as a substantive and never as an adjective in agreement.

b. All other comparatives and superlatives are declined regularly, as in 170. Notice especially that the neuter of **māior** is **mājus**, and of **minor**, **minus**, the genitives being **mājōris** and **minōris** respectively.

198.

VOCABULARY.

plūrēs or complūrēs ,	<i>several</i> , lit. <i>more</i> (than one).
prīma lūx ,	<i>daybreak</i> , <i>dawn</i> .
proximus diēs ;	<i>the next day</i> .
ultimus or extrēmus ,	<i>most distant</i> ; <i>remotest</i> .
superiōra loca ,	<i>higher ground</i> , <i>heights</i> .
superior annus ,	<i>the previous</i> (or <i>preceding</i>) <i>year</i> .
summum periculum ,	<i>the greatest</i> (or <i>extreme</i>) <i>danger</i> .
summa virtūs ,	<i>very great</i> (or <i>signal</i>) <i>valour</i> .
summus mōns ,	<i>the top of the mountain</i> (175).
īnfimus (or īmus) mōns ,	<i>the foot of the mountain</i> (175).

EXERCISES.

199.

I.

1. Belgae proximī sunt Germānis. 2. In inferiōre parte flūminis pontēs sunt plūrimī. 3. Summa erat omnium rērum inopia. 4. Primā lūce mājōrem multitudinem nāvium ab ulteriōre portū mīsīt. 5. Proximā nocte superiōra loca occupant. 6. Superiōre annō mājus oppidum minōre cum periculō expūgnāverant. 7. Optimae rēs nōn sunt facillimae. 8. Complūrēs sunt parēs. 9. Omnēs superiōrēs diēs summum montem tenēbat. 10. In extrēmīs hostium finibus oppida sunt crēberrima. 11. Primō impetū repulsī sunt. 12. Iter per proximās cīvitatēs facillimum erat.

II.

1. The depth of the river is very great. 2. They hasten to the nearest ship. 3. The previous winter he had collected very many war-ships and very large forces. 4. Nothing is better. 5. It is the most distant town of the enemy. 6. For the larger part of the year the roads are very difficult. 7. It is best to hasten to the

upper part of the island. 8. On his first approach he demanded hostages from several states. 9. The trench extended from the foot of the mountain to the outer fortifications. 10. The next day they fortified a smaller camp on the higher ground. 11. On account of their signal valour they are the freest and noblest of the citizens. 12. He had been informed by very frequent despatches.

LESSON XXXV.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

200. Illustrative Examples.

Mittēs, you will send. Audiēs, you will hear.
Mittēmus, we shall send. Audiētis, you will hear.

a. Notice that in these Latin future forms, the present stem has -e- changed to -ē- in the third conjugation, and -i- changed to -iē- in the fourth conjugation.

201. Paradigms.

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

Third Conjugation. Fourth Conjugation.

I SHALL, RULE. SINGULAR.

1. regam	-a-m	audiam	-i-a-m
2. regēs	-ē-s	audiēs	-i-ē-s
3. reget	-e-t	audiet	-i-e-t

PLURAL.

1. regēmus	-ē-mus	audiēmus	-i-ē-mus
2. regētis	-ē-tis	audiētis	-i-ē-tis
3. regent	-e-nt	audient	-i-e-nt

- a. What letter replaces *-ē-* as the sign of the future tense in the first person singular? What is the personal ending in the first person singular? Before what endings is *-ē-* changed to *-e-* (78. *b*)?
- b. Compare the formation of the future tense in the first and second conjugations (178) with that in the third and fourth conjugations.

202.

VOCABULARY.

<i>celer, eris, ere,</i>	<i>swift, speedy.</i>
<i>celeri-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>swiftness, speed.</i>
<i>cohor-s, -tis, f.,</i>	<i>cohort (one-tenth of a legion).</i>
<i>collis, is, m.,</i>	<i>hill.</i>
<i>difficul-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>difficulty.</i>
<i>dux, ducis, m.,</i>	<i>leader, guide.</i>
<i>facul-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>opportunity.</i>
<i>liber-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>freedom.</i>
<i>pauci-tās, -tātis, f.,</i>	<i>fewness, small number.</i>
<i>regi-ō, -ōnis, f.,</i>	<i>district, country, region.</i>

N.B.—The suffix *-tās* is used to form from adjectives abstract nouns denoting quality or condition. It appears in English as *-ty*.

EXERCISES.

203.

I.

A.—1. Nihil audiēs; omnia vidēbis. 2. Ab extrēmīs regiōnibus venient. 3. Hostēs omnēs collēs tenent. 4. Propter paucitātem portuum summa erat difficultās. 5. Spē libertātis adductus eram. 6. Partem cohortis ēmittit. 7. Omnēs inimicōs ex cīvitāte expellēmus. 8. Primō impetū hostēs pellētis. 9. Celerrimīs hostium facultās fugae datur.

B.—10. Sine duce venīre cōstituent; sine ducibus venīre dubitābunt. 11. In summō colle aciem instruam.

12. Commūnis libertātis causā multōs annōs bellum gerēmus. 13. Nāvis dīcitur esse celerrima. 14. Māgnā cum celeritāte contendēmus. 15. Mājōrēs cōpiās ex finitimīs regiōnibus dēducet. 16. Reliquās cohortēs in silvas collēsq̄ue compellunt. 17. Plūrimae difficultātēs Caesarem impediēt.

204.

II.

A.—1. The leading men of the district will assemble. 2. We shall pitch (our) camp on the top of the hill. 3. Several had been dismayed by the enemy's swift-ness. 4. He will not grant freedom to the citizens. 5. You will withdraw out of the state. 6. He has been informed of the difficulty by the guides. 7. We had ascertained the small number of the cavalry and cohorts. 8. I shall withdraw the baggage to the nearest hill. 9. Ships are swift; the horses were swifter.

B.—10. The fourth and seventh cohorts* halt on the heights. 11. Several have been surrounded by the enemy. 12. The guides have found out the road. 13. He will lead out all the cavalry with several cohorts. 14. He will give the rest an opportunity for (*literally* of) flight. 15. We shall hasten to lay down (our) arms. 16. On account of the speed of the cohorts, you will reach the sea about midday. 17. They will leave (their) plunder across the river Thames.

C.—Decline the following combinations: *nāvis longa*, *iter difficile*, *homō nōbilis*, *vir nōbilio*, *mare māgnū*, *castra mājōra*, *rēs pūblica* (*s.*), *complūres diēs* (*pl.*), *māior pars*, *flūmen Tiberis* (*s.*), *altius vāllum*, *exercitus integer*, *aciēs duplex* (*s.*), *reliquī Belgae* (*pl.*).

* A plural noun may be modified by two (or more) adjectives in the singular.

LESSON XXXVI.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND
DECLENSIONS.

205.

Paradigms.

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus (21st)	ūna	ūnum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Voc.</i>	ūne	ūna	ūnum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>Voc.</i>	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	neuter	neutra	neutrum
<i>Gen.</i>	neutrius	neutrius	neutrius
<i>Dat.</i>	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī
<i>Acc.</i>	neutrum	neutram	neutrum
<i>Abl.</i>	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	neutrī	neutrae	neutra
<i>Gen.</i>	neutrōrum	neutrārum	neutrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	neutrōs	neutrās	neutra
<i>Abl.</i>	neutrīs	neutrīs	neutrīs

- (a) Notice that while these adjectives have for the most part the regular endings of the first and second declensions, yet the genitive and dative singular are irregular, and have the same form in all genders. The adjectives which show this irregularity are nine in number, and are given in the vocabulary below.

206.

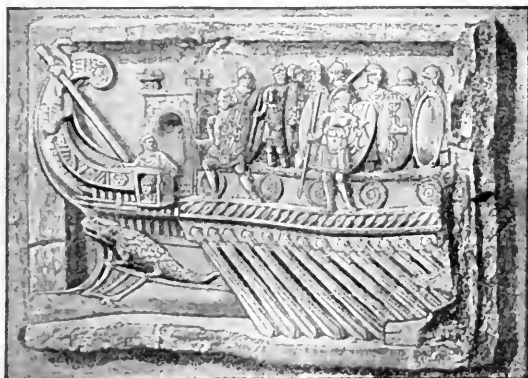
Illustrative Examples.

Alia loca fossis, alia vallis muniēbat, some places he was fortifying with trenches, others with walls.

Altera legiō in Galliā hiemat, altera in Italiā, the one legion is wintering in Gaul, the other in Italy.

Reliquās (or ceterās) legiōnēs in aciē instruit, the other legions he draws up in line.

- a. In these sentences observe (1) the force of **alius** and **alter** when repeated in distinct clauses, (2) the use of **reliqui** or **ceteri** for *the others, the rest*, while **alii** means merely *others*.



Navis Longa : War-ship.

207.

VOCABULARY.

alius, a, ud, *other, another.*

alii . . *alii*, *some . . others.*

alter, era, erum, *the other (of two).*

alter . . *alter*, *the one . . the other.*

cēterī, ae, a (in plur. only), *the others, the rest.*

neuter, tra, trum, *neither.*

nūllus, a, um, *no, none.*

sōlus, a, um, *alone, only.*

tōtus, a, um, *all, the whole.*

ūllus, a, um, *any.*

ūnus, a, um, *one; alone, only.*

uter, tra, trum, *which (of two), used in questions.*

N.B.—Notice that while *alter* retains *e* in declension, *neuter* and *uter* drop it. The genitive singular of *alter* has *-ius*; in all the other words the ending is *-ius*.

Notice also the additional irregularity in the neuter singular nominative and accusative of *alius*. The genitive singular of *alius* is *aliūs* (although *alterius* is generally used instead), and the dative *aliī*.

EXERCISES.

208.

I.

A.—1. *Aliō tempore conveniunt.* 2. *Neuter ducum proelium committere audēbit.* 3. *Alteram partem vici Gallis concēdit, alteram cohortibus.* 4. *Sine ūllō periculō castra mūniunt.* 5. *Ab aliīs audiunt; ā cētērīs audient.* 6. *In utrā flūminis rīpā castra posuērunt?* 7. *Tōta castra hominībus complentur.* 8. *Alia cōsilia rei pūblicae sunt ūtilia, alia periculōsa.*

B.—9. *Cum sōlā decimā legiōne proelium committam.* 10. *Nūlla civitās obsidēs mittet.* 11. *Tōtī Galliae*

equitēs imperāvit. 12. Alterum iter erat facilius. 13. Aliud iter habēmus nūllum. 14. Belgae ūnī nōn lēgātōs mittunt. 15. Cēterī portūs aliis nōtī sunt, aliis incōgnitī. 16. Alter portus Gallis nōtus erat, alter Britannīs. 17. Neutra īnsula idōneōs portūs habet.

209.

II.

A.—1. He gives orders to the whole province. 2. He orders some to fill the trenches, others to attack the walls. 3. To which is it more useful? It is useful to neither. 4. They made an attack from another part of the town. 5. He places the baggage of the whole army on the other bank of the river. 6. No ship is swifter; none of the ships will reach harbour. 7. They hinder others without any reason. 8. He will give freedom to the ambassador only.

B.—9. He hastened to the other camp. 10. To which camp (of the two) did the others hasten? 11. They were fortifying the heights during the whole of the night. 12. Some will lay down (their) arms, others will give hostages. 13. Neither line will begin the battle. 14. He is the brother of the one, the friend of the other. 15. They seem to be unfriendly to Caesar alone. 16. He is like no other leader.

C.—Decline the following combinations: mīles Rōmānus, vulnus grave, aliud tempus, reliqua cohors, min⁹ periculum, rēx sōlus, alia rēs; (in the singular only) alter portus, nūlla spēs, media nox, militāris ūsus, neutra īnsula, idōneus locus, ūnum latus, neuter frāter, dextrum cornū, nūllum aliud iter, utra legiō, novissimum agmen, summus mōns, tōta prōvincia, ūlla cīvītās, tertia vigilia, prīma lūx, alius obses, altera rīpa, nūllus impetus; (in the plural only) alia hiberna, cēterī cīvēs, superiōra loca.

LESSON XXXVII.

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

210.

Paradigms.

(a) IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.

SINGULAR.

1. amā <u>b</u> ar*	monēbar	regēbar	audiēbar
2. amā <u>b</u> aris	monēbāris	regēbāris	audiēbāris
3. amā <u>b</u> ātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	audiēbātur

PLURAL.

1. amā <u>b</u> āmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	audiēbāmur
2. amā <u>b</u> āminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	audiēbāminī
3. amā <u>b</u> antur	monēbantur	regēbantur	audiēbantur

(b) FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

SINGULAR.

1. amā <u>b</u> or†	monēbor	regar	audiar
2. amā <u>b</u> eris	monēberis	regēris	audiēris
3. amā <u>b</u> itur	monēbitur	regētur	audiētur

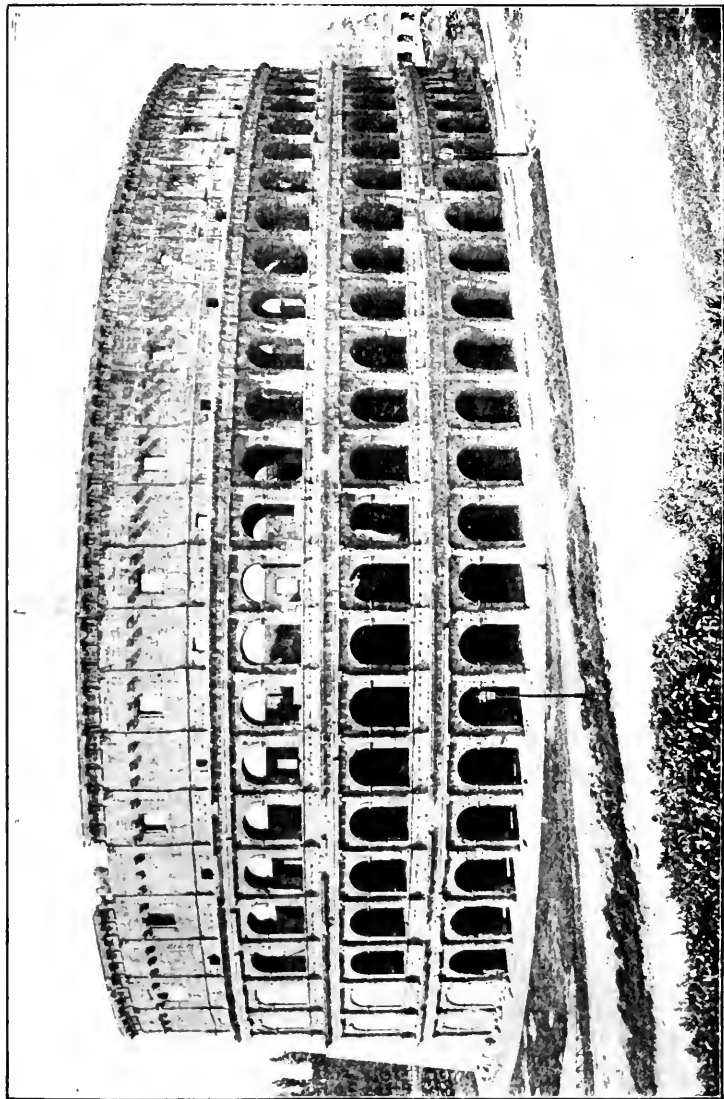
PLURAL.

1. amā <u>b</u> imur	monēbimur	regēmur	audiēmur
2. amā <u>b</u> iminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	audiēminī
3. amā <u>b</u> untur	monēbuntur	regentur	audientur

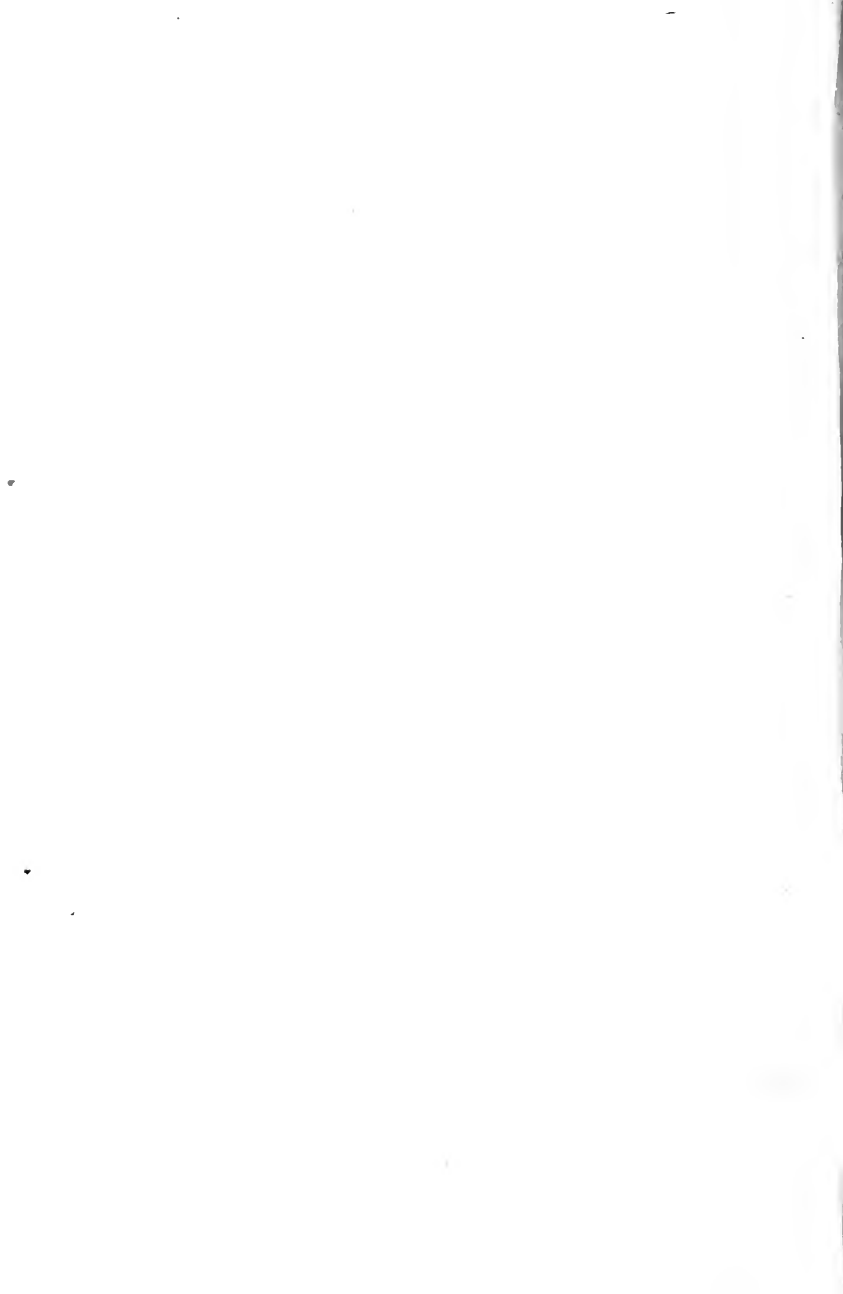
- (a) Compare these forms with those of the imperfect and future indicative active (44, 89, 179, 201), and also with those of the present indicative passive (164, 165). In particular, notice the replacing of **-m** by **-r**, and of **-bis** by **-beris**.

* **Amābar** is translated *I was being loved, I used to be loved or I was loved* (119).

† **Amābor** is translated *I shall be loved*.



THE COLOSSEUM OR FLAVIAN AMPHITHEATRE.



- (b) Here it would be well to review in each conjugation the three tenses of the indicative (active and passive) formed from the present stem.

211.

VOCABULARY.

dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,	<i>choose.</i>
dī-vidō, ere, -vīsī, -vīsum,	<i>divide.</i>
in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -cēsum,	<i>burn.</i>
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum,	<i>loose, release.</i>

Phrases : nāvem or nāvēs solvō, set sail.
in fugam dō, put to flight.

EXERCISES.

212.

I.

A.—1. Mittimus, mittimur, mittēmur. 2. Oppida oppūgnantur; hiberna expūgnābuntur. 3. Impediēbātur, impediēbar. 4. Expellēbar, expellar. 5. Hostēs in fugam dabimus. 6. Nāvēs solvet; servus solvētur. 7. Dīviditur, dīviduntur. 8. Oppidum incendēbātur. 9. Locum dēligunt; legiōnēs dēligēbantur. 10. Mōns tenētur; imperium ā Caesare obtinēbātur; impetus sustinēbitur.

B.—11. Lēgātī retinentur; montibus continēbantur; nāvēs dētinēbuntur. 12. Vocāmur, convocābāmur, revocābiminī. 13. Castra moventur; castra pōnentur. 14. Expelleris, repellēris. 15. Audīris, audiēris. 16. Fidēlis esse exīstimābar. 17. Jubēminī, jubēbor. 18. Superābāminī, superāberis. 19. Circumveniētur, circumveniēmur. 20. Rēx et amīcus appellābātur.

213.

II.

A.—1. It will be divided; they used to be divided. 2. It will be carried; we shall be carried back. 3. The camp is being pitched; the camp will be burned. 4. We

are being surrounded; I was being surrounded. 5. He is putting the troops to flight; the signal is given. 6. They are setting sail; they have set sail. 7. They will be chosen; they will be summoned. 8. You are called brother; you will be called brothers. 9. You seem to be brothers; you seemed to be sisters.

B.—10. We are hemmed in by the rivers; the camp will be fortified by the cavalry. 11. It is being filled, it was being filled, it will be filled. 12. It is being fortified, it was being fortified, it will be fortified. 13. I am led, I was being led out, I shall be led back. 14. You used to be sent, we shall be sent out; the battle is begun. 15. You (s. *and* pl.) were thought to be unfriendly. 16. They are hindered, we shall be hindered (*use both dēterreō and impediō*). 17. I shall be surrounded, I shall be seen. 18. I used to be called free; I seemed to be a slave. 19. You will be surrounded; we were being surrounded. 20. You will seem to be unfriendly; you will be compelled to set sail.

LESSON XXXVIII.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

214. In the following list of cardinal numerals these points should be carefully observed* :—

- (a) the similarity in form of the cardinal and ordinal numerals (156);
- (b) the method of forming the numerals from *eleven* to *nineteen* inclusive;
- (c) the manner of expressing *twenty-one*, *twenty-two*, *one hundred and one* and similar numbers;

* It is not necessary at this stage to commit the whole list to memory.

- (d) the different ways of expressing *eighteen*, *nineteen*, *twenty-eight*, *twenty-nine*, and similar numbers ;
- (e) the ending of the tens from 30 to 90 inclusive in **-gintā** ; of the hundreds from 200 to 900 inclusive in **-centī** or **-gentī**.

215.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. ūnus, <i>one</i> | |
| 2. duo, <i>two</i> | 28. { duodētrīgintā |
| 3. trēs, <i>three</i> | { vīgintī octō |
| 4. quattuor, <i>four</i> | { octō et vīgintī |
| 5. quīnque | 29. { ūndētrīgintā |
| 6. sex | { vīgintī novem |
| 7. septem | { novem et vīgintī |
| 8. octō | 30. trīgintā |
| 9. novem | 40. quadrāgintā |
| 10. decem | 50. quīnquāgintā |
| 11. ūndecim | 60. sexāgintā |
| 12. duodecim | 70. septuāgintā |
| 13. tredecim | 80. octōgintā |
| 14. quattuordecim | 90. nōnāgintā |
| 15. quīndecim | 100. centum |
| 16. sēdecim | 101. { centum ūnus |
| 17. septendecim | { centum et ūnus |
| 18. { duodēvīgintī | 124. centum vīgintī quat- |
| { octōdecim | tuor |
| { decem et octō | 200. ducentī |
| 19. { ūndēvīgintī | 300. trecentī |
| { novēdecim | 400. quadringenti |
| 20. vīgintī | 500. quīngentī |
| 21. { ūnus et vīgintī | 600. sescentī |
| { vīgintī ūnus | 700. septingenti |
| 22. { duo et vīgintī | 800. octingenti |
| { vīgintī duo | 900. nōngentī |
| | 1000. mille |

216. (a) Most of the cardinal numerals are undeclined, the same form being used for all cases and genders. The following, however, are declined: *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the hundreds from *ducentī* to *nōngentī* inclusive, and *mille*.

(b) The declension of *ūnus* has been given in 205.

(c) The hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*, as *ducentī*, *ae*, *a*.

(d) The declension of *mille* will be given in 230.

(e) *Duo* and *trēs* are declined in the following section.

217.

Paradigms.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs</i> , <i>duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

EXERCISES.

218.

I.

A.—1. *Duās legiōnēs relinquet, trēs ex hibernīs ēducet.* 2. *Cum sescentīs equitibus nāvēs solvēmus.* 3. *Diēs circiter quīdecim iter fēcerāmus.* 4. *Ad Caesarem cum ducentīs obsidibus veniēbat.* 5. *Duodēvigintī nāvēs in ūnum locum cōguntur.* 6. *Signa militāria quattuor et septuāgintā relinquantur.* 7. *Centum vigintī quīque vicōs habent.* 8. *Equitēs circiter trīgintā mittentur.*

B.—9. *Quattuordecim annōs bellum gerēbant.* 10. *Quīngentīs equitibus māgnam multitudinem hostium repellit.* 11. *Octō hōrās castra oppūgnant; nōnā*

hōrā castra expūgnantur. 12. Rōmānīs ūnīs concēdimus. 13. Legiōnem decimam quārtā vigiliā ēdūcam. 14. Quadrāgintā cohortium impedimenta relicta sunt. 15. Incolās trium vicōrum necat.

219.

II.

A.—1. He sends four cohorts ; he will send the cavalry with four cohorts. 2. They will give five hundred hostages. 3. They were waging two wars at one time. 4. They burn forty-three towns and about two hundred villages. 5. An attack was made by four hundred and twenty cavalry. 6. They had collected twenty-eight ships. 7. Thirty-five soldiers will be chosen from the whole army. 8. The village is divided into two parts by a river. 9. About four hundred villages will be burned.

B.—10. Two legions, the sixth and the seventh, will be left on the other bank. 11. On the fifth day, five hundred and fifty-five horsemen had been collected. 12. They are giving up three hundred and sixty hostages. 13. He left two legions in the camp, and with the remaining six marched for nine days through the neighbouring states. 14. He orders the lieutenant to set sail with two legions and one hundred and seventy cavalry. 15. We are adjacent to three states.

220.

WORD LIST IV.

NOUNS.

causa	difficultās	libertās	pater
celeritās	dux	mare	paucitās
cīvis	facultās	māter	pōns
cīvitās	finis	mōns	regiō
cohors	frāter	nāvis	rēs pūblica
collis	hostis	nihil	soror

ADJECTIVES.

alius	fidēlis	neuter	pūblicus
alter	finitimus	nōbilis	similis
audāx	firmus	nōtus	sōlus
bonus	īmus	novus	summus
brevis	incōgnitus	nūllus	superior
celer	īnferior	periculōsus	tōtus
cēterī	inūtilis	plūs	ūllus
complūrēs	māior	potēns	ultimus
dēnsus	malus	prior	ūnus
dissimilis	māximus	propior	uter
extrēmus	minōr	prūdēns	ūtilis

VERBS.

contineō	dēsiliō	dividō	pertineō
dēducō	dēterreō	existimō	prohibeō
dēligō	dētineō	imperō	solvō
dēpōnō	dicō	incendō	videor

LAY DOWN
DEPOSIT.

READING LESSON VII.

HOW HORATIUS KEPT THE BRIDGE. (508 B.C.)

221.

VOCABULARY.

rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissum, *break down, destroy.*
trānsnō, (or trānō) āre, āvī, ātum, *swim across.*

Secundō annō postquam (*after*) ex civitāte rēx expulsus erat, Tarquinius auxilium ā Lārte Porsenā petivit. Lārs Porsena finēs lātissimōs in Etrūriā habēbat et multis dē causis inimicus erat populō Rōmānō. Māximās cōpiās ex omnibus partibus Etrūriae coēgit et māgnis itineribus ad flūmen Tiberim contendit. Rōmānī celeritāte hostium adventūs permōti sunt; aliī

ex agrīs in urbem convēnerunt, aliī proximās silvās petiverunt. Rōma mūrīs altissimīs et flūmine lātissimō mūniēbātur; sed pōns, quī (*which*) factus erat in (*over*) Tiberī, ab exteriōribus mūnitiōnibus ad portam urbis pertinēbat. Propter paucitātem cīvium vidēbātur facillimum esse pontem occupāre et in mediam urbem exercitum dūcere.

Hāc (*this*) dē causā summum erat pericūlum. Cēteri Rōmānī jam (*now*) dē salūte dēspērābant, sed ūnus vir fortissimus, Horātius Cocles, commūnis libertātis causā pontem dēfendere cōstituit. Cum duōbus aliīs, Spuriō Lārtiō et Titō Herminiō, ad extrēmam partem pontis contendit, et trēs Rōmānī omnēs hostium impetūs repellunt, dum (*while*) reliquī cīvēs pontem rescindunt. Post complūrēs hōrās mājor pars pontis rescissa est, et Horātius duōs amicōs ex pūgnā excēdere jubet. Tum (*then*) ā tōtō exercitū impetus in Horātium factus est. Summā cum virtūte impetum sustinuit et plūrimōs in fugam dedit, sed ab hostibus paene (*almost*) circumventus est. Tandem (*at length*) reliquam partem pontis rescidērunt Rōmānī. Tum Horātius dē ponte in medium flūmen dēsiluit et sine ūllō vulnere ad alteram ripam trānsnāvit. Ita (*thus*) fortitūdō ūnius virī tōtī rei pūblicae libertātem dedit.



Roman Coin.

LESSON XXXIX.

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

222.

Paradigms.

FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF **sum**.

SINGULAR.

1. erō (<i>I shall be</i>)	fuerō (<i>I shall have been</i>)
2. eris	fueris
3. erit	fuerit

PLURAL.

1. erimus	fuerimus
2. eritis	fueritis
3. erunt	fuerint

- a. Note (1) the relation in form to the imperfect and pluperfect of **sum** (149, 129); (2) the difference in the vowels before **-nt** in the two tenses.

223.

Paradigms.

(a) FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.

I SHALL HAVE LOVED. SINGULAR.

1. amāverō*	monuerō	rēxerō	audīverō
2. amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audīveris
3. amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit

PLURAL.

1. amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
2. amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
3. amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

* **Amāverō** is translated *I shall have loved*.

(b) FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.*First Conjugation.*

SINGULAR.

1. amātus erō (*I shall have been loved*)
2. " eris
3. " erit

PLURAL.

- amātī erimus
" eritis
" erunt

Similarly,

Second Conjugation.

monitus erō

Third Conjugation.

rēctus erō

Fourth Conjugation.

audītus erō

- a. Note the relation between these forms and those of the tenses of **sum** given in 222. From which of the stems furnished by the principal parts is the future perfect obtained in the active voice? From which in the passive voice?
- b. At this point it would be well to review the three tenses of the perfect system of the indicative in the active and passive voices respectively.

224.

Illustrative Examples.

Sī obsidēs miserint, cōpiās redūcam, *if they send (literally shall have sent) hostages, I shall lead back the troops.*

Cum cōpiās redūxerit, obsidēs mittēmus, *when he leads (literally shall have led) the troops back, we shall send hostages.*

Sī amīcī esse vidēbuntur, cōpiās redūcet, *if they seem (literally shall seem) to be friendly, he will lead back his troops.*

- a. In these dependent clauses introduced by **sī** (*if*) or **cum** (*when*), notice (1) that the reference is to future time, although this is not clearly expressed by the English verb; (2) that in the first two sentences

11-15

the act referred to in the dependent clause must be completed before the act referred to in the principal clause, while in the third sentence this is not the case. What tenses are used in these dependent clauses?

- b. Here, as regularly in subordinate clauses, Latin is more logical and exact than English in indicating (1) whether the time of the action is present, past, or future, and (2) whether the action is prior to that of the main verb, or concurrent with it.

225.

VOCABULARY.

absum, abesse, āfuī, *be absent, be far away, be distant.*

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, *increase.* ~~ORC IN~~

cōn-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *encamp.*

dī-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send out (in different directions), despatch, dismiss.*

dis-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, *place at intervals, post.*

distrib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *assign, distribute; divide.*

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *examine, reconnoitre.*

in-veniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come upon, find.*

reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum, *find, discover.*

timeō, ēre, uī, *fear, have fears.*

N.B.—(a) The prefix **dis-** (or **dī-** before certain consonants) is used in compounds to express the idea of *apart*; compare also **discēdō**, *depart, withdraw*. **Dīvidō** contains the same element, as do also the adjectives **dissimilis** and **difficilis**.

(b) **Reperiō** is used of finding, after inquiry or search; **inveniō** of finding by chance or without effort.

(c) **Augeō** in the active voice means *increase* (transitive = *make greater*); in the passive voice it means *increase* (intransitive = *be made or become greater*).

use "augeō" in passive unless it has an obj.

EXERCISES.

226.

I.

A.—1. Numerus augēbitur; numerus auctus erit; numerus mājor erit; numerus mājor fuerit. 2. Nāvem in portū invēnērunt; in idōneō locō cōnsēderint. 3. Cōpiās dīmiserit; cōpiae erunt dīmissae. 4. In duās partēs distribūtī eritis. 5. Germānōs sine causā timuerāmus. 6. Cum omnis exercitus dispositus erit, sīgnum dabitur. 7. Sī socii erunt fidēlēs, facillimum erit omnia itinera explōrāre. 8. Ā periculō abesse videor; aberō; āfuerō.

B.—9. Bellum gerimus; bella gesserimus. 10. Alterum iter difficilīus erit. 11. Mitteris; mīseris; mittimus; mīsimus. 12. Bella brevia erunt; ūtilēs fueritis amīcī. 13. Nihil reppereris; causam reperis; ab hostibus reperiēris. 14. Cum ad infimum collem pervēnerimus, cōnsidēmus. 15. Sī cōpiae hostium auctae erunt, difficile erit collem tenēre. 16. Sī praesidia trāns Rhēnum disposuerō, Germānōs Galliā vāstāre prohibēbō.

227.

II.

A.—1. We shall find; we shall have found; we shall have encamped. 2. It will be increased; it will be found; it will have been found. 3. The matter has been examined; the roads will have been reconnoitred. 4. It will be most useful; it will have been very easy. 5. They are absent; you will be absent; we had been far away. 6. The forces have been increased; the number had increased. 7. When I discover the reason, I shall despatch messengers to the neighbouring states. 8. If the foot-soldiers fear the sea, the ships will be assigned to the cavalry.

B.—9. They have encamped; he had encamped; I shall have encamped. 10. The camp was pitched; the camp had been pitched; the camp will have been pitched. 11. He will have summoned the leading men; the leading men will have been dismissed. 12. They will have everything; they will have seen everyone. 13. You will be free; it will be the freest of all the states. 14. When Caesar is absent they will attack the winter camp. 15. If the number of the enemy increases, we shall not join battle. 16. If you begin to post garrisons, we shall seek assistance.

LESSON XL.

Mille. ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE.

228.

Illustrative Examples.

Mille equitēs mittentur, *a thousand horsemen will be sent.*

Adventus mille equitum, *the arrival of a thousand horsemen.*

Cum mille equitibus, *with one thousand cavalry.*

a. **Mille**, *a thousand*, like most cardinal numerals in Latin, is an indeclinable adjective, regularly used with a plural substantive.

229.

Illustrative Examples.

Tria milia equitum mittentur, *three thousand horsemen will be sent.*

Adventus sex milium equitum, *the arrival of six thousand cavalry.*

Cum duōbus milibus equitum, *with two thousand cavalry.*

a. The plural of **mille**, **milia** or (as it is often spelled) **mīllia**, is a neuter noun followed by the partitive genitive (174), **tria milia equitum** being literally *three thousands of horsemen*.

230.

Paradigm.

DECLENSION OF *mīlia*.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mīlium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>

231.

Illustrative Examples.

Mīle passūs pertinet, it extends (for) a thousand paces*
(or a mile).

Tria milia passuum abest, he is three thousand paces (or
three miles) distant.

Fossa est ducentōs pedēs longa, the trench is two hundred
feet long.

a. Observe that distance how far or extent of space is
expressed in Latin by the accusative without a
preposition. Compare the accusative of time (159).

232.

VOCABULARY.

310 DECLENSION

- agg-er, -eris, m., mound.
 auc-tor, -tōris, m. (literally *increaser*), *advocate, adviser*.
 auctōri-tās, -tātis, f., *influence, weight*.
 dēfēn-sor, -sōris, m., *defender*.
 imperā-tor, -tōris, m., *commander (in chief)*.
 on-us, -eris, n., *burden, weight*.
 passus, ūs, m., *step, pace*.
 spatium, ī, n., *distance, space*.

* See vocabulary, 232. The Roman *passus* is the distance between two successive positions of the same foot, that is, really two of our paces. A thousand such paces therefore would be about 5,000 feet, or, roughly speaking, a mile.

N.B.—The suffix **-tor** is used to form from verbs nouns denoting the agent or doer of an action. The form of the noun closely resembles that of the participial (or supine) stem of the verb, **-tor** becoming **-sor** in nouns derived from verbs which have **s** instead of **t** in this stem.*

EXERCISES.

233.

I.

A.—1. Mīlia passuum octō ā castrīs cōnsēderant.
 2. Agger mille sescentōs passūs abest. 3. Locum mūrō vīgintī trēs pedēs altō mūniunt. 4. Sī dēfēnsōrēs idōneī dēlēctī erunt, facile erit sine imperātōre locum tenēre.
 5. Māximam auctōritātem habēre existimantur. 6. Mājus onus sustinuimus. 7. Māgnum spatium imperātōr aberat. 8. Filius imperātōris auctor erat cōsiliī.

B.—9. Sex mīlia peditum et mille equitēs reliquit.
 10. Mīlia sex explōrātōrum dimisit. 11. Ex mīlibus trīgintā tertia pars reducta erit. 12. Agger erat lātus pedēs trecentōs vīgintī, altus pedēs septuāgintā. 13. Silva multa mīlia passuum pertinēbat. 14. Cum mīlibus trecentīs mīlitum nāvēs solvet. 15. Onera gravia portābant. 16. Mīlia hominum octōgintā dēlēcta sunt.

234.

II.

A.—1. They gave six thousand horses and a thousand hostages to Caesar. 2. The camp had been pitched three miles from the mound. 3. At daybreak he was a mile from the camp. 4. He had learned from the scouts the small number of defenders. 5. If you begin to collect an army, you will seem to be advocates of

* Compare also *explorator, spectator, auditor, monitor, rector, inventor, depositor*. Sometimes the suffix **-tor** is added to nouns, as **gladiātor** (primarily *one who uses the sword*) from **gladius**.

war. 6. The lieutenant was sent by the commander-in-chief with four thousand foot-soldiers and a thousand horsemen. 7. They had carried the burdens a great distance. 8. He has no influence with (*literally* among, inter) the defenders.

B.—9. Twenty-three thousand Gauls had come to Caesar. 10. I shall demand two thousand hostages from the commander-in-chief. 11. The forests were thought to extend two hundred miles. 12. The camp will have been fortified by a trench twenty feet wide and a rampart five feet high. 13. The right wing of the army extends a thousand feet, the left (wing) five hundred paces. 14. The other legion is a greater distance away; it was about a mile and a half away. 15. The burden was heavy; the burden will be heavier.



Imperator : Commander-in-chief. (*Augustus.*)

LESSON XLI.

PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE. ADVERBS : REGULAR FORMATION AND COMPARISON.

235. Illustrative Examples.

Castra oppugnārī jussit, *he ordered the camp to be attacked.*
 Castra movērī jussit, *he ordered the camp to be moved.*
 Castra pōnī jussit, *he ordered a camp to be pitched.*
 Castra mūnīrī jussit, *he ordered a camp to be fortified.*

a. Observe the method of forming in each conjugation the present infinitive passive. Compare 123.

236. Paradigms.

PRESENT INFINITIVE.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>First Conjugation.</i>	amāre,	-āre.	amārī,	-ārī.
<i>Second Conjugation.</i>	monēre,	-ēre.	monērī,	-ērī.
<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	regere,	-ere.	regī,	-ī.
<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>	audīre,	-īre.	audīrī,	-īrī.

237. Illustrative Examples.

ADJECTIVE.		ADVERB.	
lātus,	genitive lātī.	lātē,	<i>widely.</i>
liber,	" liberī.	liberē,	<i>freely.</i>
celer,	" celeris.	celeriter,	<i>quickly.</i>
fortis,	" fortis.	fortiter,	<i>bravely.</i>
audāx,	" audācis.	audācter,	<i>boldly.</i>

a. Observe that adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions end in -ē, those from adjectives of the third declension in -iter (or, in a few cases, -ter).

b. Observe further that such adverbs may be formed by substituting these endings for the ending of

the genitive singular of the adjective (-ī or -is). Adjectives in -ns form their adverbs in -nter; as, *potēns*, gen. *potentis*, adverb *potenter*, *powerfully*.

238. Illustrative Examples.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>lātē</i> , <i>widely</i> ;	<i>lātius</i> ,	<i>lātissimē</i> ,
<i>celeriter</i> , <i>quickly</i> ;	<i>celerius</i> ,	<i>celerrimē</i> ,
<i>fortiter</i> , <i>bravely</i> ;	<i>fortius</i> ,	<i>fortissimē</i> ,
	<i>more widely</i> ;	<i>most (or very) widely</i> .
	<i>more quickly</i> ;	<i>most (or very) quickly</i> .
	<i>more bravely</i> ;	<i>most (or very) bravely</i> .

a. Observe how adverbs formed from adjectives are compared; the comparative is formed by taking the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective (that is, by changing -ior to -ius); and the superlative by changing -us of the superlative of the adjective to -ē.

239. VOCABULARY.

ācriter, adv., *fiercely, vigorously* (from *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*, *sharp, eager*).

aegrē, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty* (from *aeger*, *gra*, *grum*, *sick, weak*); in superlative, *with the greatest difficulty*.

audācter, adv., *boldly*.

celeriter, adv., *quickly, swiftly, speedily*.

diligenter, adv., *carefully* (from *diligēns*, -entis, *careful*).

fortiter, adv., *bravely, gallantly*.

graviter, adv., *severely, seriously*.

lātē, adv., *widely, extensively*.

liberē, adv., *freely*.

longē, adv., *far*.

EXERCISES.

240.

I.

A.—1. Omnēs ācerrimē et fortissimē pūgnāvērunt. 2. Hostium impetum aegrē sustinent. 3. Castra vāllō pedēs duodecim altō diligenter mūnīrī jubet. 4. Dicit* liberius et audācius. 5. Exercitum lātius distribūi jusserat. 6. Imperātor multīs rēbus impedīrī dicēbātur. 7. Graviter vulnerātus erat et aegerrimē ad castra pervēnit. 8. Belgae ā prōvinciā longissimē absunt. 9. Auxilia in summō monte celeriter collocārī jussit et tōtū montem hominibus complēri.

B.—10. Omnia diligenter facta erant; tria mīlia passuum iter diligentissimē fēcerant. 11. Equitātum ex castris ēdūcī jubet et proelium equestre committī. 12. Oppidum montibus altissimis vidētur continērī. 13. Superiōre annō plūrimās nāvēs celerrimē cōgī jusserāmus. 14. Omnia oppida vicōsque incendiū jubet, et mille ducentōs obsidēs in prōvinciam addūcī. 15. Longē nōbilissimus esse omnium Gallōrum existimābātur.

241.

II.

A.—1. He ordered the place to be fortified more carefully. 2. They began to fight more bravely and fiercely. 3. He will speak* most freely; he speaks very seriously. 4. You are said to be feared by all. 5. The rest of the army will be three miles distant. 6. They will be farther distant from the rest of the army. 7. We shall order the enemy's territories to be laid waste far and wide. 8. The village is said to be divided into two parts by a river twenty-two feet deep.

* **Dicō** means *speak* as well as *say*.

B.—9. He will have far the greatest influence among the allies. 10. I have ordered all the cavalry and ten thousand infantry to be sent quickly. 11. The number of the enemy seems to be increasing. 12. He orders all the other ambassadors to be summoned. 13. If the enemy attack boldly, we shall with the greatest difficulty hold the hill. 14. He demands about a thousand ships from the other state. 15. You used to order the roads to be most carefully reconnoitred.

LESSON XLII.

Quam WITH COMPARATIVES. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

242.

Illustrative Examples.

Belgae fortiōrēs erant quam Gallī,
Belgae fortiōrēs erant Gallīs,

} *the Belgians were
braver than the
Gauls.*

Altera īnsula est minor quam
Britannia,

} *the other island is
smaller than
Britain.*

Altera īnsula est minor Britannīā,

Ad īnsulam pervēnit minōrem
quam Britanniam,

} *he came to an island
smaller than
Britain.*

Ad īnsulam pervēnit minōrem
Britanniā,

Mājōrēs cōpiās sociīs quam prōvinciae imperat, *he demands
larger forces from the allies than from the province.*

Nihil est ūtilius quam amīcōs habēre, *nothing is more
useful than to have friends.*

a. Observe how, after comparatives, two methods are used in Latin to express the comparison :—

- (1) **quam** (meaning *than*) is used, two substantives compared being put in the same case ;
- (2) instead of **quam**, followed by the nominative or accusative, the ablative without **quam** may be used. This is called the *Ablative of Comparison*.

243.

VOCABULARY.

3 cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *become accustomed ;*
in perfect, *be accustomed*.

† cōnsuētū-dō, -dinis, f., *custom*.

continēns, -entis, *incessant, continual, un-*
broken, continuous.

continenter, adv., *continually, continuously*.

distō, āre, — *be apart*.

lab-or, -ōris, m., *toil, labour*.

prae-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *send in advance*.

prae-stō, āre, -stitī, *surpass ;* **praestat** (with
quam), *it is preferable, better*.

stō, stāre, stetī, statum, *stand*.

terra, ae, f., *land*.

Phrases : ex cōnsuētūdine, according to custom.

continēns terra (or **continēns** alone as fem.
noun, with abl. **continentī**), *the main-*
land, the continent.

N.B.—(a) The prefix **prae-** is used in composition to express the idea of *before* ; this appears in English as **pre-**, as, *predict*.

(b) The perfect tense of certain Latin verbs may be freely translated by the English present tense, to denote the present state resulting from a completed action ; so, **cōnsuēvī**, *I have become accustomed, I have*

formed a habit = *I am accustomed*; *cōgnōvī*, *I have learned* = *I know*. (The pluperfect of these verbs will have the force of an imperfect = *I was accustomed*, *I knew*.) Similarly *circumventī sunt* may be translated, *they are surrounded*; *superātī sunt*, *they are conquered*; *divisum est*, *it is divided*.

EXERCISES.

244.

I.

A.—1. Agger altior est quam mŭrus ; mŭnitiōnēs altiōrēs sunt aggere. 2. Tamesis dīcitur esse longior Tiberī. 3. Breviōrēs sunt in Britannīā quam in continentī noctēs. 4. Proximī stābant ; in locīs superiōribus steterant. 5. Praestat cōpiās instruere quam fugā salūtem petere. 6. In multis terrīs sunt continentēs silvae palūdēsque. 7. Impedimenta praemissa sunt et in summō monte collocāta. 8. Īnsulae tria mīlia passuum distant. 9. Nōn populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdō est obsidēs dare ; obsidēs dare nōn cōnsuēvimus.

B.—10. Prŭdentiōrēs estis quam bellī auctōrēs. 11. Īnsula circiter mīlia passuum trīgintā ā continentī aberat. 12. Castra mājōra sunt quam cōnsuētūdō exercitūs postulat. 13. Ex cōnsuētūdine mājōrem partem vici cohortibus quam equitibus concessit. 14. Altitūdō mŭrī minor erat quam lātītūdō fossārum. 15. Altitūdō fossae mājor erit quam flūminis. 16. Belgae cun Germānis continenter bellum gerēbant. 17. Nŭlla est sine labōre salūs. 18. Circumventī sumus ; Gallia est divisa in partēs trēs.

245.

II.

A.—1. The land is more useful than the sea ; the sea is larger than the land. 2. Nothing is better than liberty 3. The trenches were twenty-three feet apart.

4. They had stood continuously for six hours. 5. The other island is farther distant from the continent than Britain. 6. The Romans are awaiting the end of all (their) toils. 7. I know the custom of the Gauls. 8. They are accustomed to send in advance the swiftest ships. 9. We were accustomed to wage incessant wars.

B.—10. We fear a man more powerful than the king. 11. According to custom he had sent all the cavalry in advance at daybreak. 12. By incessant toil they had fortified the camp more quickly than they were accustomed. 13. It is easier to leap down than to stand on the top of the wall. 14. He ordered a smaller portion of the plunder to be given to the cavalry than to the rest of the army. 15. To defend the camp bravely is preferable to laying* down (our) arms. 16. They will call the defenders of the bridge braver and more daring than the commander-in-chief. 17. It seems to be better to seek other lands. 18. On the mainland the towns are not far apart.

LESSON XLIII.

ADVERBS: IRREGULAR FORMATION AND COMPARISON.

Quam WITH SUPERLATIVES.

246. Besides adverbs formed from adjectives, according to the methods described in Lesson XLI., there are not a few instances where certain case-forms of the adjective are used as adverbs (as is regularly the case in the comparative degree).

In the following, the accusative singular neuter of the adjective is used adverbially :—

* That is, 'is better than to lay down.'

multum, much.

plūrimum, *most, very much.*

sōlum, *only*.

facile, *easily.*

primum, *first, in the first place.*

In the following, the ablative singular neuter or feminine of the adjective is used adverbially :—

prīmō, *at first*.

brevī, *in a short time, quickly.*

subitō, *suddenly* (from the adjective **subitus**, a, um, *sudden*).

ūnā (with **cum**) *at the same time, together, along (with).*

247. The following are adverbs in common use which have no corresponding adjectives :--

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
diū, <i>long, for a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē
ferē, <i>almost</i>		

248. The following adverbs show some irregularity in formation (compare the corresponding adjectives, 195):—

	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
(māgnus)	māgnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis, <i>more</i>	māximē
(parvus)	parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē
(bonus)	bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
(malus)	male, <i>ill</i>	pējus	pessimē
	prope, <i>near, nearly</i>	propius	proximē

249.

Illustrative Examples.

Quam m̄ximās cōpiās coēgit, he collected forces as large as possible.

Equitēs quam m̄ximē impediunt, *they hinder the cavalry*
as much as possible.

Quam primum iter fecerunt, *they marched as soon as possible.*

a. Observe how **quam** with the superlative (both of adjectives and of adverbs) is used to express the highest degree possible, the regular translation taking the form *as . . . as possible*.

EXERCISES.

250.

I.

A.—1. Primō cōpiae māgnopere perterrentur. 2. Brevī causam reperiēmus. 3. Saepe ex equis dēsiliunt et inter peditēs pūgnant. 4. Ūnā cum Caesare multōs annōs fuerat. 5. Quam māximum numerum inimicōrum ex cīvitate expellam. 6. Facile paucī multōs montem occupāre prohibēbunt. 7. Nōn multum distant. 8. Facillimē impetum hostium diūtius sustinēbimus.

B.—9. Subitō duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit. 10. Diū principātum tōtius ferē Galliae obtinuerant. 11. Saepius ad senātum litterās mittēmus. 12. Primum ā proximīs cīvitatibus auxilium petivērunt. 13. Ūnā cum cēterīs ex proeliō excesserant. 14. Propter ūsum militārem minimē terrērī vidēbantur. 15. Quam celerimē ad mare pervenire contendit. 16. Praesidium quam amicissimum habēre cōstitueram.

251.

II.

A.—1. They had fought long and vigorously. 2. At first he does not venture to speak freely and boldly. 3. In the first place he ordered corn to be procured as quickly as possible. 4. They will sustain the attack more easily; the attack will be sustained less easily. 5. He ordered as many ships as possible to be collected. 6. They hesitate to depart farther from the line of march. 7. We shall not await the auxiliaries (any) longer. 8. We had been greatly hindered by marshes.

B.—9. As soon as possible they began to move the camp nearer. 10. Suddenly almost all leaped down from the ship along with the guides. 11. The harbour was less suitable than the lake. 12. He is accustomed to demand troops from as many states as possible.

13. When they learn of Caesar's arrival they will be more terrified. 14. They determined to lay waste the neighbouring territories as widely as possible. 15. They are nearly surrounded. 16. Almost all the roads have been carefully reconnoitred.

252.

WORD LIST D.

DISTANCE.

foot	distance	nearer, nearest
pace	be (far) distant	farther, farthest
mile, miles	be apart	most distant

LANDSCAPE.

land	hill	territory
sea	mountain	mainland
district	heights	top of a mountain
state	bridge	foot of a mountain

ADJECTIVES.

first	other, another	larger, largest
next	the other (of two)	smaller, smallest
previous	the others	lower, higher
several	any	more, most
no, none	alone	incessant, unbroken
neither	whole	good, bad

WAR.

enemy	defender	war-ship	despatch
leader	cohort	set sail	reconnoitre
commander-	mound	encamp	send in advance
in-chief	guide	post	put to flight

MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

ship	custom	freedom	citizen
burden	adviser	toil	citizenship
end	influence	fewness	difficulty
speed			opportunity

MISCELLANEOUS VERBS.

divide	release	burn	find
assign	increase	fear	be accustomed
choose	surpass	stand	it is better

ADVERBS.

fiercely	swiftly	at first
boldly	suddenly	in the first place
bravely	continually	in a short time
freely	often	long, for a long time
easily	almost	much, very much
with difficulty	nearly	greatly
carefully	about	more
severely	far	less
only	widely	along (with)

READING LESSON VIII.

THE STORY OF MUCIUS SCAEVOLA. (508 B.C.)

253.

VOCABULARY.

*manus, ūs, f., hand.**mors, mortis, f., death.*

Fortēs audācēsque pontis dēfēnsōrēs Porsenam Rōmam occupāre prohibuerant. Porsena exercitum in Etrūriam nōn redūxit, sed castra in locō idōneō posuit quī (*which*) mille circiter passūs ā Tiberī aberat. Tum (*then*) equitēs quam plūrimōs ēmisit et finēs Rōmānōrum longē lātēque vāstārī iussit. Brevī summa esse inopia frūmentī coepit. Mūcius, filius Rōmānī nōbilissimī, Porsenam necāre cōstituit. Nocte per mediōs hostēs contendit et posterō diē dīligenter castra rēgis explōrāvit. Porsena incōgnitus erat Mūciō, et prō (*instead of, prep. with abl. case*) rēge ūnum ex prīncipibus necāvit, quī (*who*) longē nōbilissimus omnium esse vidēbātur.

Militēs quī proximī stābant aegerrimē Mūcium comprehendērunt (*seized*) et ad rēgem addūxērunt.

Mūcius minimē perterrēri vidēbātur; liberē et audācter dīxit. "Rōmānus sum cīvis. Rēgem Porsenam necāre cōstitueram et populum Rōmānum ab injūriā dēfendere. Nōn audācior sum cēteris Rōmānīs. Sī Porsena tōtum exercitum ē finibus Rōmānīs nōn cēdūxerit, trecentī alii nōn dubitābunt rei pūblicae causā māximōs labōrēs et summa pericula adire (*to encounter*). Mortem nōn timeō. Praestat incendiū quam libertātem āmittere (*to lose*)." Simul (*at the same time*) dextram manum in ignem (*fire*) injēcit (*thrust*), quī ā militibus factus erat. Rēx fortitudīne Rōmānōrum māgnopere permōtus est et Mūcium dīmitti jussit. Pācem quam celerrimē cum senātū Rōmānō cōfirmāvit et cum omnibus cōpiīs ē finibus Rōmānōrum discessit. Postea (*afterwards*) Mūcius Scaevola* appellābātur, quod (*because*) sinistram sōlam manum habēbat.

LESSON XLIV.

RELATIVE PRONOUN. Quod.

Altit

254.

Paradigm.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN quī.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

*The Latin word **Scaevola** means "the left-handed."

255.

Illustrative Examples.

Lēgātus, quī missus est, prūdēns est, *the ambassador who has been sent is prudent.*

Lēgātus, quem mīsērunt, prūdēns est, *the ambassador whom they have sent is prudent.*

Legiōnem, quae missa est, exspectāmus, *we are awaiting the legion which has been sent.*

Adventum legiōnis quam mīsērunt exspectāmus, *we are awaiting the approach of the legion which they have sent.*

Legiōnēs, quarum adventum exspectābāmus, pervēnērunt, *the legions, whose approach we were awaiting, arrived.*

Germānī, ā quibus missus est, pācem petunt, *the Germans, by whom he was sent, are seeking peace.*

Germānī, quibuscum bellum gerēbat, pācem petunt, *the Germans with whom he was waging war, seek peace.*

a. In connection with these sentences, observe:—

(1) that the relative pronoun in Latin changes its form to indicate gender, number, and case;

(2) that the gender and number of the relative are determined by the word (called the *Antecedent*) to which it refers;

(3) that the case of the relative is in no way determined by the antecedent, but by its relation to the dependent clause to which it belongs;

(4) that in the first four sentences the relative pronoun *that* could be used in place of *who*, *whom* or *which*;

(5) that in the second and fourth sentences the relative might be omitted altogether in English, something which never occurs in Latin;

(6) that the preposition **cum** is suffixed to the ablative it governs. The accent is then on the penult (13).

256.

Illustrative Examples.

Oppidum, quod mūniverant, expūgnātum est, *the town which they had fortified has been taken by storm.*

Timent quod oppidum expūgnātum est, *they are afraid because the town has been taken by storm.*

Quod hostēs nōn longē aberant, sīgnum dedit, *because the enemy were not far distant, he gave the signal.*

- a. Observe that the same Latin word **quod** is used both as a relative pronoun (neuter singular nominative or accusative) and as a conjunction with the force of *because*.*

257.

VOCABULARY.

barbarus, ī, m., *barbarian.*

centuri-ō, -ōnis, m., *centurion* (an officer of the Roman army).

com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *alarm, dismay.*

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *point out, mention; make mention (of = dē).*

in-colō, ere, -coluī, *inhabit; dwell.*

op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, *overpower; burden.*

premō, ere, pressī, pressum, *press, harass, beset.*

suprā, adv., *above.*

trā-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead across, take across.*

trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry across, bring over.*

Phrase: premor, graviter premor, be hard pressed.

N.B.—**Trāns** (or **trā-**) is prefixed to verbs with the force of *across* or *over*.

* Even in the rare cases where either translation *might* be given, it will be found that the context will determine which is the proper rendering.

EXERCISES.

258.

I.

1. Quod vīcus in duās partēs flūmine dividitur, alteram partem Gallīs concessit, alteram legiōnī. 2. Ad flūmen, quod vīcum in duās partēs dividit, pervēnit. 3. Ad flūmen, quō vīcus in duās partēs dividitur, pervēnit. 4. Ex vicō, quem Gallīs et legiōnī concesserat, omnēs discēdere coepērunt. 5. Ex alterā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs discēdere coepērunt. 6. Vīcus, cūjus partem Gallīs concesserat, in duās partēs flūmine dividitur. 7. Gallī, quibus partem vīcī concesserat, discēdere coepērunt. 8. Legiō, cui partem vīcī concesserat, nōn discessit. 9. Quod partem vīcī legiōnī concesserat, Gallī discessērunt. 10. Ex duābus partibus, in quās vīcus flūmine dividitur, alteram Gallīs concessit, alteram legiōnī.

II.

1. The Belgians are nearest to (173) the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine (and) with whom they are continually waging war. 2. The Germans, to whom the Belgians are nearest, dwell across the Rhine. 3. They are continually waging war with the Germans, because they are nearest. 4. The Gauls, of whom the Belgians are the bravest, are waging war with the Germans. 5. They dwell across the Rhine, which divides the Germans from the Gauls. 6. They dwell across the river that divides Germany from Gaul. 7. They dwell across the river by which Germany is divided from Gaul. 8. The districts which the Belgians inhabit are nearest Germany. 9. Gaul is divided into three parts, of which the Belgians inhabit one. 10. One part of Gaul, which the Belgians inhabit, is nearest Germany.

259.

III.

A.—1. Ab omnibus barbaris, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, legati ad Caesarem mittuntur. 2. Plurimas habemus longas naves, quibus milites transportare consuevimus. 3. Frumentum omne, quod in oppidum centuriones comportaverant, reliquit. 4. In fines Germanorum, qui proximi Belgis erant, copias quas coegerat traduxit. 5. Reliquum exercitum, quod longe aberat, non expectabamus. 6. Vir fortissimus delictus est, cujus pater amicus a senatu appellatus erat. 7. Auxilium a Caesare petimus, quod graviter a Germanis premimur.

B.—8. Fuga Gallorum, de qua supra demonstravimus, legionem, quamcumque Caesar erat, commovebat. 9. Castra erant minora quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat. 10. Omnem equitatum, quem ex omni provincia coegerat, praemisit. 11. Summa erat difficultas quod milites onere armorum oppressi sunt. 12. Quod inopia frumenti erat, centuriones complures in finitimas civitates frumenti causa dimisit. 13. Cum sola decima legione, de qua non dubitabat, discessit.

260.

IV.

A.—1. They marched through the province because they had no other road. 2. He will collect all his ships, of which he has a large number. 3. The cavalry is sent in advance through the forest which has been mentioned above. 4. They are alarmed because he left everything that he had brought over. 5. As many ships as possible were gathered to the harbour from which he had determined to set sail. 6. The auxiliaries we are awaiting have been suddenly overpowered by the barbarians. 7. Because neither army ventures to join battle, Caesar leads his forces back to the camp.

B.—8. With two legions which had wintered in the province, he hastened to a river that was about a mile distant. 9. The king, with whom he had made peace, had great influence in the states into which the army had been led across. 10. The other centurion, to whose father the citizenship had been given by Caesar, was overpowered by the enemy. 11. The camp that we have mentioned above was beset by the barbarians, whose lands were being laid waste. 12. There are several islands, a majority of which are (*literally* the greater part . . . is) inhabited by barbarians. 13. They are less suitable, because they fear the sea.

LESSON XLV.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

261.

Illustrative Examples.

Barbari, spē praedae adducti, in Galliam contendērunt,
the barbarians, influenced by the hope of plunder,
hastened into Gaul.

Cōpiae, in ūnum locum coāctae, in prōvinciam mittēbantur,
the forces, having been gathered to one place, used to
be sent to the province.

Cōpiae, in ūnum locum coāctae, in prōvinciam mittentur,
the forces, having been gathered to one place, will be
sent to the province.

Aciem instrūctam inveniet, *he will find the line of battle*
drawn up.

- a. These Latin sentences illustrate the use of the Perfect Participle Passive, when no longer used with parts of the verb **sum** to form a tense of the indicative passive (140). It is regularly translated by the English passive participle, e.g. **missus**, *sent* or *having been sent*.

Contrast the following sentences :—

Barbarī spē praedae adductī erant, *the barbarians had been influenced by the hope of plunder.*

Cōpiaē in ūnum locum coāctae sunt, *the forces have been gathered to one place.*

Aciēs instrūcta erit, *a line of battle will have been drawn up*

b. Notice that in these sentences the voice of the participle is passive, and that the time of the action expressed by the participle is prior to that of the principal verb, but is not necessarily past time.

c. The participle is a verbal adjective ; it expresses action and has distinctions of tense and voice ; and it agrees in gender, number and case with the noun it modifies. The perfect participle passive is declined like **bonus** (65).

d. Sometimes this participle becomes little more than an ordinary adjective, and may in fact be compared ; as, **parātus**, *ready* ; **parātior**, *more ready* or *better prepared* ; **mūnitissimus**, *best fortified*, or *well protected*.

262. A freer rendering of the perfect participle passive is generally permissible and often advisable. Thus in the first two sentences of 261, **adductī** might also be translated *being influenced*, and **coāctae** might be translated *after being gathered*, or *on being gathered*.

Occasionally all these methods of translation are possible ; as,

Repulsī ab equitātū, in castra contendunt,	{	<i>repulsed</i>	}	<i>by the cavalry, they hasten to the camp.</i>
		<i>being repulsed</i>		
		<i>having been repulsed</i>		
		<i>after being repulsed</i>		
		<i>on being repulsed</i>		

Perfect Participle Passive

263.

VOCABULARY.

dēditi-ō, -ōnis, f.,	surrender.
dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditum,	surrender (transitive).
ē-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,	break out, sally out.
ērupti-ō, -ōnis, f.,	sally, sortie.
lēgāti-ō, -ōnis, f.,	embassy.
oppūgnāti-ō, -ōnis, f.,	attack, assault.
per-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,	break through.
rumpē, ere, rūpī, ruptum,	break, break down.
stati-ō, -ōnis, f.,	outpost, guard.
tēlum, ī, n., ¹	weapon, missile.

Phrases : in dēditiōnem veniō, surrender (intransitive).
in statiōe, on guard, on outpost duty.

N.B.—The suffix -tiō is used to form from verbs abstract nouns (feminine) denoting an action, or in some cases the concrete result of an action. So mūnitiō, like the English noun *fortification*, may mean either the act of fortifying or the works constructed. This ending appears in English as -tion.

EXERCISES.

264.

I.

A.—1. Adventū Rōmānōrum māgnopere perterritus, cōpiās redūxit. 2. Ab hostibus circumventi, dē mūnitiōnibus dēsiluērunt et fugā salūtem petivērunt. 3. Omnium rērum inopiā adducti, lēgātiōnem dē* dēditiōne mīsērunt. 4. Parātum et īnstrūctum exercitum invēnī. 5. Multitūdine tēlōrum repulsae, cohortēs in locis superiōribus cōsistunt. 6. Primō parātī erāmus auctōrēs bellī dēdere. 7. Cum signum dederit, ex castris ērumpent. 8. Spē salūtis adducti, per mediōs hostēs audācissimē perrūpērunt. 9. Multitūdine tēlōrum vulnerātī, aegrē ad† noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinēmus.

* Compare dē pāce, 99.

† Translate ad here by 'until'.

transitive {deducere}
intransitive {discedo}

at - done by persons
at = time when - Ablative

B.—10. Salūtem petere jussī, subitō omnibus portīs eruptionem fēcērunt. 11. Ex cōnsuetūdine omnēs civitatēs commūnem lēgatiōnem mittent. 12. Omnia quae postulāveritis, erunt parāta. 13. Māgnitūdine mūnitiōnum et celeritatē Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs dē dēditionē mittunt. 14. Ab oppidō quod erat māximum mūnitissimumque in insulā, nōn longē aberant. 15. In omnibus collibus cōpiās hostium instrūctās vident. 16. Pōns, quī erat in flūmine, ruptus erat. 17. Cohors, quae in statiōne erat, fugā reliquī exercitūs perterrita, in dēditionem vēnit. 18. Barbarī, commōti quod oppidum nātūrā locī mūnitissimum expūgnātum erat, mājōrēs cōpiās parāre coepērunt.

265.

II.

A.—1. (After being driven back) into the town, they made a sortie. 2. Being defeated by the first attack of the cohorts, they are compelled to surrender. 3. The cavalry sent out from the winter camp, quickly put the enemy to flight. 4. On being recalled to the continent, he hesitated for several days to set sail. 5. Having been terrified by the large number of the ships, the enemy's troops withdraw from the sea. 6. Six chosen cohorts will be stationed on outpost duty. 7. The war-ships seem to be better prepared than the other (ships). 8. On being informed of the approach of the embassy sent by the Belgians, he recalled the cavalry which he had sent in advance. 9. Caesar broke the middle of the enemy's line.

B.—10. 'After being drawn up in line we shall sally out. 11. On being repulsed by the fortifications and the missiles, they withdrew as quickly as possible. 12. The long awaited auxiliaries reached the bridge the

previous night. 13. The attack is hindered by many circumstances. 14. If you break through the fortifications, you will easily reach the river. 15. He found the guards posted. 16. After being called brothers by the senate, they have been compelled to surrender all their towns and to give hostages. 17. On the seventh day of the assault, having been greatly harassed by the multitude of missiles, they sent ambassadors to Caesar to treat for a surrender. 18. Burdened by the heavy weight of their arms, the legions reached the camp with the greatest difficulty.

LESSON XLVI.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

266.

Paradigms.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS *ego, tū, is.*

<i>First Person</i>		<i>Second Person.</i>	<i>Third Person.</i>		
SINGULAR.			MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>ējus</i>	<i>ējus</i>	<i>ējus</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	<i>tū</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>
PLURAL.					
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nostrum</i>	<i>vestrum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
	<i>nostrī</i>	<i>vestrī</i>			
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nōbis</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	<i>vōs</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nōbis</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

- a. Of the double forms in the genitive plural of the first and second personal pronouns, **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as partitive genitives (174); otherwise of *us* and of *you* are **nostri** and **vestri**.

267.

Nōs sumus amīcī, vōs estis inimīcī, *we are friends, you are enemies.*

Legiōnem, quam mēcum habeō, mittam, *I shall send the legion which I have with me.*

Jussit eōs impedimenta in ūnō locō collocāre et eum mūnīre, *he ordered them to put the baggage in one place and fortify it.*

Omnibus vōbīs ūtile est, *it is useful to all of you* (literally *to you all*).

These Latin sentences illustrate the following points :

- a. The nominative of the personal pronoun is expressed when emphatic, otherwise the personal ending of the verb suffices.
- b. The preposition **cum** is suffixed to the ablatives **mē, tē, nōbīs** and **vōbīs**. (For the accent see 255. a. 6.)
- c. Because of the difference between Latin and English in the matter of gender, the pronoun *it* may frequently be represented by the masculine or the feminine of **is**. Where also *it* is the subject of a verb, the form of the Latin verb (or of a predicate adjective) will vary according to the noun to which the pronoun *it* refers; thus, *it was sent* may refer to an army (**exercitus**), a legion (**legiō**), a letter (**litterae**), or to baggage (**impedimenta**), and would then be translated **missus est**, **missa est**, **missae sunt**, and **missa sunt** respectively.
- d. The partitive genitive should not be used with **omnēs**, since the whole, not a part, is taken. (174.)

268.

VOCABULARY.

aut, or; aut . . aut, either . . or.

+ concilium, ī, n., meeting, council.

et, and; et . . et, both . . and.

etiam, also; even.

meminī (found in perfect system only, with force of present), remember.

ad memor, -oris, mindful (with genitive). adj

memoria, ae, f., memory.

con- neque, nor, and not; neque . . neque, neither . . nor.

sed, but.

tim-or, -ōris, m., fear.

Phrases: memoriam dēpōnō, forget.* + Ken

memoriam retineō, remember.*

EXERCISES.

269.

I.

A.—1. Pācem vōbiscum fēcerat; pācem neque nōbiscum neque vōbiscum fēcerat. 2. Ab eīs circumveniēmur. 3. Tū et mihi et rei pūblicae ūtilis fuisti. 4. Meminī id; memor erō vestrī. 5. Hiberna ab eō aberant mīlia passuum vīgintī. 6. Cōnsilium barbarōrum nōn solum mihi, sed etiam tibi, incōgnitum erat. 7. Māgnam inter eōs auctōritātem habēs; tū etiam mājōrem auctōritātem quam ego habēs. 8. Nihil ā vōbīs postulō. 9. Ab eō dē periculō legiōnis cōgnōscit et eam reducī jubet. 10. Sī lēgatiōnem dē dēditione ad eum mīseritis, ad concilium vōs convocābit

B.—11. Equitēs quōs tēcum trānsportāveras, reducti erant. 12. Hostēs, timōre perterriti, ā nōbīs discēdunt. 13. Tuī memoriam retinēbō; memoriam vestrī nōn

* These phrases, as their literal meaning would indicate, are followed by the genitive case.

for the sake of being remembered
to be remembered from whom demanded

dēpōnam. 14. Aut equitēs aut frūmentum eīs imperābit. 15. Cum ad castra pervēnerint, ea oppūgnābunt. 16. Timor animōs omnium occupāvit; timor eam occupāvit. 17. Omnibus vōbīs libertātem dedit; nōs omnēs opprimere cōstituit. 18. Ā cēteris id cōgnōvit, neque ego nūntiāvī.* 19. Amīcitiae populi Rōmānī memoriā moveor. 20. Nūntius ad mē missus est; victōria mihi nūntiātur.

270.

II.

A.—1. He will choose either me or you. 2. He has chosen not only a large part of us, but also all of you. 3. He has learned the commander's plans. 4. He has compelled them to withdraw from the council. 5. It is dangerous both to me and to you. 6. Because we do not venture to carry the baggage with us, we are leaving it in the camp. 7. They have left to us neither (our) lands nor (our) liberty. 8. The cavalry I shall send before me, but the infantry I shall lead out with me. 9. We slew a large part of them. 10. On account of (their) fear of me, they are renewing the memory of (our) former friendship.

B.—11. Having been informed of the recent victory, we sent ambassadors to him. 12. Hostages will be given up to you by us. 13. I did not fear him, but you were terrified by fear. 14. We were eight miles from him. 15. We shall demand from him not only corn but also hostages. 16. He has forgotten even you. 17. He orders them (*referring to (a) the cohorts, (b) the auxiliaries, (c) the soldiers*) to come as quickly as possible. 18. Nor do I remember everything. 19. He summons all of them to a meeting. 20. And they do not seem to me to be mindful of us.

* Id is to be understood as the object of nūntiāvī also.

*Postulor + acc. of person desired
to ab + abl. of person from whom*

LESSON XLVII.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE. **Dum.****271. Paradigms.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.

amāns monēns regēns audiēns

- a. In each of the four conjugations the present participle ends in **-ns**, and is formed from the present stem.

272. Paradigm.

DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

SINGULAR.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns
<i>Voc.</i>	amāns	amāns
<i>Abl.</i>	amantē	amante

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantēs (īs)	amantia
<i>Voc.</i>	amantēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amantibus	amantibus

- a. Compare the declension of the present participle active with that of adjectives of the third declension (113), noting that in the ablative singular the adjective has **-ī**, the participle **-e**.*

* The participle also, when used as an adjective, has **-ī** in the ablative singular.

273.

Illustrative Examples.

Cōpiās pūgnantēs videō, I see the troops fighting.

Adventum ējus exspectantēs, castra mūnīvimus, while (we were) awaiting his approach, we fortified the camp.

Adventum ējus exspectantēs, castra mūniēmus, while (we are) awaiting his approach, we shall fortify the camp.

β Lēgātum fortiter pūgnantem vulnerāvērunt, they wounded the lieutenant while he was fighting bravely.

β Lēgātum, dum fortiter pūgnat, vulnerāvērunt, they wounded the lieutenant while he was fighting bravely.

Dum castra mūniuntur, hostēs impetum fēcērunt, while the camp was being fortified, the enemy made an attack.

These sentences illustrate the following points:—

a. The present participle in Latin is found only in the active voice; the time denoted is not necessarily present, but is always the same as that of the main verb.

b. The Latin present participle active is translated sometimes by the English imperfect participle in *-ing* (so especially after verbs of *hearing* and *seeing*); but more often by *while* (or *as*) with the participle in *-ing*, or by *while* (or *as*) with a progressive form of the indicative; so

venientēs may be	{	<i>coming,</i> <i>while coming,</i> <i>while we (you, they) are coming,</i> <i>while we (you, they) were coming.</i>
------------------	---	---

c. While is also indicated in Latin by the conjunction dum, which is regularly followed by the present indicative, even when the reference is to past time. (Dum should never be used with the participle).

d. Dum and the indicative supply the lack of a present participle passive in Latin.

274.

VOCABULARY.

clām-or, -ōris, m.,	shout, shouting.
fleō, ēre, flēvī, flētum,	weep, be in tears.
frūmentārius, a, um,	of or pertaining to grain.
interim, adv.,	meanwhile, in the meantime.
labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	toil; struggle, be in distress.
legiōnārius, a, um,	of a legion, legionary.
onerārius, a, um,	of burden, for burdens.
resistō, ere, restitī,	resist.
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum,	raise; remove, take away.
undique, adv.,	on all sides, from all sides.

Phrases : *rēs frūmentāria*, provisions, supplies. *nāvis onerāria*, transport (ship).

N.B.—The suffix *-ārius* is used to form from nouns adjectives signifying *pertaining* or *belonging to*. This appears in English as *-ary*.



Navis Oneraria : Transport Ship.

EXERCISES.

275.

I.

A.—1. Dum Caesar nāvēs longās parat, lēgātī ad eum dē dēditionē vērunt. 2. Caesarem lēgātīs respondentem audiverāmus. 3. Fortissimē pūgnāns, graviter vulnerātus est. 4. Tertiam legiōnem labōrantem vidit. 5. Dum castra mūniunt, nūllus hostis interim visus est. 6. Dum castra incenduntur, subitō clāmor ā nōbīs audītur. 7. Auxilium flēns ā mē petīvit. 8. Certō annī tempore undique ad eum convenire cōsuēvērunt.

B.—9. Dum nāvēs onerāriāe quās imperāverat cōguntur, interim cōsiliū prīncipum cōgnōscitur. 10. Sī spēs fugae sublāta erit, minus facile resistēmus. 11. Interim dum equitēs itinera explōrant, legiōnāriī milītēs castra pōnere coepērunt. 12. Graviter vulnerātī dē salūte dēspērāre coeperant. 13. Nāvēs et longae et onerāriāe incolumēs ad continentem perveniunt. 14. Dum peditēs castra fortissimē dēfendunt, equitātum rei frūmentāriāe causā dīmittit.

276.

II.

A.—1. Weeping, they sought peace and friendship from him. 2. The soldiers of the legion, while resisting bravely, were surrounded by the cavalry. 3. In the meantime, while he is awaiting reinforcements, he begins a cavalry battle. 4. We made an attack on the enemy while they were hastening to the forest. 5. Being surrounded by us on all sides, they began to be in distress. 6. He gave the signal to us as we were despairing of victory. 7. He heard the soldiers raising a shout; he heard the shouting of the soldiers as they were sallying out. 8. While the transports are assembling, according to custom he summons the lieutenants.

B.—9. The enemy, because they have a larger number of troops, will easily surround you as you are leaping down from the transports. 10. While the army was being led across, he saw the reinforcements withdrawing. 11. ~~If~~ all fear is removed, they will not endure toil (any) longer. 12. While hesitating on account of the lack of provisions, he was informed of the assault. 13. While the cavalry withstood the enemy's attack, he meanwhile drew up the legionary soldiers on the top of the hill. 14. By incessant toil we shall overcome (*use superō*) everything.

LESSON XLVIII.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN. POSSESSIVES.

277.

Paradigm.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, THIRD PERSON.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sē, or sēsē</i>	<i>sē, or sēsē</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sē, or sēsē</i>	<i>sē, or sēsē</i>

278.

Illustrative Examples.

- Sē dēfendit,* *he defends himself.*
Sē dēfendunt, *they defend themselves.*
Eōs ad sē vocat, *he calls them to him.*
Equitēs cum eō mīsīt, *he sent the cavalry with him.*
Equitēs sēcum ēdūxit, *he led out the cavalry with him.*
Impedimenta sēcum portant, *they carry the baggage with them.*

- a. Observe that in these sentences the reflexive pronoun *sē* is sometimes singular, sometimes plural;

* In the first and second persons, the personal pronouns serve also as the reflexive pronouns; as, *Mē dēfendō,* *I defend myself.*

that it is translated sometimes by the English reflexive pronoun (*himself, themselves*), sometimes by the ordinary third personal pronoun (*him, them*); but that in either case it refers to the subject of the verb. The English third personal pronoun when not used reflexively is translated by **is** (266).

b. Cum is suffixed to sē as to mē and tē (267. b).

279.

Paradigms.

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

First Person.	Second Person.	Third Person Reflexive.
meus, a um, <i>my, mine.</i>	tuus, a um, <i>your, yours.</i>	suus, a um, <i>his, her, hers, its.</i>
noster, tra, trum, <i>our, ours.</i>	vester, tra, trum, <i>your, yours.</i>	suus, a um, <i>their, theirs.</i>

a. These are all declined like regular adjectives of the first and second declensions (except that the vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mī**). **Tuus** is used in addressing one person, **vester** in addressing more than one.

280.

Illustrative Examples.

Meum adventum expectat, *he awaits my arrival.*

Nostrum adventum expectat, *he awaits our arrival.*

Adventum ejus expectō, *I await his (or her) arrival.*

Adventum eorum (or eārum) expectō, *I await their arrival.*

Mē adventum suum expectāre jussit, *he ordered me to await his arrival.*

Mē adventum suum expectāre jussērunt, *they ordered me to await their arrival.*

- a. The possessive pronominal adjectives agree in gender, number and case with the noun which they modify. Suus, like sē (278), refers to the subject of the main verb of the sentence ; ējus and eōrum (eārum) are used for *his*, *her* and *their* when not reflexive.

281. Illustrative Examples.

Arma trādidērunt, *they gave up their arms.*
Arma trādidimus, *we gave up our arms.*
Nostri sē suaque dēfendunt, *our men are defending themselves and their possessions.*
Adventum suōrum exspectant, *they await the arrival of their friends.*

- a. In Latin, possessives are seldom expressed except for the sake of emphasis or clearness ; the context being at other times a sufficient guide (55).
 b. These possessives are often used substantively, especially nostri, *gen. nostrōrum*, *our men* ; sui, *gen. suōrum*, *his men, their friends* ; sua (neuter plural), *his or their possessions.* (Compare 180.)

282. VOCABULARY.

ab-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, *hide, conceal.*
con-jungō, ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum, *unite, join (transitive).*
cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*
con-ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, *turn (transitive).*
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *join (transitive).*
osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, or ostēnsūm, *show, disclose.*
tergum, ī, n., *back.*
vertō, ere, vertī, versum, *turn (transitive).*

Phrases : in cōnspectum veniō, *come in sight.*
signa convertō, *wheel about, face about.*
terga vertō, *turn and flee, take to flight.*
post tergum, *in the rear.*

N.B.—Many English verbs may be used either transitively or intransitively, as *turn, surrender*. This is very much less frequent in Latin, where the intransitive use is often expressed by the transitive verb with the reflexive pronoun ; as,

TRANSITIVE.

*surrender, dēdere**turn, convertere**hide, abdere*

INTRANSITIVE.

*surrender, sē dēdere**turn, sē convertere**hide, sē abdere*

Similarly the more precise Latin translates *he joined Caesar* by *sē cum Caesare conjūxit* (or also *sē Caesarī conjūxit*), literally *he united himself with (or to) Caesar*.

EXERCISES.

283.

I.

A.—1. Eōs suum adventum expectāre jussit. 2. Dē sē dicit; dē eō dicit. 3. Frātre tuum ad sē vocat. 4. Belgās obsidēs sibi dare cōgit. 5. Sē suae omnia eī dēdērunt. 6. Vestrō exercitū nōn parēs sunt. 7. Eōrum fugā erāmus perterriti. 8. Repulsi ā nostris, sēsē in proximās silvās abdiderant. 9. Nostrō adventū permōti, sēsē cum hostibus conjungunt. 10. Omnēs ferē hostēs terga vertērunt. 11. In cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnerat.

B.—12. Eum ā sē dimittit. 13. In cōspectū exercitūs tuī, agrī meī vātātī sunt. 14. Dē ejus adventū certiorēs facti, Galli lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt. 15. Vestrae salutis causā militēs sēcum habet. 16. Auxilia post tergum subitō sē ostendērunt. 17. Duae legiōnēs jungentur; omnēs ad lūcem sēsē convertunt. 18. Multitudine suōrum nostram aciem premet. 19. Celeritate adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum perterriti, lēgātōs ad

eum misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt. 20. Legiōnēs sēsē
conjungunt et convertunt signa. 21. Nōn solum in
suis* sed etiam in vestrīs finibus vōs superāvērunt.

284.

II.

A.—1. He hastens to them and sends all the cavalry
before him. 2. On his arrival the Germans joined the
Belgians. 3. My father has been called friend by your
senate. 4. He will lead the legion he has with him
into our province. 5. They surrender to him; he
orders them to send hostages to him. 6. The legions,
after being joined, wheel about in sight of the enemy.
7. They join battle with our men. 8. You have a
leader mindful both of you and of himself. 9. If the
legionary soldiers show themselves, the cavalry will
take to flight. 10. Everybody turned towards us. 11.
While Caesar was restraining his men from battle, a
shout was heard in the rear.

B.—12. After the flight of their friends they hid
themselves and all their possessions. 13. He resolved
to lead out with him two legions. 14. They withstand
the attacks of our men. 15. He remembers not only
your father but also my brother. 16. If you send
ambassadors to Caesar, he will order you to surrender
your arms to him. 17. They are waging war in your
territories; you marched through their territories.
18. They hid out of sight of our men. 19. They will
carry all the grain with them. 20. Some turned and
fled, others surrendered. 21. When the barbarians
come in sight, he will give the signal to his men.

* With **suis**, **finibus** is to be understood. English would rather put the
noun with the first adjective and leave it to be understood with the second.

285.

WORD LIST V.

NOUNS.

agger	cōspectus	imperātor	passus
tauctor	^{CUSTOM} cōsuetudō	labor	spatium
auctōritās	continēns	lēgatiō	statiō
barbarus	dēditiō	memoria	tēlum
centuriō	dēfēnsor	onus ^{BURDEN} ^{WEIGHT}	tergum
clāmor	ēruptiō	oppūgnātiō	terra
concilium			timor

CONTINUOUS ADJECTIVES.

ācer	continēns	frūmentārius	memor
aeger	diligēns	legiōnārius	onerārius ^{BURDEN}

VERBS.

abdō	dīmittō	jungō	reperiō
absum	dispōnō	labōrō	resistō
augeō	distō	meminī	rumpō
commoveō	distribuō	opprimō	stō
conjungō	ēruppō	ostendō	timeō
cōnsidō	explōrō	perrumpō	tollō
cōnsuēscō	fleō	praemittō	trādūcō
convertō	incolō	praestō	trānsportō
dēdō	inveniō	premō	vertō
dēmōnstrō			

ADVERBS.

ācriter	diū	lātē	prope
aegrē	etiam	liberē	saepe
audācter	facile	longē	solum
brevi	ferē	magis, māgnopere	subitō
celeriter	fortiter	minus	suprā
continenter	graviter	multum, plūrimum	ūnā
diligenter	interim	prīmō, primum	undique

READING LESSON IX.

CAMILLUS AND THE SCHOOLMASTER OF FALERII.
(394 B.C.)

286.

VOCABULARY.

Faleriī, ōrum, m., *Falerii*, a town in Etruria.Faliscī, ōrum, m., *the Faliscans*, the people of Falerii.iūstitia, ae, f., *justice*.lūdus, ī, m., *school*.magister, trī, m., *master, teacher*.virga, ae, f., *switch*.

Annō circiter trecentēsīmō sexāgēsīmō ab urbe conditā*, Rōmānī cum Faliscīs, quī Faleriōs, oppidum Etrūriae, incolēbant, bellum gerere coepērunt. Faliscī dē adventū hostium certiōrēs factī, primō propter timōrem sēsē in oppidō continēbant (*kept*), et Camillus, quī imperātor erat Rōmānōrum, agrōs eōrum vāstārī iussit. His (*these, abl.*) rēbus adductī, Faliscī partem cōpiārum suārum ēmisērunt, et castra mille ferē passūs ab oppidō posuērunt. Camillus suōs longiōre itinere in loca superiōra nocte dūxit, et primā lūce Faliscī hostēs in omnibus collibus instrūctōs invēnērunt. Signum proeliī datum est. Faliscī nōn diū impetum Rōmānōrum sustinuērunt sed terga vertērunt, et aegerrimē ad oppidum pervēnērunt incolumēs. In oppidum repulsī, saepe ēruptionēs fēcērunt et diū resistere poterant (*were able*), quod oppidum locī nātūrā mūnitissimum erat, et māgna cōpia frūmentī in mūnitiōnēs undique comportāta erat. Tandem (*at length*) fortūna (*chance*) victōriam Camillō dedit.

* Literally *from the city founded*; this is the Latin idiom for *after the founding of the city*. Thus 360 A.U.C. = 394 B.C. For the ordinal numerals see 727. b.

Dum Rōmānī Faleriōs oppūgnant, magister lūdi, ad quem liberī principum oppidī mittēbantur, ex cōsuētūdine puerōs ex urbe in agrōs cotidiē dūcēbat. Brevi liberōs paulātim (*gradually*) longius ā portis dūcere coepit, et post complūrēs diēs liberī subitō circumventī sunt ā militibus Rōmānīs quī in statiōne erant collocātī. Ad imperātōrem adductus magister cōsiliū inīquū ostendit. “Dēdō tibi, Camille, liberōs nōbilissimōrum cīvium. Sī eōs dētinueris, oppidum celeriter in dēditionē veniet, quod patrēs eōrum māgnam inter cīvēs auctōritātem habent.” Camillus respondit “Nōs bella jūstē (*justly*) nōn minus quam fortiter cōsuēvimus gerere. Nōn contrā puerōs sed contrā virōs missī sumus. Rōmānī tibi sunt dissimillimī. Tū injūriā Faliscōs superāre cōstituistī, nōs virtūte nostrōrum.” Tum (*then*) et magistrum et liberōs ā sē dīmisit, et ad oppidum eōs redūcī jussit.

Interim flentēs patrēs mātresque liberōrum auxilium ā dis (*the gods*) petēbant, cum subitō clāmōr ante portās tollitur. Omnēs scsē ad clāmōrem convertunt. Liberī in cōspectum veniunt. Militēs Rōmānī manūs (*hands*) magistrī post (*behind*) tergum illigāverant (*had bound*) et puerī eum ad oppidum virgīs agēbant (*were driving*). Faliscī, jūstitiā Camillī māgnopere permōtī, lēgātōs ad eum dē pāce misērunt, et sē suaque omnia cī dēdidērunt. Et lēgātiō quae etiam ad senātum missa est dixit: “Superātī ā vōbīs et imperātōre vestrō, Rōmānī, nōs* dēdimus vōbīs, et pācem vōbiscum facere cupimus (*we desire*). Jūstitia vōbīs melior vīsa est quam victōria. Nōn solum arma dēpōnēmus, sed etiam memoriā vestrae jūstitiae semper (*always*) retinēbimus.”

* See the footnote on page 174.

LESSON XLIX.

THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN -iō.

287. Certain verbs of the third conjugation end in -iō, and have in the tenses formed from the present stem many forms which are identical with those of the fourth conjugation—those forms, namely, which have two successive vowels (ia, ie, or iu). The tenses formed from the other stems display no irregularity.

288.

Paradigm.

VERBS IN -iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Active.**Passive.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

1. capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
2. capis	capitis	<u>capēris</u>	capiminī
3. capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

1. capiēbam	capiebāmus	capiebār	capiebāmur
2. capiēbās	capiebātis	capiebāris	capiebāminī
3. capiēbat	capiebant	capiebātur	capiebantur

FUTURE INDICATIVE.

1. capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
2. capiēs	capietis	capieris	capieminī
3. capiet	capient	capietur	capientur

PERFECT SYSTEM.

PERF. INDIC.	cēpī, etc.	captus sum, etc.
PLUPF. INDIC.	cēperam, etc.	captus eram, etc.
FUT. PF. INDIC.	cēperō, etc.	captus erō, etc.

PRESENT INFINITIVE.

caperecapī

PARTICIPLES.

Present—capiēnsPerfect—captus

289.

VOCABULARY.

2 ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,	<i>receive.</i>
1 capiō, ere, cēpī, captum,	<i>take, capture.</i>
6 cōn-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,	<i>end, finish, accomplish.</i>
8 con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,	<i>hurl, throw.</i>
9 cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum,	<i>see, observe.</i>
4 faciō, ere, fēcī, factum,	<i>do ; make, build.</i>
10 fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum,	<i>flee, escape.</i>
6 inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum,	<i>slay, kill, put to death.</i>
7 jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum,	<i>hurl, throw.</i>
3 re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,	<i>regain, recover.</i>

Phrases : arma capiō, take up arms.

vulneribus cōficior, be exhausted by wounds.

in fugam conjiciō, put to flight.

proelium faciō, fight a battle.

sē recipere, (1) betake one's self, retreat.

(2) recover, rally (intransitive).

N.B.—In compound verbs, short **a** of the simple verb is commonly weakened to **i** before one consonant, and to **e** before two consonants ; so with the compounds of **capiō**, **faciō** and **jaciō**, and so also **prohibeō** from **habeō**. Similarly, short **e** of the simple verb is weakened to **i** before a single consonant (except **r**) ; as, **premō**, **opprimō** ; **teneō**, **retineō**.

EXERCISES.

290.

I.

A.—1. Nostri celeriter arma capiunt. 2. Tēla conjiciēbāmus. 3. Suōs labōrantēs cōspicit. 4. In fugam conjectī, sē ad agmen recēpērunt. 5. Pauci interficiuntur sed multī vulnera accipiunt. 6. Certiōrēs eōs facimus ; eum rēgem faciēmus ; multa proelia fēcimus.

7. Ex vāllō tēla jacitis. 8. Iter aegerrimē cōnficitur; vulneribus cōnficitur. 9. Sēsē ad suōs recipiet; in prōvinciam fugiam. 10. Fugientēs eōs cōspicimus. 11. Arma dē mūrō in fossam jaciēbantur.

B.—12. Tēla conjici jussit; nostrōs impetum facere jussit. 13. Ex hostium castris cōspiciēminī. 14. Ejus adventū nostrī sē ex timōre recipient. 15. Centuriōnem complūribus cōfectum vulneribus circumvenimus et interficimus. 16. Trāns Rhēnum sē in finēs Germānōrum recipit. 17. Cōspiceris; interficiēris; jēceris. 18. Sī oppidum recēperō, pācem vōbiscum faciam. 19. Omnia oppida quae cōspicimus incendēmus; omnia oppida quae cōspexerimus incendēmus. 20. Litterās accēpit; tempus fugit; castra capiuntur. 21. Interficitur multīs gravibusque* vulneribus cōfectus.

291.

II.

A.—1. We announce, we flee, we come. 2. He orders them to be summoned and put to death. 3. We shall do nothing; we determine to do nothing. 4. You were fleeing out of sight. 5. The weapons were being hurled boldly. 6. We receive many wounds; few wounds are received. 7. They were betaking themselves to their camp. 8. We are seen leaping down out of the ship. 9. The war will speedily be finished; I shall finish the war as speedily as possible. 10. Exhausted by their wounds, several soldiers are captured and put to death. 11. He is throwing himself into the sea; he was retreating with us across the river.

B.—12. You will fight a battle; while fighting bravely you will be killed. 13. We are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages. 14. He was building larger

* In such sentences the English idiom omits the conjunction *and*.

vessels; they were marching through our province. 15. Several are killed, the rest are put to flight. 16. Exhausted by wounds, the enemy turned and fled. 17. We are taking up arms for the sake of our common freedom; you were hurling weapons. 18. If they surrender, they will receive their freedom. 19. I am being captured; I used to be seen; I shall be slain. 20. He kills a large number of our men as they are fleeing. 21. While our men were taking up their arms, the cavalry rallied.

LESSON L.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: *Hic, Ille, Is.*

292.

Paradigms.

	(a) <i>hic</i> .			(b) <i>ille</i> . <i>that</i>		
SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>
PLUR.						
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

(c) For *is* see 266.

293.

Illustrative Examples.

Prōvincia mea haec est, illa vestra, *this is my province, that (is) yours.*

Hōs ad eum mittit, *he sends these (or them) to him.*

Haec ab hīs nūntiīs cōgnōvit, *he learned this from these messengers.*

Eum locum mūnīverunt, *they fortified that place.*

Eōs quī fugiunt vidēmus, *we see those who are fleeing.*

Cum eīs legiōnibus quās redūxerat in finēs Belgārum contendit. Illī sēsē in silvās recipiunt, *with those legions (or with the legions) which he had led back, he hastens into the territory of the Belgians. They (or these) betake themselves to their forests.*

These sentences illustrate the following points:—

- a. **Hic, ille** and **is** are used both as pronouns, and as adjectives agreeing with their nouns.
- b. **Hic** is ordinarily to be rendered by *this* (pl. *these*); **ille** by *that* (pl. *those*). **Hic** refers to something regarded as near the speaker or writer; **ille** to something regarded as more remote.
- c. **Is** may be used as a quite unemphatic *that* or *this*, and sometimes may even be best rendered by the definite article *the*. It is often used as the antecedent of a relative, as in the last two sentences.
- d. Not only **is** (267) but also at times **hic** and **ille** may be used as the third personal pronoun. When so used, **ille** is more emphatic than **hic** or **is**, and is used especially to mark a contrast, e.g. to emphasize a change of subject, as in the last sentence.

N.B.—We may often translate **hic** by *this* (*man*) or *this* (*one*); **haec** (neut. plur.) by *this*, literally *these things*; and **ea quae** by *what*, literally *those things which*. (See 180.)

Trans. "this" "that" emphatic by "hic" or "ille" but if not emphatic use correct form of "is" "ils" must always be used as antecedent of "qui"

294.

VOCABULARY.

ac-cidō, ere, -cidī, — } <i>happen, befall.</i>	
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, <i>fall.</i>	
captīvus, ī, m.,	<i>prisoner, captive.</i>
gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, in passive,	<i>be done, take place.</i>
Lūcius, ī, m.,	<i>Lucius, a Roman name.</i>
Mārcus, ī, m.,	<i>Marcus, a Roman name.</i>
numquam, adv.,	<i>never.</i>
saepe, adv.,	<i>often.</i>
semper, adv.,	<i>always.</i>
statim, adv.,	<i>immediately, at once.</i>

Phrase : *rēs gesta, deed, exploit.*

EXERCISES.

295.

I.

A.—1. Dē hīs rēbus gestīs ex captīvīs cōgnōscit. 2. Hīc frāter Mārcus semper appellātur, ille Lūcius. 3. Ab iīs quōs miserat haec cōgnōvit. 4. Neque cum hāc legiōne neque cum illā sē conjungent. 5. Paucī ex iīs cadunt; dē equō in aquam cecidit; numquam cadet. 6. Praedam hīs et captivōs illīs distribuam. 7. Haec in Galliā gerēbantur. 8. Hūjus locī haec erat nātūra. 9. Hīs ex cōsuētūdine agrōs dederant. 10. Illum statim interfēcit. 11. Ea impedimenta quae sēcum portāre nōn audent, in hāc silvā dēpōnent.

B—12. Sī illōs cēperimus, hī statim sē dēdent. 13. Haec omnia etiam illīs erant incōgnita. 14. Hōc ante id tempus saepe mihi acciderat; numquam ante hōc tempus tibi accidit. 15. Rēs gestās illius dēmōnstrant. 16. Nostri subitō tēla in* hostēs conjiciunt; Illi statim terga vertunt. 17. Ad haec Caesar respondit; hīs lēgātis respondet. 18. Dum hī dē nāvibus

* With *tēla conjicō*, translate *in* by *at*.

dēsiliunt, illī audācter tēla conjiciunt. 19. Interim dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, cum iīs cōpiīs quās accēperat, in castra pervēnit. 20. Rērum gestārum populī Rōmānī memoriā semper retinēbimus. 21. Haec flēns ab illō petit.

296.

II.

A.—1. After this battle they move their camp from that place. 2. Of all these, the Belgians are the bravest; these are braver than those. 3. Nothing will happen to him; it never happens to them. 4. This* was the cause of that war. 5. They hastened towards those who were finishing these fortifications. 6. A larger part of them had fallen; her father fell. 7. These states used often to wage war with those. 8. We shall defend those into whose territories Caesar has sent this legion. 9. Alarmed by all these things, they send ambassadors to him. 10. We learn this from prisoners. 11. The exploits of Caesar were unknown to him.

B.—12. They call this son Lucius, that (son) Marcus. 13. Those who had inhabited that district they drove out. 14. We often do this for the sake of peace. 15. He immediately gave this prisoner his freedom. 16. When he has put these to death, he will turn to them. 17. On being informed of these things, he orders them to surrender; they hesitate to give up their arms. 18. At that time he held the leading place in this state. 19. It is always more dangerous to these than to those; he never gives more to this one than to that. 20. This side of that island extends about a mile. 21. This is thought to be taking place; all this had taken place.

* In sentences like this, the demonstrative agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun. Compare 295. A. 8.

LESSON LI.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

297. Review 261 and 262, noticing especially the agreement of the participle, the voice of the perfect participle, and the various translations possible.

Latin has no corresponding perfect participle of the active voice, and therefore such sentences as,

Having repulsed the cavalry, we were led back to camp,

Having received hostages, he made peace,

Having drawn up the army, he gave the signal,

cannot be literally translated into Latin.

298. Virtually the same meaning, however, is given by the so-called absolute use of the perfect participle passive; as,

Equitibus repulsis, in castra reducti sumus, *the cavalry having been repulsed, we were led back to camp.*

Obsidibus acceptis, pacem fecit, *hostages having been received, he made peace.*

Exercitū instructō, signum dedit, *the army having been drawn up, he gave the signal.*

This absolute construction is in Latin in the ablative case, and is very common, while in English it is in the nominative case, and is comparatively infrequent.

The participle is joined as a sort of predicate to a noun (or pronoun) which is not the subject of the verb, nor dependent upon any other word in the sentence; whence the name *Ablative Absolute*.*

299. Corresponding to the various free translations for the perfect participle passive suggested in 262, we

* The ablative absolute phrase as a whole is equivalent to an adverb modifying the predicate.

have the following free renderings, by the active voice, of the perfect participle passive when used in the absolute construction :—

His rēbus dictis, discessit,	{	<i>having said this,</i> <i>saying this,</i> <i>after saying this,</i> <i>on saying this,</i>	}	<i>he withdrew.</i>
---------------------------------	---	--	---	---------------------

So also the sentences in 298 may be rendered,

After repulsing the cavalry, we were led back to camp ;

On receiving hostages, he made peace ;

Drawing up the army, he gave the signal.

300.

VOCABULARY.

ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw away.*

ā-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, *lose.*

calamī-tās, -tātis, f., *disaster, defeat.*

dē-stringō, ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *draw, unsheathe.*

ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, *throw out.*

frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, *break, shatter, crush.*

incommodum, ī, n., *misfortune, loss.*

ōrāti-ō, -ōnis, f., *speech.*

ōr-dō, -dinis, m., *order ; rank.*

perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *throw into confusion, disturb.*

Phrases : sē ējicere, rush out.

ōrātiōnem habeō, *make (deliver) a speech.*

calamitātem accipiō, *suffer defeat.*

incommodum accipiō, *suffer loss.*

EXERCISES.

301.

I.

A.—1. Vicis hostium incēnsis, cōpiās redūxit. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, exercitum redūcit. 3. Clāmōre auditō, arma statim capiunt. 4. Eruptiōne factā, ad flūmen Rhēnum contendimus. 5. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā,

concilium dimisit. 6. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti, ācriter pūgnāvērunt. 7. Acie instrūctā, signum equitibus dat. 8. In fugam coniecti, multos ex suis amisērunt. 9. His rēbus cōgnitis, nāvēs solvimus. 10. Armis abjectis, sē ex castris ējēcērunt. 11. Hōc incommodō perturbāti, sē dēdere cōstituunt. 12. His proeliis calamitātibusque frācti, obsidēs dare coācti sunt.

B.—13. Cohortēs repulsae in locis superiōribus cōsistunt. 14. Cohortibus repulsis, in locis superiōribus cōsistunt. 15. Gladiō dēstrictō, subitō sē ex oppidō ējēcit. 16. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet. 17. Impedimentis relictis, ēruptionem subitō fēcērunt. 18. Omnibus equis ex cōspectū remōtis, proelium commisit. 19. Celeritāte nostrōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione miserant. 20. Multis amissis, sē in agmen recēpērunt. 21. Ab hostibus repulsi, māgnam calamitātem accēperāmus. 22. Hostibus repulsis, oppida incendimus agrōsque vāstāvimus. 23. Equitibus praemissis, castra mūniri jussit. 24. Primis ōrdinibus hostium hōc impetū perturbātis, brevī omnēs in fugam conjicimus.

302.

II.

A.—1. Having pitched the camp, they determined to await Caesar's arrival. 2. Sending ambassadors, they sought peace from him. 3. After laying waste (their) fields, he compelled them to give hostages. 4. Having slain a few, they had thrown the rest into confusion. 5. Drawing their swords, they seized the gates. 6. On procuring supplies, we shall set sail. 7. After fighting several battles, they sent envoys to Caesar. 8. Having lost all their ships, they surrendered to Caesār. 9. On learning this, he sent the third legion in advance. 10. Sending scouts in advance, he learned the order of the

line of march: 11. On being informed of his arrival, they betook themselves to the marshes. 12. Having suffered a great defeat, they will lay down their arms.

B.—13. Hearing the shouts in the rear, they rush out of the camp. 14. On being ordered to throw away their arms, they at first hesitated. 15. Collecting larger forces, they drive back our cohorts. 16. Having taken several towns by storm, he sent this despatch. 17. Being exhausted by wounds, they with difficulty withstand our attack. 18. After receiving many wounds, they determine to await reinforcements. 19. After delivering this speech, he withdraws. 20. Making an attack, they threw the ranks into confusion. 21. Having suffered this loss, they will make peace with us. 22. The ships being shattered are useless. 23. The ships being shattered, we have sought aid from you. 24. After hurling their missiles, they drew their swords.



Orator. (*Cicero addressing the Senate.*)

LESSON LII.

✓ PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE (continued).

✓ DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: *Ipse, Īdem.*

303. Various ways have been suggested in 262 and 299 for translating the Latin perfect participle passive, whether it be in agreement with the subject or in the ablative absolute construction.

In many cases also a dependent clause introduced by *when, after, or as*,* is a proper equivalent; as,

Repulsī ab equitātū, in castra contendērunt, as they had been repulsed by the cavalry, they hastened to the camp.

Equitibus repulsīs, in castra reductī sumus, when the cavalry had been repulsed, we were led back to camp; or, after we had repulsed the cavalry, we were led back to camp.

304. It should be noticed that the free renderings suggested in 299 are sometimes impossible; when, namely, the agent or doer of the action expressed in the participle is not the subject of the main verb; as,
Obsidibus ab hostibus datīs, Caesar pācem fēcīt, hostages having been given by the enemy, Caesar made peace.
Datō signō, facta est ēruptiō, the signal having been given, a sortie was made.

In such cases the translation by a dependent clause can always be resorted to; as, *after the enemy had given hostages, Caesar made peace; when the signal was given, a sortie was made.*

305. Rule. The Ablative Absolute is used to define the circumstances of an action.

With the absolute participle as with the participle in agreement with the subject (261), the exact relation

* For *as*, its equivalent *since* may often be substituted. Clauses introduced by *if* or *although* may also be used, but much more rarely.

(whether of time, cause, situation, means or condition) is not expressed in Latin and must be gathered from the general sense ; in the English rendering this relation should, as a rule, be indicated.

306.

Paradigms.

(a) *ipse*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

(b) *idem*.

	SING.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>		<i>idem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>		<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>		<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>
PLUR.				
<i>Nom.</i>		<i>eīdem, iīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>cōrundem</i>	<i>cārundem</i>	<i>cōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>
<i>Acc.</i>		<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>		<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> <i>iīsdem</i>

a. Compare the declension of *ipse* with that of *ille*, 292.

b. Compare the declension of *idem* with that of *is*, 266 ;
idem is formed by adding *-dem* to *is*.*

* Notice *īdem* = *is-dem*, *īdem* = *id-dem*, *eundem* = *eum-dem*, *eandem* = *eam-dem*, *cōrundem* = *cōrum-dem*, *cārundem* = *cārum-dem*.

307.

Illustrative Examples.

Equitibus praemissis, ipse aciem instruxit, *sending the cavalry in advance, he himself drew up the line of battle.*

À Gallis ipsis certior factus est, *he was informed by the Gauls themselves.*

Dē tē ipsō dicō, *I am speaking of you yourself.*

Sē dēfendunt, *they defend themselves.*

Sē ad eadem castra recēpit, *he betook himself to the same camp.*

Idem faciunt, *they do the same thing.*

Observe in connection with these sentences, that:—

- a. **ipse** (*-self*) and **īdem** (*the same*) are used both as pronouns and as adjectives ;
- b. **ipse** is used to emphasize or distinguish, and is not, like **sē**, a reflexive pronoun ;
- c. **ipse** may be used in any person, being translated *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*, according to the word with which it agrees.

308.

VOCABULARY.

ac-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, *draw near, approach.*

administrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *manage, attend to.*

aes-tās, -tātis, f., *summer.*

autumnus, ī, m., *autumn.*

expediō, īre, īvī, itum, *set free ; make ready.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter.*

probō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approve, favour.*

prō-vidēō, ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, *foresee ; provide, secure.*

tempes-tās, -tātis; f., *storm ; weather.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*

Phrases: legiō expedita, a legion in light marching order, i.e. without baggage.

primum vēr, the beginning of spring.

EXERCISES.

309.

I.

A.—1. Eōdem tempore ēruptiōnem faciunt. 2. Caesar ipse idem fēcit. 3. Eiusdem legiōnis centuriō sē interfēcerať. 4. Remissā legiōne, ipse in Ītaliā contendit. 5. Ipse dux hostium captus est. 6. Haec ā cīvibus ipsīs audīverat. 7. Ā vĕre ad autumnum noctēs sunt brevissimae. 8. Primā lūce equitātus ad mūnitiōnēs nostrās accēdit. 9. Proximā aestāte finēs hostium vāstat, ipsōsque interfēcit. 10. Eādem dē causā frumentum ante hiemem prōvisum nōn erat. 11. Propter māgnitūdinem tempestātis, difficile erat nāvēs administrāre.

B.—12. Dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs, cōpiae sē in hiberna recipient. 13. Quod ad hostium castra accēdēbat, legiōnem expeditam dūcēbat. 14. Praesidiō relictō, ipse in prōvinciā eōdem itinere contendit. 15. Reliquam partem aestātis, māgnae tempestātēs nostrōs ā pūgnā prohibent. 16. Omnēs idem probant; hōc ipsī nōn probābāmus. 17. Agrōs dīcitur habēre ā tē ipsō concessōs. 18. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō, celeriter sēsē Gallī expediunt proeliumque committunt. 19. Reliquae nāvēs tempestātēs ōceanī ipsius aegrē sustinēbunt. 20. Id quod ipsī aegerrimē fēcerať, ille fēcit facillimē.

310.

II.

A.—1. The same night the camp was moved. 2. When the troops had been drawn up, he himself gave the signal. 3. They betook themselves to the same camp. 4. The two sons of the king himself surrendered themselves at about the same time. 5. These are the same enemies with whom you yourself have often

waged war. 6. Several states are adjacent to the same province. 7. This place he had approved for many reasons. 8. In one summer Caesar had himself finished two very great wars. 9. While this was taking place, it had begun to be spring. 10. He himself approaches nearer, with three legions in light marching order and two thousand cavalry. 11. As the storm had been foreseen, there was not the same difficulty.

B.—12. We ourselves had set sail at midnight from the same harbour. 13. As several ships had been shattered, great loss had been suffered. 14. When this was learned, even the soldiers themselves were alarmed. 15. For the same reason, the nights are longer in winter than in summer. 16. If everything is provided before autumn, they will easily defend themselves. 17. When this fact (*rēs*) was announced, they were ordered to get their arms ready as quickly as possible. 18. According to his custom, when the winter was ended he collected as many troops as possible. 19. After carefully attending to these matters, he himself, at the beginning of spring, hastened to the army. 20. The legion itself was sent back to the same harbour from which it had set sail the preceding summer.



Sarcinae : Soldier's Pack.

FINIS

MAC A. pine.

LESSON LIII.

DEPONENT VERBS.

311. A considerable number of Latin verbs no longer retain the active voice, but use the passive forms with an active meaning. Such verbs are called *Deponents*.* As there is no perfect active stem, the principal parts of deponent verbs are but three in number; e.g.

<i>Conj. I.</i>	<i>cōnor, ārī, cōnātus sum, attempt.</i>
<i>Conj. II.</i>	<i>vereor, ērī, veritus sum, fear.</i>
<i>Conj. III.</i>	<i>sequor, ī, secūtus sum, follow.</i>
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	<i>sortior, irī, sortitus sum, allot.</i>
<i>Conj. III. (in -ior),</i>	<i>patior, ī, passus sum, allow.</i>

312. Illustrative Examples.

<i>Cōnantur,</i>	<i>they attempt.</i>
<i>Cōnātus,</i>	<i>after attempting.</i>
<i>Verēbāmur,</i>	<i>we feared.</i>
<i>Veritus,</i>	<i>fearing.</i>
<i>Secūtī erant,</i>	<i>they had followed.</i>
<i>Sequī coepit,</i>	<i>he began to follow.</i>
<i>Sortitur,</i>	<i>he allots.</i>
<i>Patitur,</i>	<i>he allows.</i>

a. Observe the translation of these forms and note especially that, with deponent verbs, the difficulty mentioned in 297 does not exist, as these verbs have a perfect participle with active force.

313. A few verbs (called *Semi-deponents*) are deponent in the perfect system only; for example, *audeō, ēre, ausus sum, venture.*

* From *dēponō*, *lay aside*, because they have laid aside their active forms.

314.

Paradigms.

DEPONENT VERBS.

Conj. I. Conj. II. Conj. III. Conj. IV.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	1. cōnor	vercor	sequor	sortior
	2. cōnāris	verēris	sequeris	sortiris
	3. cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	sortitur
	1. cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	sortimur
	2. cōnāmini	verēmini	sequimini	sortimini
	3. cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	sortiuntur
IMPERFECT	cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	sortiēbar
FUTURE	cōnābor	verēbor	sequar	sortiar
PERFECT	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	sortītus
	sum	sum	sum	sum
PLUPERFECT	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	sortītus
	eram	eram	eram	eram
FUT. PERF.	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	sortītus
	erō	erō	erō	erō

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT	cōnārī	verērī	sequī	sortirī
---------	--------	--------	-------	---------

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT	cōnāns	verēns	sequēns	sortiēns
PERFECT	cōnātus	veritus	secūtus	sortītus

 Similarly with verbs of the third conjugation in *-ior* :—

PRESENT INDIC.	patior	PERFECT INDIC.	passus sum
IMPERFECT “	patiēbar	PLUPERFECT “	passus eram
FUTURE “	patiar	FUT. PERF. “	passus erō

PRES. INFINITIVE pati

PRES. PARTICIPLE	patiēns	PERF. PARTICIPLE	passus
------------------	---------	------------------	--------

a. Notice that by exception the present participle of the active voice is retained ; as, *cōnāns*, *while attempting*.

315.

VOCABULARY.

cōnor, ārī, ātus sum,	<i>try, attempt.</i>
moror, ārī, ātus sum,	<i>delay, wait.</i>
nancīscor, ī, nactus sum,	<i>get, obtain.</i>
orior, orīrī, ortus sum,	<i>arise, rise.</i>
patior, ī, passus sum,	<i>allow.</i>
polliceor, ērī, itus sum,	<i>promise.</i>
proficīscor, ī, profectus sum,	<i>set out.</i>
prōgredior, ī, prōgressus sum,	<i>advance, proceed.</i>
sequor, ī, secūtus sum,	<i>follow.</i>
vereor, ērī, itus sum,	<i>fear.</i>

EXERCISES.

316.

I.

A.—1. Interfectus est, profectus est; jussī erāmus, passi erāmus. 2. Cōgnōscitur, nancīscitur; relinquētur, sequētur. 3. Timent, verentur; timuerat, veritus erat. 4. Oriēbātur, morāmini, cōnāberis. 5. Equitātū prae-missō, ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis sequitur. 6. Auxilium Gallis pollicitus, haec ab iis cōgnōvit. 7. Ante mediam noctem clāmor ortus est. 8. Dum in hīs locis Caesar morātur, lēgātī ad eum vērunt. 9. Equitēs eōsdem sēcum proficīsci jubet. 10. Lēgātōs interficī nōn patiar. 11. Inopiam frūmentī veritus, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius. 12. Praedā quam nactī erant relictā, sē in castra recipere cōnātī sunt.

B.—13. Nōn hostem verēmur, sed māgnitūdinem silvārum. 14. In aquam prōgressī, ex equis dēsiliunt. 15. In aquam prōgredientēs, audācter tēla conjiciunt. 16. Id, quod pollicitī erant, facere cōnābantur. 17. Sī statim profectī erimus, hostēs nōn diūtius morābuntur. 18. Rhēnus orīrī dīcitur in montibus. 19. Multī amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī erant. 20. Hīs rēbus

administrātis, paucōs diēs rei frūmentāriæ causā morābantur. 21. Eā quæ secūta est hieme, in* Britanniam proficisci ausi sumus. 22. Ortō clāmōre, omnēs sē ex oppidō ējicere cōnantur. 23. Lēgātōs, cōnantēs dicere, dimisit. 24. Nactus idōneam tempestātem, ipse tertiā vigiliā nāvēs solvit, equitēsque in alterum portum prōgredi et sē sequi jussit.

317.

II.

A.—1. We venture, we have ventured. 2. We were advancing, you were promising. 3. I shall attempt, we shall delay, I shall follow, we shall set out. 4. She had obtained, it has arisen, we have feared, you had allowed. 5. He was attempting to follow us. 6. You had promised us corn. 7. They fear everything; they are thought to fear nothing. 8. Having attended to everything, he sets out for the army. 9. After advancing seven miles from that place, he reached the same river. 10. Great losses will be suffered; 'great misfortunes will arise. 11. After waiting several days, and getting a supply of corn, he will set out for the war.

B.—12. Fearing the danger, he has not ventured to advance. 13. Drawing their swords, they attempt to follow. 14. He orders this same legion to set out and come to him as quickly as possible. 15. All this I promise you. 16. If they promise this, he will allow them to wait longer. 17. Setting out from this harbour, the ships proceed about ten miles. 18. They will attempt to march through our province. 19. Storms followed (for) several days. 20. Having left a garrison, he himself set out against the enemy. 21. The shouts of those who are following arise. 22. If he demands help from us, we shall promise a larger number of ships.

* After *proficiscor*, *in* with the accusative is to be translated *for*.

318.

WORD LIST E.

ATTACK.

rush out	take up arms	fight a battle
sally out	make ready arms	make an attack
break through	join battle	withstand an attack
drive back	draw swords	assault
resist	hurl weapons	sortie

REVERSES.

defeat	be in distress	receive wounds
conquer	be hard pressed	exhausted by
kill	flee	wounds
fall	turn and flee	fear (noun and verb)
lose	put to flight	throw into confusion
wound	take to flight	throw away arms
yield	suffer loss	lay down arms
hide	suffer defeat	betake one's self
prisoner	shatter	surrender (noun)
capture	alarm	surrender (verb,
overpower	despair of safety	trans. and intrans.)

WAR : MISCELLANEOUS.

centurion	transport	legionary soldier
rank	supplies	be on guard
outpost	exploit	raise a shout

MOVEMENTS.

set out	send in advance	turn
set sail	withdraw	wheel about
follow	come in sight	lead across
approach	march	bring over
advance	join	in light marching
		order

into - deduco
trans - deduco

NEGOTIATIONS.

embassy	point out	demand	forget
meeting	show	approve	memory
make a speech	promise	remember	mindful

TIME.

spring	autumn	always	at once
summer	winter	never	meanwhile
		often	

MISCELLANEOUS.

storm	do	make	inhabit
barbarian	happen	finish	either . . or
order	take place	observe	neither . . nor
weather	take	foresee	both . . and
get	take away	attend to	but
receive	break	delay	also, even
regain	throw	attempt	above
allow	arise	weep	on all sides

READING LESSON X.

ROME TAKEN BY THE GAULS. (390 B.C.)

319.

VOCABULARY.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel* (on the Capitoline hill at Rome).
Etrūscī, ōrum, m., *the Etruscans*, the people of Etruria.
urbs, urbis, f., *city*.

Illis temporibus Gallī nōn solum Galliam sed etiam
 superiorem* partem Italiae incolēbant. Per (over)
 montēs iter ex Galliā fēcerant, et complūribus proeliis
 factis, eōs quī ea loca incolēbant expulerant, et ipsi

* Literally *upper*, that is, *northern*.

agros eōrum obtinēbant. Post multōs annōs bellum inter hōs Gallōs et populum Rōmānum ortum est. Hūjus bellī haec erat causa. Brennus, rēx Gallōrum, cum finitimis Etrūriae civitatibus bellum gerēbat. Etrūscī, complūribus proeliis superātī, auxilium ā Rōmānis petivērunt. Illī, periculum veritī, quod Gallī propius accēdēbant, cōstituērunt nōn auxilium pollicērī sed bellum compōnere (*to settle*) cōnārī. Itaque (*accordingly*) trēs lēgātōs ad exercitum Etrūscōrum misērunt ; sed multis dē causis difficillimum erat pācem facere, et post complūrēs diēs proelium commissum est. Lēgātī ubi (*when*) Etrūscōs labōrantēs cōspexērunt, armīs captīs, sē cum Etrūscīs coniungunt, et ūnus ex ducibus Gallōrum interficitur. Gallī hāc injūriā adductī, cōstituērunt Rōmam oppūgnāre, et statim profectī sunt.

Dē eōrum adventū certiōrēs factī, Rōmānī cōpiās quam plūrimās coēgērunt, et ad flūmen Alliam, quod ūndecim mīlia passuum ab urbe aberat, prōgressī sunt. Ibi (*there*) proelium factum est et Rōmānī māgnam calamitātem accēpērunt. Clamōribus barbarōrum perterritī, primō impetū perturbātī sunt. Timor animōs omnium occupāvit, et armīs abjectīs terga vertērunt. Māxima pars exercitūs ad proxima oppida fugit ; multi vulneribus cōfectī cadunt, aut fugere cōnantēs interficiuntur ; paucī sē trāns Tiberim in urbem recipiunt incolumēs.

Dum haec geruntur, Gallī, praedā omnī distribūtā, ad urbem contendunt. Iter celeriter cōnficitur, et eōdem diē ad Tiberim perveniunt. Equitēs, quī praemissī erant, portās apertās (*open*) invēnērunt, neque ūlla statio prō (*before*) portis collocāta erat. Hāc dē causā insidiās (*an ambush*) veritī, cōstituērunt nōn prōgredi longius, sed, castris positīs, extrā (*outside*)

mūnitiōnēs morābantur. Interim Rōmānī, hāc calamitātē frāctī, urbem dēfendere nōn cōnantur, sed cum conjugibus (*wives*) et liberis sē in arcem recipiunt. Pōsterō diē, Brennus dē timōre Rōmānōrum per explōrātōrēs certior factus, barbarōs in urbem dūcit et Rōmam incendi jūbet. Tanta (*so great*) calamitās numquam ante id tempus populō Rōmānō acciderat.

LESSON LIV.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

320. After passive verbs of saying and thinking, both Latin and English regularly use the infinitive ; as,
Dīcitur esse inimīcus, *he is said to be unfriendly.*
Iter facile esse existimātur, *the road is thought to be easy.*

In the active voice such verbs are, in English, only occasionally followed by the infinitive (with a subject in the objective case) ; as, *I believe them to be innocent ; I know him to be honest.* More frequently, in English, verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing* and *perceiving* are followed by a clause introduced by *that* ; but Latin after such verbs always uses the infinitive with a subject in the accusative case ; as,

Dīcit Rōmānōs venīre, *he says that the Romans are coming.*
Existimat mē esse amīcum, *he thinks that I am a friend.*
Videt nostrōs castra pōnere, *he sees that our men are pitching their camp.*

321. (a) In each of the Latin sentences just given, notice that the time of the two verbs is identical ; in other words that the original statement or thought would be put in the present tense, viz., **Rōmānī veniunt, est amīcus, castra pōnunt.**

COMPLEMENTARY

(b) Besides the present infinitive, Latin has also a perfect and a future infinitive, to express respectively time before and time after that of the main verb; as,
Dicit Rōmānōs vēnisse, *he says that the Romans have come.*
Videt nostrōs castra posuisse, *he sees that our men have pitched their camp.*

Dicit Rōmānōs ventūrōs esse, *he says that the Romans will come.*

Exīstimat mē futūrum esse amīcum, *he thinks that I shall be friendly.*

322.

Paradigms.

THE INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	FUTURE.
Conj. I.	amāre	amāvissē	amātūrus esse
Conj. II.	monēre	monuissē	monitūrus esse
Conj. III.	regere	rēxissē	rēctūrus esse
Conj. IV.	audire	audivissē	auditūrus esse
Conj. III. (in -iō)	capere	cēpissē	captūrus esse
Sum.	esse	fuisse	futūrus esse or fore <i>to be about to, he</i>

a. The future infinitive is a compound form, made up of the future participle, ending in **-ūrus, a, um**, and the present infinitive of **sum**. This future participle is formed from the participial (or supine) stem, and means *about to* (come, etc.). The participle agrees in gender, number and case with the person or thing referred to, *i.e.* the subject of **esse**.

323.

Illustrative Examples.

Respondeō mē vēnisse, *I reply that I have come.*
Respondet sē ventūrum esse, *he replies that he will come.*
Respondent eum esse ventūrum, *they reply that he will come.*
Respondent sē esse ventūrōs, *they reply that they will come.*

- a. As the infinitive, unlike the indicative, has no personal endings, the pronominal subject (representing *I, you, he, etc.*) should be expressed.
- b. Notice that the reflexive pronoun **suī** is used in the accusative and infinitive clause for *he* or *they*, when denoting the same person as the subject of the main verb; to denote a different person the proper form of **is** should be used.

324.

VOCABULARY.

audiō , <i>hear.</i>	exīstimō , <i>think.</i>
certiōrem faciō , <i>inform.</i>	meminī , <i>remember.</i>
cōgnōscō , <i>learn, ascertain;</i> <i>in perfect tenses, know.</i>	nūntiō , <i>announce.</i>
dēmōnstrō , <i>point out, explain, mention.</i>	ostendō , <i>show, declare.</i>
dīcō , <i>say.</i>	polliceor , <i>promise.</i>
	respondeō , <i>reply, answer.</i>
	videō , <i>see; passive, seem.</i>

N.B.—These words, all occurring in previous Lessons, are followed by the accusative and infinitive.

EXERCISES.

325.

I.

A.—1. Dēmōnstrat altitūdinem flūminis esse māgnam.
 2. Nihil vidētur esse facilius. 3. Hostēs finitimam partem prōvinciae vāstāvisse audit. 4. Pollicentur sēsē in dēditionem numquam ventūrōs esse. 5. Videō eōs ex equīs ad pedēs dēsiluissē. 6. Nūntiant māgnās hostium cōpiās convēnisse neque longē abesse. 7. Meminī eum fuisse fidēlissimum amicum. 8. Omnium rērū cōpiam habēre exīstimāmur. 9. Dīcit sē alteram partem vicī Gallīs concessūrum esse, alteram cohortibus. 10. Respondent sē aliud iter habēre nūllum. 11. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē nōn parēs esse cēterīs. 12. Cōgnōscit tōtī Galliae equitēs Caesarem imperāre.

B.—13. Existimat eōs ex nāvī dēsilīre nōn audēre. 14. Ostendunt sē nihil fēcisse. 15. Vident illud cōnsilium sibi* fore periculōsum. 16. Māgnam inter Gallōs auctōritātem eum habēre cōgnōvī. 17. Finitimae cīvitatēs obsidēs sē datūrās esse pollicentur. 18. Respondet sē dē rē pūblicā nōn dēspērāre. 19. Sine ūllō ANY periculō proelium fore dēmōnstrat. 20. Dīcit aliōs discēdere, aliōs propius accēdere. 21. Respondet sē obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuēvisse. 22. Audiunt Belgās proximōs esse Germānīs, fortiōrēsque esse quam reliquōs Gallōs. 23. Silva dīcitur pertinuisse ā flūmine Tamesī ad mare. 24. Nūntiant sēsē castra positūrōs esse in summō colle.

326.

II.

A.—1. He announces that Caesar will come quickly. 2. He thinks that these cohorts are less brave. 3. He points out that you have had great experience. 4. We hear that the leading men have assembled from all sides. 5. They promise that they will do all this. 6. He says that they have reconnoitred all the roads. 7. He has been informed that the Britons have seized the heights. 8. He answers that he is a Roman citizen. 9. He sees that we hold all the hills. 10. They remember that they are free. 11. I learn that he has been unfriendly to you alone. 12. The war-ships seem to be very swift.

B.—13. I promise that I shall grant freedom to a large part of the citizens. 14. He thinks that the danger is common to all of us. 15. He explains that on account of the height of the mountains they are leaving all their baggage. 16. Summoning the soldiers, he declares

* If for sibi, eis be read, what different meaning will the sentence have?

that he will be their leader. 17. We have heard that he has demanded hostages from the senate. 18. I say that the time for (*literally* of) victory has come. 19. They answer that they will easily withstand the fiercest attack. 20. He sees that the other road is very easy. 21. He has been informed that there is a bridge over (*literally* on) the river Tiber. 22. You are thought to be the bravest of all the Gauls. 23. He has ascertained that this is not the custom of the Roman people. 24. The daughter is said to have been very like her mother.

LESSON LV.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (continued).

327.

Illustrative Examples.

Rōmānī veniunt, *the Romans are coming.*

Dīcit Rōmānōs venīre, *he says that the Romans are coming.*

Dixit Rōmānōs venīre, *he said* the Romans were coming.*

Rōmānī vēnērunt, *the Romans have come.*

Dīcit Rōmānōs vēnisse, *he says that the Romans have come.*

Dixit Rōmānōs vēnisse, *he said that the Romans had come.*

Rōmānī venient, *the Romans will come.*

Dīcit Rōmānōs ventūrōs esse, *he says* the Romans will come.*

Dixit Rōmānōs ventūrōs esse, *he said* the Romans would come.*

- a. These sentences illustrate the fact that in indirect assertions, in English, the tense of the verb in the subordinate clause is influenced by the tense of the principal verb of *saying*, etc.; while in Latin no such changes occur in the infinitive.

* In English, *that* is frequently omitted after verbs of *saying*, etc.

Whatever the tense of the principal verb may be, in Latin the rule holds that the present infinitive represents the *same time* as that of the principal verb, the perfect infinitive *time before* that of the principal verb, and the future infinitive *time after* that of the principal verb.

If, therefore, the original statement or thought would be in the present tense, the present infinitive should be used; if in a past tense (imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect), the perfect infinitive; and if in the future tense, the future infinitive.

328. Illustrative Examples.

Polliciti sunt sē esse ventūrōs, *they promised that they would come, or they promised to come.*

Spērat sē rēgem futūrum esse, *he hopes that he will be king, or he hopes to be king.*

- a. Observe that after verbs signifying to *hope* or *promise*, in English the simple infinitive may be used instead of *that* and a finite verb, but that in Latin only one construction prevails, the accusative with the future infinitive.

329. VOCABULARY.

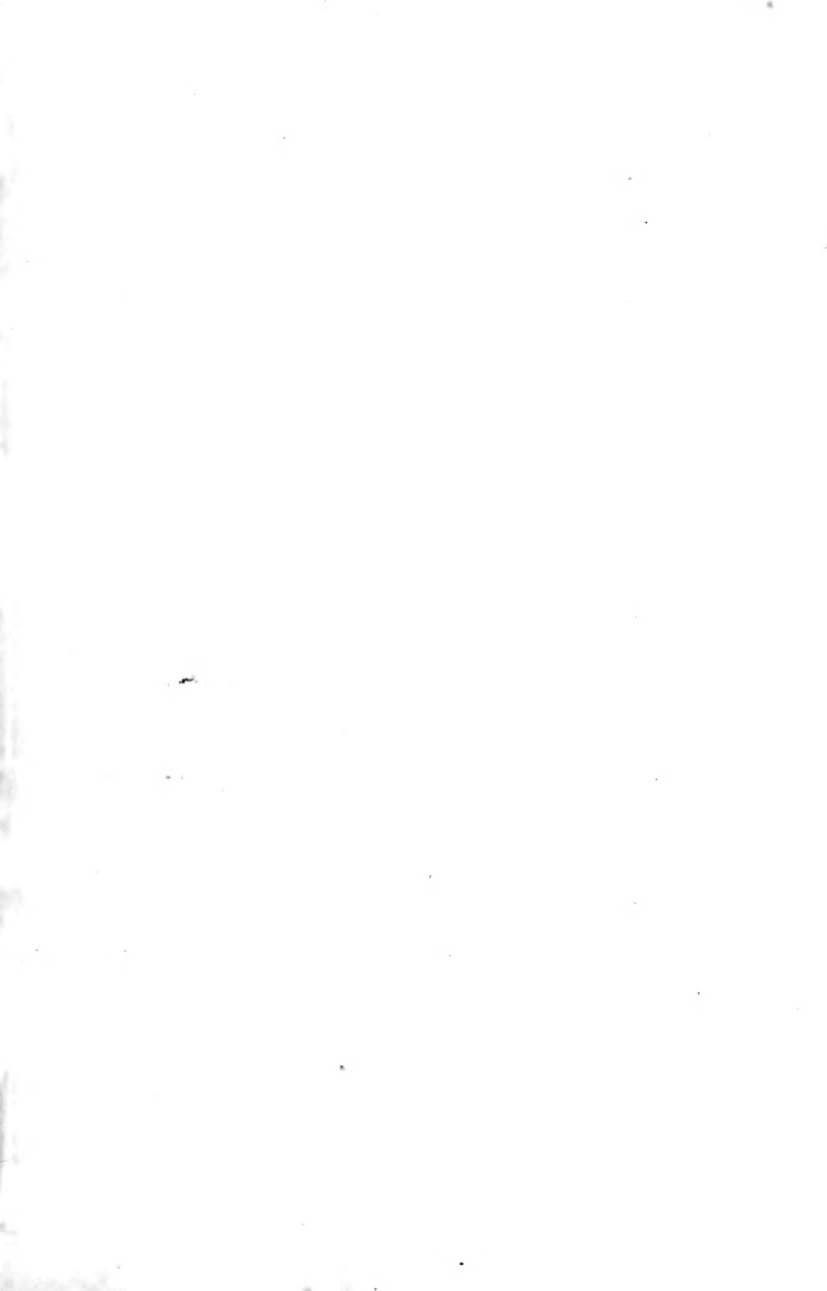
arbitror, āri, ātus sum,	<i>think, consider.</i>
renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>report, bring back word.</i>
scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum,	<i>write.</i>
spērō, āre, āvī, ātum,	<i>hope.</i>
suspīcor, āri, ātus sum,	<i>suspect.</i>

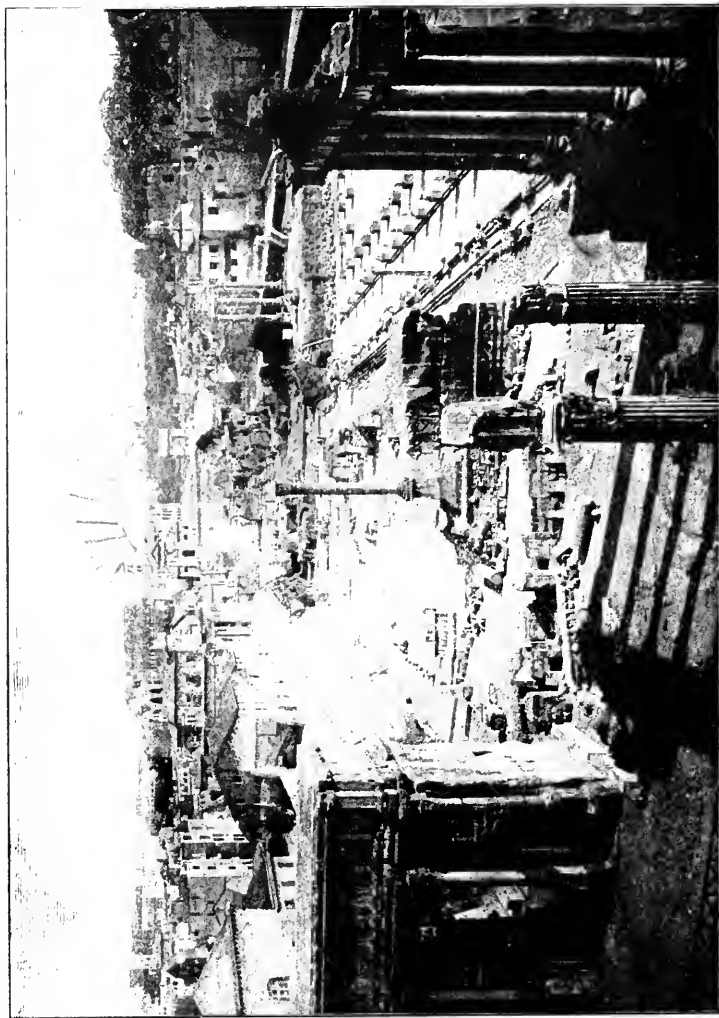
EXERCISES.

330.

I.

- A.—1. Omnem exercitum discessisse renūntiāverunt.
 2. Scripsit paucōs portūs esse idōneōs. 3. Suspīcātī sunt nostrōs in hunc locum esse ventūrōs. 4. Lēgātīs





MUSEUM.
THE ROMAN FORUM, LOOKING EAST. LONDON. ONT.

missis; obsidēs sē datūrōs* polliciti sunt. 5. Ex nūntiis litterisque cōgnōvit māgnās cōpiās convenire. 6. Nūntiāverant Gallōs adventum nostrum exspectāre. 7. Renūntiāverant Gallōs adventum nostrum exspectāre cōstituisse. 8. Spērābant Caesarem Germānōs agrōs vāstāre prohibītūrum. 9. Dēmōnstrāvimus eum milītārem ūsum habēre. 10. Nōbīs tē fidēlem fuisse arbitrabāmur. 11. Idem superiōribus diēbus accidisse suspiciābantur. 12. Spērāverat sibi Gallōs prīncipātum trāditūrōs esse.

B.—13. Renūntiāvit flūmen ab castris nōn longē abesse et trāns id flūmen omnēs hostēs cōnsēdisse. 14. Respondimus māgnam Caesarem injūriam facere. 15. Arbitrātus erat sē bellum celeriter esse cōfectūrum. 16. Subitō certior factus est ex vicō omnēs discessisse, montēsque tenēre. 17. Spērābam eōs in dēditionem ventūrōs*; polliciti sunt sē in dēditionem ventūrōs. 18. Breviōrēs esse in Britanniā quam in continenti aestātēs scrīpsit. 19. Respondit nōn aequum esse agrōs sociōrum vāstāre. 20. Spērābāmus nōs nāvēs solūtūrōs proximā nocte.

331.

II.

A.—1. He answered that he would move his camp the following night. 2. The same day Caesar was informed that the enemy had fled. 3. He suspected that they would always be hostile to him. 4. He wrote that he had abundance of corn and cattle. 5. They used to consider that this had been the cause of the war. 6. We hoped that the other road would be easier. 7. They reported that the commander-in-chief did not despair of safety. 8. He promised to examine the

* In the future infinitive, *esse* is very frequently omitted, without any change of meaning.

changing A.

matter. 9. He wrote that for this reason he had said nothing. 10. It was announced that the enemy's cavalry had surrounded the column. 11. They suspected that he was hastening to the right wing. 12. We declared that we should neither send ambassadors nor surrender our arms.

B.—13. I had been informed through scouts that you had led the troops across. 14. He wrote that Caesar was increasing the number of hostages. 15. They reported that the enemy, after taking the town by storm, had slain a large number of the inhabitants. 16. He said that they were sending despatches to Caesar daily. 17. We suspected that the leading men had determined to wage war with us. 18. From the same guides he ascertained that a town, protected by woods and marshes, was not far distant from that place. 19. I (he, they) had hoped to receive my (his, their) freedom. 20. Thinking* that this was a suitable place, we determined to encamp.

LESSON LVI.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (continued).

332.

Paradigms.

PRESENT AND PERFECT INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.
<i>Conj. I.</i>	amārī	amātus esse
<i>Conj. II.</i>	monērī	monitus esse
<i>Conj. III.</i>	regī	rēctus esse
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	audīrī	audītus esse
<i>Conj. III. (in -iō)</i>	capī	captus esse

*The perfect participle of **arbitror** should be used, as the thought preceded the determination.

- a. The perfect infinitive passive is made up of the perfect participle passive and the infinitive *esse*; the former of these agrees in gender, number and case with the subject of the infinitive.

333. Illustrative Examples.

Agrī vāstantur, the lands are being laid waste.

Nūntiat *agrōs vāstārī, he announces that the lands are being laid waste.*

Nūntiāvit *agrōs vāstārī, he announced that the lands were being laid waste.*

Agrī vāstātī sunt, the lands have been laid waste.

Nūntiat *agrōs vāstātōs esse, he announces that the lands have been laid waste.*

Nūntiāvit *agrōs vāstātōs esse, he announced that the lands had been laid waste.*

- a. It will be seen from these sentences that the same rules apply in the passive voice as in the active, for the use of the present and perfect infinitives after verbs of *saying*, etc.*

334. Paradigms.

INFINITIVE OF DEPONENT VERBS.

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Conj. I.</i>	cōnārī	cōnātus esse	cōnātūrus esse
<i>Conj. II.</i>	verērī	veritus esse	veritūrus esse
<i>Conj. III.</i>	sequī	secūtus esse	secūtūrus esse
<i>Conj. IV.</i>	sortirī	sortītus esse	sortitūrus esse
<i>Conj. III. (in -ior)</i>	patī	passus esse	passūrus esse

- a. The present and perfect infinitives of deponent verbs are formed in the same way as the corresponding infinitives of the passive voice; their future infinitive is like that of the active voice (322).

* The passive voice has also a future infinitive, which is, however, of such rare occurrence that it is omitted in these Lessons.

335.

Illustrative Examples.

Dicit hostēs sequī, *he says that the enemy are following.*

Dixit hostēs sequī, *he said that the enemy were following.*

Audit eōs profectōs esse, *he hears that they have set out.*

Audīvit eōs profectōs esse, *he heard that they had set out.*

Pollicētur sē secūtūrum esse, *he promises that he will follow (or to follow).*

Pollicitus est sē secūtūrum esse, *he promised that he would follow (or to follow).*

- a. As is shown by these sentences, the use of the various tenses of the infinitive of deponent verbs in the accusative and infinitive construction is according to the general rule.

336.

VOCABULARY.

crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *believe.*

intelligō, ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *understand, be aware.*

negō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deny, say . . not.*

sciō, īre, īvī, ītum, *know.*

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *feel, perceive.*

EXERCISES.

337.

I.

A.—1. Certior factus est oppida expūgnāta et incēnsa esse. 2. Scīmus litterās ā Caesare ad senātum missās esse. 3. Intellegimus Rhēnum in montibus orīrī. 4. Spērābant sē praedam nactūrōs esse. 5. Omnem exercitum prēmī nūntiāvērunt. 6. Cum mājōribus cōpiīs Caesarem esse profectum audīverant. 7. Crēdimus omnia diligenter facta esse. 8. Negāvit sē diūtius morātūrum. 9. Sēnsērunt reliquōs equitēs sē sequī. 10. Suspiciātūr vōs ausūrōs esse prōgredī. 11. Intellegit impetum minus facile sustinērī. 12. Scripsit castra vāllō decem pedēs altō mūnīta esse.

B.—13. Arbitrātur milītēs periculum verērī. 14. Sentit proelium equestre commissum esse. 15. Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque esse renūntiāvērunt. 16. Undique bellum renovārī videt; suōs interficī vīdit. 17. Dixērunt nāvēs oncrāriās jussās esse sē sequī. 18. Negat sē passūrum esse nōs discēdere. 19. Scīmus cum multīs rēbus impedīrī. 20. Crēdidit omnēs inimicōs ex cīvitate expulsōs esse. 21. Obsidēs profectōs esse et frūmentum comportārī respondit. 22. Legiōnēs collocātās esse in hibernīs cōgnōvit. 23. Intellēxerat auxilia in summō monte collocārī et tōtum montem hominibus complērī. 24. Centuriōnem superiōre proeliō multīs cōnfectum esse vulneribus dēmōstrāvīmus.

338.

II.

A.—1. He says that the troops have been led out of winter quarters. 2. They hoped that Caesar would set out for the war at once. 3. He was aware that the place was being carefully fortified. 4. He was informed that the enemy's territories had been laid waste far and wide. 5. He perceived that the Britons were advancing boldly into the water. 6. He thinks all the reinforcements have followed as quickly as possible. 7. She has promised to follow on the same day. 8. We knew that the troops had been greatly impeded by the extent of the forests and marshes. 9. I deny that we have been terrified by your arrival. 10. He had written that storms had followed for several days.

B.—11. I remember that he was called king and friend by the senate of the Roman people. 12. He answered that they had been compelled to give hostages. 13. He suspected that great losses were being suffered. 14. They see that our men are advancing

farther. 15. He announced that they were attempting to march through our province. 16. I knew that a very great storm had arisen. 17. He showed that the commander had set out for the nearest camp. 18. We believe a very large part of the whole army has been slain. 19. They will hear that many battles have been fought. 20. He denies that the danger is increasing; he said the danger had not increased.

LESSON LVII.

QUESTIONS. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

339. (a) Some questions seek an answer which has especial reference to an interrogative word (or group of words) placed at the beginning of the question; this answer is never "yes" or "no"; as, *Who has done this? Whom do you see? How many slaves has he? At what time did the messenger come?*

(b) Other questions seek a "yes" or "no" answer to the whole question; as, *Have you done this? Do you see the king? Has he many slaves? Did the messenger come at noon?*

(c) If these questions be compared with corresponding statements (e.g. *You have done this, I see the king, He has many slaves, The messenger came at noon*) it will be seen that in interrogative sentences in English—

- (1) the subject (unless itself an interrogative word) comes after either the whole or part of the verb;
- (2) the verbal phrases with *do* or *did* are preferred to the simple present and past tenses.

In Latin there is nothing corresponding to either of these points of difference between statements and questions.

340. Questions of the first class mentioned above are introduced in Latin, as in English, by interrogative pronouns, adjectives or adverbs ; as,

Quis haec fēcīt ?	Who has done this ?
Quem vidēs ?	Whom do you see ?
Cūr nūntius vēnit ?	Why did the messenger come ?
Quō tempore vēnit ?	At what time did he come ?

In Latin, as in English, the answer may be either a complete sentence or a portion of a sentence ; as, **Ego fēcī**, *I have done (it)* ; **Ego**, *I* ; **Rēgem videō**, *I see the king* ; **Rēgem**, *the king*.

341.

Paradigm.

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, **quis**.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
• <i>Nom.</i>	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
• <i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
• <i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
• <i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
• <i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. Compare the declension of the relative pronoun **quī** (254), noting the differences.

b. When the interrogative is used as an adjective, **quī** is preferred to **quis**, and **quod** is always used in place of **quid**.

c. **Cum** is suffixed to the ablative of the interrogative **quis**. (Compare 255. a. 6.)

342. (a) Questions of the second class ("yes or no" questions) have in Latin the interrogative word **-ne** appended to an emphatic word, which is placed at the beginning of the sentence* ; as,

Vidēsne rēgem ?

Do you see the king ?

Multōsne servōs habet ?

Has he many slaves ?

Questions of this sort may be answered by repeating the verb ; as, **Videō**, *I see (him)* ; **Nōn videō**, *I do not* ; **Habet**, *he has* ; or by one of the many words equivalent to *yes* or *no*.†

(b) Questions of this class may also begin with **nōnne** (**nōn-ne**), which invites the answer *yes*, or with **num**, which invites the answer *no* ; as,

Nōnne habet multōs servōs ?

Has he not many slaves ?

(or, *He has many slaves, has he not ?*)

Num rēgem vidēs ?

Surely you do not see the king ? (or,

You do not see the king, do you ?)

343.

VOCABULARY.

hīc, adv., *here, in this place.*

hūc, adv., *hither, here, to this place.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

eō, adv., *thither, there, to that place.*

ubi, adv., *where, in which place, in what place.*

quō, adv., *whither, where, to which place, to what place.*

unde, adv., *whence, from which place, from what place.*

cūr, adv., *why.*

quantus, a, um, *how large, how great.*

uter, tra, trum (205), *which (of two).*

* Words like **-ne** and **-que**, which are always appended to some other word, are called *Enclitics*. **-Ne** must not be used when the sentence contains some other interrogative word, that is, with questions of the first class.

† Such words are **etiam**, *even so* ; **certē**, *certainly* ; **sānē**, *to be sure* ; **nōn**, *no* ; **minimē**, *by no means*.

N.B.—**Ubi, quō** and **unde** are used both as interrogative adverbs and as relative adverbs; as, **Ubi est?** **In eō locō ubi legiō hiemat.** *Where is he? In the place where the legion is wintering.* The twofold meaning and translation of the English words *where, here* and *there* should be carefully noted.

EXERCISES.

344.

I.

A.—1. Cūr nōn respondēs? Nōnne respondēre audēs? Num dubitās respondēre? 2. Quā dē causā* sē abdidērunt? Multīs dē causīs. 3. Quanta est hūjus fossae lātitudō? 4. Ubi habitās, Mārce? Habitāsne hīc? 5. Nāvēsne profectae sunt? Unde profectae sunt? Quō prōgrediuntur? 6. Eō pervēnērunt primō vēre. Quō tempore profectī sunt? Aliī superiōre hieme, aliī autumnō, aliī mediā aestāte. 7. Ibi fortiter pūgnāns, gravissimē vulnerātus est. Ā quō vulnerātus est? Quis eum vulnerāvit? 8. Uter alterī pāret? Lēgātus imperātōrī pāret. 9. Nāvibus āmissis, quō sē convertent? Nōnne hūc sē recipient? 10. Quibus ex regiōnibus* vēnistis quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōvistis? 11. Quid petunt aliud† Rōmānī?

B.—12. Nōnne haec onera gravia sunt? 13. Cui omnia haec incōgnita erant? 14. Hīc conenium principum habēbō.‡ 15. Ibi cōspicit dēfēnsōrēs labōrantēs. 16. Hūc omnia pecora compellere coeperant. 17. Eō cum Caesar ipse vēnerit, animōs omnium cōfirmābit. 18. Nōnne nātūrā locī continēmur? 19. Quanta multitūdō ibi cecidit? Trecentīne cecidērunt? 20. Quid postulātis? Cūr imperium postulāvistis? 21. Pedestrēs

* This is the regular order when the interrogative modifies a noun governed by a preposition.

† Literally 'other thing,' freely 'else.' ‡ Translate **habēō** here by 'hold.'

cōpiās in hīberna proficīscī, ibique hiemāre jubet.
22. Nōne proelium illud meministī? Num memoriam
proeliī illius dēposuistī? Memor sum, et memoriam
semper retinēbō.

345.

II.

A.—1. How large is the swiftest of all the ships?
Which of the two ships is the swifter? 2. Who is more
powerful? What is more daring? 3. Why do we
hesitate to throw away our arms? 4. Did not Caesar
announce that he would quickly come thither? 5. Have
the enemy come in sight? Have the guards been posted
there? 6. Surely you are not awaiting the approach
of the legionary soldiers here, are you? 7. They
suspected that our men would come here the next night.
8. For what reason have the ranks been thrown into
confusion? 9. With whom are they continually waging
war? 10. Where are the foot-soldiers betaking them-
selves? Where have you come from? 11. Where were
the rest of the troops? They were wintering in the
province where the barbarians had renewed the war.

B.—12. At noon they were led back to the lake from
which they had set out at dawn. 13. He himself
hastens hither by forced marches. 14. Do you see the
place where we are accustomed to assemble? 15. Had
not a large number of cattle been found there? 16.
Which of the two embassies is the larger? 17. To
whom has he given more? 18. After seizing the gates,
he stations a garrison there. 19. Fearing this danger,
he sent two cohorts there at once. 20. Surely you do
not approve Caesar's speech, do you? 21. Do you
deny that the enemy's line was put to flight? 22. Are
you not aware that we inhabit this island?

LESSON LVIII.

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

346. Strictly speaking, the term 'periphrastic' (from *periphrasis*, a round-about expression) might be applied to any compound form of the verb, that is, to any form which is obtained, not by a mere change of ending, as *miserat*, but by compounding a participle with the verb *sum*, as *missus erat*. But the term is usually restricted to two sets of forms:—

- a. The *Active Periphrastic* conjugation, made up of the future participle active and the verb *sum*.
- b. The *Passive Periphrastic* conjugation, made up of a form called the gerundive and the verb *sum*.

The future participle active ends in *-ūrus* (*-a*, *-um*) and is formed from the participial (or supine) stem in *-um* (138); as, *amātūrus*, *monitūrus*, *rēctūrus*, *audītūrus*.

The gerundive ends in *-ndus* (*-a*, *-um*), and is formed from the present stem; as, *amandus*, *monendus*, *regendus*, *audiendus*.

347.

Paradigms.

(a) ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present</i>	<i>amātūrus sum</i> , <i>es</i> , <i>est</i> <i>amātūrī sumus</i> , <i>estis</i> , <i>sunt</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>amātūrus eram</i>
<i>Future</i>	<i>amātūrus erō</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>amātūrus fui</i>
<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>amātūrus fueram</i>
<i>Future Perfect</i>	<i>amātūrus fuerō</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present</i>	<i>amātūrus esse</i>
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>amātūrus fuisse</i>

(b) PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present</i>	amandus sum, es, est amandī sumus, estis, sunt
<i>Imperfect</i>	amandus eram
<i>Future</i>	amandus erō
<i>Perfect</i>	amandus fui
<i>Pluperfect</i>	amandus fueram
<i>Future Perfect</i>	amandus fuerō

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present</i>	amandus esse
<i>Perfect</i>	amandus fuisse

348.

Illustrative Examples.

- 1 **Lēgātōs missūrī sumus,** *we are about to (going to) send envoys.*
- 2 **Locum mūnītūrī erant,** *they were about to (going to) fortify the place.*
- 3 **Lēgātī mittendī sunt,** *envoys should be (ought to be) sent.*
- 4 **Lēgātī mittendī erant,** *envoys should have been (ought to have been) sent.*
- 5 **Locus mūniendus est,** *the place must be (has to be) fortified.*
- 6 **Locus mūniendus erat,** *the place had to be fortified.*
- 7 **Locus mūniendus erit,** *the place will have to be fortified.*

2. The active periphrastic conjugation, it will be observed, expresses intention, while the passive periphrastic conjugation expresses necessity or duty. Notice carefully the various translations of the different tenses, and especially the manner of expressing necessity or duty in past time.

349.

VOCABULARY.

nēmō (**nēminis**). *m.*, *no one, nobody.*

noctū, *adv.*, *by night.*

omnīnō, *adv.*, *altogether, in all*; with negatives, *at all.*

prope, *adv.* (248), *near*; *nearly, almost.*

quaerō, *ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, ask, inquire.*

rūsus, *adv.*, *again.*

simul, *adv.*, *at the same time.*

tantus, *a, um, so great, such great.*

turris, *is, f.* (*acc. im, abl. ī*), *tower.*

ūnā, *adv.*, *together, along* (generally used with **cum**).

Phrases : **bellum parō**, *prepare for war.*

pontem in flūmine faciō } *build a bridge over*

flūmen ponte jungō } *a river.*

N.B.—The declension of **nēmō** is defective. Regularly, for the genitive and ablative, and often for the dative, the corresponding cases of **nūllus** (205) are used.

EXERCISES.

350.

I.

A.—1. Proelium committendum est; proelium renovandum erat. 2. Proelium factūrī sunt; sīgnū proclīī datūrus erat. 3. Hostēs sunt noctū opprimendī; bellum parātūrī sunt. 4. Simul clāmōr rūsus ortus est. 5. Ūnā mēcūm profectūrus fuerat. 6. Nihil omnīnō factūrī sumus; pontem in illō flūmine factūrī erāmus. 7. In trēs omnīnō partēs peditātus distribuendus erit. 8. Intellegit nostrōs turrim propius mōtūrōs esse; negat turrim rūsus movendam fuisse. 9. Spērat prope nēminem ex pūgnā excessūrum esse. 10. Dē fortitūdine et virtūte mīlitum quaerere cōsuēvit. 11. Cūr tantum spatium aggerēs distant? 12. Quanta erit turrium altitūdō?

B.—13. Simul ab duōbus lateribus impetus ācerimē faciendus est. 14. Num rūsus terga versūrī estis? 15. Quis sē vōbiscum conjūctūrus est? Nēmō omnīnō. 16. Flūmen ponte jungī jusseram, et cōpiās, quae coāctae erant, trāductūrus eram. 17. Cōpiae, quās coēgerāmus, unā nōbiscum erant trādūcendae. 18. Datō signō, cohortēs ex castris noctū ēruptūrae erant. 19. Summa erat difficultās, quod omnia ūnō tempore facienda erant. 20. Tantā celeritāte commōtae, prope omnēs civitatēs obsidēs datūrae sunt. 21. Num propter paucitatem dēfēnsōrum et inopiam rei frūmentāriae, dē salute dēspērātūrī sumus? 22. Sī causam ex captivis ipse quaesiveris, dicent liberius.

351.

II.

A.—1. The enemy must be driven back; we are going to drive the enemy back. 2. The cohorts should be sent out; he is about to send out the cohorts. 3. Almost all resist vigorously; no one will resist more fiercely. 4. The towns had to be attacked by night. 5. The camp will have to be fortified by a double wall, and a bridge built over the river. 6. He was going to compel us to give three hundred hostages in all. 7. All the horses ought to be removed out of sight at the same time. 8. The next year, having set out again, they were going to carry all their grain with them. 9. He answers that you must be surrendered along with the rest of the slaves. 10. From whom shall I ask about the height of the towers?

B.—11. No lands at all should have been granted to them. 12. Before this time, so great a disaster has happened to no one. 13. Almost daily he asks the reason. 14. They think that no one will venture to approach nearer by night. 15. The advocates of this

plan ought to have been given up at once. 16. Must the other part of the village be granted to the same army? 17. Which part of the village is Caesar going to grant to us? Neither part. 18. At the same time, the ships in* which Caesar was going to carry back his army were being delayed by storms. 19. Is he not going to attempt to lead all his men back again? 20. The scouts had to be recalled along with those who were hurling their weapons from (dē) the tower.

352.

WORD LIST VI.

NOUNS.

aestās	captīvus	nēmō	tempestās
autumnus	hiems	ōrātiō	turris
calamitās	incommodum	ōrdō	vēr

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

ego	is	quī	tū
hīc	meus	quis	tuus
īdem	nōs	suī	uter
ille	noster	suus	vester
ipse	quantus	tantus	vōs

ADVERBS.

cūr	noctū	prope	simul
eō	nōnne	quō	statim
hīc	num	rūrsus	ubi
hūc	numquam	saepe	ūnā
ibi	omnīnō	semper	unde

* Literally 'by means of which.'

VERBS.

abjiciō	cōnor	jaciō	prōvideō
accēdō	cōnspiciō	moror	quaerō
accidō	crēdō	nancīscor	recipiō
accipiō	dēstringō	negō	renūntiō
administrō	ējiciō	orior	sciō
āmittō	expediō	patior	scribō
arbitror	faciō	perturbō	sentiō
cadō	frangō	polliceor	sequor
capiō	fugiō	probō	spērō
cōficiō	intellegō	proficīscor	suspicor
conjiciō	interficiō	prōgredior	vereor

READING LESSON XI.

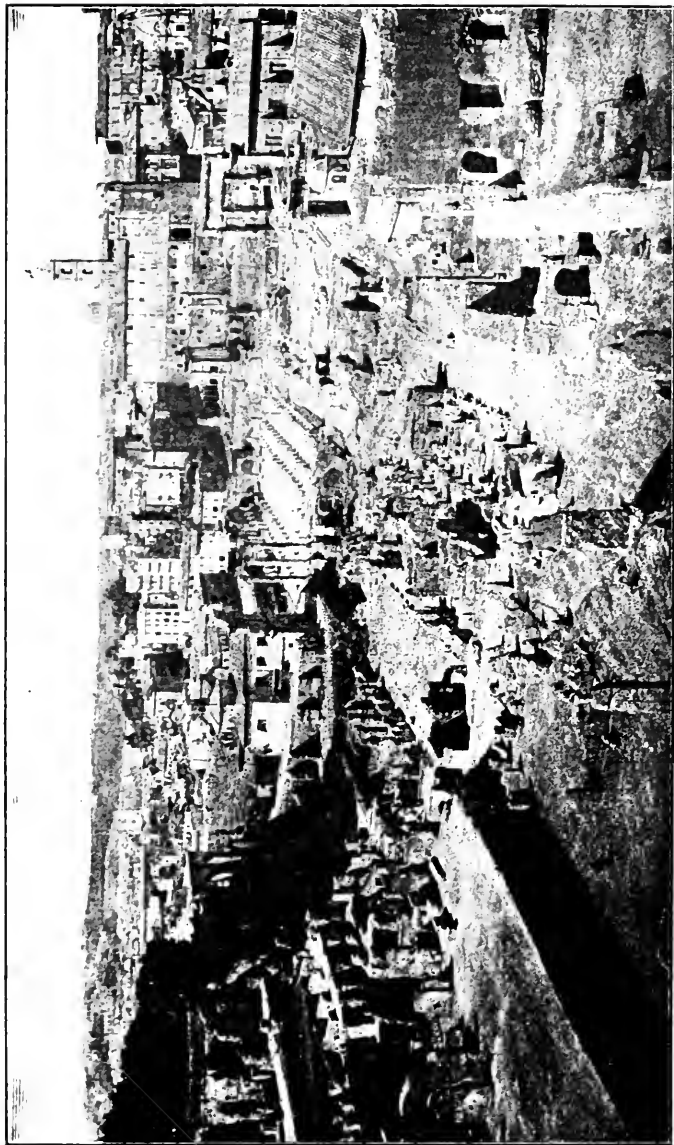
ROME DELIVERED FROM THE GAULS. (390 B.C.)

353.

VOCABULARY.

ascendō, ere, -dī, ascēsum, *climb, ascend.*ascēsus, ūs, m., *ascent.*conditor, -tōris, m., *founder.*exsilium, ī, n., *exile.*nē . . . quidem, *not even.*obsideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *besiege.*

Post complūrēs diēs Gallī, incēnsā urbe, arcem expūgnāre cōnatī sunt. Primā lūce, signō datō, multitudō omnis barbarōrum impetum fēcit. Rōmānī, statīonibus firmātis, hostēs fortiter exspectant, et ad medium ferē ascēsum prōgredi eōs patiuntur. Tum (*then*) ex locō superiōre tēlis subitō coniectis, hostēs facile repellunt. Gallī jam (*now*) sēnsērunt arcem obsidendam nōn oppūgnandam esse, et, relictā parte suōrum in urbe, reliquī agrōs longē lātēque vāstant.



THE ROMAN FORUM, LOOKING WEST.

Camillus, dē quō suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, in exsilium ab inimicīs suis expulsus erat, et eō tempore in oppidō, quod Ardea appellābātur, habitābat. Certior factus Rōmam occupātam et incēnsam esse, et agrōs Rōmānōs vāstārī, incolās Ardeae convocāvit et hanc ōrātiōnem habuit: “Nōne audīvistis, cīvēs, Gallōs accēdere? Quā dē causā veniunt? Quid petunt? Spērant sē Rōmānōs sociōsque Rōmānōrum aut interfectūrōs esse aut ex civitāte expulsūrōs. Num populum Rōmānum ā barbarīs superārī passūrī estis? Cūr nōn statim auxilium mittimus? Arbitror occāsiōnem (*opportunity*) nōn āmittendam esse.” Simul pollicitus est sē ducem eōrum fore, bellumque celeriter cōfectūrum esse, et omnēs bonōs cīvēs sē sequī jussit.

Hōc cōsiliō probātō, nūntius ad arcem missus est et Rōmānīs, quī ibi obsidēbantur, nūntiāvit Camillum cum māximīs auxiliīs celeriter ventūrum esse, et jubere Rōmānōs dē rē publicā nōn dēspērāre. Hīc nūntius locum nactus est ubi, propter difficilem ascēsum, hostēs nōn diligenter custōdiēbant (*were keeping guard*), et noctū māgnō cum periculō (*at great risk*) in arcem ascendit. Interim omnēs bellum parāre coepērunt, et plūrimī Rōmānī, quī ad proxima oppida fūgerant, undique ad Camillum convēnērunt.

Dum haec gēruntur, interim arx in māgnō periculō fuit. Namque (*for*) Gallī vestīgia (*footprints*) hominis cōspexērunt in eā parte collis ubi nūntius ascenderat, et, suspicātī id quod acciderat, eōdem ascēsu sequī cōnārī cōstituērunt. Nūllum praesidium ibi ā Rōmānīs collocātum erat, quod nēmō crēdebāt hostēs ascendere cōnātūrōs esse, et Gallī, mediā nocte profectī, prope ad summum collem pervēnerant, cum ānserēs sacri (*the sacred geese*) quī in templō Jūnōnis (*the temple of Juno*)

erant, hostēs accēdentēs audiunt, et statim clāmōre (*outcry*) sublātō Rōmānōs excitant (*arouse*). Illī, armīs celeriter captīs, hostēs dē mūrīs jaciunt, et iterum (*a second time*) Gallōs repellunt.

Sed propter paucitātem dēfēnsōrum et inopiam rei frūmentāriæ perīculum cotīdiē augēbātur, et Rōmānī prope dē salūte dēspērābant cum exercitus Camillī in cōspectum vēnit. Proeliō factō, Gallī superātī et ad ūnum (*to a man*) interfectī sunt. Nē nūntius quidem calamitātis relictus est. Camillus propter hās rēs gestās ā senātū populōque Rōmānō dē exiliō revocatū est, et pater patriæ (*of his country*) et conditor alter (*second*) urbis appellābātur.

Haec omnia accidērunt annō trecentēsīmō sexāgēsīmō quārtō ab urbe conditā.

LESSON LIX.

DATIVE OF AGENT. DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH ūtor.

354.

Illustrative Examples.

Lēgātī ā rēge missī sunt, *envoys were sent by the king.*

Lēgātī rēgī mittendī sunt, *envoys should be sent by the king.*

Locus ab exercitū mūnītus erat, *the place had been fortified by the army.*

Locus exercitūi mūniendus erat, *the place had to be fortified by the army.*

a. Notice that in the passive periphrastic conjugation, the dative is used with the gerundive to denote the person on whom the duty of acting rests. This is called the *Dative of the Agent*. Contrast the ablative of the agent with **ab** used with the ordinary passive forms of the verb (144).

- b. Notice further that the Latin periphrastic forms expressing duty or obligation are in the passive voice, and that therefore if an English sentence expressing this idea is in the active voice, it should be changed (mentally) to the corresponding passive before being translated by the Latin passive periphrastic conjugation. Thus, the sentences given above would correspond also to: *the king should send envoys, the army had to fortify the place.*

355.

Illustrative Examples.

Rēgī pārent, *they obey the king.*

Exercituī imperat, *he commands the army.*

Caesari resistunt, *they resist Caesar.*

- a. Notice that these Latin verbs translated by *obey*, *command* and *resist*, are followed, not by a direct object as the English verbs are, but by the dative. The English verbs are transitive, but the Latin equivalents are intransitive, and might more properly be rendered, *they are obedient, he gives orders, they offer resistance*, so that the dative quite naturally follows.
- b. To this class belong many verbs denoting *advantage* or *disadvantage*, or *disposition towards*, including verbs meaning to *help, favour, please, trust*, and their opposites, also to *believe, command, obey, persuade, resist*, and *spare*. But not all such verbs are followed by the dative; for example, *jubeō*.
- c. Notice how the vocabulary indicates that a Latin verb is of this class.

356.

Illustrative Example.

Hōc gladiō ūtitur, *he uses this sword.*

- a. The deponent verb **ūtor** is followed by the ablative case, and does not, like the English verb *use*, take a direct object. A more literal rendering would be, *he helps himself by means of this sword.*

357.

VOCABULARY.

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, *approach* (with dat.)**cōnfidō, ere, -fīsus sum,* *trust* (with dat.)** *semi-deponent***imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *command, govern* (with dat.)****noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *harm, injure, damage* (with dat.)****occurrō, ere, -currī, -cursum, *meet* (with dat.)****parcō, ere, pepercī (or parsī,) parsum, *spare* (with dat.)****pāreō, ēre, uī, itum, *obey* (with dat.)****persuādeō, ēre, -suāsī, suāsum, *persuade* (with dat.)****resistō, ere, restitī, *resist, oppose* (with dat.)****ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use* (with abl.)**

EXERCISES.

358.

I.

- A.—1. Interim nāvēs Britanniae appropinquābant.
 2. Decimae legiōnī Caesar semper cōnfidēbat. 3.
 Multās hōrās hostibus aegerrimē nostrī resistunt.
 4. Omnia sunt vōbīs diligenter administranda. 5.
 Facilius gladiis ūtentur. 6. Ab hōc cōnsiliō dēter-
 rendus est. 7. Ante hiemem frūmentum Caesarī
 prōvidendum erat. 8. Populus Rōmānus multīs cīvītā-
 tibus imperābat. 9. Cēterīs spē libertātis persuāsit.
 10. Caesarī hūc venientī occurrunt. 11. Nōne haec
 pontī nocēbunt? 12. Commūnis salūtis causā, eis quī
 nōbīs pārent parcēmus.

* **Cōnfidō** is a semi-deponent verb (313.)

B.—13. Parem numerum militum finitimae civitatī imperābit. 14. Sentit suōs ab hostibus premi. 15. Equitēs, quōs Caesar sēcum trāsportāvit, tibi ēdūcendī sunt. 16. Cōfidēbant sēsē incolīs persuāsūrōs esse. 17. Impetus in novissimum agmen huic legiōnī sōlī faciendus erat. 18. Liberī populī Galliae mihi ab injuriā dēfendendī sunt. 19. Integrīs cōpiīs hostium occurrērunt. 20. Malī cīvīs semper rei pūblicae nocent. 21. Timōre perterritī cēdunt et in dēnsissimās silvās fugiunt. 22. Armīs captīs, per mediōs hostēs per-rumpere cōnātī sunt. 23. Dum haec geruntur, flūmen ponte jungendum erat. 24. His rēbus oppūgnātiō nōn impedienda est.

359.

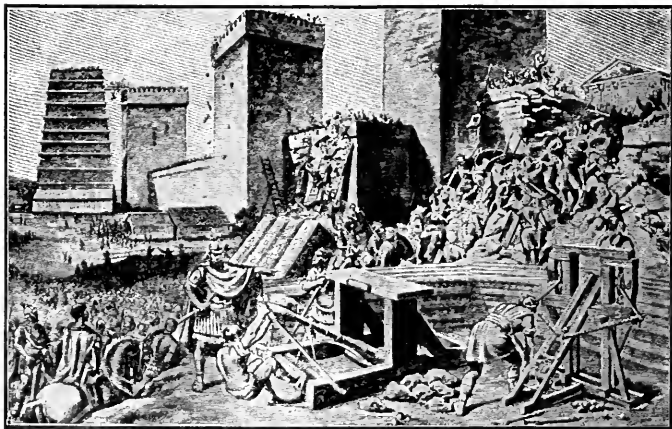
II.

A.—1. By this speech he easily persuades the Belgians. 2. The camp must be attacked again by the whole army at the third hour. 3. Who does not know that the Gauls were conquered by Caesar? 4. We use wider ships in this sea. 5. He will injure no one; he will spare all. 6. You must not lose the military standards; we must prepare for war. 7. All lands obey the rule of the Roman people. 8. In the first place, a good king governs himself. 9. At first he himself will resist us. 10. You should choose the noblest and most discreet men. 11. While they were approaching the fortifications, they met the cavalry that Caesar had sent in advance. 12. He is going to summon the chief men whom he always trusts.

B.—13. The ships which they used were larger. 14. It is difficult to persuade the other daughter. 15. At the same time, he demands three thousand horsemen from the whole province. 16. I think that you should not take away the hope of safety altogether. 17. Caesar

had to withdraw all the troops by night to the nearest hill. 18. The rampart seems to me to be higher than the town. 19. If we halt there, the right wing will soon be surrounded. 20. The left wing must be surrounded as quickly as possible. 21. Influenced by all these things, we shall resist the senate itself. 22. The boys and girls are with difficulty prevented from approaching the banks of this river. 23. Grain has to be brought by us from the remotest parts of the mainland. 24. He hopes to finish this work without any toil.

C.—Decline the following combinations : *eadem nox*, *tua ōrātiō*, *hīc labor*, *vir ipse*, *quae rēs*, *haec turris*, *ille agger*, *is ager*, *hōc ipsum tempus*, *quanta calamitās*, *illa pars*, *eadem castra*, *id iter*, *quī diēs*, *exercitus suus*, *utrum latus (s)*, *idem illud vēr (s)*, *nostra cōsuētūdō (s)*.



Oppugnatio : Attack.

LESSON LX.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *Sum*. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

360. The subjunctive mood in Latin has four tenses—Present, Imperfect, Perfect and Pluperfect. It is sometimes used in independent sentences, but is far more often found in dependent or subordinate clauses of various kinds. The translation of the subjunctive varies considerably according to these different uses, but most commonly it is rendered by the English indicative, as in the present lesson.*

361.

Paradigms.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF <i>sum</i> .			
PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
1. <i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>	<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerīmus</i>
2. <i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>fueris</i>	<i>fuerītis</i>
3. <i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
1. <i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>	<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissemus</i>
2. <i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>	<i>fuissets</i>	<i>fuissetis</i>
3. <i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>	<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuisset</i>

Notice in these forms :—

- (a) The regularity of the personal endings ;
- (b) the resemblance of the imperfect subjunctive to the present infinitive (*esse*) and of the pluperfect subjunctive to the perfect infinitive (*fuisse*) ;
- (c) the almost complete identity of the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative. Even in the matter of quantity, the resemblance often caused the Romans to shorten the *ī* of the subjunctive forms.

* The difficulty of the Latin subjunctive is indeed largely due to the fact that ideas regularly expressed by the English indicative require, in Latin, sometimes the indicative and sometimes the subjunctive. That is, Latin makes distinctions of moods in places where English does not.

362.

Illustrative Examples.

Quae est causa ?

What is the reason ?

Quaerit quae sit causa,

he asks what is the reason.

Quaesivit quae esset causa,

he asked what was the reason.

Ubi fuērunt ?

Where have they been ?

Sciō ubi fuerint,

I know where they have been.

Audīvī ubi fuissent,

I heard where they had been.

- a. In these Latin sentences the indicative mood is used in the actual direct question, but the subjunctive mood when the clause introduced by the interrogative word is dependent on another verb.
- b. A subordinate clause in Latin introduced by an interrogative word is called an *Indirect Question* (or a *Dependent Question*), and has its verb in the subjunctive mood.
- c. The various tenses are translated like the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and as in English are influenced by the tense of the principal verb. The Latin perfect subjunctive, however, it should be observed, is usually to be translated by the perfect with *have*, rather than by the simple past tense.
- d. It is especially important to notice that the verb of the principal clause may mean not only *ask*, but also *learn*, *know*, *tell*, or *perceive*. The term indirect question, then, does not necessarily imply that a question has actually been asked and is being quoted, but merely that a question exists in the mind or at least may easily be conceived ; as, *I saw what he was doing, I know what he will say.*

EXERCISES.

363.

I.

1. Quaerunt quae* sit firmissima civitas ; quaerit quae sint maxima castra. 2. Quanta esset insulae magnitudo reperiēbat. 3. In utrā ripā essēmus certior factus erat. 4. Quanta fuisset virtus militum dēmonstrāvit ; quantum fuisset incommodum ostendērunt. 5. Quantum sit spatium nūntiant. 6. Quibuscum essēs sciēbam. 7. Ab his quaesivit quae civitatēs in armīs essent. 8. Quaerit ex nobīs cūr nōn fidēlēs sibi† fuerīmus. 9. Scīsne quācum legiōne sim? 10. Renūntiāvērunt quī ager esset optimus tōtius Galliae. 11. Uter fuerit ūtilior amicus intellegimus. 12. Quibus in locis‡ sit Caesar ex captivīs quaerunt. 13. Quis cum iis unā fuisset audiverat. 14. Quaesivit quid illi simile bellō esset.

II.

1. He asked which cohort had been on guard. 2. They reported what harbours were suitable. 3. You see how great is the danger. 4. You saw in what (*literally* how great) danger we were. 5. They understand for what reason we have been unfriendly to them.† 6. He suspected what had been the cause of that war. 7. He has been informed where we are and where we have been. 8. He asked what was the custom. 9. He asks what is easier. 10. He shows how great the difficulty has been. 11. He asks the envoys what town is nearest to these territories. 12. He knew who had been the advocates of that war. 13. He learns what (*literally* how great) is the length of this side. 14. We had heard for what reasons you were in arms.

* The interrogative may be translated 'which' as well as 'who' or 'what.'

† In indirect questions, as in the accusative and infinitive construction (323), the reflexive pronoun **sui** in the dependent clause is used to refer to the subject of the main verb.

‡ For the order of words see the footnote on page 219.

LESSON LXI.

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

364.

Paradigms.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. ACTIVE VOICE.*First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.*PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. amem	moneam	regam	audiam
2. amēs	moneās	regās	audiās
3. amet	moneat	regat	audiat

PLURAL.

1. amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	audiāmus
2. amētis	moneātis	regātis	audiātis
3. ament	moneant	regant	audiant

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. amārem	monērem	regerem	audīrem
2. amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	audīrēs
3. amāret	monēret	regeret	audīret

PLURAL.

1. amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	audīrēmus
2. amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	audīrētis
3. amārent	monērent	regerent	audīrent

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. amāverim	amāverimus
2. amāveris	amāveritis
3. amāverit	amāverint

Similarly,

Second Conj. monuerim*Third Conj.* rēxerim*Fourth Conj.* audīverimPLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. amāvissem	amāvissēmus
2. amāvissēs	amāvissētis
3. amāvisset	amāvissent

monuissēmus

rēxissēmus

audīvissem

- a. Observe that in each conjugation, as in **sum** (361), the imperfect subjunctive may be formed directly from the present infinitive active, and the pluperfect subjunctive from the perfect infinitive active, and that the perfect subjunctive is almost identical with the future perfect indicative.
- b. Notice further that the present subjunctive has in the first conjugation the characteristic vowel **-ē-**, and in the second, third and fourth conjugations the characteristic vowel **-ā-**. What is the characteristic vowel of the present subjunctive of **sum** ?
- c. For the translation of the various tenses in indirect questions see 362. c.
- d. The subjunctive of verbs of the third conjugation in **-iō** is similarly formed, viz.,

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
capiam	caperem	cēperim	cēpissem

365.

VOCABULARY.

animadvertō, ere, -vertī, -versum,	<i>notice, observe.</i>
doceō, ēre, uī, doctum,	<i>teach, explain.</i>
fluctus, ūs, m.,	<i>wave.</i>
fluō, ere, flūxī, fluxum,	<i>flow.</i>
pars, partis, f.,	<i>part; direction, side.</i>
perspiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum,	<i>see clearly, perceive.</i>

Phrases: in eam partem, in that direction } with verbs
 in omnēs partēs, in all directions } of motion.
 ūnā ex parte, on one side.
 ex omnibus partibus, on all sides.
 māgnō cum periculō, at great risk.

EXERCISES.

366.

I.

A.—1. Per explorātōrēs cōgnōvit quae hostēs facerent. 2. Nūntiābō quō sē recipiant. 3. Docent quā dē causā sē abdiderint. 4. Quīntō diē quae* ibi perspexisset renūntiāvit. 5. Quaerit in utram partem fluat flūmen. 6. Intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerent. 7. Quaerunt quibus ex regiōnibus veniāmus quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverimus. 8. Reperire jussus est quem ūsum bellī† habērent Britannī. 9. Quae* ipse intellegat ostendit. 10. Quaerit cūr nōn respondeās; quāerit cūr respondēre dubitēs. 11. Animadvertit nāvēs fluctibus complēri.

B.—12. Certior factus est quā dē causā discessissent hostēs. 13. Docuit cūr existimāret hōc flūmen per prōvinciam fluere. 14. Ex nōbīs quaesivit cūr in suam prōvinciam vēnissēmus. 15. Animadvertunt quam in partem hostēs iter faciant. 16. Quaesivit quā dē causā nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmitterent. 17. Vidētis quanta sit māgnitūdō fluctuum. 18. Suspikor quid postulētis; suspikor cūr imperium postulāveritis. 19. Quantō cum periculō ēruptionem fēcisset, ostendit. 20. Quaerit quid petam aliud. 21. Ex omnibus partibus oritur clāmor. 22. Virtūtem alterius, fidem alterius perspiciet.

367.

II.

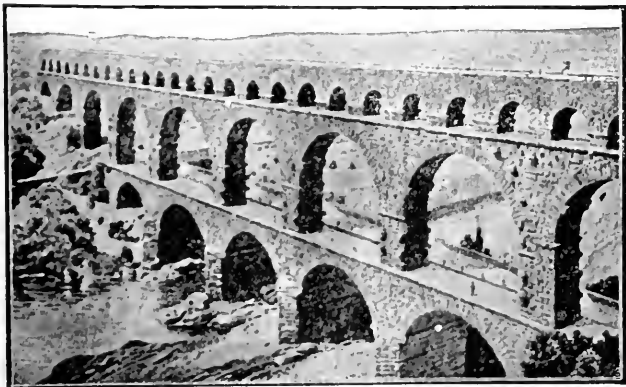
A.—1. He asked why they were coming to him. 2. They informed us where they had found the enemy. 3. I understand at what risk you have done this. 4. He asks why they despair of safety. 5. Are you not aware who inhabit this island? 6. He perceives how large an army the enemy have. 7. He observed from

* Translate 'what'; literally 'what things' (293. N.B.).

† Translate 'in war'; literally 'of war.'

what direction they were approaching. 8. He learned where the enemy's forces had encamped. 9. He explains why they have hesitated to leap down into the waves. 10. He explains that they have hesitated to leap down. 11. He asked why the waves were larger there than in our sea.

B.—12. They explain what they have heard or learned about these matters. 13. Caesar understood for what reasons they had said this. 14. He was ordered to find out in what direction Caesar was leading his army. 15. I do not know why they are waging war with us. 16. We do not know what they fear. 17. They pointed out to Caesar what the Gauls were saying about him. 18. He had noticed that the Gauls were fleeing in all directions. 19. He perceived whither the Gauls were fleeing. 20. We shall find out where (*literally* whither) you are accustomed to assemble. 21. He asked whom I believed; he asks which (of the two) I believe. 22. He teaches the boys that the Rhine flows between Gaul and Germany.



Roman Aqueduct in Gaul.

LESSON LXII.

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

368.

Paradigms.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PASSIVE VOICE.*First Conj. Second Conj. Third Conj. Fourth Conj.*

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. amer	monear	regar	audiar
2. amēris	moneāris	regāris	audiāris
3. amētur	moneātur	regātur	audiātur

PLURAL.

1. amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	audiāmur
2. amēminī	moneāminī	regāminī	audiāminī
3. amentur	moneantur	regantur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

1. amārer	monērer	regerer	audīrer
2. amārēris	monērēris	regerēris	audīrēris
3. amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	audīrētur

PLURAL.

1. amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	audīrēmur
2. amārēminī	monērēminī	regerēminī	audīrēminī
3. amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	audīrentur

First Conjugation.

PERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. amātus sim	amātī simus	amātus essem	amātī essēmus
2. " sis	" sitis	" essēs	" essētis
3. " sit	" sint	" esset	" essent

Similarly,

Second Conj. monitus sim monitus essem*Third Conj.* rēctus sim rēctus essem*Fourth Conj.* auditus sim auditus essem

369. In the subjunctive mood the passive voice is related to the active precisely as in the indicative :—

- a.* In the present and imperfect tenses of the passive the personal endings **-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur** are substituted for those of the active voice.
- b.* In the perfect and pluperfect tenses the passive is formed by combining the perfect participle passive with the present and imperfect subjunctive, respectively, of the verb **sum**.

370. (*a*) The subjunctive passive of verbs of the third conjugation in **-iō**, and the subjunctive of deponent verbs, are similarly formed, viz.,

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
capiar	caperer	captus sim	captus essem
cōner	cōnārer	cōnātus sim	cōnātus essem
verear	verērer	veritus sim	veritus essem
sequar	sequerer	secūtus sim	secūtus essem
sortiar	sortīrer	sortītus sim	sortītus essem
patiar	paterer	passus sim	passus essem

(*b*) The periphrastic conjugations also have a subjunctive, formed by using the subjunctive of **sum**; as,

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.
amātūrus sim	amātūrus essem
amandus sim	amandus essem

371.

Illustrative Examples.

Tanta est militum virtūs ut hostēs terga vertant, *so great is the valour of the soldiers that the enemy turn and flee.*

Tanta erat militum virtūs ut hostēs nōn resisterent, *so great was the valour of the soldiers that the enemy did not resist.*

Accidit ut nostrīs id esset incōgnitum, *it happened that that was unknown to our men.*

- a. Observe that dependent clauses with *ut* (*that*) and the subjunctive are used in Latin to express a result or consequence, and that in such clauses the present and imperfect subjunctive are used to express the English present and past tenses respectively.*
- b. This *Subjunctive of Result* is found chiefly after words meaning *so*, *such* (as *tantus*); and after verbs of *happening* and *resulting* (as *accidit*).†

372.

VOCABULARY.

adorior, irī, -ortus sum, *attack, assault.*

coorior, irī, -ortus sum, *arise, break out.*

ita, adv., *thus; so.*

sic, adv., *thus; so.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *tribe, nation.*

tam, adv., *so.*

revertor, ī, -versus sum, *return.* vix, adv., *scarcely, hardly.*

N.B.—With adjectives and adverbs *tam* (or *ita*) should be used for *so*; with verbs *sic* and (more often) *ita*.

EXERCISES.

373.

I.

A.—1. Tam subito impetum fecerunt ut peditēs terga verterent. 2. Celeriter hostēs in fugam dat sic ut resistat nēmō. 3. Ostendunt quae in conciliō Gallōrum dē eō sint dicta. 4. Ibi ex captivīs cōgnōscit quae in hostium castris gerantur. 5. Sic accidit ut ex tantō numerō vix ūlla nāvis āmitterētur. 6. Tanta tempestās coorta est ut nāvēs circiter trīgintā frangerentur. 7. Quaerit cūr tam celeriter revertantur. 8. Ita

* Occasionally the perfect subjunctive is used to express the English simple past, but this is rare in the best Latin. Of course the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive would be used to translate the English perfect and pluperfect tenses with *have* and *had*; but these do not often occur.

† In the former case the dependent clause is an adverbial clause, in the latter a substantival or noun clause.

animadverterat quanta incommoda saepe orta essent. 9. Accidit ut hae nātiōnēs mājōrēs cōpiās comparārent. 10. Nostrī tam ācrit̄er adortī sunt ut hostēs ex oppidō expellerentur.

B.—11. Ex locīs superiōribus quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur facile perspexērunt. 12. Tantus fuit timor ut revertī vix audērēmus. 13. Sentit quantā cum virtūte bellum sit gestum. 14. Tam celeriter ēruptiōnem faciunt ut complūrēs circumveniantur. 15. Castra nātūrā locī sic mūniēbantur ut oppūgnāre nōn audērēmus. 16. Ita sī Rōmānī sē recipere coeperint, agmen ab tergō adoriēmur. 17. Tanta est multitūdō ut rērum omnium inopia ēsse videātur. 18. Tam audācter in itinere nostrōs adortī sunt ut impedimenta Caesarī relinquenda essent. 19. Eō diē accidit ut Caesar longē ab agmine discēdere nēminem paterētur. 20. Tantus subitō timor exercitum occupāvit ut omnium animi māgnopere perturbārentur. ✕ ✕

374.

II.

A.—1. It happened that this village was divided by a river into two parts. 2. He explains what is being done (gerō) in Gaul. 3. So large are the enemy's forces that we do not venture (do not attempt) to attack. 4. So great was the storm that scarcely a fourth part of the ships returned safe. 5. Thus it happened for many reasons that all the tribes were going to renew the war. 6. They have been so terrified by Caesar's approach that numerous embassies are being sent to treat for surrender. 7. So great a storm had arisen that few of the ships had reached the land. 8. He asks whence we have set out and whither we are proceeding. 9. He asked whence we had set out and whither we were proceeding.

B.—10. Such (*literally* so great) storms followed that the assault was greatly hindered. 11. They often asked in what direction they were being led. 12. Thus we learned how great a number of soldiers these nations had promised. 13. So great is the panic (*literally* fear) that I do not venture to draw up the line of battle. 14. Such was the speed of the other messenger that he returned before the third watch. 15. It so happens that we never use smaller ships; it happened that war had scarcely broken out. 16. They pointed out how much plunder they had obtained. 17. So great is the valour of the soldiers that he is going to join battle at once. 18. The enemy were so terrified by this recent victory that they fled to their most distant territories. 19. Thus we had foreseen what had to be done.

LESSON LXIII.

THE COMPOUNDS OF *Sum*.

375. The verb *sum* is compounded with many of the prepositions, in most cases without any irregularity; as, *absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī*. But *possum*, *I am able*, a compound of the adjective *potis*, *able*, and *sum*, is more irregular.

376.

Paradigm.

Possum, posse, potuī, be able.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

1. possum	possumus	possim	possimus
2. potes	potestis	possis	possitis
3. potest	possunt	possit	possint

IMPERFECT.

1. poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
2. poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
3. poterat	poterant	posset	possent

FUTURE.

poterō, poteris, *etc.*

PERFECT.

potuī, potuistī, *etc.*

potuerim, potueris, *etc.*

PLUPERFECT.

potueram, potuerās, *etc.*

potuissem, potuissēs, *etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

potuerō, potueris, *etc.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

posse

potuisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT.

potēns (*used as adjective*).

- a. Notice that **t** is changed to **s** before **s**, and that, as compared with **sum**, the perfect stem does not contain **f**.

377.

Illustrative Examples.

Haec facere possum, $\begin{cases} I \text{ am able to do this.} \\ I \text{ can do this.} \end{cases}$

Haec facere nōn poteram, $\begin{cases} I \text{ was not able to do this.} \\ I \text{ was unable to do this.} \\ I \text{ could not do this.} \end{cases}$

[illegible]

Dixit sē haec facere potuisse, *he said that he could have done this.*

Superārī nōn possunt, *they cannot be conquered.*

- a. Notice in these sentences how **possum** is completed by a present infinitive (compare 123), and how it is translated in the various tenses. The translation by *can* or *could* is generally preferable, and with the passive infinitive is the only translation.

378.

VOCABULARY.

- absum, abesse, āfuī, *be away, be distant.*
 adsum, adesse, adfuī, *be present, be at hand.*
 dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, *be wanting, be lacking.*
 negōtium, ī, n., *business; affair.*
 patior, ī, passus sum, *endure, suffer; allow.*
 possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can.*
 potēns, -entis, *powerful.*
 potestās, -tātis, f., *power; opportunity.*
 praeficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *set over, put in command of*
(charge) of (with dat.).
 praesum, praeesse, praefuī, *be over, be in command of*
of, command (with dat.).

N.B.—**Praesum** and **praeficiō** take the dative of the person commanded, while **praeficiō** has also the person placed in command as a direct object in the accusative. For **prae-**, *before, at the head*, in composition, see 243.

EXERCISES.

379.

A.—1. Ab his sē dēfendere nōn possunt. 2. Impedimenta sēcum portāre nōn poterant. 3. Nūntiat Rōmānōs adesse. 4. Tempus dēfuerat. 5. Arbitrātus est negōtium celeriter cōficī posse (potuisse). 6. Tanta tempestās coorta est ut opus cōficere vix possēmus. 7. Auxilia sex mīlia passuum absunt. 8. Equitātui lēgātum praeficit; omnī equitātui quem praemiserat lēgātum praefēcit. 9. Cīvitatī potentī praeest; cīvitatī potentissimae praeficitur. 10. Docent cūr potestātem postulent. 11. Aderant omnēs quī huic negōtiō praefuerant. 12. Vōbis possumus ūtilēs esse amīcī. 13. Revertī nōn potuī, quod nāvēs erant inūtilēs. 14. Sī Caesar aderit, hostibus resistere poterunt.

B.—15. Nūllī civitatī persuādere potestis. 16. Hacc quis pati potest? Quaerit quis hacc pati possit. 17. In litteris scribit patrem celeriter adfore. 18. Legiōnēs māgnū spatium aberant. 19. Accidit ut nāvēs solvere noctū nōn possēmus. 20. Ex hostium castris cōspici nōn poterāmus. 21. Quaesivit quis rei frūmentāriae praefuisset; quaesivit quem rei frūmentāriae praefectūrus essem. 22. Omnia negōtia rei pūblīcae administrat. 23. Equitēs longius prōgredi nōn potuerant. 24. Diūtius sustinere impetum nōn poterimus. 25. Potestās nōbīs nōn deerit; intellexit sibi cōpiās nōn dēfore. 26. Tantam auctōritatem habet ut rēgēs potentēs amicitiam petant. 27. Oppidum oppugnare cōnātī, expugnare nōn potuerunt.

380.

II.

A.—1. You cannot march through the province. 2. He has been unable to persuade me. 3. They could not withstand the attacks of our men. 4. You are in my power; you are powerful. 5. Nothing is wanting; everything is lacking. 6. He was in command of the cavalry which had been sent in advance. 7. He asked whom they had put in command of the army. 8. He thinks that he can do this without any danger. 9. He perceived what they could do. 10. Another town is said to have been farther distant. 11. Having finished this business, he can return. 12. We had not been able to use our swords. 13. They cannot defend their own territories. 14. This alone seems to have been lacking. 15. They thought Caesar himself was present.

B.—16. On account of the scarcity of corn, he will not be able to wait. 17. He reported that he had been unable to learn this. 18. I shall put my son in charge of this business. 19. It will be dangerous to spare the

most powerful of the leading men. 20. The children could not be restrained by their mother. 21. We can very easily prevent them from injuring you. 22. He trusted the lieutenants whom he had put in command of the legion. 23. He was aware that cavalry and ships were wanting to the Romans. 24. For the same reason the camp could not be pitched. 25. He learns for what reason they cannot take up arms. 26. Two brothers command these legions. 27. The storm was so great that two ships had not been able to reach the harbour.

27. Result Class Day 1

381.

WORD LIST F.

VERBS OF SAYING, THINKING, PERCEIVING.

announce	explain	notice	say
answer	feel	observe	say . . not
ascertain	find	perceive	see
be aware	hear	point out	show
believe	hope	promise	suspect
bring back word	inform	remember	teach
consider	know	reply	think
declare	learn	report	understand
deny	mention		write

SPECIAL VERBS: IN LATIN WITH DATIVE.

approach	harm	oppose	set over
be over	injure	persuade	spare
command	meet	resist	trust
govern	obey		

MISCELLANEOUS VERBS.

arise	be able	be lacking	inquire
ask	be at hand	endure	return
assault	be distant	flow	use

NOUNS.

business	opportunity	side	tribe
direction	power	tower	wave

INTERROGATIVE WORDS.

where	whither	how great	which
whence	why	who	which (of two)

ADVERBS.

here	hither	altogether, at all
there	thither	together (with)
where	whither	at the same time
thus, so	almost	again
near	scarcely	by night

READING LESSON XII.

TITUS MANLIUS TORQUATUS. (361 B.C.; 340 B.C.)

382.

VOCABULARY.

adulēscēns, -entis, m., *young man.*

cōsul, cōsulis, m., *consul* (the chief magistrate of Rome, two being elected annually).

corpus, -oris, n., *body.*

dētrahō, ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *remove, strip.*

Latīnī, ōrum, m., *the Latins* (the people of Latium).

spolia, ōrum, n. pl., *spoils.*

torquis, is, m., *necklace, collar.*

Post trīgintā circiter annōs accidit ut Gallī rūsus populum Rōmānum superāre cōnārentur. Quam māximīs cōpiīs coāctīs ad flūmen, quod tria mīlia passuum ab urbe aberat, prōgressī sunt, ibique castra posuērunt. Rōmānī, Gallōs adesse certiōrēs factī, omnibus cum

cōpiis ab urbe profecti sunt, et prope pontem cōsēdērunt quī flūmen jungēbat (*spanned*). Complūra levia proelia facta sunt, sed neuter exercitus repellī poterat. Tandem (*at length*) īnus ex Gallis, cui propter māgnitudinem corporis et fortitudinem nēmō resistere potuerat, ad pontem prōgressus est et fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad pūgnam prōvocāvit (*challenged*). "Sic" inquit (*said he*) "omnēs intellegent utra nātiō sit melior." Sed tantus fuit timor Rōmānōrum ut nēminī persuādere posset. *sub propulsi*

Tandem Titus Mānlius, adulēscēns nōbilissimus, imperātōri Rōmānōrum appropinquāvit et dīxit "Sī mihi potestās facta* erit, ego huic Gallō occurram, et ostendam quantā sit virtūs militis Rōmānī." Potestāte factā, Mānlius sē ad pūgnam expēdīvit. Neque diū pūgnāvērunt, nam (*for*) ita ācrit̄er et audācter Mānlius hostem adortus est ut Gallus gladiō ūtī vix posset et brevī interficerētur. Hostēs hāc victoriā ita perterriti sunt ut postērā nocte castra movērent, neque rursus cum exercitū Rōmānō proelium committere audērent. Mānlius ad castra ā militibus reductus est, torquem gerēns (*wearing*) quem dē corpore Galli dētrāxerat; et hāc dē causā semper post id tempus Torquātus appellābātur. *corroboratio Result*

Post multōs annōs bellum coortum est inter Rōmānōs et Latinōs, quī diū socii fuerant populī Rōmānī. Cōsulēs Titus Mānlius Torquātus, quī ter (*thrice*) cōsul factus erat, et Pūblius Decius exercitum Rōmānum ēdūxērunt et castra posuērunt nōn longē ab exercitū Latinōrum.

Tum (*then*) equitēs in omnēs partēs dīmissi sunt, sed, quod multī in duōbus exercitibus fuerant amīcī, jussī sunt solum cōgnōscere quae in hostium castris gererentur, sed nōn proelium committere neque ūllam injū-

* The phrase *pote-stātem faciō* means *give opportunity, give permission*.

riam facere. Complūrēs hōrum equitum, quibus Titus Mānlius, cōsulis filius, praefectus erat, dum castrīs Latīnōrum appropinquant, equitātūi hostium occurrunt; et is quī equitātūi praecerat, ubi (*when*) perspexit quis accēderet, Mānlium, quem diū cōgnōverat, ad pūgnam prōvocāvit. Irā (*by anger*) adductus, neque memor imperiī patris, Mānlius, dēstrictō gladiō, statim hostem adortus est et interfēcit. X

Tum arina dē corpore ējus dētrahit et celeriter ad castra revertitur, et patrī quid fēcērit renūntiat: "Haec spolia, pater, capta ex hoste interfectō tibi portō." Hīs rēbus auditīs, cōsul militēs convocāvit et haec dixit: "Titus Mānlius, filius meus, cum hoste pūgnāvit neque imperiō cōsulum pārēbat. Commūnis salūtis causā, imperātor militārem disciplīnam (*discipline*) solvere (*to destroy*) nēminem patī potest. In hōc bellō tantum est pericūlum ut praestet filium āmittere quam rei pūblicae nocēre." Hāc ōrātiōne habitā filium interficī jussit, neque ab hōc cōsiliō dēterrērī potuit.



Torquis: Collar. (*The Dying Gaul.*)

LESSON LXIV.

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

383.

Illustrative Examples.

Sunt hominēs māgnae virtūtis, } *they are men of great*
 Sunt hominēs māgnā virtūte, } *valour.*
 Bonō animō sumus, *we are of good courage.*
 Diērum decem habent frūmentum, *they have ten days' grain.*

a. In these sentences observe how phrases composed of a noun and a modifying adjective, in either the genitive or the ablative case, are used to describe some quality or characteristic of a person or thing. This construction is known as the *Genitive* or *Ablative of Quality*.*

b. When the description refers to number, the genitive must be used; physical characteristics should be expressed by the ablative; in other cases either the genitive or the ablative may be used.

384.

VOCABULARY.

adulēscēns, -entis, m., *young man.*

classis, is, f., *fleet.*

corpus, -oris, n., *body.*

efficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *make ; construct, build.*

genus, -eris, n., *kind, sort.*

incrēdibilis, e, *incredible.*

ingēns, -entis, *huge, vast.*

trīduum, ī, n., *three days.*

Phrase : māgnitūdō corporis, stature.

* This usage is known also as the Descriptive Genitive (or Ablative), and as the Genitive (or Ablative) of Characteristic.

EXERCISES.

385.

I.

1. Filium, summā virtūte adulēscēntē, ad eōs mittit. 2. Montibus undique cōtinentur māgnā altitūdine. 3. Ab hīs paucōrum diērum iter aberant. 4. Classem nāvium ducentārum superiōre aestāte effēcerat. 5. Arma omnis generis habēmus; omne genus armōrum habēmus. 6. Hī Germānī erant ingentī māgnitūdine corporum et incrēdibilī virtūte. 7. Trīdūi* iter prōgressī, rūrsus revertuntur. 8. Lūcius, adulēscēns summā fidē, dēligitur. 9. Novō genere pūgnae perterritī, sē ex silvīs ējiciunt. 10. Haec cīvitas est firma et māgnae auctōritātis. 11. Castra pedum duodecim† vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnītūrī sunt. 12. Hūjus generis hostibus resistere nōn poterant.

II.

1. They have built ships of an incredible size. 2. About six hundred ships of the same sort must be built. 3. A forest of vast size extends through the midst of the territory. 4. These trenches are of the same depth. 5. They marched for three days through marshes of vast extent. 6. He put Marcus and Lucius, young men of very great influence, in command of this fleet. 7. They are men of an unfriendly spirit. 8. The towers are of such great height that they cannot be moved. 9. They hurled missiles of every sort at the huge bodies of the barbarians. 10. The legion advanced a three days' journey in light marching order. 11. Men of such great valour will never surrender.

* **Trīdūi** being a compound noun = **trīum diērum**, we have here only an apparent exception to the rule that the genitive or ablative of quality must be a noun with a modifying adjective.

† The height of a wall and the width of a trench are the important dimensions and in Latin these words are often left to be understood.



LESSON LXV.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

386.

Illustrative Examples.

Conveniunt

they assemble

ut bellum gerant,

{ that they may wage war. ^{Purpose}
{ in order that they may wage
war.
{ in order to wage war.
{ to wage war.

Convēnērunt

they assembled

ut bellum gererent,

{ that they might wage war.
{ in order to wage war.
{ to wage war.

Arma capiunt,

they take up arms,

nē hōc accidat,

{ that this may not happen.
{ lest this happen.

Arma cēpērunt,

they took up arms,

nē hōc accideret,

{ that this might not happen.
{ lest this should happen.

Statim dēsilit,

he leaps down at once,

nē capiātur,

{ that he may not be taken.
{ in order not to be taken.
{ so as not to be taken.

Statim dēsilit,

he leaps down at once, so that he

ut nōn capiātur,

is not taken. ^{Purpose}

These sentences illustrate the following points:—

- a. Subordinate clauses with the subjunctive are used in Latin to express purpose.
- b. These clauses of purpose are introduced by ut, or if negative by nē, while ut nōn is used to express result, not purpose (see the last sentence above).

- c. In Latin, as in English, the tense of the dependent verb is influenced by the tense of the principal verb; the present subjunctive being used where English would use *may*, the imperfect subjunctive where English would use *might*.
- d. The idea of purpose is expressed in English in a variety of ways, one of the commonest being by the infinitive with *to*. But the infinitive should not be used in Latin to express purpose.

387. (a) The principle by which the tense used in a dependent clause is influenced by the tense of the main verb is known in Latin Grammar as the *Sequence of Tenses*. The general rule is as follows:—

1. *Primary Sequence*. The present, future and future perfect indicative (called the *Primary Tenses*) are followed by the present or the perfect subjunctive.

2. *Secondary Sequence*. The imperfect, perfect and pluperfect indicative (called the *Secondary or Historical Tenses*) are followed by the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive. But the perfect indicative, when translated by *have*, may take primary sequence, and the historical present (59. fn.) secondary sequence.

(b) These rules apply generally to all kinds of dependent subjunctive clauses.* In most cases the Latin sequence corresponds so closely to English usage that the tense of the English is a sufficient guide (362. c; 371. a).

388.

Illustrative Examples.

Lēgātōs mittunt {they send envoys to seek peace
quī pācem petant, (literally, who are to seek peace).
Lēgātōs mīsērunt {they sent envoys to seek peace,
quī pācem peterent, (literally, who were to seek peace).

* In clauses of purpose, only the present and imperfect tenses are used.

- a. Notice that the subjunctive expressing purpose may be used in a relative clause. The relative pronoun replaces *ut*, and has of course an antecedent. This usage occurs chiefly after *mittō* and its compounds; sometimes also after *relinquō* and *dēligō*.

389.

VOCABULARY.

<i>commeātus, ūs, m.,</i>	<i>supplies, provisions.</i>
<i>cōsequor, ī, -secūtus sum,</i>	<i>overtake; attain, acquire.</i>
<i>insequor, ī, -secūtus sum,</i>	<i>follow up, pursue.</i>
<i>magistrātus, ūs, m.,</i>	<i>magistrate.</i>
<i>praefectus, ī, m.,</i>	<i>officer, commander</i> <i>(especially of cavalry).</i>
<i>servitūs, -tūtis, f.,</i>	<i>slavery.</i>
<i>subsequor, ī, -secūtus sum,</i>	<i>follow closely, follow after.</i>
<i>tribūnus, ī, m.,</i>	<i>tribune (a military officer).</i>

N.B.—A Roman army had its commander-in-chief (*imperator*), its staff officers (*lēgātī*); in each legion six tribunes (*tribūnī*) and sixty centurions (*centuriōnēs*); and its cavalry officers (*praefectī*).

EXERCISES.

390.

I.

A.—1. *Commēatūs causā morātur; morātur ut cōpiam commeatūs nanciscātur.* 2. *Ut hostēs cōsequi posset, pontem in flūmine fēcit.* 3. *Hostēs insequi nōn audet nē māgnam calamitātem accipiat.* 4. *Māgnam partem equitātūs misit quae rēgem insequerētur.* 5. *Omnēs ex cōspectū remōvit equōs ut spem fugae tolleret.* 6. *Magistrātūs dēligunt qui civitatī praesint.* 7. *Nē nostri incommodum acciperent, cohortēs sēcum in eam partem subsequi iussit.*

B.—8. Praestat interfici quam servitūtem pati. 9. Praefectōs tribūnōsque jussit cōpiās longiōre itinere dūcere, nē ex hostium castris cōspicerentur. 10. Tantam auctōritātem cōsecūtus est ut prīncipātum obtineat tōtius Galliae. 11. Lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi jussit ut novissimum agmen hostium adorirētur. 12. Lēgātī ad Caesarem missi sunt quī dicerent sē parātōs esse obsidēs dare. 13. Partem cōpiārum praemisit quae castra minōra oppugnāret, agrōsque vāstāret. 14. Caesar in Britanniam proficiscētur, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur.

391.

II.

A.—1. He reconnoitres all the roads in order that he may march without danger. 2. He sent the cavalry in advance that they might reconnoitre the roads and seek supplies. 3. The leader of the Gauls restrains his men lest we learn of his approach. 4. He sends the officers of the cavalry in advance to choose a suitable place. 5. He makes the camp so large that it cannot easily be surrounded; he makes the camp larger than the enemy may not be able to surround it. 6. They fought bravely for the sake of freedom; they fought bravely to attain freedom; they fought bravely that they might not be held in slavery. 7. He summons the tribunes and the centurions in order to explain what must be done.

B.—8. He sends the cavalry to pursue the enemy; he determines to follow the enemy closely; he hopes to overtake the enemy.* 9. They sent envoys to promise that they would lay down their arms. 10. In order not to be prevented from setting sail, he determined to set out without supplies. 11. The magistrates and leading

* See 386, 123 and 328 for various ways of translating the present infinitive with 'to.'

men of Gaul suspected that Caesar was taking them across to Britain in order to kill them all there. 12. He sends an officer in advance to see in what direction the enemy are marching. 13. He left the lieutenant on the continent to find out what was taking place in Gaul. 14. They began to throw away their arms so as not to be captured.

LESSON LXVI.

Ferō.

392.

Paradigm.

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *begin**Active.**Passive.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERFECT	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUTURE	feram	<i>is it in disant</i>	ferar	<i>is it in disant</i>
PERFECT	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUPERFECT	tuleram		lātus eram	
FUTURE PERFECT	tulerō	<i>is it in disant</i>	lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	feram	ferar
IMPERFECT	ferrem	ferrer
PERFECT	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUPERFECT	tulisse	lātus essem

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT	ferre	ferri
PERFECT	tulisse	lātus esse
FUTURE	lāturus esse	

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT	ferēns	PERFECT	lātus
FUTURE	lātūrus	GERUNDIVE	ferendus

393. (a) **Ferō** is irregular in the present indicative, present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive. In all the other forms **ferō** is conjugated precisely like verbs of the third conjugation allowing for the peculiarity of the principal parts.

(b) The prepositions with which **ferō** is compounded often undergo changes to harmonize their final sound with the initial letters (f, t and l) of the three stems; for example **ad** and **ferō** make **afferō**, **attulī**, **allātum**.

394.

VOCABULARY.

cōnferō, **ferre**, **contulī**, **collātum**, *collect, gather.*

dēferō, **ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, *carry down; bring; report.**

fāma, **ae**, **f.**, *rumour, report.*

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, *bear, carry; endure, stand.*

īnferō, **ferre**, **intulī**, **illātum**, *bring; cause, inflict.†*

perferō, **ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, *(carry to the end), bring; report*; bear, submit to.*

referō, **referre**, **rettulī**, **relātum**, *carry back; report.**

Phrases: auxiliū ferō (w. dat.), bring (give, lend) aid.

bellum īnferō (w. dat.), *make war (on or upon).*

signa īnferō (w. in and acc.) *advance against or on (literally bear onward the standards).*

fāmam perferō, *bring a report.*

pedem referō, *fall back, give way.*

* **Dēferō** of those who disclose or voluntarily report something; **referō** of those who as part of their duty bring back information; **perferō** with reference to the point reached by the report. All three words are followed by **ad** and the Acc.

† With **īnferō** the person *on* or *upon* whom something is inflicted is put in the dative case.

EXERCISES.

395.

I.

A.—1. Auxilium ferimus; arma fertis. 2. Frūmentum cōferri iubet; frūmentum cōfertur. 3. Multa vulnera intulērunt; multa vulnera illāta sunt. 4. Hās litterās servus ad Caesarem dēfert; litterae ad eum dēferuntur. 5. Celeriter fāma ad omnēs Galliae civitātēs perferētur. 6. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs esse dixerunt. 7. Negant sē populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. 8. Quantus est numerus eōrum quī arma ferre possunt? 9. Tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut omnēs ferē nāvēs ad Galliam referrentur. 10. Māgnā illātā calamitāte, aliās terrās petunt. 11. Frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōferēbātur.

B.—12. Ea rēs dēfertur ad Caesarem; haec statim dēferēmus. 13. Legiōnēs sēsē conjungunt et signa in hostēs inferunt. 14. Eīs quī premī videntur auxilium ferendum est. 15. Cōsiliō Caesaris cōgnitō et perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt. 16. Si bellum intulerit, quid verēminī? 17. Nē haec rēs dēferātur, nūntium necant. 18. Hūc Caesar omnēs obsidēs et impedimentōrum māgnam partem contulerat. 19. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, nostrī subitō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. 20. Commissō procliō, nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuerunt.

396.

II.

A.—1. You are bringing aid; you had brought aid. 2. He is said to have brought aid; while bringing aid, they were slain. 3. He asked who was bringing aid; he asked to whom aid was being brought. 4. They said that the grain was being collected. 5. Exhausted

ought not - Passive Periphrastic.

by wounds, they began to give way. 6. Young men of such valour should not submit to slavery. 7. The ships were carried down to the lower part of the island. 8. He promised to make war neither upon them nor upon their allies. 9. Do you not see what great disasters they have borne? 10. The military standards used to be gathered to (*literally* into) one place. 11. After seeking peace, you have made war on me without cause.

B.—12. He sets out at once in order to bring aid; *num.* they join battle at once lest aid *referred to* be brought. 13. Alarmed by these things the barbarians fell back. 14. The left wing was ordered to advance, because the right wing seemed to be hard pressed. 15. On this being reported (*dēferō*) to the magistrates, they determined to make war. 16. Meanwhile a report is brought to the fleet of (*dē*) Caesar's victory. 17. They report (*referō*) (*acc + inf.*) (that the arms have been collected) and (hostages given up. 18. Ships of this sort will stand the storms more easily. 19. They understood how great a disaster they had brought (*īferō*) upon the state; they understood how great a disaster had been brought upon us. 20. When the allies fall back, the legionary soldiers will advance.

LESSON LXVII.

SUBJUNCTIVE WITH *Cum*.

397.

Illustrative Examples.

Cum exercitum cōgeret, lēgātōs mīsērunt, when he was collecting an army, they sent envoys.

Hōc cum dīxisset, ex nāvī dēsīluit, when he had said this, he leaped down from the ship.

Cum id nūntiātum cecet, statim profectus est, when this was announced, he set out at once.

66. 5/5h

Cum nāvēs essent inūtilēs, revertī nōn poterat, *as* (or *since*) *the ships were useless, he could not return.*

These sentences illustrate the following points:—

- a. **Cum** (translated sometimes *when*, sometimes *since* or *as*) is used with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to express in some cases the time, in others the cause of an action in the past.
- b. In such clauses referring to the past, the imperfect subjunctive is used when the time of the dependent verb is the same as that of the main verb, the pluperfect when it is earlier than that of the main verb.
- c. The subjunctive with **cum** is translated by the English indicative. Notice particularly that in English after *when*, etc., the simple past tense is often equivalent to the pluperfect, and that in such cases the subjunctive with **cum** should be in the pluperfect.
- d. When **cum** with the subjunctive is translated *when*, it will in most cases be found not merely to express the time but also to describe the circumstances or situation.*
- e. An emphatic word or word of connection may precede the conjunction **cum**, although forming part of the **cum** clause, as in the second sentence.

N.B.—It will further be seen, on reviewing 303, that **cum** with the pluperfect subjunctive could be used to express any of the participial phrases there given.

* **Cum** is used also with the indicative in Latin, chiefly in the following cases: (1) to express mere time; as, *When Caesar conquered Gaul, it was inhabited by three races*; (2) to express time, circumstances, or situation in present or future time (224); (3) when **cum** has the force of *whenever*.

In the sense of *since* or *as*, **cum** always takes the subjunctive.

Imperfect - same time as main verb

VOCABULARY.

apertus, a, um, *open, clear.*

instituō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, *undertake, set about; build, establish.*

jam, adv., *now, by this time, already.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

via, ae, f., *way, road, route, journey.*

Phrase: *latis apertum*, the unprotected flank (i.e., the right side, unprotected by the shield).

N.B.—*Instituō* may take a complementary infinitive (123); as, *Haec facere instituō*, *I undertake to do this*, or, *I set about doing this.*

EXERCISES.

399.

I.

A.—1. Cum jam appropinquārent Britanniae, tempestās subitō coorta est. 2. Eō cum pervēnissent, paucōs diēs ibi morātī sunt. 3. Cum lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnissent, ex cōsuētūdine obsidēs imperāvit. 4. His cum persuādēre nōndum potuissent, hāc viā iter facere nōn ausī sunt. 5. Cum ēsset Caesar in hibernīs, certior factus ēst Gallōs celerrimās nāvēs instituere. 6. Cum jam trīduī viam prōgressī essēmus, dē morte imperātōris certiōrēs factī sumus. 7. His rēbus cum iter impedīrētur, cōpiae in locō apertō cōstitērunt. 8. Nostri cum sē in castra reciperent, hostibus occurrērunt. 9. Hōs cum reliquī cōspexissent, subsecūtī sunt.

B.—10. Cum milia passuum tria Caesar abesset, barbarī oppida incendērunt et pecora in silvās compulērunt. 11. Caesar cum cōstituisset in continenti hiemāre, frūmentum in Britannīā nōn prōvisum erat. 12. Cum jam meridiēs appropinquāret, ad ea castra,

quae suprà dēmōstrāvimus, contendit. 13. Cum sē
 stiaque omnia in oppida contulissent, bellum parāre
 instituērunt. 14. Cum jam mūrō turrēs appropinquā-
 vissent, Galli flentēs pācem petere coepērunt. 15. Cum
 mortis periculō territī essent, in fluctūs dēsilīre dubitā-
 bant. 16. Equitēs cum multitūdine hostium castra
 complērī nostra vidissent, fugā salūtem petere conten-
 dērunt. 17. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī tēla
 conjicerent, nostrī subitō ēruptionem fēcērunt. 18. Cum
 agmen ex viā excesserit, ab latere apertō adoriēmur.

400.

II.

A.—1. When he was bringing aid to his brother, he
 was himself surrounded. 2. When we had marched for
 three days through their territories, we came to a lake
 of great width. 3. When he ordered all the senate to
 come to him, they did not obey. 4. Since he could not
 overtake the army, he recalled the cavalry. 5. When
 he came there, larger forces of the Britons had already
 assembled. 6. As the winter was not yet ended, he
 could not set about the work. 7. Having found out
 (*literally* when he had found out) by what road they
 were marching, he sent the cavalry in that direction.
 8. Thinking (*literally* since we thought) that after his
 death it was dangerous to set out, we approved this plan.

B.—9. When he had approached (*accēdō*) nearer, he
 was ordered to throw away his arms. 10. As he believed
 the rest of the army was following closely, he drew up
 his line of battle on open ground. 11. On learning that
 Caesar was going to set out that night, they determined
 to await his departure. 12. When the Gauls saw that
 our legions were being hard pressed, they hastened
 towards the camp. 13. As the enemy's troops seemed

to be increasing, he set about posting garrisons. 14. When he reported what was being done on the left wing, these cohorts were ordered to advance. 15. As the open ground did not extend far, our men scarcely ventured to pursue.

LESSON LXVIII.

Volō, Nōlō, Mālō. DATIVE OF PURPOSE AND INTEREST.

401.

Paradigms.

Volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish.*

Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling.*

Mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPERFECT	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUTURE	volam	nōlam	mālam
PERFECT	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUPERFECT	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUTURE PERFECT	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velitis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint

IMPERFECT	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēm ^{us}	nōllēm ^{us}	māllēm ^{us}
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERFECT	voluerim	noluerim	māluerim
PLUPERFECT	voluiss ^{em}	noluissem	māluissem
INFINITIVE.			
PRESENT	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERFECT	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

402. (a) **Nōlō** is a contraction of **nevolō** = **nōn volō** ; **mālō** a contraction of **mavolō** = **magis volō**, *I wish more*.

(b) Notice that these verbs are irregular in the present indicative, present infinitive, present and imperfect subjunctive ; otherwise they are conjugated precisely like verbs of the third conjugation. The present subjunctive has the same characteristic vowel **-i-** as **sum**.

403. Illustrative Examples.

Līber esse vult, *he wishes to be free.*

Mē liberum esse vult, *he wishes me to be free.*

Revocārī nōlēbat, *{ he did not wish to be recalled ;
he was unwilling to be recalled.*

Haec facere mālunt, *{ they prefer to do this ;
they had rather do this.*

a. These sentences illustrate :—

- (1) the translation of **volō**, **nōlō** and **mālō** ;
- (2) the use of the present infinitive as a complement of these verbs ;
- (3) the use of a subject accusative with the infinitive to denote a different subject from that of the main verb ;

- (4) the case of a word in the predicate referring to the subject of the main verb.

DATIVE
404.

Illustrative Examples.

Locum oppidō dēligit, *he chooses a place for the town.*

Caesar timet cohortī, *Caesar fears for the cohort.*

- a. The dative is sometimes to be translated by *for* rather than by *to*, chiefly with a few phrases to signify purpose or intention; or, again, to denote that in which interest or concern is felt.

405.

VOCABULARY.

agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive, move forward; do.*

cōsulō, ere, -suluī, -sultum, *consult; take thought.**

satis, adv. and indeclinable adj., *enough; sufficiently.*

studēo, ēre, uī, *be eager, be zealous.*

Phrases: **agō cum,** *treat or confer with.*

diem cōstituō, *fix (or appoint) a day.*

satis faciō, *satisfy, with dative (literally do enough for).*

novae rēs, *change, revolution.*

EXERCISES.

406.

I.

A.—1. Audire volumus; sē dēdere nōlent; discēdere mālēbant. 2. Redūcī nōluerāmus; incōgnitī esse mālēm; vīsne adesse? 3. Posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit. 4. Mūnitiōnī castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbam. 5. Iis legiōnibus, quās ūnā cum lēgātō miserat, timēbat. 6. Hīs dē rēbus tē cōsulere vult; tēcum agere mālō. 7. Rei pūblicae bonī cīvēs semper cōsulant. 8. Ostendit id sibi satis futūrum esse. 9. Hī tibi student, illī mihi.

* **Cōsulō**, when meaning *consult*, takes the accusative; when meaning *take thought (for)*, the dative.

10. Proficiscī dubitābat quod post tergum hostem relinquere nōlēbat. 11. Quid agerētur dēferre nōlle vidēbantur. 12. Quaerit quibuscum agere velim.

B.—13. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōncī dēliguntur. 14. Omnēs ferē Gallī novīs rēbus studēbant. 15. Num servitūtem perferre māvultis? 16. Dēmōnstrāvimus quās in partēs auxilia proficiscī vellēmus. 17. Ita multīs dē causīs nāvibus veritus est. 18. Diem conciliō cōstituere nōlō. 19. Caesari omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 20. Mōns quem ā lēgātō occupārī voluistī, ab hostibus tenētur. 21. Hōc praesidium huic rei satis esse arbitrābantur. 22. Sēsenātui populōque Rōmānō satis factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. 23. Amīcī existimārī volēbāmus. 24. Huic rei homō summāe fortitūdinis dēligendus est.

407.

II.

A.—1. You wish to be Roman citizens; you do not wish to be a soldier; we prefer to dwell here. 2. He asked why we did not wish to return here; he asked where we preferred to dwell; he asked where we wished to be sent. 3. He had fixed a day for the cavalry battle. 4. It is scarcely enough for me. 5. He wishes to do nothing else; he prefers to do nothing at all. 6. They said that they wished to treat with him about these matters. 7. He asks how large a number wishes to follow him. 8. They are unwilling to take thought for the whole state; they prefer to take thought for themselves. 9. Since they are eager for a change, they collect as large a fleet as possible. 10. He sends scouts in advance to choose a suitable place for a camp.

B.—11. They fear the sea without cause. 12. He has fears for the safety of the legion; he feared for the legions. 13. Since he wished to consult the chief men,

he appointed a day for this business. 14. He is unwilling to leap down into the water. 15. He felt that they had been unwilling to satisfy him. 16. All men wish to be free; everyone is eager for freedom. 17. Have our men chosen a place for the camp? 18. I suspected for what reason they had wished war to be waged. 19. He says he had rather be killed than be severely wounded. 20. He was aware why they had preferred to encamp across the river.



Soldiers Crossing a Bridge of Boats. (*From Trajan's Column.*)

LESSON LXIX.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

408.

Illustrative Examples.

Cōpiaē quās exspectat pervēnērunt, *the troops which he is awaiting have arrived.*

Audit cōpiās quās exspectet pervēnisse, *he hears that the troops which he is awaiting have arrived.*

Dixērunt cōpiās quās exspectāret pervēnisse, *they said that the troops which he was awaiting had arrived.*

Commōtī sunt quod cōpiaē missae sunt, *they are alarmed because troops have been sent.*

Crēdit eōs commōtōs esse quod cōpiaē missae sint, *he believes they are alarmed because troops have been sent.*

Negāvērunt sē commōtōs esse quod cōpiaē missae essent, *they denied that they were alarmed because troops had been sent.*

Jussus est cōpiās quās coēgisset mittere, *he was ordered to send the troops which he had collected.*

Quaesīvit quis coēgisset cōpiās quae mitterentur, *he asked who had collected the troops which were being sent.*

These sentences illustrate the following points:—

- a. Relative and other subordinate clauses which ordinarily have the indicative, have the subjunctive instead, when dependent on a clause which is itself dependent on some verb of *saying, thinking, knowing or perceiving, ordering or asking.*
- b. This rule holds not only of indirect statements, but of indirect questions and commands, all of which are included under the term *Indirect Discourse.* The indicative in fact has no place in the indirect quotation of another's words or thoughts.

- c. The tenses of the subjunctive follow the rules for the sequence of tenses (387). It should be observed that in English the tense of the dependent clause is similarly influenced by that of the main verb.

409.

VOCABULARY.

circumdō, dare, -dedī, -datum, surround, enclose.

Helvētiī, ōrum, m. plur., the Helvetians (a Gallic tribe dwelling in what is now Switzerland).

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, obtain one's request, obtain.

reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum, give back, restore.

Phrase: ad salūtem contendō, hasten to a place of safety.

N.B.—The compounds of *dō* with monosyllabic prepositions are regularly of the third conjugation like *reddō**; compare *abdō, dēdō, trādō* (= *trāns-dō*). But compounds with dissyllabic words are of the first conjugation like *dō* itself, as *circumdō*.

EXERCISES.

410.

I.

A.—1. Obsidēs, quōs habēmus, reddēmus. 2. Pollicentur sē obsidēs, quōs habeant, redditūrōs esse. 3. Polliciti sunt sē obsidēs, quōs habērent, redditūrōs esse. 4. Obsidēs quī accepti sunt, redditī sunt. 5. Dicit obsidēs quī accepti sint, redditōs esse. 6. Dixit obsidēs quī accepti essent, redditōs esse. 7. Scripsit sē Gallōs quī ea loca incolerent expulisse. 8. Intellegēbat eum locum, unde Helvētiī discessissent, prōvinciae nostrae finitimum esse. 9. Arbitrantur facile fore sē dēfendere quod prope ex omnibus partibus locus flūmine et palūde circumdatus sit. 10. Id cum impetrāvissent,† polliciti sunt sē in finēs suōs unde essent profecti reversūrōs esse.

* The prefix *re-* has the form *red-* before vowels, as well as with *-dō*.

† The object of *impetrō* can often be best rendered by an adjective modifying the word *request*; as, *hōc impetrō, I obtain this request.*

circumdō
- 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

B.—11. Helvētīi lēgātōs mīserunt quī dicerent sē velle iter per prōvinciam facere, quod aliud iter habērent

nūllum. 12. Audīverant id, quod ipsī acgerrimē fēcissent, illum fēcisse facillimē. 13. Crēdunt in aciē prae-

stāre interfici quam libertātem quam accēperint āmittere.

14. Jussī sunt ea quae audīvissent ad Helvētiōs dēferre.

15. Renūntiāvit montem quem ā lēgātō occupārī voluerit, (ab hostibus tenērī.) 16. Num crēditis Gallōs ea quae

polliceantur factūrōs? 17. Scripsit summan fuisse difficultātem, quod omnia ūnō tempore essent agenda.

18. Quae rit cūr ea quae accēperint reddere nōlint. 19.

Cōgnōvit Helvētiōs, ēruptiōne factā, eisdem itineribus quibus cō pervēnissent ad salūtem contendisse. 20.

Ostendērunt Caesarem, quod ad hostium castra accēderet, expeditās legiōnēs dūcere.

411

II.

A.—1. They have surrounded with a double wall the town which they are defending. 2. He learns that they

have surrounded with a double wall the town which they are defending. 3. He found that they had sur-

rounded with a double wall the town which they were defending. 4. The towns which they have taken by

storm are surrounded* by forests. 5. He reports that the towns which they have taken by storm are sur-

rounded by forests. 6. He wrote that the towns which had been taken by storm were surrounded by forests.

7. He replied that he had fears for the prisoners whom they were unwilling to restore. 8. The Helvetians

hope to obtain from him what they have been seeking. 9. He said that he preferred to be left on the continent,

because he feared the sea. 10. He was ordered to

* Use the perfect tense (243. N.B.).

return to the camp where the baggage of the whole army had been left.

B.—11. He announces that he will lead the legion he has with him into our province. 12. They thought that it was easy to obtain what they wished. 13. They promised to do what he had required. 14. He orders the prisoners whom they are holding in slavery to be given back. 15. They saw that the Helvetians had been thrown into confusion because they had been surrounded by the cavalry. 16. He points out that these are the same enemies with whom we have often waged war. 17. He asked who was in command of the forces that were being sent. 18. He perceives that the Helvetians are hastening towards those who are finishing these fortifications. 19. He learns that the ships which these nations use are smaller. 20. He learned that several ships had been carried back to the same harbour from which (*literally* whence) they had set out.

412.

WORD LIST VII.

NOUNS.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| adulēscēns | fluctus | nātiō | præfectus |
| classis | genus | negōtium | servitūs |
| commeātus | magistrātus | pars | tribūnus |
| corpus | mors | potestās | trīdium |
| fāma | | | via |

ADJECTIVES.

| | | | | |
|---------|--------------|--------|--------|-------|
| apertus | incrēdibilis | ingēns | potēns | satis |
|---------|--------------|--------|--------|-------|

ADVERBS.

| | | | |
|-----|--------|-----|-----|
| ita | nōndum | sic | vix |
| jam | satis | tam | |

VERBS.

| | | | |
|-------------|----------|-----------|------------------------|
| absum | coorior | īstituō | possum |
| adorior | dēferō | mālō | praeficiō |
| adsum | dēsūm | noceō | praesum |
| agō | doceō | nōlō | reddō |
| animadvertō | efficiō | occurrō | referō |
| appropinquō | ferō | parcō | resistō |
| circumdō | fluō | pāreō | revertor |
| cōnferō | imperō | patior | studeō |
| cōnfidō | impetrō | perferō | subsequor |
| cōnsequor | īnferō | perspiciō | ūtor |
| cōnsulō | īnsequor | persuādeō | volō <i>with volui</i> |

READING LESSON XIII.

THE SELF-DEVOTION OF DECIUS. (343 B.C. ; 340 B.C.)

413.

VOCABULARY.

dēvoveō, ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *devote, sacrifice.*

Samnītēs, ium, m. pl., *the Samnites* (a tribe residing in the centre of Italy among the Apennines).

vallēs, is, f., *valley.*

Cum Gallōs Rōmānī expulissent, bellum dē principātū Ītaliae coortum est cum Samnītibus, quōrum finēs in mediā erant Ītaliā, et montibus māgnā altitudīne continēbantur. Samnītēs tantae erant virtūtis, tantumque in rē militārī ūsum habēbant, ut numquam populus Rōmānus cum audaciōre hoste bellum gereret.

Cōnsul Rōmānus, dum exercitum contrā Samnītēs dūcit, prope māgnam calamitātem accēpit. Nam (*for*) explōrātōrēs nōn praemiserat ut sine periculō iter faceret, et hostēs, cum cōgnōvissent Rōmānōs eā viā iter factūrōs esse, sē in silvās et superiōra loca abdiderant, ut

Rōmānōs ab lateribus duōbus subitō adorirentur. Cum jam māxima pars exercitūs in vallem silvīs circumdatam prōgressa esset, fāma ad cōsulem perfertur hostēs adesse. Ille sēnsit summum esse pericūlum, quod Rōmānī prope circumventī essent, sed, cum nōllet hostem post tergum relinquere, exercitum sīgna convertere jubere dubitābat.

Dum exercituī timet, neque scit quid faciendum sit, Pūblius Decius tribūnus, adulēscēns summā virtūte, appropinquāvit et haec dīxit : “Hostēs adventum reliquī exercitūs exspectāre videntur, et cum novissimum agmen in cōnspectum vēnerit, nōn diūtius morābuntur sed statim impetum facient. Ūna est spēs salūtis. Vidēsne collem illum, quem hostēs nōndum occupāvērunt? Ex illō colle hostēs ā tergō adoriri poterimus, sī in nostrōs impetum facere cōnātī erunt. Ita impetus impediētur, neque Samnītēs audēbunt vōs īnsequi, nē māgnum incommodum ipsī accipiant. Paucās cohortēs huic rei satis fore arbitror. Nōs volumus interfici ut reliquī ex valle excēdant.”

Hōc cōsiliō probātō, cōsul Decium cum paucīs cohortibus expeditīs mīsīt quī collem occupāret. Ipse cum reliquīs cōpiīs, iisdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnerat, ad salūtem contendit. Interim Decius in māgnō erat periculō. Nam hostēs cum animadvertissent quid agerētur, irā (*by anger*) adductī, omnēs sē ā legiōnibus ad Decium convertunt. Collem mūrō circumdare īstituunt ut omnēs Rōmānī caperentur. Sed cum jam nox appropinquāret neque tempus mūnitiōnī relinquerētur, posterum diem oppūgnātiōnī cōstituērunt; sed mediā nocte Rōmānī, ēruptiōne factā, per mediōs hostēs audācissimē perrumpunt incolumēsque omnēs sē ad suōs recipiunt.

Propter hās rēs gestās Decius māgnam inter Rōmānōs auctōritātem cōsecutus est, et post trēs annōs cōsul factus est, eōdem annō quō Mānlius Torquātus, alter cōsul, dē quō suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, fīlium suum interficī iussit. Post mortem adulēscētis illius, proelium commissum est. Superiōre nocte uterque (*each*) cōsul somniāverat (*had dreamed*) sē virum vidēre ingentī māgnitūdine corporis, quī nūntiāret*: “Alter exercitus imperātōrem, alter victōriam āmittet.”

Proeliō commissō, Decius animadvertit Mānlium, quī dextrō cornū praeerat, hostēs repellere, sed sinistrum cornū, cui ipse praefectus erat, premī ab hostibus et pedem referre. Itaque (*accordingly*) nē Rōmānī superārentur, sē prō (*on behalf of, w. abl.*) exercitū dēvovēre cōstituit, et statim in mediōs hostēs sē conjēcit ut auxilium labōrantibus suis ferret. Ibi fortiter pūgnāns brevī cecidit, multis vulneribus cōfectus. Hōc cum reliquī cōspexissent, subsecūtī sunt et hostēs in fugam dedērunt.

Ita illis temporibus cīvēs rei pūblicae semper cōsulēbant. Hūjus generis militibus nēmō resistere poterat.

LESSON LXX.

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

414.

Illustrative Examples.

Erant virtūte parēs, *they were equal in valour.*

Omnia oppida, numerō duodecim, incendunt, *they burn all their towns, twelve in number.*

- a. The ablative without a preposition is used, as in these sentences, to show in what respect a statement or term is to be taken as applicable. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Specification*.

* For the mood see 408. a, **somniō** being a verb of *thinking or perceiving*.

415.

Illustrative Examples.

Summā celeritatē ad castra contendunt, with the utmost swiftness they hasten towards the camp.

Māgnō cum periculō et māgnā cum virtūte rēs sunt administrātae, operations have been conducted at great risk and with great valour.

Cōsuētūdine suā dēsiluērunt, according to their custom, they leaped down.

- a. The *Ablative of Manner*, both with and without the preposition *cum*, is used to express the manner or the attendant circumstances of an action. In the exercises which follow, *cum* should not be used except with the words *diligentia* and *periculum*.*
- b. The ablative is also used without a preposition, to denote that in accordance with which something is done, as in the last sentence.

416.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>diligentia</i> , ae, f., | <i>care, diligence.</i> |
| <i>modus</i> , ī, m., | <i>manner ; means ; kind, sort.</i> |
| <i>nōmen</i> , - <i>minis</i> , n., | <i>name.</i> |
| <i>praestō</i> , āre, - <i>stitī</i> , - <i>stātum</i> or - <i>stitum</i> , | <i>be superior ; surpass (with dative).</i> |
| <i>ratio</i> , - <i>ōnis</i> , f., | <i>method ; manner, way.</i> |
| <i>studium</i> , ī, n., | <i>zeal, eagerness.</i> |
| <i>superō</i> , āre, āvī, ātum, | <i>surpass, excel.</i> |
| <i>tumultus</i> , ūs, m., | <i>noise, uproar, commotion.</i> |
| <i>valeō</i> , ēre, uī, itum, | <i>be strong.</i> |
| <i>vōx</i> , vōcis, f., | <i>voice ; cry.</i> |

*Phrases: māgnā vōce, in a loud voice; (so also with clāmor).
 commūnī cōsiliō, by common consent (lit. plan).
 plūrimum valeō, be very strong, be strongest. ✓*

* No general rule for the use or omission of *cum* with the ablative of manner can be given with advantage at this stage of the pupil's progress.

EXERCISES.

417.

I.

A.—1. Interim ad lēgātum incrēdibilī celeritātē dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur. 2. Haec civitās longē plūrimū tōtius Galliae equitātū valet. 3. Adulēscētem, Lūcium nōmine, equitibus praeficit. 4. Dispositis praesidiis, māgnā cum diligentiā mūnitiōnēs dēfendunt. 5. Hostēs māximō clāmōre novissimū agmen adortī sunt. 6. Summō studiō vīginti nāvēs hūjus modī instituunt. 7. Hic vir cēteris virtūte et ūsū rei militāris praestābat. 8. Māgnā vōce causam tumultūs quaesivit. 9. Eādem ratiōne omnia commūni cōnsiliō facta erant.

B.—10. Cum summā diligentiā milites in castris continet. 11. Simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus, portās occupārī jubet. 12. Neque hāc recentī victōriā neque nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrērī possunt. 13. Quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat. 14. Quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō ēdūcerentur, quaerere coepērunt. 15. Sic commūni cōnsiliō imperiū tōtius Galliae obtinēbat. 16. Respondit se cōstituisse, quod haec civitās hominum multitudine superāret, sescentōs omninō obsidēs imprārē. 17. Omnī modō* huic rei studēbimus, ne opprimāmur. 18. Sēsē parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus* Caesarī satis facere.

418.

II.

A.—1. They were said to excel the others in valour. 2. Our ships are superior to the enemy's fleet in speed alone. 3. When he had said this in a loud voice, he leaped down into the waves. 4. He perceived at what

* These expressions have the same meaning, *by every means or in every way*.

(*literally* how great) risk they had done this. 5. At first the river flows with very great swiftness. 6. First they collected all their infantry forces, in which they were very strong. 7. He ordered the camp to be moved at daybreak with less commotion. 8. War should have been waged according to another method. 9. With the same zeal they began to fortify their camp according to our custom.

B.—10. This was the name of the island; the island was called Britain. 11. An island of vast extent, Britain by name, was not far distant from Gaul. 12. They set out at midnight amid (*literally* with) great commotion. 13. By common consent the other bank had been granted to the allies. 14. The camp had not been fortified on this side with the same care. 15. He orders all the cavalry, fifteen thousand in number, to assemble at the beginning of spring. 16. He remembered that he had come with another purpose (*cōsilium*). 17. They surpass us in everything. 18. They can by no means overtake you.

LESSON LXXI.

Eō, Fīō.

419.

Paradigm.

Eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum, go.

| | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-----------|------------------|------|--------------|-------|
| PRESENT | eō | īmus | eam | eāmus |
| | īs | ītis | eās | eātis |
| | it | eunt | eat | eant |
| IMPERFECT | ībam, ībās, etc. | | īrem | |
| FUTURE | ībō, ībis, etc. | | | |

| | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| PERFECT | īvī or īī | īverim or ierim |
| PLUPERFECT | īveram or ieram | īvissem or iissem |
| FUTURE PERFECT | īverō or ierō. | |

| INFINITIVE. | | PARTICIPLES. | |
|-------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| PRESENT | īre | PRESENT | iēns, (<i>gen.</i> euntis.) |
| PERFECT | īvisse or iisse | FUTURE | itūrus |
| FUTURE | itūrus esse | | |

a. Notice that **eō**, while very irregular, belongs on the whole to the fourth conjugation, the stem vowel **i**, however, becoming **e** before **a**, **o** and **u**, as in **eō**, **eunt**, **eam**, **euntis**, but **iēns**; the future indicative is formed after the model of the first and second conjugations.

b. In the perfect system the forms without **v** are those commonly used, both in the simple verb and in its compounds.

420.

Paradigm.

Fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.

| | INDICATIVE. | | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|----------------|-------------|---------|--------------|------------|
| PRESENT | fīō | (fīmus) | fīam | fīāmus |
| | fīs | (fītis) | fīās | fīātis |
| | fit | fiunt | fīat | fīant |
| IMPERFECT | fiēbam | | fierem | |
| FUTURE | fiam | | | |
| PERFECT | factus sum | | factus sim | |
| PLUPERFECT | factus eram | | factus essem | |
| FUTURE PERFECT | factus erō | | | |
| | INFINITIVE. | | PARTICIPLES. | |
| PRESENT | fieri | PERFECT | factus | |
| PERFECT | factus esse | | GERUNDIVE | faciendus. |

a. In the present system **fīō** has the regular forms of the active voice of the fourth conjugation, except

Pres Pass. =

in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive.
The vowel **i** is long, except in **fit** and before **-er**.

- b. **Fīō** is used as the passive of **faciō**, which has the regular passive forms only in the perfect system. The compounds of **faciō** with prepositions have their passives throughout formed regularly from the active voice; as, **interficior**, **interfici**, **interfectus sum**; **cōnficior**, **cōnfici**, **cōnfectus sum**.

421.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|--|--|
| adeō , īre , īi , itum , | <i>advance; approach, visit.</i> |
| aditus , ūs , m. , | <i>approach; means of approach.</i> |
| eō , īre , ivī or īi , itum , | <i>go, advance.</i> |
| exeō , īre , īi , itum , | <i>go forth; leave (with ex and abl.).</i> |
| fīō , fieri , factus sum , | <i>be made, be done; happen.</i> |
| ineō , īre , īi , itum , | <i>enter; enter upon, begin.</i> |
| redeō , īre , īi , itum , | <i>return.</i> |
| trānseō , īre , īi , itum , | <i>cross; cross over.</i> |

Phrases: cōnsilium ineō (or capiō), form (adopt) a plan.

*initā aestāte, at the beginning of summer
(ablative absolute).*

N.B.—**Adeō**, **ineō** and **trānseō** may be used transitively and govern the accusative case. As transitive verbs, they have passives formed in the regular way from the active; as **adirī**, **initus**, **trānseundus** (gerundive).

EXERCISES.

422.

I.

A.—1. Hāc viā īre nōn poterant; eādē viā ībant.
2. Rhēnum nāvibus trānseunt; Rhēnum trānsire cōnsuēvērunt. 3. Quaesivit unde redirēmus; sciō quō eātis. 4. Propter paucitātem nostrōrum nihil fieri poterat. 5. Eōdē tempore ab latere apertō impetus fiēbat. 6. Initā hieme in prōvinciam ē Galliā exhibunt.

7. Īnsulam adīre et aditūs cōgnōscere volēbat. 8. Peditātū repulsō, fit equestre proelium; sine labōre opus efficitur. 9. Explōrātōrēs jussit quid fieret cōgnōscere; quid fiat cōgnōscant. 10. Scripsit sē duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsiisse. 11. Līberius et audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inībant. 12. Equitēs, in castra redeuntēs, hostibus occurrunt.

B.—13. Tertiā hōrā exit ūnā cum nūntiō. 14. Quid fierī vellet, ostendit. 15. Omnēs vicōs quōs adīre potuerant, incenderant. 16. Hōc idem reliquīs fit diēbus. 17. Quid faciendum esset, prōviderat. 18. Proximō annō cōstituit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum. 19. His initīs cōsiliis, frūmentum ex agrīs comportant. 20. Cum ad suōs rediisset, nūntiāvit sē aditum reperisse. 21. Duās legiōnēs praemisit ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret. 22. Ipse, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, trīdium prōgressus est. 23. Tantā celeritāte militēs iērunt ut hostēs impetum sustinēre nōn possent. 24. Caesar dixit sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret.

423.

II.

A.—1. They were going by that road; they will go by another road. 2. On account of the scarcity of ships, they have not yet crossed; they cannot cross because ships are lacking. 3. He orders a sally to be made; he orders them to be put to death. 4. Meanwhile they are informed of his death. 5. They are reconnoitring the roads that they may go forth from their territories. 6. We shall often visit these nations; he is going to visit the remaining states before autumn. 7. They had left the town at the beginning of the second watch. 8. He was aware what was happening. 9. They believed that no one would cross over into

M. 13/20

Britain. 10. He was informed that those who had crossed the river had not yet returned. 11. They report that the camp has an easy approach. 12. They believe he is returning (has returned, will return); they hear he is restoring (has restored, will restore) the prisoners.

B.—13. Influenced by this speech they form a new plan. 14. We shall not allow the Helvetians to go through our territories. 15. If he returns, he will be put to death; when he returns he will be made king. 16. That river the Helvetians were already crossing. 17. Outposts should be stationed lest a sally be suddenly made. 18. Alarmed by the approach of so great a multitude, they determine to prevent the Germans from crossing. 19. While crossing the marsh he was wounded by a spear. 20. He points out what he wishes done (*literally* to be done.) 21. This same thing is done also in the adjacent districts. 22. The river cannot be crossed; the river is crossed with difficulty. 23. If the ships are detained here by storms, a surrender will be made; the business will be finished in a short time. 24. They posted garrisons with the greatest care, that the Germans might not cross over.



Coin of Hadrian.

LESSON LXXII.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

424.

Illustrative Examples.

Nōbīs persuādet ut ad hostēs sēcum trānseāmus, *he persuades us to cross over to the enemy with him.*

Suīs imperāvit nē tēla conjicerent, *he ordered his men not to hurl missiles.*

Petivit ut in Galliā relinqueretur, *he asked to be left (or that he might be left) in Gaul.*

In connection with these sentences note the following points :—

- a. After verbs meaning urge, ask or command, Latin uses dependent clauses with ut or nē and the subjunctive, where English has the infinitive (or, less frequently, a dependent clause with that).
- b. The ut or nē clause is a substantive or noun clause telling what is urged, asked or commanded.*
- c. Jubeō furnishes an important exception to the general rule.
- d. The sequence of tenses is the same as in clauses of purpose, the present subjunctive being used after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary tenses.†
- e. The reflexives suī and suos in the subordinate clause will refer to the subject of the main verb, as in all forms of indirect discourse (323. b, 363. fn.).

* Latin conceives this as something willed or desired, and accordingly uses the same form of expression as in the ordinary clause of purpose (386).

† The historical present in Latin (59. fn.) may take either primary sequence (according to its form), or secondary sequence (according to its meaning). Compare 427, sentences 2 and 5, or 14 and 15.

425. Here may profitably be reviewed the sections which explain various ways of expressing in Latin the English infinitive with *to* :

123. Complementary infinitive : with *audeō*, *coepī*, *cōgō*, *cōnor*, *cōstituō*, *cōnsuēvī*, *contendō*, *dubitō*, *jubeō*, *patior*, *possum*, *volō*, *etc.*

320. With passive verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, and with *videor* (*seem*).

328. With *polliceor* and *spērō*.

386. Adverbial clauses of purpose.

388. Relative clauses of purpose.

424. Substantive clauses of purpose.

426.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>atque</i> or <i>ac</i> , conj., | <i>and</i> ; <i>and also</i> . |
| <i>cohortor</i> , <i>ārī</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> , | <i>encourage</i> , <i>urge</i> , <i>exhort</i> . |
| <i>hortor</i> , <i>ārī</i> , <i>ātus sum</i> , | <i>encourage</i> , <i>urge</i> . |
| <i>imperō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> , | <i>order</i> , <i>command</i> (with <i>dat.</i>). |
| <i>moneō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>uī</i> , <i>itum</i> , | <i>advise</i> , <i>warn</i> . |
| <i>orō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātum</i> , | <i>beg</i> , <i>entreat</i> . |
| <i>persuādeō</i> , <i>ēre</i> , <i>-suāsī</i> , <i>-suāsum</i> , | <i>persuade</i> , <i>induce</i> (with <i>dat.</i>). |
| <i>petō</i> , <i>ere</i> , <i>-īvī</i> (or <i>-iī</i>), <i>-itum</i> , | <i>ask</i> , <i>request</i> (with <i>ab</i> and <i>abl.</i>)*. |

N.B.—*Atque* is used before vowels or consonants, *ac* before consonants only. Of the four Latin words for *and*, *et* simply connects ; *-que* joins more closely than *et* terms which naturally go together, or related clauses and phrases ; *atque* and *ac* add something of importance, something to be more or less emphasized.

* Distinguish clearly between *petō* with a substantive clause of purpose (= *ask* or *request* with the infinitive) and *quaerō* with an indirect question (= *ask* or *inquire* followed by an interrogative clause).

EXERCISES.

427.

I.

A.—1. Helvētiis persuāsīt ut dē his finibus cum omnibus cōpiis exirent. 2. Monet centuriōnēs nē signa in hostēs inferant. 3. Suīs ut idem faciant imperat. 4. Audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. 5. Hāc ōrātiōne his persuādet nē diūtius morārentur. 6. Hortātur peditēs ut simili ratiōne per mediōs hostēs perrumpant. 7. Petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcāmus. 8. Monui lēgātum ut celeriter reverterētur; pollicitus est sē quam celerrimē reversūrum; celerius reverti nōn ausus est. 9. Cohortātus milītēs ut ipsum Caesarem adesse existimārent, dat signum proeliī.

B.—10. Lēgātō imperāvit ut quae gererentur cōgnōsceret. 11. Nōs ōrat nē hōc cōsiliū ineāmus. 12. Servō spē libertātis persuādēbit ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. 13. Auctōrēs bellī jussit capī atque interfici. 14. Monet ut omnia longē lātēque oppida incenderentur. 15. Belgās hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant. 16. Flentēs ā Rōmānīs petēbant nē sibi nocērent. 17. Milītēs cohortātus est nē perturbārentur hōc incommodō. 18. Petēbant ut equitēs quī praemissi essent* revocārentur.

428.

II.

V A.—1. He urged his men to renew the battle; he urged his men not to give way. 2. They persuade their neighbours to set out along with them. 3. He orders this young man to visit the nearest states. 4. He advised the leading men and the senate to despatch embassies in all directions. 5. He asks and urges that we fix a day for the meeting. 6. After encouraging

*For the subjunctive see 408. a. b.

E
ASTER

the soldiers, he warned them not to lose the military standards. 7. They are begging Caesar to give them aid; they were begging (me)* to give them aid. 8. He ordered (*jubeō and imperō*) the scouts to find an easier approach; he sent scouts to find the easiest approach; they hoped to find a less difficult approach. 9. They seem to despair of themselves and of the state.

B.—10. They requested Caesar not to move his camp nearer. 11. He ordered the leader of the Germans not to injure the allies of the Roman people. 12. He exhorts the troops to withstand bravely the enemy's onset. 13. He promised to induce them to allow the Helvetians to go through these territories. 14. They begged the commander not to advance farther. 15. He prefers to be called king and friend by the senate and Roman people. 16. The tribunes and centurions should be advised to take thought for their own and the soldiers' safety. 17. We wish to persuade you not to cross the Rhine. 18. According to his custom, he urged the troops to attend carefully to everything.

LESSON LXXIII.

REVIEW OF GENITIVE AND DATIVE CASES.

429. (a) The genitive case as used in these lessons may be classified under five heads: Partitive Genitive (174), Genitive of Quality (383), Possessive Genitive, Subjective Genitive and Objective Genitive.

(b) The *Possessive Genitive* is used with a noun to denote the owner; as, *agrī Helvētiōrum*, *the lands of the Helvetians*; *impedimenta nostrī exercitūs*, *the baggage of our army*; *filiī rēgis*, *the king's sons*.

* The person is clearly indicated by the subject of the following verb.

(c) The Subjective Genitive is used with nouns expressing action or feeling, to denote the person who acts or feels; as, **Caesaris adventus**, *Caesar's arrival*; **militum studium**, *the zeal of the soldiers*.

(d) The Objective Genitive is used with nouns expressing action or feeling, to denote that to which the action or feeling is directed; as, **timor bellī**, *the fear of war*; **mūnitiō castrōrum**, *the fortifying of the camp*; **spēs salūtis**, *the hope of safety*.

The objective genitive is used also with many adjectives to complete their meaning, especially with adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge or ignorance*; as, **memor vestrī**, *mindful of you*.

430. The dative case as used in these lessons may be classified under four heads: the Dative of Indirect Object (39), the Dative of the Agent (354), the Dative of Interest (404) and the Dative of Purpose (404). Of special importance is that variety of the dative of indirect object found with certain intransitive verbs which are ordinarily rendered by English transitive verbs with a direct object (355). Closely related to the dative of indirect object also is the dative completing the meaning of certain adjectives (173).

431.

Illustrative Examples.

Gallīs māgnō erat impedimentō, *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls*.

Hās cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relinquit, *he leaves these cohorts as garrison for the camp (or to guard the camp)*.

Auxiliō Caesari veniēbant, *they were coming to Caesar's aid (more literally, as aid for Caesar)*.

a. In these sentences the dative of purpose (**impedimentō**, **praesidiō**, **auxiliō**) is used in the predicate

to denote the purpose served (that which something tends to be or is intended to be), and is accompanied by the dative of interest (**Gallīs, castrīs, Caesarī**).

- b. This usage (sometimes called the Double Dative) is confined to a few nouns with such verbs as **sum, mittō, veniō** and **relinquō**. With **sum** the dative of purpose has almost the force of the ordinary predicate noun.

432.

VOCABULARY.

cupidus, a, um, *desirous, fond(of); eager (for), (with genitive).*

imperitus, a, um, *inexperienced (in); unacquainted (with), (with genitive).*

peritus, a, um, *skilful, skilled (in); acquainted (with), (with genitive).*

subsidium, ī, n., *support, reinforcements.*

Phrase: ūsuī sum, be useful, be of service (literally be for an advantage.)

N.B.—The objective genitive, whether with nouns or adjectives, may often require translation by some other preposition than *of*, but this will always be a preposition equivalent to *as regards*.

EXERCISES.

433.

I.

A.—1. Vāllō pedum novem hiberna circumdat. 2. Hāc dē causā mihi Rhēnus est trānseundus. 3. Nostrīs labōrantibus subsidium fert. 4. Ilōc māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābantur. 5. Virōs summae virtūtis ac rei mīlitāris perītissimōs huic negōtiō dēligunt. 6. Neque ad concilia veniunt neque imperiō Caesaris pārent. 7. Frāter rēgis cupidus imperiū est et vir māgnae auctōritātis. 8. Mīlitēs cohortātus est ut hārum victō-

riarum memoriam retinērent. 9. Tantus erat timor mortis ut fugae similis discessus cōpiarum esse vidēretur. 10. Militēs quī praesidiō castris relictī erant, cum clāmōrēs barbarōrum audivissent, subsidiō suis iērunt.

B.—11. Hīc rei frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātūrī sunt. 12. Māgnam multitudinem hostium fugientium interfēcērunt. 13. Monuit filiū ut memor nostrī esset; ille pollicitus est sē nōbīs semper fidēlem fore. 14. Caesarī decima legiō praemittenda erat, cui māximē cōfīdēbat. 15. Militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, jam in cōspectum hostium vēnerant. 16. Num tantae altitudinis turrim sēsē mōtūrōs esse cōfīdunt? 17. Māgnae partis hārum regiōnum imperiū diū obtinēbat. 18. Tam nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī erant ut Caesarī obsidēs dare nōllent. 19. Num recentium injūriarum memoriam dēpōnere possum? 20. Oppidī oppūgnātiō locī nātūrā impediēbatur.

434.

II.

A.—1. Influenced by the hope of booty, they have made war on us. 2. He left a guard of five cohorts for the rest of the baggage. 3. On being informed of the flight of the allies, he sent all the cavalry to the assistance of his men. 4. He found that a large part of the state was eager for a revolution. 5. We ought to burn the town, that it may not be of service to the Romans. 6. On the top of the hill he drew up a line of four legions. 7. Our men were so inexperienced in this kind of fighting that they were no match for the enemy.

B.—8. He sent large forces of infantry and cavalry to the town to support our men. 9. They persuaded Caesar not to give the Germans lands in Gaul. 10. This seems to me to be unlike that. 11. The bravest





TRAJAN'S COLUMN.

and most skilful of the centurions of this legion have fallen in sight of their commander. 12. Who was in command of the cavalry that the Gauls had sent to aid Caesar? 13. The exploits of the Romans are unknown to none of us (are known to all of us). 14. A forest of vast size extends through the middle of the province.

C.—15. Everything was lacking to us which was of service; they reported to Caesar that there was the greatest scarcity of everything that was of service. 16. He assigned the warships to the legions, the transports to the cavalry. 17. On account of the length of the column, he feared for the whole army. 18. They had not yet heard the shouts of those who were coming to (their) aid. 19. Which of the two does he obey? He is obedient to the rule of neither. 20. He demanded three thousand horsemen from the rest of the state.

LESSON LXXIV.

REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES.

435. The accusative case as used in these lessons may be classified under six heads: Direct Object of transitive verbs (32), Predicate Accusative (54), Accusative with Prepositions (97, 98), Subject of Infinitive (complementary 123, indirect discourse 320), Accusative of Duration of Time (159) and Accusative of Extent of Space (231).

The accusative is used not only with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *contrā*, *in*, *inter*, *per*, *post*, *propter* and *trāns*, but with several others, of which the most important are *apud*, *circum*, *intrā*, *ob*, *praeter* and *sub*.

436. The ablative case as used in these lessons may be classified under nine heads: Ablative of Means (47, 145), including the ablative with **ūtor** (356); Ablative with Prepositions (97, 98), including the ablative of agent (144); Ablative of Time When (159); Ablative of Comparison (242); Ablative Absolute (298, 299, 303); Ablative of Quality (383); Ablative of Specification (414); Ablative of Manner (415); and Ablative of Separation (437).

The ablative is used not only with the prepositions **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **in** and **sine**, but with several others, of which the most important are **prō** and **sub**.

437.

Illustrative Examples.

Agrīs expulsī, in Galliam trānseunt, *being driven from their lands, they cross over into Gaul.*

Inimīcōs ex finibus expellunt, *they drive their enemies out of the state.*

Ex finibus excēdunt, } *they withdraw from their territories,*
Finibus excēdunt, } *or, they leave their territories.*

- a. The ablative in these sentences is used both with and without a preposition, to denote that from which there is removal or exclusion. This usage is called the Ablative of Separation.
- b. The idea of separation is commonly expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **ex** or **dē**, especially in the literal local sense. With certain verbs, such as **excēdō**, **expellō**, **ēgredior**, **prohibeō**, **interclūdō**, **dējiciō** and **dēsistō** the preposition may either be used or be omitted; with verbs of *freeing*, *depriving* or *lacking* (such as **liberō**) the preposition is regularly omitted, as also with adjectives of *freedom* and *want*.

438.

VOCABULARY.

| | |
|---|---|
| apud , prep. w. acc., | <i>with, among.</i> |
| circum , prep. w. acc., | <i>around, about.</i> |
| dējiciō , -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, | <i>cast down ; dislodge.</i> |
| dēsistō , ere, -stitī, -stitum, | <i>cease ; abandon (with abl.)</i> |
| ēgredior , ī, ēgressus sum, | <i>go forth, leave.</i> |
| interclūdō , ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, | <i>cut off.</i> |
| intrā , prep. w. acc., | <i>within.</i> |
| liberō , āre, āvī, ātum, | <i>free.</i> |
| ob , prep. w. acc., | <i>on account of, because of.</i> |
| praeter , prep. w. acc., | <i>except.</i> |
| prō , prep. w. abl., | <i>before, in front of.</i> |
| sub , prep. w. abl., | <i>under, at foot of ; w. acc., close to.</i> |

Phrases : ob hanc rem, ob hanc causam, for this reason.

sub noctem, *at nightfall.*

sub lūcem, *just before dawn.*

itinere prohibeō (or **interclūdō**), *keep from marching, keep from advancing.*

nāvī (or **nāvibus**) **ēgredior**, *land, disembark.*

spē dējiciō, *disappoint in a hope (literally cast down from a hope).*

EXERCISES.

439.

I.

A.—1. Locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. 2. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab Rōmānīs octō. 3. Omnēs praeter Rōmānōs virtūte atque ūsū bellī superāmus. 4. Sic pācem cum Germānīs cōfirmāvērunt, quibuscum multōs annōs continenter bellum gesserant. 5. Barbarī, cā spē dējectī, oppūgnātiōne dēsistunt. 6. Centuriō ipse prō castris fortissimē pūgnāns interficitur ; reliquī sēsē incolumēs

intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. 7. Docet ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs esse et incrēdibilī virtūte.

B.—8. Cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, sub altissimō monte cōsēdērunt. 9. Ob hās causās eīsdem nāvibus exercitum reportāvit quibus superiōre aestāte ūsus erat. 10. Rōmānōs rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfidēbant. 11. Accidit ut hic vir apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus esset ac potentissimus. 12. Crēbris nūntiis litterisque commōtus, dē fidē Belgārum dubitāre coepit. 13. Nōn aequum est Germānōs suis finibus ēgredi atque in Galliam trānsire. 14. Alii arbitrantur aggerem altiōrem esse mūrō, alii dēmōnstrant aggerem vix pedēs duodēviginti esse altum.

C.—15. Omnī periculō liberābit eōs quī sub imperiō populī Rōmānī sunt. 16. Dum haec apud Helvētiōs geruntur, per explōrātōrēs cōgnōscit hostēs māgnū spatium abesse. 17. Servitūtem aliō nōmine appellant; servitūtem dēditiōnem appellant. 18. Primā nocte ē castris ēgressi, eōdem quō vēnerant itinere ad Rhēnum contendunt. 19. Pecora dēducere suaeque omnia ex agris in oppida cōferre instituunt, eō cōsiliō* ut frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibeant. 20. Tantā dīligentiā omnēs suōs intrā castra continēbat, ut hostēs suspicārentur nostrōs neque numerō neque virtūte sibi parēs esse.

440.

II.

A.—1. At the beginning of the second watch, they left the camp amid (*literally* with) great commotion. 2. He learned that this island, Britain by name, was smaller than Gaul, but that the Britons were equal to the Gauls in number. 3. For this reason he filled with

* Translate *With this design*, explained by the following substantive clause of purpose, in apposition with cōsiliō.

water two trenches fifteen feet wide (and) of the same depth. 4. We call boys sons, and girls daughters. 5. The soldiers who had been stationed on guard before the gates of the camp, throwing away their arms, took to flight. 6. Being dislodged from the wall and tower, they suddenly made a sortie from (*literally* by means of) all the gates. 7. He said that Caesar was doing more than he had promised.

B.—8. After waiting for several days, he set sail at nightfall; he proceeded by night eight miles; just before dawn he reached the harbour; at daybreak he disembarked. 9. Being freed from this danger, he ordered all the legions except the tenth to take up their position at the foot of the wall. 10. They will by no means keep the legions who are wintering about that town from marching. 11. They said they had marched twenty miles (the preceding day) before noon. 12. They are going to free the children whom they have been keeping with (*apud*) them in slavery. 13. Exhausted by their wounds, they withdraw (*excēdō*) from the battle.

C.—14. These towers were about two hundred feet apart. 15. As the enemy had hidden themselves in their thickest forests, he abandoned this plan. 16. He always has a large number of slaves about him, that he may be freed from all toil (*literally* toils). 17. They asked Caesar to keep the cavalry from fighting for three days. 18. At the first attack the enemy are thrown into confusion on the right wing, and are driven within their walls. 19. Burdened by the heavy weight of their arms, the legionary soldiers whom he had brought over hesitated to disembark. 20. Being unable to throw our ranks into confusion by this kind of fighting, they suddenly began a cavalry battle.

441. WORD LIST G.

N.B.—Words marked with an asterisk occur in the remaining Lessons LXXV. to LXXX.

WAR.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| commander-in-chief | make war | keep from |
| staff officer | *fight | marching |
| tribune | advance | unprotected flank |
| centurion | fall back | *obtain plunder |
| cavalry officer | cut off | adopt a plan |
| bring (<i>or</i> give) aid | enclose | *carry out a plan |
| support (noun) | dislodge | be of service |
| encourage | supplies | be strong |
| pursue | *pillage | be superior |
| follow closely | fleet | *forage (verb) |
| overtake | *sail | disembark |

TIME.

| | | |
|-------------------|------------|----------------------|
| at nightfall | already | fix a day |
| just before dawn | not yet | three days |
| *season | *beginning | at the beginning (of |
| *interval of time | | summer, etc.) |

MISCELLANEOUS NOUNS.

| | | |
|-------------------|---------|------------|
| magistrate | *vigour | rumour |
| young man | stature | name |
| revolution | voice | way, route |
| commotion | death | approach |
| *violence, force | slavery | kind, sort |
| by common consent | zeal | method |
| body | care | means |

ADJECTIVES AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

| | | |
|------------|-------|---------------|
| incredible | huge | skilful |
| desirous | loud | inexperienced |
| occupied | open | enough |
| *any | *each | *some |
| | | *certain |

MISCELLANEOUS VERBS.

| | | |
|----------------------|----------|--------------------|
| set about | carry | induce |
| do | cross | urge |
| be done | approach | warn |
| cause | go | command |
| build | return | advise |
| make, be made | restore | ask = request |
| *give an opportunity | enter | ask = inquire |
| *put an end to | go forth | consult |
| *set the example | collect | treat with |
| take thought | surround | entreat |
| be disappointed | free | obtain (a request) |
| be eager | become | acquire |
| report | cease | endure, bear |
| bring a report | surpass | submit to |
| carry back | satisfy | carry down |

READING LESSON XIV.

THE HONOUR OF FABRICIUS (280-278 B.C.).

442. VOCABULARY.

cursus, ūs, m., course.

Ēpīrus, ī, f., Epirus (a district in the north of Greece).

Graecia, ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, a, um, Greek.

medicus, ī, m., physician.

orbis, is, m., circle; orbis terrārum, the world.

praemium, ī, n., reward.

pretium, ī, n., price, ransom.

sōl, sōlis, m., the sun.

Tarentīnī, ōrum, m., the Tarentines (the inhabitants of Tarentum, a city in southern Italy).

venēnum, ī, n., poison.

Rōmānī cum jam imperium tōtius ferē Ītaliae cōsecūtī essent, bellum Tarentīnis, quī in inferiōre parte Ītaliae incolēbant, intulērunt. Tarentinī lēgātōs ad rēgem Ēpirī, Pyrrhum nōmine, mīsērunt, quī peterent ut auxilium contrā Rōmānōs sibi ferret. Ēpirus illō tempore longē plūrimum omnium civitātum Graeciae valēbat, et Graecī milītēs omnibus cēterīs virtūte et ūsū rei militāris praestāre existimābantur. Pyrrhus, vir summae virtūtis ac bellī perītissimus, pollicitus est sē auxilium quod peterent lēgātī lātūrum esse, atque in Ītaliā nōn solum magnās cōpias equitātūs peditātūsque trānsdūxit sed etiam complūrēs elephantōs (*elephants*) quibus Rōmānī in bellō ūtī nōn cōsueverant.

Hūjus generis pūgnae Rōmānī tam imperitī erant ut primō hostibus nōn parēs essent. Ingentī magnitūdine elephantōrum perterritī pedem rettulērunt, et ordinibus perturbātis, magnus numerus militum captus atque interfectus est. Sed tam ācrit̄er restiterant ut Pyrrhus post proelium diceret sē, cum milītibz tantae virtūtis, facile orbem terrārum superāre posse. Ob hanc causam dē victōriā dēspērāvisse vidētur, atque aliā ratiōne superāre instituisse. Nam (*for*) cum Rōmānī lēgātōs ad Pyrrhum dē captivīs mīsissent, rēx novum cōnsilium iniit, atque ut amicitiam populī Rōmānī cōsequerētur, respondit sē captivōs quōs habēret sine pretiō reddītūrum.

Hūjus lēgatiōnis princeps fuit Cāius Fabricius, vir fidēlissimus ac prūdentissimus, quī cōsul fuerat et māgnae inter civēs auctōritātis erat. Hunc virum rēx māgnō sibi ūsū fore arbitrābatur. Itaque (*therefore*) Fabricium ad sē vocat atque quid fierī velit ostendit; hortātur eum ut Rōmānōs moneat ut pācem sēcum

faciant, atque ex illā parte Ītaliae discēdant. Simul pollicitus est sē Fabriciō incrēdibilia praemia datūrum esse. Sed nullō omnīnō modō Fabriciō persuādere poterat, atque eā spē dējectus, hōc cōnsiliō dēstitit. Atque lēgātī, quī ad senātum ab rēge missī erant, renūntiāvērunt Rōmānōs pācem numquam cum eis factūrōs esse quī suis finibus ēgressī essent atque in Rōmānum agrum trānsiissent.

Proximō annō Rōmānī rūsus pulsī sunt et in fugam conjectī; sed Pyrrhus tam multōs ex suis āmisit ut vix praestāre viderētur superāre quam superārī. His proeliis factis, tertiō annō bellī Fabricius cōsul fit et contrā Pyrrhum cum exercitū initā aestātē proficiscitur. Dum Rōmānī bellum parant, medicus Pyrrhī nocte ad Fabricium venit et dēmōstrat sē parātum esse Pyrrhum interficere. “Sī satis māgnū praemium” inquit (*said he*) “mihi dederis, ego in castra hostium redibō atque rēgem, quī dē fidē meā nōn dubitat, venēnō necābō.”

Hunc Fabricius statim ad Pyrrhum redūcī jussit, et ūnā cum eō nūntium mīsīt quī hās litterās ad rēgem dēferret: “Tū, Pyrrhe, malīs hominibus cōfidere vidēris, bonīs bellum ĩfers. Cōsul Rōmānus tē monet ut mājore cum diligentīā salūtī tuae cōsulās. Hīc medicus tam nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperītus erat ut nōn scīret Rōmānōs nullā aliā ratiōne quam virtūte hostēs sūperāre cōsuēvisse.” His litterīs acceptis, Pyrrhus māgnā vōce dixit facilius esse sōlem ā cursū āvertere (*to turn aside*) quam Fabriciō persuādere ut ĩjūriam ūllam faceret.

Post complūrēs annōs, cum jam Rōmānī nullō modō hīs victōriis commovēri vidērentur, Pyrrhus, tertiō proeliō superātus, ab Ītaliā discēdere cōstituit, neque postea (*thereafter*) populō Rōmānō bellum ĩferre ausus est.

LESSON LXXV.

GERUND.

443.

Paradigms.

GERUND.

| | <i>Genitive.</i> | <i>Dative.</i> | <i>Accusative.</i> | <i>Ablative.</i> |
|--------------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>Conj. I.</i> | amandī | amandō | amandum | amandō |
| <i>Conj. II.</i> | monendī | monendō | monendum | monendō |
| <i>Conj. III.</i> | regendī | regendō | regendum | regendō |
| <i>Conj. IV.</i> | audiendī | audiendō | audiendum | audiendō |
| <i>Conj. III. in -iō</i> | capiendī | capiendō | capiendum | capiendō |
| Ferō | ferendī | ferendō | ferendum | ferendō |
| Eō | eundī | eundō | eundum | eundō |

DEPONENTS.

| | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| <i>Conj. I.</i> | cōnandī | cōnandō | cōnandum | cōnandō |
| <i>Conj. II.</i> | verendī | verendō | verendum | verendō |
| <i>Conj. III.</i> | sequendī | sequendō | sequendum | sequendō |
| <i>Conj. IV.</i> | sortiendī | sortiendō | sortiendum | sortiendō |
| <i>Conj. III. in -ior</i> | patiendī | patiendō | patiendum | patiendō |

- a. The *Gerund* is a verbal noun found only in the genitive, dative, accusative and ablative singular. It is formed from the present stem and belongs to the active voice, being one of the few active forms possessed by deponent verbs. Of the irregular verbs, only *ferō* and *eō* have the gerund.

444.

Illustrative Examples.

Pūgnandī cupidī sunt, they are fond of fighting.

Pūgnandī causā prōgrediuntur, they advance for the purpose of fighting (or, in order to fight).

Ad pūgnandum inūtilēs erant, } they were useless for
Ad pūgnam inūtilēs erant, } fighting.

- a. The Latin gerund corresponds closely in use to the English gerund or verbal noun in *-ing*.* It seldom occurs except in the genitive with adjectives and nouns (especially with *causa*), and in the accusative with the preposition *ad*, meaning *with a view to, for*.†

445. VOCABULARY.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>bellō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i> | <i>make war.</i> |
| <i>dīmīcō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i> | <i>fight, engage.</i> |
| <i>frūmentor, ārī, ātus sum,</i> | <i>forage.</i> |
| <i>initium, ī, n.,</i> | <i>beginning.</i> |
| <i>nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i> | <i>sail (with in and acc. = to).</i> |
| <i>praedor, ārī, ātus sum,</i> | <i>plunder, pillage.</i> |

Phrases: facultātem dare, } give an opportunity.
potestātem facere, }
finem facere, make an end of, put an end to
(with genitive).
initium facere, be the first to, set the example
of (with genitive).

EXERCISES.

446.

I

- A.—1. Reliquās nāvēs parātās ad nāvigandum invēnit.
 2. Cōgnōverat equitātum praedandī frūmentandīque causā trāns flūmen missum esse. 3. Spērābat fore

* The distinction between the participle and the gerund, both ending in English in *-ing*, though with different endings in Latin, should be carefully observed. Contrast the following:

PARTICIPLE.

He saw them fleeing.
Rising early, we set out at once.
We lost sight of those crossing the river.

GERUND.

They are ashamed of fleeing.
Rising early will be beneficial.
We lost much time in crossing the river.

† The nominative of the gerund is replaced in Latin by the present infinitive (124); as, *Facile est haec facere, doing this is easy* (literally *to do this is easy*).

nūllam fugiendī facultātem. 4. Cōpiās bellandī causā trādūxerat. 5. Hunc ad ēgrediendum idōneum locum arbitrātur. 6. In mediīs Belgārum finibus hiemandī causā cōnsēderat. 7. Altera pars exercitūs itinere prohibenda est. 8. Caesar omnibus obsidibus quī apud sē erant discēdendī potestātem fēcit. 9. Cum hostēs trāseundī initium nōn fēcissent, Caesar suōs intrā castra redūxit. 10. Monet eōs ut finem ōrandī faciant.

B.—11. Ea quae ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. 12. Equitēs frūmentandī causā praemit-tendī erant. 13. In hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocat. 14. Cūr nōn flendī finem faciunt? 15. Spē bellandī dējectī erant. 16. Potestās revertendī deerat. 17. Helvētīi erant tam bellandī cupidī ut continenter finitimīs bellum inferrent. 18. Cotidiē instrūctā aciē, pūgnandī potestātem facit. 19. Cum finem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, lēgātī dē dēditionē ad eum vērunt. 20. Quīque cohortēs, quās nōn satis fīrmās ad dīmīcandum esse existimābat, praesidiō castrīs reliquit.

447.

II.

A.—1. They had been summoned for the purpose of consulting. 2. Several ships had been shattered, and the rest were useless for sailing. 3. They again left the camp in order to pillage. 4. He is desirous of returning here. 5. After that time there will not be an opportunity of coming. 6. The example of fleeing is set by the cavalry. 7. They are equal neither in number nor in zeal for* fighting. 8. These nations are eager for making war, but they are not ready for (ad) war. 9. No opportunity of leaping down is given. 10. He perceived that those who had crossed the river in order to forage had not yet returned.

*See 432. N.B.

*inutilis { ad + Gerund in Acc.
paulus*

B.—11. For these reasons the difficulty of sailing was very great. 12. He had now got suitable weather for setting out. 13. The spirit of the enemy is so ready for engaging, that time is lacking for these matters. 14. This was the reason for (*literally* cause of) crossing. 15. They have not yet put an end to the pursuit (*literally* made an end of following). 16. Which of the two was the first to set out? 17. Large forces had assembled for the purpose of making war. 18. Suddenly making a sally, they left the enemy no opportunity of finding out what was being done. 19. They are skilled both in resisting and in pursuing. 20. They scarcely ventured to send an embassy for the purpose of persuading Caesar not to advance.



Portus et Classis: Harbour and Fleet.

LESSON LXXVI.

GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.

448. In the sentences of the previous lesson no example occurred of a gerund with an object in the accusative, such as, *Hīs potestātem facit lēgātōs mittendī*, *he gives them the opportunity of sending envoys*. This construction is found in Latin, but as a rule is avoided (regularly so after prepositions).

In preference to the gerund governing the accusative, Latin uses the gerundive construction (449).

449. Illustrative Examples.

Summa erat difficultās *the difficulty of building the*
 { *faciendī pontis*, *bridge was very great.*
 { (*faciendī pontem*),

Lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt *they sent envoys to him for*
 { *pācis petendae causā*, *the purpose of seeking*
 { (*pācem petendī causā*), *peace.*

Nāvēs sunt inūtilēs ad cōpiās *the ships are useless for*
 portandās, *carrying troops.*

a. In all such sentences as these, Latin prefers not to use the gerund governing a substantive in the accusative (as in the phrases in parentheses), but instead, puts the substantive in the case in which the gerund would have been, and uses the gerundive in agreement with it. This usage is termed the *Gerundive Construction*.*

450. (a) A more literal rendering of the Latin sentences in 449 would be as follows:—

1 *The difficulty of the bridge to be built was very great;*

2 *They send envoys to him for the sake of peace to be sought;*

3 *The ships are useless with a view to troops to be carried.*

* With intransitive verbs, including those like *persuadēre* which take the dative case (255), the gerund, not the gerundive construction, is used.

One should in all cases, however, translate the gerundive construction as he would the corresponding construction with the gerund, i.e., by a verbal noun in *-ing* in the active voice followed by an object.

(b) The same meaning is thus expressed by two widely differing grammatical constructions :—

The gerund is a verbal *noun*, of the *active* voice, governing its object ; the gerundive is a verbal *adjective*, of the *passive* voice, agreeing with its substantive.

451. It should be observed that the gerund and the gerundive with *causā* or with *ad* furnish additional ways of expressing purpose in Latin ; these constructions are confined, however, to short clauses. Thus the sentence, *They sent envoys to him for the purpose of seeking peace*, may be translated :—

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| Lēgātōs ad eum mīserunt | { | pācis petendae causā (449)
ad pācem petendam (449)
ut pācem peterent (386)
quī pācem peterent (388) |
|-------------------------|---|--|

(For a fifth method see 470.)

N.B.—Here also should be reviewed the passive periphrastic conjugation, the other common use of the gerundive (346-348).

X 452.

VOCABULARY.

occupātus, a, um, *occupied, busy, engaged.*

spatium, ī, n., *space, time, interval.*

Phrases : praedam faciō, *obtain plunder.*

tempus annī, *season, time of year.*

rēs cōficiō, *complete arrangements, carry out plans.*

N.B.—*Spatium* is chiefly used of the time required or left for doing something, or of an interval of time.

EXERCISES.

453.

I.

A.—1. In agris vāstandis occupāti erant. 2. Rūsus ad insequendōs hostēs proficiscitur. 3. Caesar in his locis nāvium parandārum causā morābātur. 4. Quanta praedae faciendae facultās darētur dēmōstrāvērunt. 5. A Caesare petēbant ut ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. 6. Spē expūgnandī oppidī adductus, mājōrēs cōpiās cōgere coepit. 7. Omnia deerant quae ad pontem faciendum ūsuī erant. 8. Praedandī ac bellī inferendī causā trānsierant.

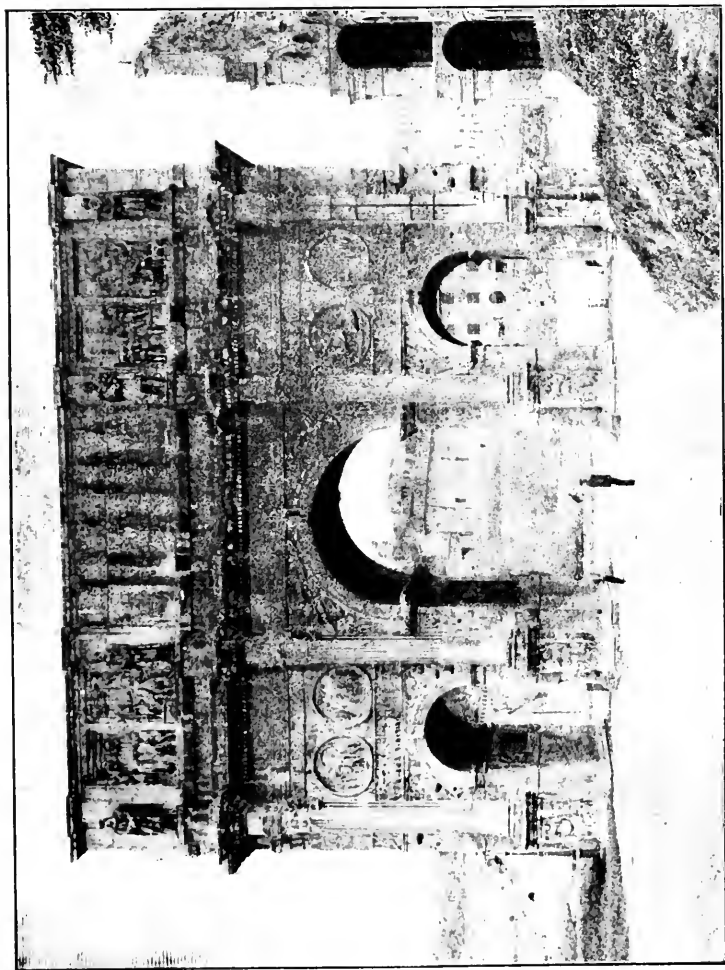
B.—9. Ad eam regiōnem vāstandam equitātum ēmisit. 10. Eius locī relinquendī facultās paucis dabitur. 11. Nāvēs lātiōrēs faciendae sunt ad multitudinem equōrum trānsportandam. 12. Nēminem bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. 13. Nōne dixistis vōs esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimōs? 14. Dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō hōc cōsiliū inierat. 15. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās negant trīduum sibi satis esse. 16. Multis dē causis acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī populōque Rōmānō resistendī cōsiliū caperent.

454.

II.

A.—1. They assemble from all sides to defend the town (the camp, the province, the fortifications, their allies). 2. The next day he set out for the province in order to ask aid. 3. On account of the season he had no opportunity of waging war. 4. They had formed this plan of injuring the enemy. 5. They are occupied in fortifying the camp and in foraging. 6. Time had not been given them for (ad) drawing their swords or hurling their missiles. 7. He answered that this legion should be sent for the purpose of seeking supplies.

1-10
April
May



ARCH OF CONSTANTINE.



B.—9. A young man of great influence among the Gauls is chosen to carry out these plans. 10. The opportunity must not be given them of marching through the province. 11. Raising a shout, they hasten to the edge (*literally* beginning) of the woods in order to give aid. 12. He sends several scouts in advance to ascertain these things. 13. In forming their plans they never take thought for themselves. 14. The season was scarcely suitable for sailing to Britain. 15. As time had not been left for encouraging the soldiers, he at once gave the signal for (*literally* of) joining battle. 16. He chose a suitable place before the camp for drawing up the line of battle.

LESSON LXXVII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. REVIEW OF PRONOUNS.

455.

Paradigm.

| THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN, quis . | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|
| SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | | |
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | quis | qua | quid | quī | quae | qua |
| | quī | (quae) | quod | | | (quae) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cūjus | cūjus | cūjus | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cui | cui | cui | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | quem | quam | quid | quōs | quās | qua |
| | | | quod | | | (quae) |
| <i>Abl.</i> | quō | quā | quō | quibus | quibus | quibus |

Compare the declension of **quis** indefinite with that of **quis** interrogative (341) and **quī** relative (254).

The forms **quis** and **quid** are used as pronouns, **quī** and **quod** as pronominal adjectives in agreement with a noun. The feminine is used only as an adjective.

456. (a) Certain compounds also of **quis** or **quī** are used as indefinite pronouns. Such are :—

| | | |
|-----------------|---------|---------------------|
| aliquis, aliquī | aliqua | aliquid, aliquod |
| quisquam | | quidquam (quicquam) |
| quisque | quaeque | quidque, quodque |
| quīdam | quaedam | quiddam, quoddam |
| quīvis | quaevis | quidvis, quodvis |

(b) **Aliquī** and the forms with **quod** are used as adjectives. It should be further noticed that only **quis** and **aliquis** have **qua** in the nominative singular feminine and nominative and accusative plural neuter ; the other compounds have **quae**.

(c) **Aliquis** is declined in every respect like **quis**. **Quisquam**, **quisque**, **quīdam** and **quīvis** are declined like **quis** or **quī** with the syllables **-quam**, **-que**, **-dam** and **-vis** respectively suffixed to each form. But **quisquam** has only the masculine and neuter singular in use, and in the declension of **quīdam**, as in that of **idem** (306), **m** becomes **n** before **d**, e.g. **quendam** for **quemdam**.

(d) Another indefinite pronoun is **uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque**, a compound of **uter**, and declined like it (205, 208).

457.

Illustrative Examples.

Cohortem ibi collocāvit nē quis flūmen trānsiret, *he stationed a cohort there lest anyone should cross the river.*

Negat sē cuiquam nocuisse, *he denies that he has injured anyone.*

Negat se ullī civitātī nocuisse, *he denies that he has injured any state.*

Ad quemvis numerum hostium adire audent, *they dare to advance against any number of the enemy.*

- a. Of the various Latin words meaning *any*, **quis** is used after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē** and **num**; **quisquam** is used as a pronoun and **ūllus** as an adjective, in negative sentences*, where the idea of *no one* or *none* is suggested; **quīvis** (meaning *anyone you wish*) is used in affirmative sentences, where the idea of *any and every* is suggested.

458.

Illustrative Examples.

Some one
Aliquis reperiētur, *some one will be found.*
Nōnnūllōs ex suis āmittunt, *they lose some of their men.*
Quīdam Gallus dēligitur, *a certain Gaul is chosen.*

- a. **Aliquis** (generally singular) means *some or other*, as opposed to *none*, but quite indefinite. **Nōnnūlli** (generally plural) has the force of *some few, a number*. **Quīdam** means *some, or a certain number*, of what is not specified, but might be specified more exactly if necessary. *Some . . . others* is to be translated by **alii . . . alii** (207).

459.

Illustrative Examples.

Mīlitum quemque cōsistere jubet, *he orders each of the soldiers to take up his position.*

In utrāque ripā flūminis dīmicābant, *they were fighting on each bank (or on both banks) of the river.*

- a. Of the two Latin words meaning *each*, **quisque** is used when more than two are spoken of, and is especially frequent with the reflexive†; **uterque** means *each of two*, and thus, by a free translation, *both*. Compare **uter** and **neuter** (208).

* This will include clauses containing such words as **vix**, **negrē** and **sine**.

† **Quisque** regularly follows the reflexive, as **sibi quemque**, **suum cuique**.

460. The various classes of pronouns should now be reviewed. The pronouns are classified as follows:—

- Personal pronouns (266, 267).
- Reflexive pronouns (277, 278).
- Possessive pronouns (279-281).
- Demonstrative pronouns (292, 293 ; 306, 307).
- Relative pronouns (254, 255).
- Interrogative pronouns (340, 341).
- Indefinite pronouns (455-459).

EXERCISES.

461.

I.

A.—1. Statiōnēs positae sunt nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret. 2. Sibi quemque cōsultare iussit. 3. Cuidam ex equitibus persuādet ut sēcum proficiscātur. 4. Neque obsidēs vōbīs dabimus neque cūjusquam imperiō pārēbimus. 5. Sic accidit ut neque hōc neque superioriē annō ūlla omniū nāvis āmitterētur. 6. Aliquos ex utraqū navi ēgredientēs cōspexit. 7. Cōsiliō eōrum probātō, ipse eōdem itinere in prōvinciam nostram revertitur. 8. Accidit ut nōnnūllī militēs praesidiō relictī essent. 9. Postulāsne ā mē nē quam multitudinem hominum ex Germāniā in Galliam trāducam? 10. Equitēs post fugam suōrum sē in finēs Germānōrum recēperant, sēque cum iīs conjūxerant.

B.—11. Ob eam rem eundem numerum obsidum cuique civitatī imperat. 12. Clāmōre sublātō, ab utrōque latere impetum fēcērunt. 13. Cum quibusdam principibus vult agere. 14. Ad hunc sē ab illō omnēs convertunt. 15. Praestat quidvis patī quam nōs dēdere. 16. Sī quā in parte nostrī laborāre aut graviter premī vidēbuntur, vōs subsidiō mittam. 17. Quantam quisque multitudinem ad id bellum pollicitus

esset, cōgnōverant. 18. *Ē* suīs aliquem ad tē mittet. 19. Alii spērant sē bellum sine ūllō labōre et periculō cōfectūrōs. 20. Ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant neque quisquam procliō excēdēbat.

462.

I.

A.—1. He says that he ^{acc + inf} cannot give any lands to us. 2. For that reason he summoned to him ^{cell} the leading men of each state. 3. The leaders of both armies (*literally* each army) are unwilling to set the example of recalling the cavalry. 4. On the same day a means of approach was observed by ^{at} a certain soldier. 5. We hope to have some opportunity of following. 6. He ordered all the horses to be removed, lest any hope remain (*literally* be left) in flight. 7. Embassies were sent to him from some (other, the other, certain, these, the same, both, no) states. 8. ^{alibi} Some were unwilling to give up their arms, others preferred to surrender. 9. Scarcely any-one visits that island except sailors.

B.—10. You must build the ships sufficiently strong to stand any storm. 11. He himself ^{satis} informed us that all the other Belgians were in arms, and that the Germans had joined them. 12. Certain of these came to him that same day. 13. They asked him to choose some place for the meeting; they ask me not to choose anyone for this business. 14. They compel us to report what each of us has heard about each matter. 15. If anyone learns anything, he will report (it) to the magistrates. 16. Our men are hard pressed and no (*literally* and not any) reinforcements can be sent. 17. He begged that they should injure no one (*literally* that they should not injure anyone). 18. He advised them to say nothing.

LESSON LXXVIII.

IMPERATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

463.

Paradigms.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | | (a) <i>Active Voice.</i> | | (b) <i>Irregular Verbs.</i> | | |
|----------------------------|------|--------------------------|---------|-----------------------------|---------|--------|
| | | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. | |
| <i>Conj. I.</i> | | amā | amāte | Sum | es | este |
| <i>Conj. II.</i> | | monē | monēte | Nōlō | nōlī | nōlīte |
| <i>Conj. III.</i> | | rege | regite | Eō | ī | īte |
| <i>Conj. IV.</i> | | audī | audīte | Ferō | fer* | ferite |
| <i>Conj. III. (in -iō)</i> | cape | | capite | | | |

| | | (c) <i>Passive Voice.</i> | | (d) <i>Deponents.</i> | |
|-----------------------------|--------|---------------------------|----------|-----------------------|-----------|
| | | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
| <i>Conj. I.</i> | | amāre | amāminī | cōnāre | cōnāminī |
| <i>Conj. II.</i> | | monēre | monēminī | verēre | verēminī |
| <i>Conj. III.</i> | | regere | regiminī | sequere | sequiminī |
| <i>Conj. IV.</i> | | audire | audiminī | sortire | sortiminī |
| <i>Conj. III. (in -ior)</i> | capere | | capiminī | patere | patiminī |

a. In the case of the regular verbs, notice the relation in form of the endings of the singular of the imperative (active, passive and deponent) to the endings of the present infinitive active (122), and also of the endings of the plural of the imperative (passive and deponent) to the endings of the second plural present indicative passive (165).

464.

Illustrative Examples.

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Mihi crēde, | <i>believe me.</i> |
| Ēgrederere ex oppidō, | <i>leave the town.</i> |
| Nōlī ex oppidō ēgredi, | <i>do not leave the town.</i> |
| Nōlīte cēdere, | <i>do not yield.</i> |

* The imperative singular of **dīcō**, **dūcō** and **faciō** is similarly shortened to **dīc**, **dūc** and **fac**.

- a. The simple imperative is used, as in these sentences, to express commands and entreaties, while in prohibitions (i.e. negative commands and entreaties) the imperative of *nōlō* is used with a complementary infinitive.

465. Illustrative Examples.

Redeāmus, *let us return.*
Captīvus interficiātur, *let the prisoner be put to death.*
Nē redire audeant, *let them not venture to return.*

- a. While the subjunctive in Latin is most commonly found in dependent sentences, it is also used in independent sentences with varying meanings. One such usage is illustrated in these sentences, namely, that which is sometimes termed the *Volitive Subjunctive* (from *volō*, *I will*). The volitive subjunctive is used in the present tense (a) in the first person (plural) to express an exhortation, and (b) in the third person (singular or plural) to express a command. The negative is *nē*, not *nōn*; the subject is of course in the nominative (contrast the English construction).*

466. Illustrative Examples.

Facultās nōbīs dētur, *may an opportunity be given us.*
Incolumēs redeātis, *may you return in safety.*
Nē hōc accidat, *may this not happen.*

- a. The present subjunctive is also used independently to express a wish that something may or may not take place, the negative being *nē*. This usage is termed the *Optative Subjunctive* (from *optō*, *I desire*).

* When the subjunctive expresses an exhortation, it is often termed the Hortatory Subjunctive, and when expressing a command the Jussive Subjunctive, from *hortor* and *jubeō* respectively.

EXERCISES.

467.

I.

A.—1. Māgnā vōce suōs hortātur, “In fluctūs dē-silīte, mīlītēs. Nōlīte dubitāre nāvi ēgredi.” 2. Nē in dēditiōnem veniāmus. 3. Nē quod incommodum accipiant. 4. Auxilium nōbīs fer, Caesar; pedem referte, mīlītēs. 5. Omnis senātus necētur. 6. Hōc utrique ūsuī sit. / 7. Adorīminī agmen novissimum. 8. Signa convertite; signa inferantur. 9. Nōlī perturbārī; gladium dēstringe. 10. Aliud cōnsilium ineā-mus. 11. Īte; redīte; revertiminī. 12. Sibi quisque cōnsulat.

B.—13. Tertiā ^{superior} initā vigiliā, loca superiōra occupentur. 14. Fīnem facite dīmīcandī; nōlīte initium facere fugae. 15. Alter equitātūī praesit, alter cohortibus. 16. Patere nōs praedam facere. 17. Hās litterās dēfer ad mātrem meam. 18. Omnī periculō ^{maxime} liberer. 19. Inimīcī populī Rōmānī cīvitate expellantur. 20. Hārum rērum gestārū nōlīte memoriā dēpōnere; memoria amicitiae nostrae semper retineātur. 21. Rē frūmentāriā nē interclūdāmur. 22. Aliquam facultātem nōbīs dā praedae faciendae. 23. Bonō animō es. 24. Haec, quae petimus, impetrēmus.

468.

II.

A.—1. Let us await the fleet there. 2. Let us not delay here (any) longer. 3. Do not make war on us. 4. May they not be put to flight; may they not suffer defeat. 5. Set out along with us. 6. Be prudent; do not be bold. 7. May you attain your freedom. 8. Let someone be present. 9. Spare us; do not injure anyone. 10. At the same time let an attack be made on the unprotected flank. 11. Let us not despair of safety;

N. 18
/

do not despair of the state. 12. Let the forces be increased; may the number of defenders increase.

B.—13. Let us not turn and flee. 14. Appoint a day for the meeting. 15. May your influence be very strong with them. 16. Set sail at midnight; disembark just before dawn. 17. Let the legion be led thither in light marching order. 18. Follow closely the Gauls fleeing towards the river; do not give them any opportunity of fleeing into Germany. 19. Let us take up arms at the beginning of spring. 20. May we not be disappointed in this hope. 21. Do not fear for the ships. 22. Let us keep the Romans from marching. 23. Abandon the assault. 24. Let bad citizens lose their citizenship.

LESSON LXXIX.

SUPINE. REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS.

469.

Paradigm.

THE SUPINE.

Conj. I. Conj. II. Conj. III. Conj. IV. Conj. III.
(in -iō.)

| | | | | | |
|------|--------|---------|--------|---------|--------|
| Acc. | amātum | monitum | rēctum | audītum | captum |
| ABL. | amātū | monitū | rēctū | audītū | captū |

- a. The *Supine* is a verbal noun (with active force) of the fourth declension, and found only in the accusative and ablative singular.
- b. The principal parts of the verb include one which is identical in form with the supine, and which is therefore said to furnish the supine stem. But as the supine is a form of rare occurrence in Latin, many grammars prefer to regard this principal part as the neuter singular of the perfect participle passive, and to speak therefore of the participial (not the supine) stem.

470.

Illustrative Examples.

Lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt pācem petītum, *they sent envoys to him to seek peace.*

Facile est factū, *it is easy to do* (literally *in the doing*).

- a. The accusative supine is used, as in the first sentence, to denote purpose, after verbs of motion, such as **veniō, mittō, eō**.
- b. The ablative supine is used, as in the second sentence, to state in what respect a statement or term is applicable. Compare the ablative of specification (414). This usage is found chiefly with the supines **factū** and **dictū**, after such adjectives as **facilis**, **difficilis** and **optimus**.
- c. The accusative supine furnishes a fifth (though infrequent) mode of expressing purpose, in addition to those given in 451.

471. (a) With the exception of the comparatively rare future imperative (active and passive) and future infinitive passive, all the regular forms of the Latin verb have now been studied, and may be reviewed at this stage.

(b) The Latin verb has :—

two voices, Active and Passive (Deponent verbs being an important exception);

four regular conjugations (including the verbs of the third conjugation in **-iō**); in addition to the regular conjugations, there are also the active and passive periphrastic conjugations, and certain irregular verbs, especially **sum, possum, ferō, eō, fiō, volō, nōlō** and **mālō**.

the indicative mood (active and passive), with six tenses (present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect and future perfect);

- the subjunctive mood (active and passive), with four tenses (present, imperfect, perfect and pluperfect);
 the imperative mood (active and passive), with two divisions sometimes called present and future;
 the infinitive (active and passive), with three tenses (present, perfect and future);
 the participles, including the present and future participles of the active voice, and the perfect participle and the gerundive of the passive voice.
 the gerund and the supine of the active voice.

472. VOCABULARY.

nisi, *if not; unless, except.*

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask.**

vīs, irregular, f., in singular, *force, violence, might*;
 in plural, *strength, vigour.*

N.B.—**Vīs** has in the singular the nominative **vīs**, accusative **vim**, and ablative **vī**, in common use; the plural is **vīrēs, vīrium, vīribus, vīrēs, vīrēs, vīribus.**

EXERCISES.

473. I.

A.—1. Dum ea geruntur, legiō ex cōsuētūdine ūna frūmentātum missa est. 2. Facilius est dictū quam factū. 3. Nāvēs factae sunt ad quamvīs vim perfe-rendam. 4. Lēgātōs ad eōs mittit, rōgātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcant. 5. Vī coāctī erant commeātum ad eum portāre. 6. Negant sē quidquam nisi commūnī cōsiliō āctūrōs esse. 7. Prīncipātū dējectī,† novīs rēbus studēbant. 8. Pedestrēs cōpiās ēductūrus est; ab hōc cōsiliō dēterrendus est. 9. Respondet optimum‡ factū esse flūmen ponte jungere. 10. Vīrēs mīlitum integrae esse videntur.

* **Rogō** is used like both **petō** and **quaerō** (426, fn.), but with acc.

† Translate **dējectō** here by *deprive*.

‡ Translate *the best thing to do*; similarly 19.

B.—11. Cēterī, cum haec animadvertissent, sua omnia in oppida contulērunt. 12. Seīsne quō eās? Num terrēmini? Nōnne ūtilissimum erit? 13. Datō signō, ē castris ērumpant; ēruptiōnem faciant; ēruptiō fiat. 14. Eum locum, quem probāverat, duplici mūrō firmāre instituit. 15. Hīs rēbus permōtī, māgnopere perturbābantur; nāvibus verēbar. 16. Ubi habitātis? Incolimus extrēmōs finēs Belgārum. 17. Gallia est divisa in partēs trēs. 18. Monitum vēnimus tē, nōn orātum. 19. Facile factū est propius accēdere. 20. Lēgātī vōbīs ad Caesarem satis faciendī causā mittendī erant.

474.

II.

A.—1. He sends out five cohorts to forage. 2. Nothing is easier to say. 3. They ask what is best to do. 4. Being unable to defend themselves, they sent envoys to Caesar to ask aid. 5. So great a storm has arisen that we cannot endure the violence of the waves. 6. What do you wish except to seize our lands by (per) violence? 7. No one has yielded; some have fallen. 8. We shall be seen by someone; we were approaching the sea. 9. We found the soldiers occupied in pitching the camp. 10. They met the foot-soldiers fleeing. 11. This report will be borne to the most distant regions.

B.—12. They had rushed out of the camp that they might not be surrounded. 13. The swiftest of the warships had been shattered; a shout arises. 14. Let us dare to endure anything; we shall go out (exeō), lest we hear anything. 15. He put his brother in command of the left wing; he himself was in command of the right. 16. They remember that this will be very difficult to do. 17. The commanders of cavalry had not yet perceived what was being done (*use both*

agō and faciō). 18. He is said to have been superior in strength of body. 19. They will surround (*use both circumveniō and circumdō*); they will restore; they will return (*use both redeō and revertor*). 20. On his approach they send envoys to ask reinforcements, that they may be able to withstand the might of the enemy.

LESSON LXXX.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVE.

475. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence consisting of two clauses: (a) a subordinate clause containing some supposition, and introduced usually in English by *if* or *unless*, in Latin by *sī* or *nisi*; (b) a principal clause containing the conclusion which follows the supposition. These clauses are termed respectively the *Protasis* and the *Apodosis*.

In conditional sentences in Latin both the indicative and the subjunctive are used, but regularly the same mood occurs in both clauses, that is, either both clauses have the indicative or both have the subjunctive.

476.

Illustrative Examples.

Sī Rōmānus cīvis est, liber est, if he is a Roman citizen, he is free.

Sī hōc fēcērunt, inimīcī erant, if they did this, they were enemies.

- a. These sentences present a form of conditional sentence referring to present or past time, which states what logically follows upon something which may or may not be true. The indicative mood is used in both English and Latin, the tenses having their usual values.

477.

Illustrative Examples.

Sī Caesar adesset, ācrius pūgnārent, *if Caesar were present, they would fight more vigorously.*

Sī Caesar adfuisset, ācrius pūgnāvissent, *if Caesar had been present, they would have fought more vigorously.*

- a. These sentences also refer to present or past time, but they do not deal with a supposed case which may or may not be true. Rather, it is implied that as a matter of fact Caesar was *not* present, and therefore the fighting was *not* so vigorous. In conditional sentences *contrary to fact*, Latin uses the subjunctive in both clauses, the imperfect subjunctive for present time, the pluperfect subjunctive for past time.

478.

Illustrative Examples.

- (1) Sī obsidēs mīserint, pācem faciēmus, *if they send hostages, we shall make peace.*

Sī amīcī esse vidēbuntur, cōpiās reducet, *if they (shall) seem to be friendly, he will lead back his troops.*

- (2) Sī obsidēs mittant, pācem faciāmus, *if they were to send hostages, we should make peace.*

Sī amīcī esse videantur, cōpiās reducat, *if they should seem to be friendly, he would lead back his troops.*

- a. All these conditional sentences refer to the future. The two groups of suppositions and conclusions relate to the same state of affairs, but the latter group (2) refers to them less simply and directly than the former (1), treating them rather as conceivable cases. These two groups are often distinguished as the more vivid and the less vivid form of future conditions.

3. It will be noticed that in the more vivid future conditional sentences, English ordinarily uses *shall* or *will*, and in the less vivid, *should* or *would* or *were to*; and further that in the protasis of the more vivid form Latin has the future or future perfect indicative (for the use of these tenses review 224), and in both clauses of the less vivid form the present subjunctive.

479. Two methods of classifying these four kinds of conditional sentences may be suggested :—

a. First method :

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Present or Past Time | { Simple (476).
Contrary to Fact (477). |
| Future Time | { More vivid (478, 1).
Less vivid (478, 2). |

b. Second method :

| | |
|-----------------|--|
| Logical | { Present or past time (476).
Future time (478, 1). |
| Ideal (478, 2). | |
| Unreal (477). | |

480. The following uses of the Latin subjunctive have now been studied :—

In indirect questions (362).

In clauses of purpose—

adverbial, with **ut** or **nē** (386).

relative, with **quī** (388).

substantive, with **ut** or **nē** (424).

In clauses of result (371).

With **cum**, causal or temporal (397).

In subordinate clauses in indirect discourse (408).

In conditional sentences (477, 478).

In independent clauses of exhortation, command or wish (465, 466).

EXERCISES.

481.

I.

A.—1. Māgna praedae faciendae facultās dabitur, si Rōmānōs castrīs expulerimus. 2. Si hōc fēcissent, vīribus corporum praestitissent. 3. Si periculōsum hōc esse exīstimās, cūr nōn aliquem mittis quī auxilium rōget? 4. Si primī ōrdinēs graviter prementur, auxilium ferēmus. 5. Si hanc rem impetret, omnī periculō liberētur. 6. Nisi subsidium noctū missum esset, diūtius vim hostium sustinēre nōn potuissēmus. 7. Etiam si ācerrimē factus erit impetus, pedem nōn referēmus sed prō castrīs pūgnantēs cadēmus. 8. Si obsidēs ā vōbīs Caesarī dentur, ut ea quae polliceāmini vōs factūrōs intellegat, pācem vōbīscum faciat. 9. Hunc collem si tenēbunt nostrī, hostēs aquā commeātūque prohibēbunt. 10. Si hōc fiat, omnīnō spēs fugae tollātur.

B.—11. Hāc orātiōne quam in conciliō habuerat, persuāserat Helvētiīs ut finibus suis exīrent. 12. Cum jam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent, fugā dēstitērunt. 13. Primō perspicere nōn possunt unde aut quam in partem hōc flūmen fluat. 14. Finem subsequendī faciāmus, nē ab nostrīs interclūdāmur. 15. Morte suōrum ita perterriti erant, ut summō tumultū ad alteram rīpam trānsiissent. 16. Respondit adulēscēntem summā fortitudīne dēlēctum esse, Lūcium nōmine, quī apud Gallōs māgnam auctōritātem habēret. 17. Si prūdēns fuisset, sēnsisset quid hīc agerētur. 18. Primum nōs cohortātus est ut ante autumnum ējus modī classem efficerēmus. 19. Renūntiant sē tēla intrā mūnitiōnēs conjicere nōn potuisse, quod castra fossā incēdibilī lātitudīne circumdata essent. 20. Cum haec nātiō, de quā suprā scripsimus, plūrimū tōtius ferē Galliae equitātū valeat, longē lātēque circum sē finēs vāstāvērunt.

482.

II.

A.—1. If anything happens, I shall return here at once. 2. If anything should happen, I should return there at once. 3. If you can hear their voices, they are not far distant. 4. If you were to set out at dawn, you would reach the lake at nightfall. 5. Unless you do this, I shall go alone. 6. If they had been inexperienced in sailing, they would not have reached land so easily. 7. Since the lower part of the island faces the continent, the inhabitants would often cross over, if they were skilled in sailing. 8. If they should prefer to cross the Rhine, lands would be given them in Gaul. 9. If the number of the enemy increases, the Gauls will gather all their property into one place. 10. Thus, even if they are fond of making war or of pillaging, opportunity is lacking.

B.—11. Since Caesar himself is present, they are more eager for fighting. 12. If Caesar himself is present, they will fight with greater zeal. 13. He begged them not to seek safety in flight. 14. For these reasons, if they had attempted to cross by (per) force, we should have prevented (them). 15. Because of the season, let them not attempt to visit the most distant nations. 16. These reported that they had found all the troops occupied in foraging, except those who had been left to guard the baggage. 17. He commands the tribunes, centurions and officers of cavalry to seize the approaches and roads in a similar manner. 18. Unless the magistrates satisfy me, I shall spare no one. 19. If he should ask me what is the best thing to do, I should urge him not to set the example of flight. 20. Since all men are by nature eager for freedom, we wish to be made free.

483.

WORD LIST VIII.

NOUNS.

| | | | |
|------------|-------|----------|-------------|
| aditus | modus | spatium | tumultus |
| diligentia | nōmen | studium | vīs - FORCE |
| initium | ratio | subsidiū | vōx |

ADJECTIVES.

| | | | |
|---------|-----------|-----------|---------|
| cupidus | imperitus | occupatus | peritus |
|---------|-----------|-----------|---------|

PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

| | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|---------|
| aliquis | quis | quisque | ūllus |
| nōnnūllī | quisquam | quīvis | uterque |
| quīdam | | | |

VERBS

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|---------|
| adeō < vīſiſ 7 | eō | interclūdō | praedor |
| bellō | exeō | liberō | praestō |
| cohortor | fiō | moneō | redeō |
| dējiciō | frūmentor | nāvigō | rogō |
| dēsistō | hortor | orō - 816 | superō |
| dīmiciō | imperō | persuādeō | trānseō |
| ēgredior | ineō | petō | valeō |

PREPOSITIONS.

| | | | |
|--------|--------|-------|----------------|
| ab | contrā | inter | praeter EXCEPT |
| ad | cum | intrā | prō |
| ante | dē | ob | propter |
| apud | ex | per | sine |
| circum | in | post | sub |
| | | | trāns |

CONJUNCTIONS.

| | | | |
|-----------|----------|-------|-----|
| ac, atque | dum | neque | sed |
| aut | et, -que | nisi | sī |
| cum | nē | quod | ut |

READING LESSON XV.

THE STORY OF REGULUS. (256 B.C.; 250 B.C.)

484.

VOCABULARY.

Āfrica, ae, f., *Africa*.*Carthāginiēnsēs*, ium, m. pl., *the Carthaginians* (inhabiting the city of Carthage in North Africa).*catēna*, ae, f., *chain, fetter*; in plur. freely, *prison*.*cōservō*, āre, āvī, ātum, *keep*.*crūdēlis*, e, *cruel*.*Graecus*, ī, m., *Greek*.*Pūnicus*, a, um, *Punic, Carthaginian*.*senectūs*, -tūtis, f., *old age*.*uxor*, -ōris, f., *wife*.

Nōnō annō primī Pūnicī bellī, quod populus Rōmānus contrā Carthāginiēnsēs gerēbat, Rōmānī cōsiliū in Āfricā trāseundī iniērunt bellī inferendī causā. Ad hās rēs cōficiendās classis trecentārum trīgintā nāvium effecta est, et plūrimī mīlitēs, spē praedae faciendae adductī, ad portum convēnērunt. Rēgulus cōsul, quī huic classī praefectus erat, idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem naetus, initā aestāte nāvēs solvit, et classe Carthāginiēnsium superātā, ad Āfricā pervēnit. Ibi mīlitēs, nāvibus ēgressī, complūra proelia fēcērunt et multa oppida cēpērunt. Primō Carthāginiēnsēs neque virtūte neque studiō pūgnandī Rōmānīs parēs erant. Multis incommodis acceptis, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Graecōs mīsērunt rogātum ut sibi auxilium ferrent, et aliquem mitterent quī exercitui praecset.

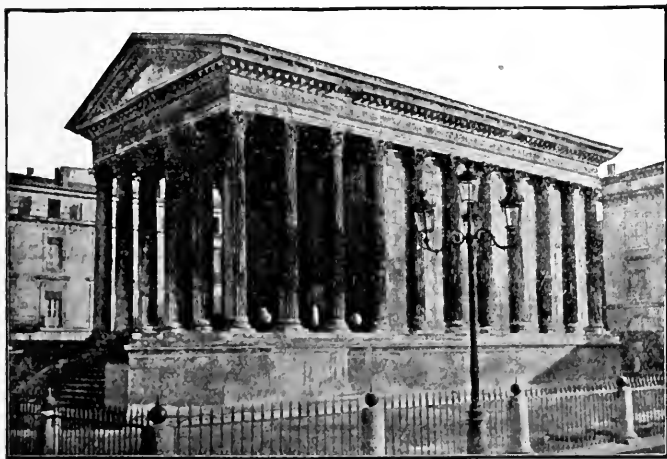
Dux quīdam, Xanthippus nōmine, rei militāris perītissimus, missus est, atque proximō annō, cum jam Carthāginiēnsēs ad dimicandum parātōs esse

arbitrārētur, cōpiās suās contrā Rōmānōs ēdūxit, quī in agris vāstandīs occupātī erant. Proeliō commissō, Rōmānī tantam calamitātem accēpērunt ut ferē omnēs aut caperentur aut interficerentur. Vix duo mīlia sē ad mare recēpērunt, et Rēgulus ipse ab hostibus captus et in catēnās coniectus est.

Sed Rōmānī cōnsiliō dēsistere ac finem dīmicanđi facere nōlēbant, atque mājōribus cōpiis coāctis bellum renovāvērunt. Post quīnque annōs Carthāginiēnsēs, māgnā acceptā calamitāte, lēgatiōnem ad senātum dē pāce mittere cōstituērunt. Simul Rēgulum adeunt et certiōrem eum dē hōc cōnsiliō faciunt : “ Lēgātōs misūrī sumus Rōmānīs persuādendī causā ut pācem faciant. Visne ūnā cum illīs proficīsci et populō Rōmānō ostendere quid optimum sit factū ? Atque sī senātus quōsdam adulēscentēs nōbilēs, quī captī sunt, nōbīs nōn reddiderit, hūc statim ipse redibis ? Nam (*for*) nisi haec tē factūrum pollicitus eris, nōn tē ire patiēmur.”

Cum Rēgulus pollicitus esset, lēgātī profectī sunt, sed cum ad urbem vēnissent, Rēgulus nōluit in mūnitiōnēs ingredi (*to enter*), quod cīvis esse Rōmānus dēstitisset. Spērābant Carthāginiēnsēs Rēgulum, ut ipse liber fieret, Rōmānōs monitūrum esse nē captīvōs retinērent, sed pācem cum hostibus cōfirmārent. Sed cum senātus quōsdam misit quī cum eō agerent, haec dixit : “ Monitum vōs, Patrēs, vēnī, nē pācem faciātis. Carthāginiēnsēs, proeliis frāctī, vix ūllam spem habent neque quisquam eōrum diūtius bellandī est cupidus. Bonō animō este ; cīvēs nē dē victōriā dēspērent. Nōlite captīvōs reddere ; vīrēs cūjusque illōrum integrae sunt ; ego, senectūte cōnfectus, ūsuī esse rei pūblīcae nūllō modō possum. Nōlite mihi timēre : praestat quidvis patī quam rei pūblīcae nocēre.”

Hāc ōrātiōne senātui persuāsit nē quem captivum redderet. Atque cum nōnnūllī eum retinēre cōnārentur, hortātus est amicōs ut finem flendī et ōrandī facerent, et dixit sē illō diē, quō captus esset, civitātem āmisisse. Tum (*then*) uxōrem et liberōs ā complexū (*his embrace*) remōvit, et ad Āfricam rediit, nūllā vī coāctus praeter fidem (*pledge*) quam dederat hostī. Tamen (*and yet*) sciēbat sē ad certissimam mortem et ad crūdēlissimōs hostēs sē revertī, sed fidem esse cōservandam existimābat. Sed sī sibi cōsuluisset, nōn rei pūblicae, num fāma tantae fortitudinis ad ultimās regiōnēs perlāta esset?



Templum : Temple.

THE STORY OF ULYSSES.

(Chiefly from Ritchie, Fabulae Faciles.)

The Trojan War.

485. Ōlim Paris, filius Priamī rēgis Trōjānōrum, cum in Graeciam mare trānsiisset, Helenam, uxōrem Menelāi rēgis Spartae, abdūxit. Itaque Menelāus omnēs rēgēs Graeciae convocāvit, et ōrāvit ut auxilium sibi ferrent. Mox, classe mīlle ducentārum nāvium coāctā, māgnīs cum cōpiīs profectus est ut injūriam ulciscerētur. Agamemnōn, Menelāi frāter, tōtī exercituī Graecōrum praefectus est; et ūnā cum hīs duōbus rēgibus Achillēs, quī omnibus hominibus virtūte praestābat, et Ulixēs, vir summae prūdētiaē, nāvēs solvērunt.

Graecī, nāvibus ēgressi, Trōjam vāllō fossāque circumdare nōn cōnātī sunt, sed in litore nōn longē ā nāvibus cōnsēdērunt. Inter mare et urbem plānitīēs erat māgna, atque ibi Trōjānī, aciē instrūctā, saepe cum Graecīs proelia committēbant. Post novem annōs Graecī plūrima oppida expūgnāverant, quae circum Trōjam socii Priamī habēbant, et tanta incommoda Trōjānī accēperant ut minus saepe proelium facere audērent.

486. Decimō annō bellī, contrōversia māgna inter Agamemnona* et Achillem orta est, atque Achillēs, irā incēnsus, pūgnā abstinēre cōstituit. Trōjānī, cum haec cōgnōvissent, Graecōs audācius adorti sunt, atque nāvēs eōrum incendissent, nisi Patroclus, quī Achillī amicissimus erat, eum rogāvisset ut auxiliō Graecīs venīret. Neque Achillī persuādere potuit ut ipse in

*Some nouns of the third declension, borrowed from the Greek, have the Greek ending -a in the accusative singular.

proelium rediret ; sed Achillēs arma et equōs suōs Patroclō dedit et milītēs suōs subsidiō Graecīs labōrantibus mīsīt. Adventū eōrum Trōjānī repulsī sunt ; sed Patroclus ipse ab Hectore, fortissimō ex filiīs Priamī, interfectus est. Tum Achillēs, māgnō dolōre affectus, mortem amīcī ulciscī contendit, et, rūrsus armīs captīs, in mediōs hostēs irruit atque Hectora interfēcīt. Sed post paucōs diēs ipse, ā Paride vulnerātus, cecidit, et Graecī dē victoriā iam dēspērāre coepērunt.

487. Cum jam multī hortārentur ut in Graeciam reverterentur, Ulixēs Graecīs persuāsīt ut aliud cōnsilium inīrent. Equus ligneus ingentī māgnitūdine est effectus atque virīs armātīs complētus est. Tum reliquī Graecī in nāvēs conscendērunt et sē in Graeciam nāvīgāre simulābant. Trōjānī, nōn insidiās suspicātī, equum in urbem trāxērunt, cum arbitrārentur Graecōs mūnerī eum deīs reliquisse. Sed noctū Ulixēs et Menelāus cēterīque quī sē in equō abdiderant, ēgressī sunt et custōdēs portārum necāvērunt. Tum reliquī Graecī, signō datō, in urbem ex nāvibus irrūpērunt. Trōjānī aut interfectī sunt aut in servitūtem abductī ; Trōja ipsa incēnsa est.

488. Tandem Graecī, longō bellō fessī, domum redire cōstituērunt. Omnibus igitur rēbus ad profectiōnem parātīs, nāvēs dēdūxērunt et idōneam ad nāvīgandum tempestātem nactī māgnō cum gaudiō nāvēs solvērunt. Ulixēs, quī rēgnū insulae Ithacae obtinuerat, paulō antequam cum reliquīs Graecīs ad bellum profectus est, puellam fōrmōsissimam nōmine Pēnelopēn* in mātrimonium dūxerat. Nunc igitur, cum jam decem annōs

* Some nouns of the first declension, borrowed from the Greek, have (in the singular) -ē in the nom., -ēs in the gen., -ēn in the acc., and -ē in the abl.

quasi in exsiliō cōsūmpsisset, māgnā cupiditāte patriae et uxōris videndae ārdēbat. Postquam tamen pauca mīlia passuum ā litore Trōjae prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla nāvium cursum tenēre posset, sed passim disjicerentur. Nāvis autem illa, quā ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur, vī tempestātis ad merīdiem dēlāta, decimō diē ad lītus Libyae pervēnit.

The Lotus Eaters.

489. Ancorīs jactīs, Ulixēs cōstituit nōnnūllōs ē sociīs in terram expōnere, quī aquam ad nāvem referrent et quālis esset nātūra ējus regiōnis cōgnōscerent. Hī igitur ē nāvī ēgressī imperāta facere parābant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, quīdam ex incolīs occurrunt atque hospitio accēpērunt. Accidit autem* ut mīrō quōdam fructū quem lōtum appellābant hī hominēs vīverent. Quem cum Graeci gustāvissent, patriae et sociōrum statim oblītī, affīrmāvērunt semper sē in eā terrā mānsūrōs, ut dulcī illō cibō in perpetuum fruerentur.

Ulixēs, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum exspectāvisset, veritus nē† sociī in periculō essent, nōnnūllōs ē reliquīs mīsīt, ut, quae causa esset morae, cōgnōscerent. Hī igitur in terram expositī, cum ad vīcum quī nōn longē aberat pervēnissent, sociōs suōs quasi vīnō ēbriōs repperērunt, atque eis persuādēre cōnābantur, ut sēcum ad nāvem redīrent. Illi tamen resistere ac manū sē dēfendere coepērunt, saepe clāmitantēs sē numquam ex eō locō discessūrōs. Quae cum ita essent‡, nūntiī rē infectā ad Ulixem rediērunt. His rēbus cōgnitis, Ulixēs ipse cum omnibus quī in nāvī

* Translate **autem** by *now*, and **fructū** by *on*, literally *by means of*.

† After a verb of *fearing*, **nē** means *lest* or *that*.

‡ Translate freely by *under these circumstances*.

relictī sunt ad locum vēnit ; et sociōs frūstrā hortātus ut sponte suā redīrent, manibus eōrum post terga vinctīs, invitōs ad nāvem reportāvit. Tum, ancorīs sublātis, quam celerrimē ē portū nāvem solvit.

The Giant Polyphemus.

490. Posterō diē postquam tōtam noctem rēmīs contenderant, ad terram ignōtam pervēnērunt. Tum, quod nātūrā ejus regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duodecim ē sociīs in terram ēgressus loca explōrāre cōstituit. Paulum ā lītore prōgressī specum ingentem invēnērunt, quem, etsī intellegēbant sē nōn sine periculō id factūrōs, intrāvērunt. Ibi māgnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsīs ingentibus conditam. Dum omnēs mīrantur quis eum locum incoletet, subitō mōnstrum horribile cōspexērunt, humanā quidem speciē et figurā, sed ingentī māgnitūdine corporis. Hunc gigantem cum animadvertissent ūnum omnīnō oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam jam accēperant.*

491. Graeci igitur, ubi mōnstrum vidērunt, timōre perterriti in interiōrem partem spēluncae cōfūgērunt. Polyphēmus autem (id enim gigantis nōmen erat) pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit ; tum cum saxō ingentī portam obstrūxisset, ignem in mediō specū fēcit. Mox cum Graecōs animadvertisset, māgnā vōce clāmāvit. " Quī estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an† praedōnēs? " Tum Ulixēs respondit sē‡ neque mercātōrēs esse neque praedandī causā vēnisse ; sed ē Trōjā redeuntēs vī tempestātum ā cursū depulsōs esse. Ōrāvit etiam ut sē sine

* Translate by *had heard*.

† In double questions *an* is used with the force of *or*.

‡ Translate by *they*; Ulysses speaks for himself and his comrades.

injūriā discēdere paterētur. Tum Polyphēmus, nūllō datō respōnsō, duo ē Graecīs manū corripuit et membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs carnem dēvorāre coepit.

492. Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit, ut, omni spē salūtis dēpositā, mortem praesentem exspectārent. Polyphēmus autem humī prōstrātus, somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs, tantam occāsiōnem nōn āmittendam arbitrātus, in animō habēbat gladiō interficere. Sed cum saxum animadvertisset, quō introitus obstrūctus erat, nihil sē prōfectūrum* intellēxit, sī Polyphēmum interfēcisset. Tanta enim erat ējus saxī māgnitūdō, ut nē decem quidem hominēs movēre possent. Primā lūce, Polyphēmus jam ē somnō excitātus idem quod superiōre diē fēcit; correptis enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs, carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum remōvisset, ipse cum pecore ē specū prōgressus est, atque postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit.

The Device of Ulysses.

493. Ulixēs vērō quī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir māgnae fuit prūdētiaē, etsī intellegēbat quantum esset periculum, nōndum omnīnō dēspērābat, sed hōc cēpit cōnsilium. Sub noctem cum Polyphēmus ad specum rediisset et eōdem modō quō† antea cēnāvisset, Ulixēs ūtrem vinī prōmpsit, quem forte sēcum habēbat, et gigantī dedit. Polyphēmus, quī numquam antea vinum gustāverat, statim hausit. Hōc factō quaesivit quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur. Ille respondit sē Nēminem appellārī. Quod cum audīvisset, Polyphēmus ita locūtus est: "Hanc tibi grātiā prō tantō beneficiō referam;

* From **prōficiō**, not from **proficiscor**; note the quantity.

† Translate by *as* (see 668).

tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō.” His dictis, cibō vinōque gravātus, brevī somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociis convocātis dixit: “Habēmus facultātem quam petimus.” Tum postquam quid fieri vellet ostendit, sudem praeacūtā conquirēbat. Quam cum repperisset, igni calefēcit, atque oculum Polyphēmī dum dormit trāsfōdit; hōc factō, omnēs in ultimās spēluncae partēs sē abdidērunt.

494. Tum ille subitō illō dolōre ē somnō excitātus, clāmōrem māximum sustulit, et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixem et sociōs manū comprehendere cōnābātur. Cum tamen jam omninō caceus esset, nūllō modō hōc efficere potuit. Intercā reliquī Cyclōpēs clāmōre auditō undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt et quid gererētur quaesivērunt, et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse; cum tamen cēterī quaesivissent quis eī vulnus intulisset, respondit ille Nēmīnem id fēcisse. Quibus rēbus auditis, ūnus ē Cyclōpibus dixit: “Sī nēmō tē vulnerāvit, appāret cōsiliō deōrum, quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hōc suppliciō tē afficī.” His rēbus dictis discessērunt Cyclōpēs, cum in insāniam incidisse arbitrātī.

The Escape.

495. Polyphēmus, ubi sociōs suōs discessisse sēsit, furōre atque āmentīā impulsus Ulixem iterum quacere coepit. Tandem cum portam invēnisset, saxum remōvit, ut pecus ad agrōs exīret. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit et ut* quaeque ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum ējus manibus trāctābat, nē virī inter ovēs effugere possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, hōc iniit cōsiliū; intel-

*Translate **ut** here by *as*; although the clause refers, not to manner, but to time (616. *b*). The pluperfect following should be translated by the English simple past. (Compare 612.)

lēxit enim omnem spem salūtis in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōnī. Prīmum trēs pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit; quās cum inter sē* cōnexuisset, ūnum sociōrum ventribus† eārum ita subjēcit, ut omnīnō latēret. Deinde ovēs, hominem sēcum ferentēs, ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore‡ suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergīs† eārum imposuit, ovēs exire passus est. Eōdem modō Ulixēs omnēs sociōs ēmisit; ipse ultimus ēvāsīt.

496. Hīs rēbus ita cōfectīs, Ulixēs māgnopere veritus nēs Polyphēmus dolum sentīret, celeriter cum sociīs ad litus contendit; quō cum vēnissent, ab eis, quī nāvī praesidiō relīctī erant, māgnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Tum Ulixēs nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus sī in eō locō manēret, quam celerrimē proficīscī cōstituit. Jussit igitur omnēs in nāvem cōscendere et ancorīs sublātīs paulum ā litore in altum prōvectus est. Tum māgnā vōce clāmāvit, “Tū, Polyphēme, quī jūra hospitīi spernis, jūstam et dēbitam poenam solvistī.” Hāc vōce audītā, Polyphēmus irā incēnsus ad mare sē contulit et ubi intellēxit nāvem paulum ā litore remōtam esse, saxum ingēns manū corripuit atque in eam partem conjēcīt, unde vōcem venīre sēnsit. Graecī autem, nūllō acceptō incommodō, cursum tenuērunt.

The Island of Circe, the Enchantress.

497. Brevī intermissō spatiō, Graecī īnsulae cuidam appropinquāvērunt quam Circē, filia Sōlis, incolēbat.

* Translate by *to one another*, literally *among themselves*.

† The dative, having the force of *with reference to*, is often used with compound verbs, where it is freely translated by the preposition suggested by the prefix, here *under (sub)*, and *on (in)*.

‡ Literally *would be*, freely *would occur*.

§ See 489. fn., t.

Eō cum pervēnissent, Ulixēs frūmentandī causā nāvi ēgredi cōstituit ; cōgnōverat enim frūmentum quod in nāvi habērent jam dēficere. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātis, quō in locō rēs esset* et quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Cum tamen omnēs memoriam retinērent crūdēlis mortis eōrum quī nūper in terram Cyclōpum ēgressi erant, nēmō repertus est quī hōc negōtium suscipere vellet.† Tandem rēs ad sortem revocātur, atque Eurylochus cum duōbus et vīginti sociīs in interiōrem partem insulae proficiscitur. Vix poterant ei quī in nāvi relictī erant lacrimās tenēre ; crēdebant enim sē sociōs suōs numquam iterum visūrōs.

498. Illi intereā aliquantum prōgressi ad villam quandam pervēnērunt, summā māgnificentīā aedificātam ; cūjus ad jānuam cum adiissent, ipsa Circē exiit et summā cum benīgnitāte omnēs invitāvit ut introīrent. Eurylochus autem, insidiās suspicātus, foris exspectāre cōstituit ; reliquī rei novitāte adducti intrāvērunt, atque convīvium māgnificum invēnērunt omnibus rēbus instrūctum. Sed Circē vīnum medicāmētō quōdam miscuerat ; quod cum illi bibissent, gravī sopōre omnēs statim oppressi sunt. Tum Circē baculō aureō quod gerēbat capita eōrum tetigit ; quō factō‡, omnēs in porcōs subitō conversi sunt. Intereā Eurylochus ignārus quid agerētur ad§ jānuam sedēbat ; postquam tamen ad sōlis occāsum frustrā exspectāvit, ad nāvem sōlus reverti cōstituit.

* Translate freely by *how matters stood*.

† Translate **qui vellet** by *who was willing or to be willing*. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to characterize the antecedent as belonging to a class.

‡ Translate by *whereupon*, more literally *this having been done*.

§ Translate here by *at*.

Ulysses Comes to the Rescue.

499. Ulixēs cum intellēxisset sociōs suōs in perīculō esse, gladiō correptō, Eurylochō imperāvit, ut sine morā viam ad illam domum mōnstrāret. Ille tamen multis cum lacrimis Ulixem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē tantum perīculum susciperet. Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēminem invītum sēcum adductūrum; eī licēre, sī mallet, in nāvī manēre; sē ipsum sine ūllō auxiliō rem susceptūrum. Hōc cum māgnā vōce dīxisset, ē nāvī dēsilit.

Aliquantum prōgressus subitō cōspexit adulēscentem fōrmā pulcherrimā, aureum baculum manū gerentem. Hīc rogat: "Quō proficīsceris? Nōne scīs hanc esse Circēs domum? Hīc inclūsī sunt amīcī tuī, ex hūmānā speciē in porcōs conversī. Num vīs ipse idem malum patī?" Ulixēs simul ac vōcem audivit adulēscentem esse deum Mercurium sēnsit; nūllō tamen modō ab cōsiliō dēterrērī potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam quandam eī dedit, quam contrā carmina plūrimum valēre dīcēbat. "Hanc cape," inquit, "et ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit, dēstrictō gladiō, impetum in eam fac."

The Enchantress Foiled.

500. Brevī intermissō spatiō, Ulixēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātus ad villam pervēnit atque ab ipsā Circē benīgnē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō quō antea facta sunt. Mox, ubi famēs cibō dēpulsa est, Circē pōculum aureum vinō replētum Ulixī dedit. Ille, etsi suspicātus est venēnum sibi parātum esse, pōculum exhaustit. Quō factō, Circē, postquam caput ējus baculō tetigit, ea verba locūta est quibus sociōs ējus antea in porcōs converterat. Rēs tamen omnīnō aliter ēvēnit atque illa spērāverat. Tanta enim vīs erat ējus herbae

quam dederat Mercurius, ut neque venēnum neque verba quidquam efficere possent. Deinde Ulixēs, sicut jusserat Mercurius, gladiō dēstrictō, impetum in eam fēcit et mortem minitābātur. Tum Circē, cum sēsisset artem suam nihil valēre, multis cum lacrimis eum obsecrāre coepit, nē interficeret.

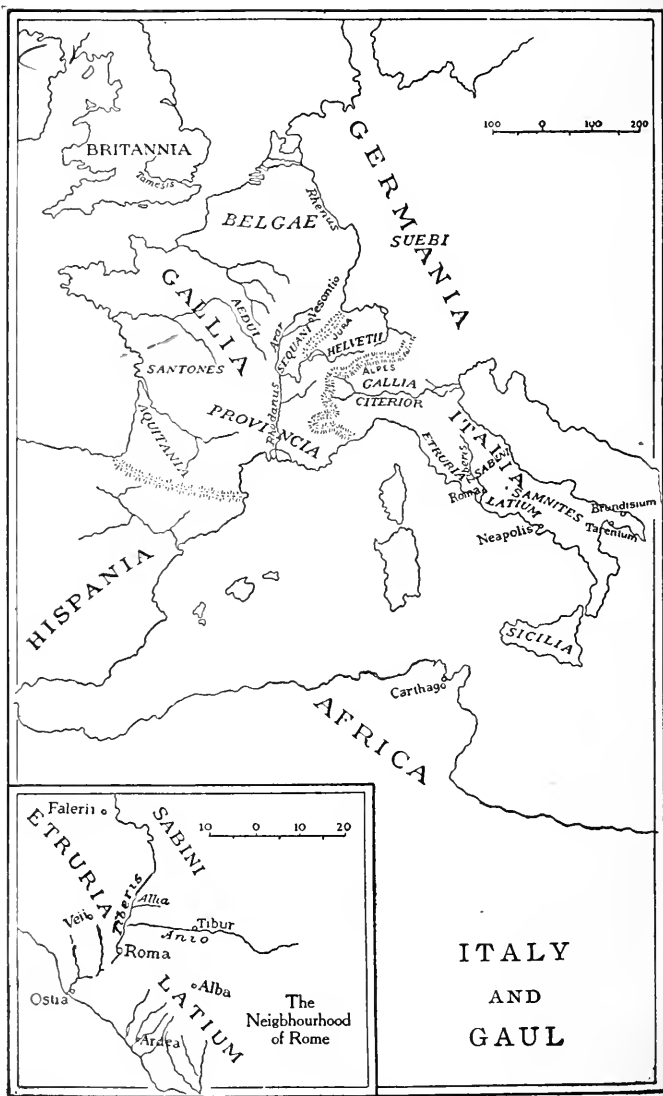
Ulixēs autem ubi sēsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit ut sociōs sine morā in hūmānam speciem redūceret; si minus*, ostendit sē statim eam necātūrum. His rēbus Circē vehementer commōta ad pedēs ējus sē prōjēcit et multis cum lacrimis pollicita est sē, quae ille imperāvisset, omnia factūram. Ita sociis receptis Ulixēs nūntium ad nāvem misit, quī reliquis Graecis quae facta essent nūntiāret.

Atque multa alia pericula Ulixēs subiit; sed tandem in patriam suam ipse pervēnit incolumis, omnibus sociis āmissis, atque ibi uxōrem Pēnelopēn vivam et salvam repperit, atque cupidē reditum suum expectantem.

* Translate **si minus** by *otherwise* or *if not*.



Coin of Antoninus Pius.



RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

INTRODUCTORY.

ORDER OF WORDS.

501. Because of its wealth of inflections, Latin admits much greater freedom of order than English does, without a corresponding loss of clearness. The order of words in Latin is not, however, purely haphazard ; although no invariable rules of order exist, there are certain arrangements which are normal or usual, and which should be varied only for some definite purpose, such as to secure emphasis or to promote euphony.

502. In the normal arrangement of a simple sentence, the subject, followed by its attributes, comes first ; the verb comes last, preceded by its modifiers or objects ; as, *All these differ from one another in language* : **Hī omnēs linguā inter sē differunt.**

This order is often changed, especially in the case of :

(a) EMPHASIS.—This is often secured by putting words other than the subject at the beginning of a sentence, or words other than the verb at the end ; as, *(It was) by one man's sagacity (that) Greece was freed* : **Ūnūs virī prūdentiā Graecia liberāta est.** *Other route they had none* : **Aliud iter habēbant nūllum.**

(b) CONNECTION OF SENTENCES.—At the beginning of a sentence are regularly placed words or phrases which refer to the previous sentence or some part of it, and which thus serve as a connecting link, leading from the known to the unknown ; as, *The same day envoys came to Caesar* : **Eōdem diē lēgātī ad Caesarem vērunt.**

503. (a) The modifiers of a noun.—Cardinal numerals, adjectives denoting size and weight (e.g. *māgnus*), and pronominal adjectives (except possessives) commonly precede; other modifiers commonly follow.

Where a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive (not partitive), the preferred order is adjective, genitive, noun.

(b) **Pronouns.**—Relative and interrogative pronouns are regularly the first words in their clause, preceding even a conjunction, or (if used adjectively) a preposition; as, *When Cuesar was informed of these things: Quibus dē rēbus cum Caesar certior factus esset.*

(c) **Adverbs** commonly precede the words they modify. But *quoque* and *quidem* always, and *ferē* generally, follow.

(d) **Prepositions** precede the words they govern, with the exception of *cum*, which is regularly suffixed to the ablative of the personal, reflexive, relative, and interrogative pronouns.

(e) **Negatives** are regularly placed before the word modified. When the negative belongs to the whole sentence, it is placed either before the verb, or more often at the beginning of the sentence.* *Nē . . . quidem* enclose the word or words modified.

(f) **Verbs.**—The Copula or link verb *esse* is seldom placed at the end of its clause. A dependent infinitive, as a rule, precedes the verb on which it depends.

(g) **Conjunctions** are regularly the first words in their own clauses, but they are preceded by a relative pronoun, and sometimes by other emphatic or connecting words.

For the enclitics *-que*, *-ne* (interrogative), *-ve*, see page 218. fn.

ORDER OF CLAUSES.

504. (a) Noun and Adjective clauses, as a rule, have the position a noun or an adjective of similar value would have. But a relative clause frequently, when emphatic, precedes a general antecedent, such as *is* or *hic*.

Indirect questions generally follow the verb on which they depend, as also does the accusative and infinitive construction when of any length.

(b) **Adverbial clauses**, if preparatory to their main clause, or expressing some attending circumstance, either precede the main clause, or are inserted in it. Such are the temporal, conditional, causal, and concessive clauses.

* Latin prefers **neque** at the beginning of a sentence to **et** or **sed** followed by a negative. (See 659. i.)

But adverbial clauses that are explanatory of, or complementary to, their main clause regularly follow. Such are the consecutive clauses, and causal sentences where the emphasis lies on the reason advanced.

Purpose clauses more frequently follow than precede, the general principle being to place last the clause on which the emphasis falls.

(c) **Participial clauses** generally precede, or are inserted in, the main clause, and very seldom follow it as in English.

505. In narrative prose the *order of time* is almost invariably observed in the arrangement of the various clauses of a sentence; as, *The Germans threw away their arms when they saw that their comrades were being slain, and rushed out of the camp: Germānī cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abjectīs sē ex castrīs ējēcērunt.*

506. Where modern English narrative is apt to consist of a series of detached sentences, comparatively short and simple in structure, classical Latin narrative is more apt to group several of these sentences into a longer and more complex sentence, with the verb expressing the main idea (or the final outcome) as the principal verb, and the others in various subordinate relations. Such a sentence is known as a *Period*.

In the periodic structure (and this is true of the Latin short sentence also as a rule), the main thought is not complete until the final words are given, and the period, although apparently involved, is really arranged in a strictly logical way, and is intended to be grasped as a whole. In the English long sentence (as often in the short sentence also) we seldom find the main thought left in suspense until the very end of the sentence, and the thought is intended rather to be grasped in detail.

Contrast the Latin with the English in the following:

Our men then marched back to camp. Not a man had been killed and very few wounded. Yet they had expected a formidable campaign, for the enemy numbered four hundred thousand men: Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucis vulnerātis, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. See also the example in 505.

CONCORDS.

The following are the general rules of agreement:

507. **APPPOSITIVES.**—A word placed in apposition with another agrees with it in case* (54. d).

* A possessive genitive may be in apposition with the genitive implied in another word, such as a possessive pronoun. (See 655. iii.)

508. ATTRIBUTIVE WORDS.—An adjective (including the numerals), a pronoun, or a participle, agrees in gender, number, and case with the word to which it belongs (64).

i. The attribute, if it belongs to more than one word, regularly agrees with the nearest.

509. THE PREDICATE.*—(a) The *verb* agrees with its subject in number and person.

(b) A *predicate adjective* (or a participle in the compound tenses of the verb) agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

(c) A *predicate noun* agrees with its subject in case (146).

i. Where there are more than one subject, the verb and the predicate adjective may be plural, or may be singular, agreeing with the nearest subject, and being understood with the others.

ii. The verb may also be singular when two singular subjects form but one notion; as, *A loud din and shouting arose: Clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur.* (So 'The tumult and the shouting dies.') So regularly with *senātus populusque Rōmānus.*

iii. Where the subjects are of different persons and the plural is used, the first person takes precedence, then the second; as, *Cicero and I are well: Ego et Cicerō valēmus.*

510. PRONOUN AND ANTECEDENT.*—A relative or a demonstrative pronoun agrees in gender, number, and person with the word (termed the antecedent) to which in sense it refers.

i. But if the pronoun is the subject of a verb with a predicate noun, it will agree with the predicate noun rather than with the antecedent.

* The number or the gender of predicates and relative pronouns is often determined by the meaning, not the form, of the words to which they refer. Examples of this construction according to sense (*Synesis*) are: *A great throng was hurling weapons: Magna multitūdō tēta conieciēbant.* He sends forward the cavalry to see: *Equitātum praemittit, quī videant.* Six thousand men left the camp at nightfall: *Homīnum mīlia sex primā nocte ē castrīs ēgressī sunt.*

I. THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

511. (a) For the use of the infinitive with a subject accusative, after verbs meaning *to say, think, believe, know, perceive, feel*, and the like,* where English usually has a noun clause introduced by *that*, see 320.

(b) For the rules for the use of the tenses of the infinitive (present, perfect, and future), see 327.

(c) For the use of *mē, nōs*, for *I, we*; *tē, vōs*, for *you*; and either *sē* (or *sēsē*) or the accusative of *is* for *he, she, they*† as subjects of the infinitive, see 323.

i. Instead of *is*, *ille* may be used for greater emphasis.

(d) For the agreement of the compound forms of the infinitive with the subject accusative in gender, number, and case, see 322. *a*, and 332. *a*.

512. For the use of the subject accusative with the *future* infinitive after verbs signifying *to hope, promise, threaten*, and the like, where English generally has the simple infinitive (instead of a noun clause introduced by *that*), see 328.

513. For a list of common verbs which take the accusative and infinitive, see 324, 329, 336.

514. i. In English *that* is often omitted; as, *He says he will go*.

ii. Not only verbs, but also phrases, *sentienti et dēclāranti* occur; as, *certiōrem faciō, memoriā teneō, fāma est, spem habeō*.

iii. *Esse* is often omitted in the compound or periphrastic forms of the infinitive.

iv. Verbs of *pretending* are regularly followed by the accusative and infinitive, not, as often in English, by the simple infinitive; as, *They pretend to return home: Domum reverti sē simulant*.

v. Instead of *dīcō* followed by a negative, Latin prefers *negō*; as, *He says he can grant this to no one: Negat sē posse hōc ūllī dare* (literally, *he denies that he can grant this to anyone*).

* Such words are termed *verba sentiendi et dēclāranti*.

† This distinction applies to all uses of the words *him, them*, etc.; so also for *his* and *their*, *suus* or *ejus* and *eōrum*, respectively, are used.

vi. Verbs of *saying* and *thinking* (except *inquam* and *crēdō*) are not used parenthetically in Latin as in English; as, *You are, I maintain, mistaken*: **Errāre vōs dicō.** *Kent, we have already said, is on the sea*: **Cantium esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus.**

vii. The personal construction is preferred in Latin with *videor*, and the present, imperfect, and future of passive verbs of *saying* and *thinking*; as, *It was said that the Germans had been invited*: **Germānī arcessitī esse dicēbantur**, not **Germānōs arcessitōs esse dicēbātur**.^{*} In the perfect (or compound) tenses the impersonal construction is preferred.

viii. *Would have* is expressed by the future participle with *fuisse*; as, *He answered that he would have come*: **Respondit sēsē ventūrum fuisse.**

ix. Instead of the future infinitive after *spērō*, *posse* with the present infinitive is common, and Caesar twice has the complementary (present) infinitive with *polliceor* (a usage not to be imitated by the beginner).

x. A pronominal subject accusative is not infrequently omitted when easily understood from the context; but this should not be imitated by the beginner in Latin.

515.

EXERCISE 1.

A.—1. Caesar wrote that he had come and seen and conquered (*vincō*). 2. We believe that he will come and see and conquer. 3. We saw that the nights were shorter in Britain than on the continent. 4. The enemy were said to be sending envoys to Caesar and promising to give hostages. 5. They reported to Caesar that the hill was held by our soldiers. 6. Caesar replied that everything had been attended to. 7. The general hears that the enemy have advanced farther and are hurling missiles at the soldiers. 8. The enemy, he perceived, had been hurling missiles at our men. 9. He learned through scouts that the legions were not far distant and had encamped across the river. 10. It is said that you hope to set out for Gaul at once. 11. He said they were advancing; they said they would not advance. 12. He suspected that the allies had not been crushed, but were gathering larger forces and would renew the battle. (*See also 326, 331, 338.*)

^{*}With the personal construction there is no subject accusative, and the compound forms of the infinitive (or predicate nouns and adjectives) will agree in case with the subject of the verb of *saying*, etc.

B.—1. He writes that almost all the tribes have these customs. 2. He had found out that the traders themselves did not visit this harbour. 3. He thought they had set out. 4. I hoped to set out for Britain. 5. They answered that the summers were early in all these islands. 6. They promised not to furnish ships to Caesar. 7. We ascertained that auxiliaries were being furnished to these tribes. 8. He denied having summoned anyone; you said you would not approach the island. 9. They bring back word that the larger harbour is not suitable. 10. He pointed out that a large part of the winter was left. 11. We hope to become acquainted with the country. 12. We had heard that our enemies had great experience (had had great experience). 13. They believe that this is unknown to almost all. 14. He says that the character of the inhabitants has not been ascertained. 15. A large number of auxiliaries, I was informed, had been summoned and war was being waged. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 20.*)

II. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE. ✓

516. The present infinitive (active or passive) is often used like the infinitive with *to* in English, to complete the meaning of certain verbs, whose reference would otherwise be incomplete. These verbs are often called *modal* verbs, and the infinitive when so used is termed the *complementary* infinitive.

517. With modal verbs the present infinitive is used (*a*) without a subject expressed, to denote another action or condition of the *same* subject, and (*b*) with a subject accusative, to denote the action or condition of a *different* subject. For examples see 123.

i. A predicate noun or adjective with the complementary infinitive will, in the former case, agree with the subject of the modal verb, in the latter, with the subject of the infinitive; as, *We can be useful friends: Possumus utilis esse amici. He had ordered the state to be free: Civitatem esse liberam jusserrat.*

518. i. *Prohibeō* takes the complementary infinitive where English uses *from* and the gerund in *-ing*; as, *They prevent the Germans from crossing: Germānōs trānsire prchibent.*

ii. Where the complementary infinitive is passive, *coeptus sum* is used in place of *coepti*, with the same force; as, *The bridge began to be built*: *Pōns institui coeptus est*.

iii. With *jubeō* the subject accusative is sometimes omitted, when obvious from the context; as, *He gives orders to fortify a camp*: *Castra munire jubet*.

iv. *Volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō* often take the accusative and infinitive even when the subject is the same, chiefly with *esse* or a passive infinitive; as, *They did not wish to be put to death*: *Sēsē interficī nōlēbant*.

v. Many of the verbs of *will* and *desire* are followed by *ut* and the subjunctive; so regularly the verbs of *ordering*, except *jubeō*. *Imperō*, however, may be used with the passive infinitive; as, *He orders him to be brought back*: *Eum retrahī imperat*. (See 522. c.)

vi. This construction is more restricted in Latin than in English. (See especially 521 and 522.) But in poetry Latin more nearly approaches English usage, the complementary infinitive being used not only with verbs and phrases which in prose do not ordinarily admit it, but also with nouns and adjectives. The poets also use the infinitive freely to express purpose.

519. VERBS WITH THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

Able, be, can, possum.

Accustomed, be, (be wont),

cōsuēvī, soleō.

Allow, patior, sinō.

Attempt, cōnor.

Begin, incipiō, instituō.

Began, coepī, coeptus sum.

Cease, dēsīnō, dēsistō.

Compel, cōgō.

Dare, audeō.

Decide, determine, cōstituō,

dēcernō, statuō.

Desire, cupiō.

Forbid, vetō.

Hasten, contendō, mātūrō,

properō.

Hesitate, dubitō.

Order, jubeō.

Ought, dēbeō.

Permit, patior, sinō.

Prefer, mālō.

Prepare, parō.

Prevent, prohibeō.

Resolve, cōstituō, dēcernō,
statuō.

Strive, contendō, nītor.

Try, cōnor.

Unwilling, be, nōlō.

Venture, audeō.

Willing, be, volō.

Wish, volō.

spero.
Pollucen { do not take complementary inf.
takes future inf. with subj.

520.

EXERCISE 2.

apla A.—1. The troops began to storm the town. 2. We are accustomed to receive, not give, hostages. 3. Missiles had begun to be hurled from all sides at the rampart. 4. The Gauls will not permit the Belgians to be crushed. 5. The enemy were unwilling to depart. 6. The enemy's cavalry had prevented fires from being made. 7. They will not attempt to cross the rivers. 8. The Germans did not hesitate to adopt this plan. 9. The soldiers were ordered to return to the camp. —10. The allies compelled the enemy to seek peace. 11. He seems to have determined to pass the winter there. 12. They thought the Britons would not dare to make war. 13. Caesar informed the envoys that he was unable to set out. 14. The soldiers were compelled to promise to leap down. 15. We wish him to be a soldier, but he prefers to be a sailor. 16. They will hasten to seek safety by flight. 17. I hope (I desire) to obtain a supply of grain. 18. He is said to have forbidden his son to go. 19. They cease to flee.

B.—1. He ordered a war-ship to be sent in advance. 2. They themselves hasten to set out. 3. He will attempt to conquer the barbarians. 4. We seem to be unable to return. 5. He had wished to be made king. 6. They do not wish that design to be reported to Caesar. 7. Caesar began to make liberal promises. 8. He promised to try to disembark; we promised to disembark. 9. Volusenus was ordered to visit the states and find out everything. 10. He tried (we hope) to ascertain these things. 11. He orders a fleet to be built and hostages to be given. 12. They could not be compelled to return to him. 13. Several were unwilling to allow the envoys to be heard. 14. He had not ventured to examine the neighbouring districts. 15. Commius resolved to embrace the alliance of the Roman people and to be faithful to Caesar. 16. The troops can quickly assemble from every quarter. 17. He promised to prevent the Britons from learning these plans. 18. He hesitates to make the attempt. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 21.*)

promise - polliceri
obtain - mactare
... iad iustum

III. FINAL CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF PURPOSE).

521. In English the purpose or end of an action may be expressed not only by a clause introduced by *that* (followed by *may* or *might*) or *lest*, but also by the infinitive with *to* or *in order to*. But in Latin prose the infinitive should never be used to express purpose.

522. (a) ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. For the use of the subjunctive with **ut** (or **utī**), or in negative clauses **nē**, to express purpose, see 386.

(b) RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. For the use of the subjunctive in a relative clause after certain verbs, especially those of *sending* and *appointing*, see 388.*

(c) SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. For the use of the subjunctive with **ut** or **nē**, after verbs meaning *to urge*, *ask*, *command*, *advise*, and *strive* (verbs of *will* and *aim*), where English regularly has the infinitive with *to*, see 424.

523. VERBS WITH A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE.

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Advise, warn, moneō, ad-</i>
<i>moneō.</i> | <i>Encourage, exhort, urge,</i>
<i>hortor, adhortor, cohortor.</i> |
| <i>Ask, request, require, petō,</i>
<i>rogō.</i> | <i>Incite, instigate, impellō.</i> |
| <i>Beg, beseech, ōrō, obsecrō.</i> | <i>Instruct, praecipio.</i> |
| <i>Command, order, imperō,</i>
<i>mandō.</i> | <i>Permit, concēdō, permittō.</i> |
| <i>Commission, mandō.</i> | <i>Persuade, suādeō, persuādeō.</i> |
| <i>Determine, resolve, cōstit-</i>
<i>uō, dēcernō, statuō.</i> | <i>Prevail on, impetrō.</i> |
| | <i>Strive, contendō, nitor; so</i>
<i>id agō, operam dō.</i> |

i. *Jubeō*, *patior*, and *cōnor* are important exceptions to this rule (519). Also verbs of *striving* and *resolving*, when the subject of both verbs is the same, usually as in English have the infinitive.

* Purpose clauses may be introduced also by relative adverbs, such as **ubi**, **unde**, **quō**.

524. For the rules for the sequence of tenses in clauses of purpose (present subjunctive after primary tenses, imperfect after secondary tenses), see 386. c, and 387.*

i. After the historical present either primary or secondary sequence may be used. (424. fn.)

525. (a) In clauses of purpose containing a negative, nē should be used instead of ut. Accordingly, wherever *not*, *no one*, *nothing*, *no* (adjectival), and *never* occur, use nē, nē quis, nē quid, nē quī (or quis), and nē umquam respectively, as, *He ordered the gates to be closed that we might receive no hurt*: *Portās claudī jussit nē quam injūriam acciperēmus. He asked him to bring none across*: *Rogāvit nē quōs trādūceret.*

(b) When the clause of purpose contains a comparative, quō is commonly used in place of ut; as, *They ask for reinforcements, that they may the more easily withstand the enemy*: *Subsidium rogant, quō facilius hostēs sustinēre possint.*

526. i. A second final clause, if negative, is connected by nēve (or neu), not by neque.

ii. Certain verbs may be used both in the construction given in 522 (c) and as *verba dēclārāndī* with the accusative and infinitive: as, *He writes to Labienus to build the vessels*: *Labiēnō scribit ut nāvēs instituat. He writes that he has set out*: *Scribit sē profectum esse. So also moneō, persuādeō, and statuō.*

iii. With verbs of *asking* and *commanding*, the subjunctive sometimes occurs without ut.

iv. In poetry, verbs of *urging* and *asking* are found with the present infinitive (complementary). (See 518. vi.)

v. Sometimes ut nē is found for nē, but not in Caesar.

vi. Other modes of expressing purpose exist in Latin, the most important being by means of the gerund and gerundive. (See 451.)

vii. For verbs of *causing*, see 529. iii.

* The perfect indicative, when translated by *have*, may take primary sequence, but as a rule it is followed by the imperfect subjunctive.

527. *season* - EXERCISE 3. *tempus anni*

A.—1. They took up arms in order to obtain plunder. 2. The Gauls had sent envoys to Caesar to ask for peace and to beg him not to storm their town. 3. Caesar exhorted the soldiers to fight vigorously, lest the enemy should attempt to cross the river. 4. That no one may be able to cross the river, they will order the bridge to be burnt. 5. The Gauls sent a messenger to inform their allies that the Romans had built a bridge over the river in order to pursue the enemy more easily. 6. He warned the soldiers that the Gauls were at hand; he warned us not to leave the camp. 7. In order that the soldiers might fight more bravely, he replied that Caesar was present. 8. They begged not to be driven out; they preferred not to be driven out. 9. He chose leaders to command the auxiliaries; he commanded the officers to choose suitable men. 10. Envoys are being (had been) sent to advise the allies not to lay down their arms. 11. He persuaded the soldiers that Caesar would return; he persuaded the soldiers to announce that Caesar had returned. (*See also 391, 428.*)

B.—1. He urged Caesar not to demand hostages. 2. On account of the season, he advises Caesar to do nothing. 3. In order that he may reach Britain, he orders (jubeō) ships of war to be collected. 4. He leaves a garrison to hold the harbours. 5. Lest he should be detained by the wind, he did not delay in these parts. 6. Envoys come to ask Caesar not to make war on the Menapii. 7. He promised to receive them under his protection. 8. They warn Caesar to leave no enemy behind him; they warn Caesar that an enemy is being left behind. 9. To excuse themselves, they point out that they are inexperienced. 10. He gives orders to the Morini to bring the hostages to Britain. 11. He advised Cotta to procure ships. 12. In order to carry over a larger number of foot-soldiers, he determined to leave the cavalry in the harbour. 13. That this may not happen, he allots eighty ships to the two legions. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 22.*)

IV. CONSECUTIVE OR RESULT CLAUSES. ~~CLAUSES OF~~
~~CHARACTERISTIC~~

528. (a) ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF RESULT.—Dependent clauses expressing result are in English introduced by *that* or *as to*, following *so* or *such*. In Latin result or consequence is expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* (or *uti*), or in negative clauses *ut nōn*; as, *I am not so uncivilized as not to know this*: *Nōn tam barbarus sum ut nōn haec sciam*.

(b) SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT.—After certain verbs, chiefly those of *happening* and *resulting*, clauses introduced by *that* are rendered by Latin consecutive clauses with *ut* or *ut nōn* and the subjunctive; as, *It happened that there was a full moon*: *Accidit ut esset lūna plēna*.

(c) The tenses of the Latin verb in clauses of result as a rule correspond with the English tenses; the English past (indefinite) tense is, however, generally expressed by the Latin imperfect subjunctive. For examples see 371.

529. i. As *that not* in clauses of result is *ut nōn*, so where *no one*, *nothing*, *no* (adjectival), and *never* occur, use *ut nēmō*, *ut nihil*, *ut nūllus*, *ut numquam*; as, *He put the enemy so speedily to flight that no one held his ground*: *Tam celeriter hostēs in fugam dedit ut nēmō resisteret*.

ii. Sometimes the perfect subjunctive is found corresponding to the English past (indefinite) tense. In such cases, as a rule, the actual occurrence is dwelt on rather than the relation of cause and effect; as, *Our men captured the vessels, so that very few reached land*: *Nostri nāvēs expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ad terram pervēnerint*.

iii. Verbs of *causing* are followed sometimes by a substantive clause of purpose, sometimes by one of result. Hence the negative is sometimes *nē*, sometimes *ut nōn*.

iv. The consecutive subjunctive after *fore* (or *futūrum esse*) serves as a substitute for the future infinitive passive, and sometimes also, (especially with verbs that lack the supine stem) for the future infinitive active; as, *He said that the sympathies of all Gaul would be turned aside*: *Dixit futūrum esse ut tōtius Galliae animi āverterentur.*

v. *Ita* (or *sic*) with *ut* and the consecutive subjunctive may express restriction or limitation.

530. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.—In these clauses, which are introduced by the relative pronoun or relative adverbs (*quō, ubi, unde*), the antecedent is referred to as belonging (or not belonging) to a class characterized by a certain quality. These relative clauses regularly have the subjunctive, generally akin to the subjunctive of result,* but sometimes, as in the last example, to the potential subjunctive (627); as, *Nor is there anyone who asserts this*: *Neque est quisquam quī haec dīcat.* *But I am not the man to be frightened by danger*: *Neque is sum quī periculō terrear.* *There were two roads by which they could leave home*: *Erant itinera duo quibus domō exīre possent.* *Nor had they any place to which they could retreat*: *Neque quō sē reciperent habēbant.*†

i. This subjunctive of characteristic is especially common after such general phrases of existence as *sunt quī* (*there are some who*), *nēmō est quī, neque est quisquam quī, nūus est quī, sōlus est quī, quis est quī? nōn is est quī*; also after *dignus* (*worthy*), *indignus*, and *idōneus*; as, *He will not be a fit person to be sent*: *Nōn erit idōneus quī mittātur.*

ii. *Quīn* for *quī nōn* often occurs in these clauses of characteristic after negative phrases; as, *No one is so brave as not to be disturbed*: *Nēmō est tam fortis quīn perturbētur.* *There was not a man but hesitated*: *Nēmō erat militum quīn dubitāret.*

iii. The relative clause of characteristic has sometimes a restrictive force; as, *So far as I know*: *Quod sciam.*

* In such cases the relative may often be replaced by the phrase *such as* or *such that*.

† By some *reciperent* is regarded as the subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose (522, b).

531.

EXERCISE 4.

A.—1. So great a panic seized our soldiers that we did not dare to carry out these plans. 2. It happened that no ship reached the harbour. 3. We are not so inexperienced as to believe that the Roman people can be conquered by our forces. 4. There is no one but knows that the Helvetians are marching through our province. 5. Such was the valour of the soldiers that no one withdrew. 6. Such is our supremacy that we are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages. 7. Nor was anyone found who despaired of victory. 8. Such losses had been suffered that many advised us to flee. 9. So great is the scarcity of vessels that we cannot cross. 10. He had considered the brothers suitable persons to send to the king. 11. He crossed the river with such a large number of cavalry that the Germans were terrified. 12. The messengers answered that the bridge had been so bravely defended by the enemy that no part of the army had been able to cross. 13. Such storms arose as prevented the sailors from disembarking. (See also 374.)

B.—1. So suitable was the place that he ordered the soldiers to disembark. 2. So great are the forces of the enemy that nothing can be done. 3. It happened that he did not meet with favourable weather. 4. The foremost vessels were not so swift as to be able to reach Britain the third hour of the day. 5. So quickly (celeriter) do all embark that in the second watch he gives the signal and orders the anchors weighed. 6. It happens that the shore is clear and the tide favourable. 7. He pointed out (it happened) that a weapon could be thrown from the shore into the ship. 8. He gave orders (imperō) that no one should follow him. 9. So slowly is everything done that no one is able to set sail. 10. He warns them that the movement of naval warfare is so rapid that nothing is more uncertain. 11. There is no one who does not think the harbour suitable. 12. Who is there to whom he has not pointed this out? 13. It happened that we were advancing from the farther harbour to higher ground. (Caesar, B. G. IV. 23.)

V. QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

532. DIRECT QUESTIONS.—(a) For a principal clause introduced by an interrogative pronoun, pronominal adjective, or adverb, see 340.

(b) For a principal clause introduced by one of the interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōne*, or *num*, see 342.

-Ne, an enclitic, is impartial*; *nōne* asks for confirmation of belief; *num* for confirmation of disbelief.†

533. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—For a subordinate clause introduced by any of these interrogative words or particles, see 362. The verb is always in the subjunctive.

In English we do not usually think of the clause as a dependent question unless the principal verb is itself of an interrogative nature, and it is not always easy, though in Latin highly important, to distinguish a dependent interrogative clause from a dependent relative clause with the antecedent omitted (the latter having in Latin normally the indicative).

For instance, in *He could not prevent what had been done*, and *I can go where they can go*, the dependent clauses are to be taken as relative; in *He could not tell what had been done*, and *I can find out where they can go*, as interrogative. Usually, after verbs meaning to learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see, or decide, clauses beginning with *who, what, where, when, how, why*, etc., are interrogative. See also 362. d.

i. *Whether* in a single dependent clause is translated by *-ne* (enclitic) or more frequently by *num*; for in indirect questions *num* loses its negative force and may even represent *whether not* (*nōne* being avoided in indirect questions except after *quaerō*).

ii. For the translation of *to see whether* by *sī*, see 672.

* *-Ne* is sometimes omitted, especially in impassioned appeals.

† For the usual way of expressing *yes* or *no* in answers, see page 218. fn.

534. The principle of sequence of tenses (387) is observed in Latin in indirect questions; as a rule, however, the English tenses will be a sufficient guide.* The future is represented by the subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (347); as, *He learns what they will do*: *Cōgnōscit quid factūrī sint*. *He asked what they would do*: *Quaesivit quid factūrī essent*.

i. The historical present may take either primary or secondary sequence.

✓ 535. After verbs meaning to *ask, learn, find out*, etc., English abstract nouns such as *size, number, character, reason, time, place*, and many verbal nouns such as *opinion, intention*, are best rendered into Latin by dependent interrogative clauses; as, *You see the extent of the danger*: *Vidētis quantum sit perīculum*. *He reported his discoveries*: *Quae cōgnōvisset renūtiāvit*. *He discovered their intentions*: *Quae factūrī essent, cōgnōvit*.

536. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.—Where two questions are connected by *or*, involving an alternative choice, we have a *disjunctive, alternative* or *double* question as opposed to a *simple* question. The first alternative is in Latin regularly introduced by *utrum (whether)*† or *-ne*, the second by *an (or)*; as, *Is it your fault or ours?* *Utrum vestra an nostra culpa est?*

Such questions when dependent are of course in the subjunctive; as, *They were debating whether it was better to lead their forces against the enemy or to defend the camp*: *Dēliberābant cōpiāsne adversum hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere praestāret*.

i. *Or not*, in the direct disjunctive question, is *annōn*; in the indirect, *necne*.

ii. *Utrum* is often omitted in disjunctive questions, in which case *-ne* is sometimes used for *an* in indirect questions.

* The chief exceptions are:

(a) After a primary tense the perfect subjunctive takes the place of the imperfect; as, *I know what he was doing*: *Sciō quid fecerit*.

(b) After the perfect tense secondary tenses are used, even where we should expect primary tenses; as, *I have shown what resources you have*: *Quae subsidia habērēs, exposui*. (This last peculiarity is found sometimes also in clauses of result.)

† *Utrum* literally means *which of two things*, and in the corresponding English direct question is regularly unrepresented.

537.

EXERCISE 5.

whether - num.
whether - . n. - utrum --- and

A.—1. Who was leading the army? Where will he lead the infantry? Does he lead the cavalry? 2. He will point out what they wish to be done; they did what had been demanded. 3. He knew who had persuaded the soldiers to return. 4. He had sent horsemen in advance to see in what direction the enemy were marching. 5. Were you not aware that we had asked whether he would send reinforcements? 6. Of whom did you ask the date of our return? 7. He posted scouts in order to ascertain what was taking place in the enemy's camp. 8. Are you a Roman soldier? We advise you to explain your reason (*literally* why) for coming into these territories. 9. He could not find out what villages the Gauls inhabited or their size. 10. They wished to learn the position of the enemy's camp. 11. For what reason were they unwilling to surrender? 12. He explains the nature and extent of the losses we have suffered. 13. Surely you do not suspect that we are unfriendly? (*See also 345, 363, 367. Then suspicious*)

1-12.
Oct 18

B.—1. Why do you hesitate? Surely you are not going to retreat? Are you not willing to leap down? 2. With whom were they fighting? 3. Has the plan been discovered? 4. Are they not accustomed to use the same arms? 5. They had ascertained how great was the depth of the sea. 6. They fought where they had got footing; he is aware where our men will land. 7. He learns for what reasons we are unable to follow. 8. Who knows whether this will turn out more fortunately? 9. He asked whether they were terrified or inexperienced. 10. What keeps our men from leaping down into the waves? 11. He pointed out what was keeping our men from advancing. 12. What kind of ship has been sent in advance? 13. He is learning the character of the arms they use. 14. He pointed out how great a disgrace they were incurring (had incurred, would incur). 15. He was unable to ascertain the reason for the weapons being hurled. 16. He reported how boldly they had advanced. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 24, 25.*)

aware - intellego
land - navi legation -

VI. THE PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

538. The participle is a verbal adjective, being inflected, like the adjective, to agree with its substantive, and, like the verb, having distinctions of voice and tense, and retaining the case relations of the verb from which it is formed.

539. VOICE. The Present Participle has always active force (whether formed from active or deponent verbs). The Perfect Participle of active verbs has passive force; of deponent verbs, active force.

540. TENSE. The time of the participle is in Latin relative to that of its principal verb, the *Present Participle* denoting *the same time* as that of its verb; the *Perfect Participle*, *time prior* to that of its verb.

The present participle must not be used in Latin, as it often is in English, to denote some earlier time than that of its main verb. In such cases either the perfect participle or some equivalent should be used; as, *Returning to the harbour, he set sail: Ad portum reversus* (or *Cum ad portum rediisset*), *nāvem solvit.* (*Revertēns* or *rediēns* would have meant *while he was returning.*)*

541. THE APPOSITIVE OR CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLE.—The Latin participle, in appositive relation to its substantive, is used to define the circumstances of an action, expressing the relation of *time* or *cause* or (less frequently) of *condition* or *concession*.† For examples, see 261 and 273.

*The perfect participle of some deponent verbs appears often to have the force of the present; for instance, there is no appreciable difference between *arbitrātus* and *existmāns*. Other words so used are *veritus*, *susplicāsus*, *diffusus*, *usus*. In most cases the perfect is defensible as specifying the cause which leads to subsequent action.

†The participle occasionally has its force defined more exactly by the use of *nisi* (*except*), *ut* or *tamquam* (*as if*), *etsi* or *quamquam* (*although*), *utpote* (*inasmuch as*).

542. ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS FOR THE LATIN CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLE. As in translating from Latin it is often advisable to render the participle more freely into English, so conversely many English expressions other than the participle are often best rendered into Latin by the circumstantial participle.

i. Such equivalents for the *perfect* participle are:

(a) a dependent clause introduced by *when*, *after*, *as*, *because*, or (less frequently) *if*, *although* (or *though*).

(b) the prepositions *on*, *after*, with a verbal noun, especially the gerund in *-ing*.

(c) a co-ordinate sentence followed by *and* or *but*.

(d) a relative clause.

For example, **repulsī** could be used in translating any of the following :

When (after, as) they had been repulsed, they retreated.

On (after) being repulsed, they retreated.

After their repulse, they retreated.

They were repulsed and at once retreated.

Our men, who had been repulsed, at once retreated.

If repulsed (if they are repulsed), they will retreat.

Though (when) repulsed, they did not retreat.

ii. Such equivalents for the *present* participle are:

(a) a dependent clause introduced by *while*, *as*, *when*.

(b) *while* (*when*) and the participle in *-ing*.

(c) a relative clause.

For example, **rediēns** could be used in translating any of the following :

While (as, when) he was returning, he was captured.

While (when) returning, he was captured.

The consul, who was returning, was captured.

✓ 543. LATIN EQUIVALENTS FOR THE PARTICIPLES. As all the dependent clauses mentioned in 542 may be literally rendered into Latin, it follows that the Latin perfect participle may be replaced by a subordinate clause introduced by **cum**, **postquam**, **ubi**, **quod**, **sī**, **etsi**, etc., and the Latin present participle by a subordinate clause introduced by **dum**, **cum**, or **quī**.

These clauses will also supply the lack in Latin of a perfect participle active (where the verb is not a deponent), and of a present participle passive.

544. Other uses of the Participle are:

(a) As a *substantive*, chiefly in the oblique cases and in the plural; as, *The fugitives*: **Fugientēs**. *The wounded*: **Vulnerāti**.*

(b) As an *adjective*; as, **potēns**, *powerful*; **apertus**, *open*; **nōtus**, *well known*. For the comparison of such words, see 261. d.

(c) As a *predicative complement* of certain verbs, especially (i) the present participle with **videō**, **audiō**, **faciō**, and other verbs of *perceiving* or *representing*; as, *They saw some leaving the ship*: **Aliquōs ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōspexērunt**; and (ii) the perfect participle passive with **habēō**, very like the English perfect with *have* (683. c).

EXERCISE 6.

545. 24.
A.—1. The envoys, after being dismissed, returned to the king. 2. The cavalry, having been ordered to cross the river, put to flight the forces of the enemy drawn up on open ground. 3. They slew the ambassador, while he was making a speech. 4. Promising to return in a short time, he pursued the fugitives. 5. Setting out with fresh forces, he brought aid to our men, who were by this time in distress. 6. On their return to the harbour, they found all the ships ready and the camp fortified. 7. The cavalry surrounded the Gauls, who were by this time shattered and despairing. 8. Our men attacked the enemy and slew a great number.

*Note that *those fleeing*, *those wounded* is not expressed by **II** or **III** and the participle.

9. Suspecting that these tribes would take up arms, he had summoned the more powerful citizens. 10. He met our men returning. 11. Advancing with all the cavalry, he came in sight of our men as they were crossing the marshes. 12. After ^{couragefully} encouraging the cavalry, the tribunes returned to Caesar. 13. As he thought the ambassadors would not return, he ordered the camp to be fortified. (See also 265, 276.)

B.—1. Alarmed by all these things, he began to retreat. 2. We saw the enemy approaching and the soldiers hurling missiles. 3. He will attack our men when they are disembarking (after they have landed). 4. Thinking that our men would follow, he spurs on his horse. 5. Those who were hesitating he exhorts to follow him, and leaps down into the shoals. 6. Attacking the barbarians, who had been thrown into confusion, they put them to flight. 7. An attack was made on our men while they were hesitating. 8. They surrounded Caesar, who was fighting vigorously. 9. If the troops are driven off and dislodged, they will incur disgrace. 10. The ships, after being removed a short distance, were so hampered by the shoals that they could not keep their course. 11. As he leaps down he observes a soldier, well known to all, in difficulty. 12. The boats were filled with soldiers and stationed on the exposed flank. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 25, 26.*)

VII. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

546. In translating into Latin the participial phrases or their equivalents described in 542, cases occur where the circumstantial participle in agreement cannot be used:

(a) The participle required is a perfect participle with *active* force, which does not exist (except from deponents); as, *After receiving hostages, he made peace. Building a bridge, they crossed the river.*

bridge, they crossed the river.

{ Prior time - { Perf
 { Same time - { Pres + plap.
 { Same time - { Pres - { 1st Person

(b) The subject of the English equivalent clause cannot be brought into relation with any single word in the main sentence; as, *When the hostages had been given up, he made peace. While our men were hesitating, he leaped down.*

In such cases the difficulty may be solved by using one of the equivalent Latin constructions described in 543, or recourse may generally be had to the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE construction, in which a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement are used, in the ablative case; as, *Obsidibus acceptis, pācem fēcit. Ponte factō, flūmen trānsiērunt. Obsidibus trāditis, pācem fēcit. Nostri cunctantibus, dēsilit.*

For further examples see 298, 299, 303, 304.

547. Where the participle which the ablative absolute construction would require is not available, the equivalent construction alone can be used; for example:

i. Where the verb, being intransitive, cannot be used in the passive in agreement; as, *Coming to the Rhine (or Reaching the Rhine), they built a bridge: Cum ad Rhēnum vēnissent (or pervēnissent), pontem fēcērunt. Having leaped down, they advanced: Cum dēsiluissent, prōgressi sunt. Having persuaded their neighbours, they began to prepare for war: Cum finitimis persuāsissent, bellum parāre coepērunt.*

ii. Where a present participle passive would be required; as, *While our men were being led across, they caught sight of the enemy: Nostri, dum trādūcuntur, hostēs cōspicātī sunt.* (For the present tense with *dum*, see 273. c.)

iii. Where the verb used has no available participle; as, *Being unable to cross the river, he returned: Cum flūmen trānsire nōn posset, rediit.* (For *potēns*, see 756. ii.)

548. The case of the verb **sum** is exceptional. It has no present participle, but a predicate noun or adjective is often added to its noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute construction without any copula; as, *Against his will: Eō invītō. In my consulship: Mē cōsule. As the ships were weak: Nāvibus infirmīs.**

549. There is a similar nominative absolute construction in English; as, *The hostages having been given up, he made peace.* But in English the absolute construction is of much rarer occurrence than in Latin, and is seldom the most natural equivalent of the Latin ablative absolute. This, as a rule, should rather be rendered either by an English *active* participle in agreement or by one of the equivalent clauses or phrases suggested in 542.

550. i. In the case of the perfect participle of deponent verbs with active force, the ablative absolute is somewhat sparingly used, and chiefly with intransitive verbs; as, *A great storm arose, and almost all the ships were wrecked: Māximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictæ sunt.* So also *mortuus, profectus, secutus.*

ii. It is contrary to Latin usage to have the substantive in the ablative absolute denote the same person or thing as is expressed in the principal clause; as, *When Commius landed they seized him* is not *Commiō ē nāvī ēgressō, eum comprehendērunt*, but *Commiū ē nāvī ēgressum comprehendērunt.*†

iii. An ablative absolute with the negative is often equivalent to a phrase introduced by *without*; as, *Without losing any time he sets out: Nullō tempore intermissō proficiscitur.*

iv. One ablative absolute may define the circumstances of another; as, *As the ranks were in confusion from hearing the shouting, the rest took to flight: Reliqui, exauditō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus, terga vertērunt.* An ablative absolute may be connected by a co-ordinating conjunction (e.g., *et, -que*) with another ablative absolute, but not with any other (even an equivalent) construction.‡

* Literally, *He (being) unwilling; I (being) consul; the ships (being) weak.*

† Yet Caesar has several instances of the ablative absolute in such cases, often apparently to secure emphasis: e.g., B. G., II. 22, 1; III. 14, 4; IV. 12, 1; 21, 6; V. 4, 3; 44, 6; VI. 4, 4; 43, 1; VII. 4, 1; 27, 2; 29, 1; 76, 3. This should not be imitated.

‡ *Nisi, ut, etc.*, may be used with the ablative absolute (541. fn.).

551.

EXERCISE 7.

A.—1. After encouraging the soldiers and giving the signal, he ordered an attack to be made. 2. After that meeting had been dismissed, he returned to the province. 3. Having settled these matters, he returned. 4. Hearing (thinking) that the place was suitable, he ordered the line of battle to be drawn up. 5. As the ranks were uncertain, our men were quickly thrown into confusion. 6. As the camp was being fortified, all the soldiers were busy. 7. On this being done, the soldiers, drawing their swords, broke through the enemy's line. 8. After he heard the prisoner, he dismissed him. 9. Not being a match for the enemy, they resolved to surrender. 10. When this battle was fought, the enemy, dismayed by the bravery of our men, sent envoys to Caesar to treat for peace. 11. While the commander was absent, his lieutenant set out for Italy after promising to return in a short time. 12. Having reached the enemy's territories, he burned all their villages and at once returned to the province. (*See also 302.*)

B.—1. Making an attack, they surround the enemy. 2. As our men were in distress, he ordered reinforcements to be sent. 3. By hurling their weapons, they throw the enemy into confusion. 4. On their promising to bear Caesar's message, they were sent to more distant places. 5. Being unable to land, they asked to be sent back. 6. When the boats had been filled, our men attacked the enemy's exposed flank. 7. While the boats were being filled, our men were able to get a footing on the island. 8. While our men were filling the boats, the cavalry were fighting fiercely. 9. We shall send Commius back and sue for peace. 10. As Commius is landing from the ship, they seize him. 11. The leading men, on assembling, began to complain. 12. After seizing the envoy and putting him in chains, they send for their chief men. 13. They will follow the standards and attack the enemy. 14. The envoys, having done what he had demanded and given hostages, returned to their own states. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 26, 27.*)

VIII. VERBS COMPLETED BY THE DATIVE, ~~GENITIVE~~ OR ABLATIVE. THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.

552. Many verbs followed by a direct object in English are represented in Latin by verbs that take, not the accusative, but some other oblique case. Thus, while the English verb is transitive, the Latin equivalent is intransitive. For examples, see 355 and 356.*

553. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE DATIVE.

Many verbs, chiefly denoting *advantage* or *disadvantage* or *disposition towards*, are followed by the dative; as,

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>Approach</i> , appropinquō. | <i>Obeys</i> , pāreō (obtemperō). |
| <i>Believe</i> , crēdō. | <i>Oppose, resist</i> , resistō (repugnō, obsistō, occurrō). |
| <i>Command</i> ,
(= <i>order</i>), imperō, mandō. | <i>Pardon</i> , ignōscō. |
| (= <i>be in charge of</i>), prae-sum. | <i>Persuade</i> , persuādeō (suādeō). |
| <i>Favour</i> , studeō, faveō. | <i>Satisfy</i> , satisfaciō. |
| <i>Injure, damage</i> , noceō. | <i>Spare</i> , parcō. |
| <i>Meet</i> , occurrō (so obviam eō). | <i>Trust</i> , cōfidō (fidō). |

i. Other verbs of this class are :

| | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <i>Aid, assist</i> , <u>subveniō</u> , succurrō. | <i>Interrupt</i> , interveniō. |
| <i>Benefit</i> , prōsum. | <i>Marry</i> (a man), nūbō. |
| <i>Displease</i> , displiceō. | <i>Please</i> , placeō. |
| <i>Distrust</i> , diffidō. | <i>Relieve, succeed</i> , succēdō. |
| <i>Envy</i> , invidē. | <i>Serve</i> , serviō. |
| <i>Heal</i> , medeor. | <i>Surpass</i> , praestō. |
| <i>Indulge</i> , indulgē. | <i>Threaten</i> , minor. |

* That the irregularity is only apparent may be seen by observing the exact meaning of the verb; for instance, **serviō**, *I am a slave (to)*; **persuādeō**, *I make it acceptable (to)*; **satisfaciō**, *I do enough (for)*; **pāreō**, *I am at hand (for)*; **resistō**, *I stand in opposition (to)*; **prae-sum**, *I am at the head (with reference to)*; **utor**, *I benefit myself (by means of)*; **potior**, *I become powerful (by means of)*; **careō**, *I am cut off (from)*; **obliviscor**, *I become dark (as regards) i.e., I become forgetful (of)*.

Accordingly, it is not necessary that all verbs having the same English equivalent should take the same case. Thus, **jubeō** (*command, order*) takes the accusative and infinitive, and **juvō** (*aid*), **laedō** (*injure*), **dēlectō** (*please*), **offendō** (*displease*), **misseror** (*pity*) and **recordor** (*recollect*), regularly take the accusative.

ii. While **imperō** takes the dative of the person commanded, or from whom anything is demanded, it takes the accusative of that which is demanded or required; as, *He demands hostages of the enemy: Hostibus obsidēs imperat.*

iii. Phrases having the value of verbs which take the dative may have the same construction, e.g., *fidem habeo* equivalent to *confido*.

554. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE GENITIVE.

(a) Some verbs meaning *to pity, remember, or forget*; as, *Pity, misereor, and miseret* (for which see 590. d).

*Remember, be mindful of, meminī.**

Call to mind, recollect, reminiscor.

Forget, obliviscor.

(b) Two impersonal verbs, **interest** and (rarely) **rēfert**, meaning *it concerns* (*it is of interest or importance to*). These take the genitive of the person interested; as, *It concerns the state: Reī publicae interest.*

i. But instead of the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns, the ablative feminine of the possessives is used, namely, **meā, tuā, nostrā, vestrā, suā**; as, *This concerns me: Hōc meā interest* (or *rēfert*). In this usage *rēfert* is common.

ii. The *thing which is of importance* is expressed by a neuter pronoun, an infinitive (with or without a subject accusative) or a clause. The *degree of importance* is expressed by an adverb or by the genitive of price (587); as, *Your safety is of great importance to me: Magni meā interest ut salvus sis.*

555. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE ABLATIVE.

The following verbs (with their compounds) are followed by the ablative:

Use, ūtor. Perform, fungor. Eat, vescor.

Enjoy, fruor. Gain, obtain, potior.† Lack, egeō, careō.

i. **Ūtor** may take a second ablative used predicatively; as, *He used these men as guides: His ducibus ūtēbātur.*

* **Meminī**, when used of recalling a person one has known, takes the accusative.

† **Potior**, *gain sovereignty over*, takes the genitive, chiefly in the phrase *rērum potiri*, *to obtain control of affairs*.

556. THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.—In English only the active voice of an intransitive verb may be used. But in Latin even with intransitive verbs (i.e., such as do not govern a direct object in the accusative), the passive may be used impersonally, that is, in the third person singular, and (in the compound tenses) in the neuter.

The impersonal passive denotes merely the occurrence of an action without reference to the doer; as, **Pūgnātur**: *Fighting takes place*, or *there is a fight*. **Ventum est**: *Coming took place*. The usual English equivalents are either (a) the active voice, the subject being obtained from the context; as, **Ventum est**: *He* (or *we* or *they*, etc.) *came*, or (b) a phrase consisting of a verbal noun (of kindred meaning with the Latin impersonal) and some unemphatic verb such as *make, take, have, give, do, be*; as, **Ācriter pūgnātum est**: *There was a fierce battle*. **Suprā dēmōnstrātum est**: *Mention has been made above*. **Imperātum erat**: *Orders had been given*. **Nōn est cunctandum**: *There must be no delay*.

557. This impersonal passive construction is used to render into Latin the passive of the intransitive verbs which take the dative* (553); as, *Caesar is obeyed*: **Caesari pārētur** (i.e., *obedience is rendered to Caesar*). *They asked to be pardoned*: **Petēbant ut sibi ignōscerētur** (i.e., *that pardon might be granted to them*).

Thus, where a verb takes the dative in the active voice, corresponding to the direct object of an English transitive verb, that dative should be retained in the passive, used impersonally, and should not be made the subject.

*The use of the impersonal passive construction with verbs which take the genitive or ablative occurs chiefly in the passive periphrastic conjugation (612. i).

558.

EXERCISE 8.

A.—1. The king was always opposing Caesar's plans and favouring a revolution. 2. We remember the valour and victories of the Romans. 3. The senate had not trusted the Gauls and had ordered their chief men to obey Caesar. 4. Word was brought back that these tribes lack harbours and use smaller vessels. 5. The state is injured by these designs. 6. The Roman people is willing to forget its losses and defeats, but not these recent wrongs. 7. The battle will be a long and fierce one. 8. Answer was made that the Gauls had demanded hostages and grain from this tribe. 9. Displaying (ūtor) the same zeal, he has surpassed all the others. 10. Not even the children will be spared. 11. ~~It is your interest, and the interest of all citizens, to resist wrongdoing.~~ 12. The soldiers whom the lieutenant commanded were persuaded not to injure their prisoners. 13. We are accustomed to pity (to spare) all who obey our rule. 14. All whom we met said we were approaching the ocean. 15. The soldiers had been commanded, after taking the towns, to spare the defenders. (*See also 359.*)

B.—1. They were approaching the upper harbour. 2. He had neither believed the chief men nor trusted the common people. 3. Our men had been commanded not to resist the cavalry. 4. They remember the storm and the tide and the waves. 5. They are not accustomed to use grain. 6. This tide will surpass all the others. 7. The enemy's indiscretion will not be forgiven. 8. We persuaded Caesar not to forgive the chief men. 9. The island was reached the same night. 10. So great was his alarm that he forgot Caesar's message. 11. Meanwhile he commanded part of the cavalry to repair the vessel of which mention has been made. 12. It happened that he commanded the whole army. 13. He demanded ropes, anchors, and other tackling from this state. 14. Commius, the Atrebatian, after being put in chains, will be spared. 15. So great a storm arose, that several vessels were damaged (were wrecked). 16. They will ask to be forgiven. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 27-29.*)

IX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

559. For the four regular classes of conditional sentences, see 475-478.

Classification of Particular Conditional Sentences.

I. Present or Past (simple or logical):

Indicative in both clauses.

II. ^{Simple} Present or ^{Logical} Past (contrary to fact):

Subjunctive (imperfect or pluperfect) in both clauses.*

III. Future (more vivid or logical):

Indicative in both clauses.†

IV. Future (less vivid or ideal):

Subjunctive (present) in both clauses.

560. i. In classes I. and III. the imperative also may be used in the apodosis.

ii. In conditions contrary to fact, the indicative (usually imperfect or perfect) rather than the subjunctive is used in the apodosis with *possum*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, and the periphrastic conjugations (346); as, *If he had set out, he could have crossed the river: Si profectus esset, flūmen trānsire potuit.* (Compare 627. i, and fn.)

iii. Alternative conditions, introduced in English by *whether . . . or*, are in Latin introduced by *sive . . . sive* (or *seu . . . seu*) which follow the rules for *si* clauses as regards mood and tense; as, *Whether they remain or set out, it will be an easy task: Facilis erit rēs, seu manēbunt seu proficiēcentur.*

Whether . . . or conditional should be carefully distinguished from *whether . . . or* interrogative (536). The former can always be preceded by *no matter* and followed by *in either case*.

iv. For *if not*, *sī nōn*, *sī minus*, and *nisi* are found. *Nisi* (unless) is used to mark an exception, or after negatives. *Sī minus* is used where the verb is to be supplied from the context.

* While normally the imperfect subjunctive refers to present time and the pluperfect to past time in these conditional sentences, the imperfect subjunctive may also refer to continued condition or repeated action in past time. Note that the protasis and apodosis may refer to different times.

† Note especially the common use of the future perfect for the English present (224).

v. Two mutually exclusive conditions are introduced by *sī* . . . *sīn*, *if* . . . *but if*. For *but if not*, where the verb is omitted, *sīn minus* or *sīn aliter* is used.

vi. For *sī* translated by *in the hope that*, *to see whether*, see 672.

vii. Participles and adjectives may be used in place of the regular protasis to express condition; as, *He will come, if asked*: *Rogātus veniet*. *He will not come, unless (he is) asked*: *Nisi rogātus, nōn veniet* (541. fn.).

561. General conditions form a special type of the present or past logical condition. The protasis is in English generally introduced by *if any or if ever*, and the apodosis states what is habitual or repeated in any of the cases described in the protasis; as, *If he hears anything, he reports it*: *Sī quid audīvit, dēfert*. *If any one fell, they stood (or would stand) around him*: *Sī quis dēciderat, circumsistēbant*.

Classification of General Conditional Sentences.

I. Present General :

Indicative (usually perfect) in the protasis.*

Present indicative in the apodosis.

II. Past General :

Indicative (usually pluperfect) in the protasis.*

Imperfect indicative in the apodosis.

562.

EXERCISE 9.

A.—1. If they were to adopt this plan, they would obtain a large supply of grain. 2. If the legion crosses, the enemy will fall back. 3. If we capture a town, we spare the inhabitants. 4. If he obtains suitable weather, he will set sail; if the weather is not suitable, he will not set out. 5. Unless they were exhausted by wounds, they did not throw away their arms. 6. The Helvetians would return to their own territories, if the Roman people were to make peace. 7. Had reinforcements been sent, the enemy would not have withstood the onset and would now be in the greatest peril. 8. Whether he returns or not, we shall disembark at once. 9. He hopes to find out whether they will bring aid or are unwilling to trust the king. 10. If the Germans had attempted to

* For these tenses see 676. b, and compare the use of the future perfect (221).

fall back - pedem refro
adopt - capere
1 - 8

cross the Rhine, Caesar would have marched against them. 11. If we make a sally, we shall be overpowered. 12. If they should burn all their towns, they would not be able to return. 13. If the commander had not prevented the cavalry from pursuing, the allies would have suffered a great defeat. (See also 482.)

caloneader
 B.—1. If the ships have been wrecked, they are useless. 2. If we cast anchor (if the tides are high), the ships will be filled with the waves. 3. If a conspiracy were to be formed, the whole army would cross over to Gaul. 4. If a storm had not arisen, the chiefs would not have renewed the war. 5. If we conquer these, no one will cross over. 6. We shall lose a large part of the vessels unless they are fastened at anchor. 7. Whether they are drawn up or not, the ships will be wrecked. 8. Whether they are ships of war or transports is unknown. 9. Had corn been provided, they would have wintered in Britain. 10. Great alarm would be caused, if the ships should be driven back. 11. If this had happened, they would not be confident that no one would make war. 12. If they were approaching (were to approach) the harbour, they would be seen from the camp. 13. They would not have established peace, had they not learned these facts. (Caesar, B. G. IV. 28-30.)

1-10
Druid 768

X. CLAUSES OF CONCESSION. CLAUSES OF PROVISIO. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

563. (a) Clauses stating a fact *in spite of which* something else is true, and introduced by *although, whereas, in spite of the fact that*, are rendered into Latin by quamquam, etsi or tametsi with the indicative, or by cum with the subjunctive; as, *Although he saw this, yet he did not join battle: Etsi haec vidēbat (or Cum haec vidēret), tamen proelium nōn commisit.*

✓ (b) Clauses conceding something for the sake of argument, and introduced by *even though*, *even if*, *even granting*, are rendered into Latin by *etsī* or *etiāmsī* with the indicative or subjunctive, according to the rules for conditional sentences (559); as, *Even if he did this, he is an enemy*: *Etiāmsī hōc fēcit, inimīcus est.* *Even if he should do this, he is an enemy*: *Etsī hōc faciat, inimīcus est.*

(c) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *however much*, *no matter how*, are rendered into Latin by *quamvis* with the subjunctive (usually present); as, *However unfriendly they are, we shall not attack them*: *Quamvis sint inimīci, impetum nōn faciēmus.*

564. i. The impersonal verb *licet* (637) with the subjunctive and *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive may have the force of *even though* (563. b).

ii. *Quamvis* is sometimes joined with a single word, the verb of the clause being understood; as, *However few they are, they venture to advance*: *Quamvis pauci (supply sint), adire audent.*

iii. *Quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent clause, and may then be rendered *and yet*.

iv. For the concessive participle see 541, and for concessive relative clauses, 665.

CLAUSES OF PROVISO.

565. Clauses embodying a stipulation and introduced in English by *provided (that)*, or *if only*, are rendered into Latin by *quasi*, *dummodo* or *modo* with the subjunctive (usually the present); as, *Let them hate, provided they fear*: *Ōderint dum metuant.* The negative is *nē*.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON.

566. Clauses containing a comparison to some imaginary state of affairs and introduced by *as if* are rendered into Latin by *quasi*, *tamquam sī*, *velut sī*, *ut sī*, *ac sī*, or by *tamquam* or *velut* alone, followed by the subjunctive. The sequence of tenses is observed (387); as, *They fought bravely, just as if Caesar were present*: *Quasi (or Velut sī) Caesar adesset, fortiter pugnāverunt.*

i. *Quasi*, *tamquam*, *ut* and *velut* are used with a similar force with participles; as, *They halted as if bidden by a voice from heaven*: *Restitērunt tamquam caelestī vōce jussī.* (Compare 541. fn.)

A 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 9.
B. 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 9.

372

LATIN SYNTAX AND COMPOSITION.

567.

EXERCISE 10.

A.—1. Although he saw that the legions were in distress, he was unwilling to send reinforcements. 2. Even if Caesar returns, we shall not be able to resist the enemy. 3. Provided that the enemy do not learn our plans, we shall attack their unprotected flank. 4. The magistrates yielded at once, as if they despaired of victory. 5. In spite of their having taken up their position on higher ground, they could not withstand the attacks of our men. 6. However hard pressed they are, they will fight most vigorously, provided Caesar is present. 7. Although he had now come in sight of the enemy, he did not send cavalry in advance to reconnoitre the roads. 8. Even though he were to obtain suitable weather, he would not sail for Britain. 9. Though these tribes have been persuaded to send envoys, we do not trust them as if they were friends. 10. If Caesar overtakes the enemy's forces he will easily defeat them, no matter how brave and numerous they may be. 11. Many of these tribes seem to be unwilling to renew the war, as if they preferred to endure slavery.

B.—1. Although the rest of the ships had been repaired, he had not yet set out. 2. Even if they had given hostages, he would not have set out. 3. Although they were reaping, they had not laid aside their arms. 4. He orders the ships to be repaired, as if he suspected that this had happened. 5. In spite of the fact that all the ships had been lost, he did not suspect that the enemy would form this plan. 6. Even if we are hard pressed by the enemy, the ranks will not be confused, nor shall we be surrounded. 7. However severely damaged they are, we shall be able to repair the vessels, provided we collect timber and copper. 8. Although the ships have been wrecked, we shall use their timber. 9. The enemy were hurling weapons from every quarter, whereas (cum) our men, being crowded together, were with difficulty holding their own. 10. Even if a large cloud of dust were to be seen, he would not learn our plan. (Caesar, B. G. IV. 31, 32.)

✓
10-5-1924

XI. USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

568. The Accusative is chiefly used to express, in connection with a verb, (a) something *affected* or *apprehended*, or (b) something *effected* or *produced*. A verb so completed is called a transitive verb.

i. Some verbs (chiefly verbs of emotion) which are intransitive in English are represented in Latin by verbs which may be transitive; as, **expectō**, *wait (for)*; **horreō**, *shudder (at)*; **doleō**, *grieve (over)*; **spērō**, *hope (for)*; as, *They waited for reinforcements*: **Auxilia expectābant**, as well as, *They waited until the ninth hour*: **Ad hōram nōnam expectābant**.

For verbs transitive in English but intransitive in Latin, see 552.

ii. Many intransitive verbs (chiefly verbs of motion) may become transitive when compounded with a preposition (especially *circum*, *præter*, and *trāns*); as, **trāseō**, *cross*; **conveniō**, *meet*; **circumveniō**, *surround*; **adorior**, *attack*.*

569. The uses of the Accusative include the Accusative of Direct Object (32); the Predicate Accusative (570); the Cognate Accusative (571); the Accusative of Specification (572); the Accusative of Exclamation (573); the Accusative as subject of the Infinitive (123 and 320); the Accusative of Duration of Time (159) and of Extent of Space (231), as well as the Accusative with Prepositions (435).

i. A few transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* (e.g., *trādūcō*) may take two accusatives in the active voice, one governed by the verb and the other by *trāns*; as, *He leads his army across the river*: **Flūmen exercitum trādūcit**. In the passive the accusative with *trāns* may be retained, the other becoming the subject.

ii. Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching*, and *concealing* may take two accusatives, the one of the person, the other of the thing; as, *He demands corn of the Aedui*: **Aeduōs frūmentum flagitat**. In the passive, one object (usually of the thing) may be retained.†

iii. In poetry the passive of verbs of *clothing* is used with reflexive or 'middle' force and takes a direct object; as, **Galeam induitur**: *He puts on (himself) the helmet*.

* Compare in English *overrun*, *undergo*, *withstand*, *overcome*.

† To indicate the person from whom something is asked or demanded, a preposition may also be used (as is regularly the case with **petō** and **querō**). For the dative of the person with **imperō**, see 181, N.B. b.

iv. The perfect participle passive of many verbs is found in poetry with the same accusative of the direct object that the active voice might take; as, *Per pedēs trājectus lōra*: *Having thongs put through his feet.* *Nōdō sinūs collecta fluentēs*: *Having the fluttering folds gathered in a knot.*

v. Not only *prope*, but also *propius* and *proximē*, and even the adjectives *propior* and *proximus*, may govern the accusative.

570. THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *considering*, and *showing* may take two accusatives of the same person (or thing), one being the direct object and the other a predicate noun or adjective; as, *He calls the Belgians friends*: *Belgās amīcōs appellat.* *They let Caesar know*: *Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt.* *They choose these as leaders*: *Hōs ducēs dēligunt.*

In changing to the passive voice both the direct object and the predicate become nominative; as, *The Belgians are called friends*: *Belgae amīcī appellantur.* *Caesar was informed*: *Caesar certior factus est.*

571. THE COGNATE ACCUSATIVE is used with intransitive verbs to define more clearly their meaning. It is either a substantive of kindred meaning, or (more frequently) a neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively; as, *We shall live a safer life*: *Tūtiōrem vitā vivēmus.* *He makes the same answers*: *Eadem respondet.*

i. This is the origin of the adverbial use of *multum*, *minus*, *nihil*, *quid*, *quantum*, etc.; as, *He has very great power*: *Plūrimum potest.* *They did so much damage*: *Tantum nocēbant.* *He has no fear*: *Nihil timet.* And more or less akin are other adverbial uses of the accusative, such as *Māximam partem*: *For the most part.*

572. THE ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION is used (chiefly in poetry) with verbs or adjectives to denote the part of the body affected; as, *Ūs deō similis*: *In face like to a god.**

573. THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION is used with or without an interjection; as, *Ah, wretched me!* *Mē miserum!* or *Ō mē miserum!*

* This usage is largely due to Greek influence and hence is often called the Greek accusative.

574.

EXERCISE 11.

A.—1. Before Caesar's arrival, the Belgians had reached the island which was called Britain. 2. He will cross the river in order to attack the enemy's rear. 3. They inform Caesar that they do not at all fear the sea. 4. On account of the scarcity of supplies, the camp had been moved nearer the villages. 5. This young man the senate had chosen as king; he had been made king. 6. Among these tribes no one except the king has many slaves about him. 7. It is very easy for the legionary soldiers to march through these districts. 8. He was informed that the barbarians had encamped within these forests and there were waiting for our departure. 9. This island, which we call Britain, is considered the larger. 10. After these battles he promised to adopt another plan. 11. Although they asked the same question, he made no answer. 12. They had already led their forces across the Rhine. 13. They have sent such large forces against the Belgians that they hope for victory. 14. His influence with (apud) Caesar was very strong.

B.—1. Up to that time they called this legion the seventh. 2. He observed that part of the cohorts had marched in that direction through the woods. 3. They suddenly attack all the outposts except a few. 4. This will make the camp larger; the ranks will be made uncertain. 5. After these battles he set out against the enemy. 6. They are leaving the field (*literally* battle) and are betaking themselves to the camp. 7. He reports that this is the custom among all the barbarians. 8. Is not part of a legion called a cohort? you surely do not call two cavalrymen a squadron? 9. It is time for the rest of the cohorts to arm themselves. 10. He perceived that part of the enemy was within the gates. 11. On account of the large number of the chariots, they will adopt this plan; ~~this plan was adopted because of the sloping ground.~~ 12. We had reaped all the grain around the camp. 13. This place is not considered (existimō) steep. 14. He informed his men that the cavalry would surround the charioteers. (*Caesar, B.G. IV. 32, 33.*)

② demissuramus - we had reaped.

XII. USES OF THE DATIVE.

575. The Dative case is used to express the indirect or remoter connection of a person or thing with the action, feeling, or quality expressed by a verb or adjective. There are three main uses:* to express (a) the indirect object, (b) the person interested, (c) the purpose served. The dative may generally be rendered by *to* or *for*.

576. THE INDIRECT OBJECT.

For the dative of the indirect object (a) with intransitive verbs, (b) with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object,† see 39, and for the allied use of the dative with adjectives, see 173.

Of special importance is the use of the dative with certain Latin intransitive verbs where the English equivalent is a transitive verb with a direct object, such as *persuādeō* (553).

i. Often in English the preposition *to* is omitted, especially with verbs of *giving*, *promising*, and *telling*; as, *He gave the soldiers the signal*: *Militibus signum dedit*.

ii. A few verbs, such as *dōnō*, *circumdō*, and *circumfundō*, admit a double construction: (1) dative and accusative, (2) accusative and ablative. Compare the double construction in English with the verb *present*.

iii. In poetry this dative is extended to include the idea of motion towards (618), and is also used with verbs of *nearness*, *union*, *difference*, and *contention*.

577. Frequently an English verb followed by a preposition and its object is represented in Latin by a verb compounded with a corresponding preposition and followed by the dative; as, *He was over the cavalry*: *Equitātūī praeerat*. *He put Brutus over the fleet*: *Brūtum classī praefēcit*. *He comes beneath the roof*: *Tēctō succēdit*.‡

* This division is not fundamental, but is convenient in practice.

† The indirect object may of course remain when the direct object has become the subject of the verb in the passive voice.

‡ More literally, *at the head* (**prae**) *with reference to*; *beneath* (**sub**) *with reference to*.

i. This usage is especially common with compounds of *ad*, *ante*, *con-* (*cum*), *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, *super*; generally where the compound is not used in a quite literal sense.*

ii. But frequently (and especially when the verb is used in the literal local sense) the prefixed preposition is repeated with the noun; as, *They put everything into the fire*: **Omnia in ignem inferunt**. Contrast, *They put hope into the soldiers* (or, more freely rendered, *They inspire the soldiers with hope*): **Spem militibus inferunt**.

THE DATIVE OF INTEREST.

578. THE DATIVE OF INTEREST denotes the person or thing concerned (especially in the way of advantage or disadvantage); as, *He demanded grain for the army*: **Frumentum exercitui imperat**. *He takes thought for the state*: **Civitati cōsultat**.

The dative of interest is really identical with the dative of the indirect object, but the dative complement is not so essential to the meaning of the verb, and the translation is usually *for* rather than *to*.†

The Dative of Interest includes the Dative of Reference (579); the Ethical Dative (580); the Dative of Agent (581), and the Dative of Possessor (582).

i. The dative of interest with verbs of *taking away* (as *dētrahō*, *ēripīō*) or *warding off* (as *arceō*, *dēfendō*) is translated by *from*; as, *They are taking from me my liberty*: **Mihi libertātem ēripiunt**. *It keeps off the summer heat from the flock*: **Aestātem pecori dēfendit**.

579. THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE, modifying the sentence as a whole, denotes a person indirectly interested rather than directly affected. This includes:

(a) Many cases where English would use a *possessive*: as, *Pulio's shield is pierced*: **Trānsfigitur scūtum Pulioni** (more nearly, *Pulio gets his shield pierced*). *They threw themselves at Caesar's feet*: **Sēsē Caesari ad pedēs projēcērunt**. *It lessened the hopes of our soldiers*: **Nostris militibus spem minuit**.

* But many such compounds are used as transitive verbs with the accusative (568, ii); as, *adeō*, *adorior*, *aggredior*, *antecēdō*, *conveniō*, *inēō*, *interficiō*, *obsideō*, *oppugnō*, *praeceđō*, *subsequor*.

† *For*, meaning *in defence of*, is expressed by *prō* and the ablative.

(b) The person in whose eyes: as, *They wished to be blameless in Caesar's eyes*: **Caesari pūrgāti esse volēbant.**

(c) Participles expressing the point of view: as, *The first town as you come from Epīrus*: **Oppidum primum venientibus ab Ēpīrō.**

(d) The dative with certain interjections; as, *Woe to the conquered!* **Vae victis!** *Ah, me!* **Hei mihi!**

580. THE ETHICAL DATIVE, confined to personal pronouns, indicates a person conceived to be interested in the statement made. It is chiefly used in colloquial expressions of emotion, and often answers to the English *bless me*, or *pray*; as, **At tibi repente venit ad mē Canīnius**: *But see (or mark you) of a sudden Caninius came to me.* **Quō mihi abis?** *Whither are you going, pray?*

Here belongs the expression *sibi velle*; as, *What does he mean?* **Quid sibi vult?**

581. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT is used with the gerundive to indicate the person interested, and hence presumably the agent. For examples, see 354.

i. This dative is sometimes found (especially in poetry) with other forms of the passive, chiefly the compound ones and the perfect participle passive; as, *Nor is he perceived by any*: **Neque cernitur ulli.**

ii. Sometimes, to avoid ambiguity, *ab* and the ablative is used with the gerundive to express the agent.

582. THE DATIVE OF POSSESSOR, used chiefly with the verbs *sum* and *dēsum*, denotes the person interested as owner; as, *They state that they have nothing*: **Dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse.** *A fountain which bears the name Arethusa*: **Fōns cui nōmen Arethūsa est.***

THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE.

583. For the dative of purpose, denoting the purpose served by something and usually accompanied by the dative of interest, see 431. When both datives occur, the usage is often called the Double Dative construction.

1. The nouns used in this construction are chiefly such as *auxiliō*, *praesidiō*, *ūsui*, *impedimentō*, *cūrae*, *salūti*, *odiō*. The verb is usually *sum* (after which the dative has almost the force of an ordinary predicate noun), but *fīō*, *veniō*, *mittō*, *relinquō*, and *dō* also occur.

*The name is sometimes attracted into the dative.

584.

EXERCISE 12.

A.—1. After choosing defenders for the town, he set out for the camp. 2. The heavy weight of their arms was a great hindrance to the foot-soldiers. 3. They neither come to the councils nor are obedient to our rule. 4. He will take thought for the safety of the troops which the lieutenant commands. 5. Word was brought back to the citizens that this young man had been set over the whole fleet. 6. For many reasons, he fixed the next day for the meeting. 7. They told the magistrates they were willing to fight for the king. 8. This place does not seem to me to be suitable for a camp. 9. He sends the third line to the support of our men, who are in distress. 10. Provided nothing is lacking to our safety, we shall set sail for Britain. 11. It is known to all how great a defeat they have inflicted on the state. 12. We should have resisted the Romans, if they had made war on us. 13. Caesar answers the envoys that he can have no friendship with the Germans. 14. The embassy was persuaded that all these matters would be of the greatest service to the state. (*See also 407, 434.*)

B.—1. They point out to Caesar that an opportunity is given to all. 2. The cavalry will come to the assistance of the infantry. 3. Messengers are sent out to all the barbarians. 4. Time had not been left for retreat. 5. He gives orders (*jubeō*) for a large number of chariots to be collected. 6. For a short time he feared for our soldiers. 7. The small number of the enemy was unknown to our men. 8. The barbarians were persuaded to depart for their own land. 9. They were drawing near (*appropinquō*) to the camp; they betake themselves to the camp. 10. The noise of the chariots inspires (*inferō*) fear in the ranks. 11. They seem to Caesar to have fixed a day for the battle. 12. The cavalry had to leap to their feet. 13. The chariots were of great service to the enemy. 14. Help will be brought to the Romans. 15. They are not accustomed to make war on the Romans. 16. They report the skill of the charioteers to our infantry. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 33, 34.*)

XIII. USES OF THE GENITIVE.

585. The Genitive case is chiefly used for the more exact limiting of nouns, and has thus an adjectival force. It is also used to limit certain adjectives, and (by analogy) to complete certain verbs. The genitive is regularly translated (a) by the English possessive case, (b) by the preposition *of*, or (c) by the phrase *as regards*, or some equivalent preposition.

586. The uses of the Genitive include the Possessive Genitive (429. b); the Subjective Genitive (429. c); the Objective Genitive (429. d); the Partitive Genitive (174); the Genitive of Quality (383); the Genitive of Price (587); and the Genitive of Definition (588).

i. The possessive genitive may be in the predicate with *sum* or *fiō*; as, *All things belong to the enemy*: **Omnia hostium sunt**. It is so used especially with *est* to express characteristic, duty, etc.; as, *It is the part (or duty) of a wise man to obey the laws*: **Sapientis est lēgibus pārēre**.* So also **Sapientiae est**: *It is a mark of wisdom*.

ii. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE is often used where, from the English equivalent or from the construction of the corresponding Latin verb, we should have expected a dative or ablative, or a prepositional phrase; as, *Confidence in oneself*: **Suī fidūcia**. *Exemption from military service*: **Militiae vacātiō**. *War with the Veneti*: **Bellum Venetōrum**. *Struggle for office*: **Contentiō honōrum**. *Danger to the cavalry*: **Periculum equitum**.†

In such cases it will regularly be found that the genitive might be translated by *as regards*. Very rarely is a prepositional phrase, or a dative or ablative, used to modify a Latin noun. As a rule, if the English preposition joining two nouns can be replaced by *as regards*, the objective genitive should be used; otherwise a relative clause or some other periphrasis.

* Instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun the neuter possessive is used; as, *It is my duty (or my place, or my way)*: **Meum est**.

† Compare **Sibi cōfidere**, **militiā vacāre**, **enim Venetis bellāre**, **dē honōribus contendere**, **periculōsum equitibus**.

iii. THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE is used not only after words where English uses *of* (including superlatives and numerals), but also after neuter pronouns or adjectives used substantively (but only in the nominative or the accusative without a preposition), where English usually omits *of*; as, *Sufficient protection*: **Satis praesidiī**. *No land*: **Nihil agrī**. *How much influence*: **Quantum auctōritātis**. Such words are *nihil*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *plūs*, *minus*, *quid*, *quod*, *aliquid*, *id*, *hōc*, and the adverbs *satis* and *parum* used substantively.*

iv. Except with the words indicated in iii above, an adjective used substantively with a partitive genitive regularly agrees with it in gender; as, *Many of the ships*: **Multae nāvium**.

v. With adjectives and pronouns (especially *ūnus*, *paucī*, and *quidam*) the partitive idea is often expressed by prepositions, chiefly *ex* or *dē*; as, *A few of our men*: **Paucī dē nostris**.

vi. THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE should be carefully avoided:

(a) Where, though English uses *of*, not a part but the whole is spoken of; as, *All of us*: **Nōs omnēs**. *The whole of Gaul*: **Tōta Gallia**.

(b) To denote the remainder, or any local part of anything, as the top, middle, bottom, beginning. (See 175.)

vii. The genitive of quality requires a modifier; e.g., *a man of bravery* is not **vir fortitudinis**, but **vir fortis**. Further, the modifier should not be a pronoun, except in such phrases as **hūjus modī**, **ējus generis**.

viii. The genitive of quality may be used as a predicate; as, *The depth was three feet*: **Altitudō erat trium pedum**.

587. THE GENITIVE OF PRICE denotes value, but only in general, not definite, terms; as, *It was valued highly*: **Māgni habēbātur**. For the ablative of definite value, see 597.

i. With verbs of *buying*, *selling*, and *costing* are found only *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*; with verbs of *estimating* and *valuing*, these four genitives, as well as *māgnī*, *parvī*, *nihilī*, and a few other words.

* This genitive may be an adjective of the first and second declensions (but not of the third) used substantively; as, *Something new*: **Aliquid novī**.

588. THE GENITIVE OF DEFINITION is used occasionally to explain the meaning of a noun, as a word in apposition might do; as, *The virtue of justice*: *Virtūs iustitiae*. But with such words as *oppidum*, *urbs*, *flumen*, an appositive, not the genitive, should be used; as, *The city of Rome*: *Urbs Rōma*. *The mainland of Gaul*: *Continēns Gallia*.

589. THE GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.—Many adjectives have a genitive (usually objective) to complete their meaning. These are chiefly adjectives of *desire*, *knowledge*, and *ignorance* (432), *participation* and *fulness*; as, *Full of confidence*: *Fidūciae plēnus*. *Unaccustomed to toil*: *Insuetus laboris*.*

i. In poetry the number of such adjectives is largely extended.

ii. *Similis* commonly takes the genitive of persons (so always with personal pronouns), and either the genitive or dative of things.

590. THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS. Many verbs take a genitive to complete their meaning.

(a) For verbs of *pitying*, *remembering*, and *forgetting*, as well as *interest* and *reſert*, see 554.

(b) Verbs of *reminding* sometimes take the genitive to express that of which one is reminded.

(c) Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* take the genitive of the offence charged; as, *You accuse him of treason*: *Eum prōditionis insimulātis*.

(d) The impersonal verbs of emotion, *miseret*, *pudet*, *piget*, *paenitet*, and *taedet*, take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of that which causes the feeling; as, *I am ashamed of my folly*: *Mē stultitiae pudet*. *We repent our resolve*: *Nōs cōsiliī paenitet*.

(e) The genitive is sometimes found with verbs of *plenty* and *want*, with *potior* (555. fn.), and in poetry (after the analogy of the Greek) with verbs denoting *separation*.

591.

EXERCISE 13.

A.—1. Influenced by the hope of assistance, the flight of the cavalry, and the previous day's victory, he gave the signal for battle. 2. One of the king's sons, on account of his experience in the art of war, was a man of great influence. 3. The top of the hill was held by

* See 586. ii for the translation by *as regards*.

A1-13
31-13

a few of our men, who had broken through the midst of the enemy. 4. He urges them not to forget the wrongdoing of the Romans. 5. He left two of the cohorts as garrison for the camp; he left sufficient garrison for the camp. 6. Is it not a king's duty to be of service to the rest of the citizens? 7. The father of this youth holds the leadership of the whole of Gaul. 8. The vessels of these tribes are of such size as easily to withstand the violence of waves and storms. 9. Soldiers of this sort will be less eager for plunder if they are informed of Caesar's approach. 10. He required three days' grain of this tribe. 11. The advocates of war were men of bravery, but altogether unacquainted with the art of war. 12. The hope of safety increases daily. 13. No time is left for the fortification of the camp. (*See also 434, 385.*)

Y-12. B.—1. A large part of the infantry is unable to withstand the enemy's attack. 2. He had collected thirty-two ships of great speed. 3. He orders all of the enemy's buildings to be burned. 4. So great was the barbarians' fear of the Romans that they turned and fled. 5. Several of the ships (the rest of the ships) had reached the middle of the harbour. 6. Because of the novelty of the danger there was less alarm. 7. It happened that all of us were inexperienced in sailing. 8. These transports were the weakest of all the ships. 9. Mention has previously been made of the small number of harbours. 10. With great danger to the cavalry, he came to the assistance of Commius the Atrebatian. 11. On account of the swiftness of Caesar's approach they could not escape. 12. He will gain enough plunder, if he requires thirty days' grain of the barbarians. 13. The violence of the previous days' storms kept several of the ships in harbour. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 34-36.*)

XIV. USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

592. The Ablative case determines the circumstances attending upon some action, and has thus adverbial force. It is composite in origin and represents three main ideas, once represented by three distinct cases, (a) the *true ablative*, meaning *from*; (b) the *instrumental* or *comitative*, meaning *with*; and (c) the *locative*, meaning *in* or *at*.

THE ABLATIVE PROPER.

593. The ablative proper includes the Ablative of Separation (437); of the Place from which (618); of Source (594); of Cause (595); of the Personal Agent (144); and of Comparison (242).

i. For the use or omission of a preposition (*ab*, *ex*, *dē*) with the ablative of separation, see 437. *b*. When the ablative denotes a person, the preposition should always be used. The use of the preposition is not affected by the verb's being a compound of *ab*, *ex*, or *dē*.

ii. The comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *longius*, and *amplius* are regularly used without *quam*, yet without affecting the case of the following word; as, *More than eight hundred ships had been seen* : *Amplius octingentae nāvēs erant visae*.

iii. Latin often omits the standard of comparison (e.g., *than is natural*, *than is usual*, *than is desirable*, *than that just mentioned*) when it is easily gathered from the context. In such cases *unusually* or *too* or *rather* with the positive is often the best translation.

594. THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE denotes that from which something is derived; as, *Born of a goddess* : *Deā nātus*. It is found chiefly with participles (like *nātus*) to denote ancestry or origin, and with certain verbs in poetry to denote the material of which something is made. In other cases a preposition is commonly used.

595. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE denotes the motive from which some act proceeds, more rarely the cause of something; as, *In that hope he sought our friendship* : *Amicitiam eā spē petivit*.

More frequently the cause or motive is expressed by (a) prepositional phrases with *ex*, *dē*, *ob*, *per*, *propter*, *prae*, (b) the genitive with *causā*, or (c) an ablative of means with a participle, such as *adductus*, *permōtus*.

THE INSTRUMENTAL OR COMITATIVE ABLATIVE.

596. This includes the Ablative of Means or Instrument (145); of Price (597); of Measure of Difference (598); of Specification (414); of Manner and Accompaniment (415); of Quality (383), and perhaps also the Ablative Absolute (298).

i. A personal instrument is usually expressed by *per* and the accusative (sometimes called the *secondary agent*).

ii. The ablative of means includes the ablative (*a*) denoting the route; (*b*) with *utor*, *fruor*, etc. (555); (*c*) with verbs of *filling* and *abounding*, and adjectives of *plenty*.

iii. With the ablative of manner, *cum* is omitted only when it is modified by an adjective or genitive (and not always then), and with certain words used virtually as adverbs, e.g., *vī*, *jūre*, *cāsū*.

In expressions of literal accompaniment, *cum* is never omitted, except occasionally in certain military expressions (chiefly of the troops with and by means of whom some movement is made); in such cases the ablative always has a modifier; as, *They hastened with all their forces*: (Cum) omnibus cōpiis contendērunt.

iv. The ablative, like the genitive of quality (see 586. vii and viii), requires some adjectival modifier and may be used in the predicate. For the difference between the genitive and the ablative of quality, see 383. *b*.

597. THE ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *exchanging*, and *costing*; as, *It was purchased for a small price*: Parvō pretiō redēptum est.

i. For the genitive of indefinite price, see 587.

598. THE ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote by how much two persons or things differ; as, *The other road is much easier*: Alterum iter est multō facilius. *A few days after*: Paucīs post diēbus.

i. This ablative is used also in designations of distance, e.g., with *distō* and *absum* (where also the accusative may be used), and regularly in the case of the words *spatium* and *intervallum*; as, *He halts at a great distance*: Magnō intervallō cōsistit.

ii. To this usage belong *quō . . . eō* (or *quantō . . . tantō*) with comparatives, as, *The sooner the better*: Quō citius cō melius.

THE LOCATIVE ABLATIVE.

599. This includes the Ablatives of the Place where, (618); Time when (620); and Time within which (621).

600. The ablative is used with many special verbs and adjectives, really belonging to some of the three divisions of the ablative, but not always easy to classify; for example, (*a*) with the verbs *glorior*, *laetor*, *gaudeō*, *fidō*, *cōfīdō*,* *nitor*, *assuēfaciō*; and (*b*) with the adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *laetus*, *frētus*.

* **Fidō** and **cōfīdō** regularly take the dative of persons (553).

601.

EXERCISE 14.

A.—1. Alarmed by the shouts, they rush out of the camp in every direction. 2. In the same manner, after filling the trenches with water, they strengthened the place on two sides with a wall. 3. They have experience in war and are worthy of friendship. 4. At great risk, he hastened by forced marches through forests of immense size. 5. According to the custom of the Roman people, he had demanded hostages from the whole of Gaul. 6. For many reasons, the ships of war are much swifter than the transports. 7. In the hope of plunder, they had advanced too far from the camp. 8. A lieutenant, Crassus by name, is sent with the cavalry to treat for peace. 9. Being defeated in the first onset, they had withdrawn from the fight. 10. They are of unfriendly spirit and unacquainted with our custom. 11. In a loud voice he said that a few years before he had, by common consent, been deprived of the leadership without cause. 12. The river was not wider than fifty feet. 13. Being conquered in a cavalry battle, they withdrew with incredible speed by a longer route. (*See also 440.*)

B.—1. A few days later, all the buildings, about three hundred and twenty in number, were burned by the cavalry. 2. On the first onset, they threw away their arms in sight of Caesar. 3. They use the marshes as a place of refuge. 4. Influenced by these things, Caesar set out with two legions. 5. Our soldiers are braver than the enemy; our soldiers fight much more bravely than the enemy. 6. They are unwilling to defend themselves with arms (without arms). 7. After several had been slain, the rest hid in a marsh of vast extent (*ingēns māgnitūdō*). 8. The soldiers disembarked from the vessel too rapidly. 9. These exploits are worthy (*dignus*) of a thanksgiving. 10. Influenced by this hope, they summoned the legion with great shouting. 11. Two years before, aid had been sent more quickly by Caesar than by the lieutenant Cotta. 12. On receipt of this despatch, more than three hundred soldiers assembled from these territories. (*Caesar, B. G. IV. 37, 38.*)

Alas. from 21/24

XV. VERBAL NOUNS — INFINITIVE, GERUND, SUPINE.

THE INFINITIVE. -

602. The Infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it is modified by an adverb, not by an adjective; it governs the same case as other parts of the verb; it has the distinction of tense, and it has a subject. As a noun it is used as subject or object of a verb, or as an appositive, and is always neuter.

603. (a) The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the *subject* of a verb (124).

i. This usage is found chiefly with (a) *est* and neuter adjectives, such as *facile*, *aequum*, *utile*, *necesse*; (b) passive verbs *sentiendī et dēclārandī* (511), such as *nūntiātum est*; (c) certain impersonal verbs, such as *oportet*, *licet*, *jurat*, *placet*.

ii. Except with passive verbs *sentiendī et dēclārandī*, the tense of the infinitive used as subject is almost invariably the present, the perfect occurring but seldom, and the future never.

(b) The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the object (a) of active verbs *sentiendī et dēclārandī* (511) or (b) of modal verbs (517).

(c) For the infinitive used as an appositive, see 694.

604. THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE. — In lively description the present infinitive, with its subject (when expressed) in the *nominative* case, is often found instead of the imperfect indicative;* as, *Every day Caesar dunned the Aedui; day after day the Aedui kept putting him off: Cotidiē Caesar Aeduōs flāgitāre; diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī.*

605. The infinitive, generally with a subject accusative, may be used in exclamations and exclamatory questions, both the present and perfect tenses being found; as, *Mēne inceptō dēsistere? What, I to give up my purpose? Hōc nōn vidēre! Fancy not seeing this!*

THE GERUND.

606. The Gerund is a verbal noun found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. Like the infinitive, it is modified by an adverb, and governs the same case as the other parts of the verb.

* The historical infinitive has the value of a verb only, not of a noun.

607. For the use of the Latin gerund, corresponding to the English gerund in *-ing*, see 444. With *causā* or with *ad* it may correspond to the English infinitive with *to* expressing purpose.

i. The chief uses of the gerund are illustrated in 444; viz., in the genitive with *causā*, in the objective genitive with nouns or adjectives (586. ii, 589), and in the accusative with prepositions (chiefly *ad*, rarely *ob* or *in*).

The dative is rarely found, and is used chiefly with adjectives denoting fitness (where *ad* with the accusative is more common) and in some official phrases. The ablative is found to express means and with prepositions (chiefly *in*, *ab*, *dē*, and *ex*).

ii In place of the gerund as subject or object of a verb the infinitive is used; as, *Crossing is easy*: *Facile est trānsire*. *They began fighting*: *Pūgnāre coepērunt*.

THE SUPINE.

608. The Supine is a verbal noun found only in the accusative and ablative singular, in both cases with adverbial force. The accusative supine, but not the ablative supine, may take an accusative object.

609. (a) The Accusative Supine, or supine in *-um*, is used (though not very freely in classical Latin) to express purpose, especially after verbs of motion.

(b) The Ablative Supine, or supine in *-ū*, is used to define the application of certain adjectives or nouns.

In both cases the supine corresponds to the English infinitive with *to*. For examples, see 470.

i. The adjectives with which the ablative supine is used are chiefly those meaning *easy*, *difficult*, *pleasant*, *strange*, *best*; the nouns are *fās* and *nefās*. The supines so used are chiefly *audītū*, *dictū*, *factū*, *vīsū*.

ii. The accusative supine with *īrī* (present infinitive passive of *eō* used impersonally as in 556) is used to form the rare future infinitive passive; as, *He says the city will be taken*: *Dicit urbem captum īrī* (literally, *there is a going to take the city*). Here *urbem* is really the object of *captum*, not the subject of *captum īrī*.

*facile
difficile
placere
difficili*

610.

EXERCISE 15.

A.—1. He perceived that the soldiers were ready to cross (most eager to advance). 2. After making a bridge, he attempted to cross the river for the purpose of foraging. 3. He observed that the boys had been of great service for reconnoitring. 4. They were occupied in foraging. 5. For (ad) quickness in landing, he makes the ships much smaller. 6. In order that the men might land more quickly, the ships are made smaller. 7. It is better to resist than to become slaves; he asked whether they would dare to resist or preferred being slaves. 8. According to custom, one of the legions will be sent to forage (use both *gerund* and *supine*). 9. If they had been more skilled in sailing, there would have been less difficulty in landing. 10. As the time for sallying out had been fixed, they sent messengers to ask aid. 11. They said that the best thing to do was to cut our men off from supplies. 12. Although the weather is suitable for sailing, it will be dangerous for the whole of the army to set sail. 13. He had been disappointed in the hope of gaining his request. (See also 447.)

B.—1. Envoys are sent for the purpose of apologizing to Caesar. 2. He ordered the old vessel to be repaired. 3. It is dangerous (*periculōsus*) for the consuls to leave Italy. 4. They had come thither to announce (*supine*) that very frequent raids were being made. 5. In apologizing, they promised to bring the hostages to the winter camp. 6. It is known that everything is ready. 7. He points out the method of repairing. 8. He learns that they had used the largest, widest, and lowest ships for transportation. 9. What is it best (*optimus*) to do, if they are desirous (*cupidus*) of making amends? 10. The best thing to do seems to be to fix the day of departure. 11. He had heard that all these things were of service for loading. 12. They are accustomed to display (*ūtor*) quickness in assembling. 13. The beasts of burden had been brought over for the purpose of raiding (*vāstō*). 14. Ambassadors were sent to hither Gaul to explain that the state would make amends. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 1.*)

XVI. VERBAL ADJECTIVES—GERUNDIVE, PARTICIPLES.

THE GERUNDIVE.*

611. THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.—For the use of the gerundive in agreement with a substantive, instead of a gerund in the same case and governing the accusative of the substantive, see 448, 449, 450.

i. After prepositions and in the dative case this is the regular usage; in the genitive case and in the ablative of means it is the preferred usage. But in the case of neuter pronouns and neuter adjectives used substantively, the gerund with an object accusative is regular; as, *For the purpose of doing something: Aliquid agendī causā.*

ii. With intransitive verbs, which have no passive (except when used impersonally), the gerundive construction cannot be used.†

iii. The various cases are used in the same way in the gerundive construction as in the gerund (607. i).

iv. With *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*, the gerundive in *-ndī* is used, without regard to either gender or number; as, *For the purpose of freeing themselves (or himself or herself): Suī liberandī causā* (not *suī liberandōrum* or *suī liberandae*).‡

612. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.—For the use of the gerundive as a predicate adjective with *sum*, to denote duty or necessity, see 348.

The expression is always passive, the agent, if expressed, being in the dative.§ The English equivalent is, however, constantly in the active. (See 354. *b.*)

i. Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally in this construction (556); as, *The soldiers had to fight: Militibus erat pugnandum.*

613. The accusative of the gerundive is used in predicative agreement with the object of certain verbs (chiefly verbs of *giving* and *arranging for*) to express *purpose*; as, *He gave him an army to lead: Exercitum dūcendum dedit. He arranged for the giving of hostages: Obsidēs dandōs cūrāvit.*

* Sometimes the gerundive is called the future participle passive.

† An exception is furnished by *ūtor, potlor, fruor*, and *fungor* (which in older Latin did govern the accusative); as, *The hope of taking the town: spēs potlundī oppidī.*

‡ The explanation seems to be that *suī* (like *meī, nostrī*, etc.), was in its origin the genitive of the neuter singular possessive; *suum* would mean *their* (or *his* or *her*) *personality* (or *self*).

§ But to avoid ambiguity *ab* and the ablative may be used.

THE PARTICIPLES.

614. For the various uses of the present and perfect participles, see 541 and 544.

The future participle active is used chiefly (*a*) to form (with *esse*) the future infinitive active in the accusative and infinitive construction, and (*b*) in the active periphrastic conjugation (348). It is but rarely used as an adjective or as a substantive (*futūrus* being the only common instance). In poetry and late prose the future participle is used to express intention or probability; as, *Vēnērunt pācem petitūri*: *They came to seek peace.*

615. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.—For the use of the future participle active as a predicate adjective with *sum* to express *intention*, *likelihood*, or *imminence*, see 348.

616. Notice the following various ways of rendering into Latin the English gerund in *-ing*:*

(*a*) As subject or direct object of a verb—by the infinitive (607. ii).

(*b*) After *on* or *after*—by the perfect participle or some equivalent (542, 543).

(*c*) After *before*—by *priusquam* or *antequam* (650).

(*d*) After *for the purpose of*—by *causā* and the genitive of the gerund or gerundive construction (444, 449).

(*e*) After *of* and other prepositions equivalent to *as regards* (586. ii), following verbal nouns and adjectives—by the genitive of the gerund or gerundive construction (444, 449).

(*f*) After *of*, *in*, *without* following negative verbs or phrases of *doubting*, *failing*, and *falling short*—by *quān* and the subjunctive (630).

(*g*) After *of* following verbs of *accusation* or *complaint*, or after *on the ground of*—by *quod* and the subjunctive (640. ii and iii).

(*h*) After *for* following verbs of *praise* or *blame*—by *quod* and the subjunctive (640. iii).

(*i*) After *for*, meaning *with a view to*—by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund or gerundive construction (444, 449).

(*j*) After *from* following verbs of *hindering*—by the present infinitive after *prohibeō* (518. i), or by *quān*, *quōminus* or *nē* and the subjunctive after other verbs (630, 631).

(*k*) After *to* following verbs of *objecting*—by *quān*, *quōminus* or *nē* and the subjunctive (630, 631).

* On the distinction between the gerund in *-ing* and the participle in *-ing* see page 301. fn.

617.

EXERCISE 16.

A.—1. While marching through the province, they are going to adopt the plan of sending cavalry in advance. 2. They do not think so large a number of hostages should have been required. 3. Fearing the danger, he intends to give this cohort to the centurion to lead back. 4. They preferred preventing the enemy from assembling to lay waste the province (these districts, this territory). 5. Caesar was about to lead out his forces with the object of pursuing the rearguard (of crushing the enemy). 6. In carrying on war, the children ought to be spared. 7. He caused two bridges to be built for the purpose of crossing the river and obtaining plunder. 8. Being unable to find a suitable harbour for landing, our men had to leap down into the water and approach the shore. 9. After driving back the cavalry, they were on the point of making an attack on the infantry. 10. All hope of seizing the town should not have been taken away. 11. They are desirous of persuading their neighbours not to set the example of seeking peace. (*See also 351, 454.*)

B.—1. After repairing the vessels, we are about to visit the winter quarters of all the legions. 2. The soldiers had to build thirty ships in eight days. 3. These things were of great service in launching the war vessels. 4. The army must assemble at this harbour for the purpose of setting out for the mainland. 5. Returning to the harbour, he found the ships launched and everything ready for transporting the beasts of burden. 6. He points out what has to be done (what he is going to do) for the purpose of satisfying Caesar. 7. On learning this, he had the legions assemble. 8. The winter is not sufficient for accomplishing these ends (*rēs*). 9. In fixing the penalty, he praised their quickness in bringing the hostages. 10. He was on the point of setting out for the purpose of laying waste the adjacent states. 11. Being desirous of finishing this business, he ordered the army to assemble. 12. The Treveri had to apologize and come to the councils. 13. Caesar should have left the legions in hither Gaul. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 1, 2.*)

Absent 1924
Present 1925

XVII. EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE AND TIME.

618. Expressions of place are denoted as follows:

- PLACE TO WHICH,* by the accusative with **ad** or **in**;
- PLACE FROM WHICH, by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**;
- PLACE WHERE, by the ablative with **in**.

— But with names of cities, towns, and small islands, and with **domus** (*home*) and **rūs** (*the country*), the prepositions are omitted, and *place where* is denoted by the locative (the survival of an old Latin case-form), which in the singular of the first and second declensions is identical with the genitive, and elsewhere with the ablative; as, *To Rome*: **Rōmam**. *From home*: **Domō**. *In Rome*: **Rōmae**. *In Athens*: **Athēnīs**.

i. The locatives of *domus* and *rūs* are *domī* and *rūrī*. (See also 592.)†

ii. With names of towns, etc., *ad* and *ab* are found (a) to denote *into the neighbourhood of* and *from the neighbourhood of*; (b) sometimes in contrast with each other in expressions of direction. *Ab* also is found after *longē* and verbs of distance.

iii. For the use of the dative in poetry to express the limit of motion, see 576. iii.

iv. In poetry the prepositions are freely omitted with any word denoting place.

v. The words *locus* and *pars* (and other nouns when modified by *tōtus* and sometimes by *medius*, *omnis*, or *cūctus*), may be used in the ablative without a preposition to denote the place *where*; as, *On suitable ground*: **Idōneō locō**. *Throughout the whole camp*: **Tōtis castrīs**.

vi. Often where English uses *in*, *motion towards* is implied, and Latin consequently uses the accusative; as, *They hid themselves in the woods*: **In silvās sē abdidērunt**. Verbs of placing, however, as *collocō* and *pōnō*, take the ablative with *in*.

* This construction is often called the accusative of the limit of motion.

† This locative is found also in the word **animī** (*in heart*) used with verbs and adjectives of feeling; as, *Sick at heart*: **Aeger animī**.

vii. For such expressions as *He came to the senate at Rome* (where *at Rome* is an adjectival phrase modifying *senate*), Latin has *Rōmam ad senātum vēnit* (where both expressions modify the verb). Similarly, *He came from the senate at Rome* is, *Rōmā ā senātū vēnit*.

viii. With *pars*, *latus*, *agmen*, *cornū*, *tergum*, and *frōns*, position (the direction in which or the side on which) is expressed by the ablative with *ab* (and in the case of *pars*, also with *ex*); as, *In front* : *Ā fronte*. *On one side* : *Ūnā ex parte*.

619. EXTENT OF SPACE is expressed by the accusative with verbs and with the adjectives *longus*, *altus*, and *lātus*. For examples, see 231.

i. With *absum* and *distō* the ablative also may be used, expressing measure of difference (598).

620. For the accusative denoting TIME HOW LONG (duration of time) and the ablative denoting TIME WHEN (point of time), see 159.

i. *How long before* and *how long after* are expressed by *ante* and *post* with either (a) the accusative or (b) the ablative of measure of difference (598); as, *A few days after* : *Post paucōs diēs*, or *Paucīs post diēbus*.*

ii. *How long ago* is expressed by *abhinc* and the accusative; *how old*, by the accusative of duration of time with *nātus*, meaning *born*.

iii. *Per* with the accusative emphasizes the idea of duration.

iv. *Time when* may also be denoted by prepositional phrases, such as, *sub noctem*, *at nightfall*; *dē nocte*, *at night*; by the ablative absolute; as, *initā aestate*, *at the beginning of summer*; *mē cōsule*, *in my consulship*; or by adverbs; as, *cotidiē*, *every day*; *postridiē*, *the next day*.

621. TIME WITHIN WHICH is expressed by the ablative, or by *intrā* and the accusative; as, *Within a few days he returned* : *Paucīs diēbus* (or *Intrā paucōs diēs*) *rediit*.

i. This ablative, especially with *tōtū*, may sometimes by inference express duration of time; as, *Tōtā nocte iērunt* : *They marched all night*. On the other hand, *during* and (with negatives) *for* may indicate time *within which*, not *time how long*; as, *They departed during the night* : *Noctū discessērunt*.

* With the accusative *ante* and *post* are prepositions; with the ablative, they are adverbs (equivalent to *antea* and *postea*).

to Rome - in Romam - in the country - ruri
from Rome - a Roma *at Carthage - Carthagini*
at Rome - Romae *in Carthage - Carthagine*

622.

EXERCISE 17.

A.—1. After waiting ^{in Italia} in Italy three months, he will return from ^{Roma} Rome to ^{Athenae} Athens at the beginning of the summer. 2. Four years before, a battle had been fought not far from the sea. 3. This river, he replied, was ^{sixty feet wide and about five feet deep} sixty feet wide and about five feet deep. 4. The enemy took up their position at midnight on open ground at the foot of a mountain eight miles from Caesar's camp. 5. They were ordered to leave home within three days and hide in the nearest woods. 6. He set out for the country at the beginning of spring and returned home the next year. 7. The battle was begun at dawn on the right wing. 8. He came from Gaul in the consulship of Crassus and Pompey, and dwelt (habito) for several years at Rome and Athens. 9. The same day, towards nightfall, he was informed that the enemy's forces were three miles distant from Rome (were about a mile from this town). 10. At the third hour, the enemy suddenly attacked our men on the exposed flank. 11. After finishing a march of twenty miles before noon, they waited in camp for several days. (See also 161, 234.)

B.—1. For a large part of the winter they had been under arms in the territories of the Treveri, not far from the forest. 2. The mainland is about twenty miles distant (absum) from these harbours. 3. A few days before, on Caesar's approach, they had hidden themselves in the midst of the forests. 4. Within two days all the leading men had assembled in Caesar's winter camp from the whole of Gaul. 5. In the consulship of Caesar I was returning from Rome to Spain. 6. During all these days they were preparing for war in Rome and the adjacent parts of Italy. 7. Their territories extend for many miles to the sea. 8. On two sides it touches this river. 9. He sent the cavalry in all directions. 10. On coming to Rome they point out what is being done in our camp. 11. On this day they had set out from the harbour for home. 12. The forest of Ardennes used to extend from the borders of this state to the river Rhine. (Caesar, B. G. 1. 1-3.)

two days after = *duobus post diebus*
 the day before = *tribus ante annis*

XVIII. IMPERATIVE. INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

623. COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS. — For the use of the present imperative to express commands and entreaties, and of *nōlī*, *nōlīte* (*be unwilling*) with the present infinitive to express prohibitions, see 464.

i. The future imperative is used in commands relating to the future in general (as in laws and precepts) or where the future time is distinctly specified. *Sciō* and *memini* regularly have the future imperative (*scītō* and *mementō*) instead of the present.

ii. Commands may also be expressed by (a) periphrases with *jubeō*, *petō*, *orō*, etc.; (b) *velim* (*I should like*), and *fac* or *cūrā* (*see to it, be sure*) with the present subjunctive, with or without *ut*; (c) the second person of the present subjunctive used indefinitely.

iii. Prohibitions may also be expressed by (a) *cavē*, (or, less commonly, *carē nē*, *vidē nē*, or *fac nē*), and the present subjunctive; (b) *nē* and the present or perfect subjunctive, but chiefly in familiar discourse; (c) in poetry, *nē* and the present imperative.

624. The subjunctive is used independently to express action (a) as willed (the volitive subjunctive, negative *nē*), (b) as desired (the optative subjunctive, negative *nē*), and (c) as conceivable (the potential subjunctive, negative *nōn*).

625. The VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE includes the following varieties:

(a) HORTATORY, in the first person of the present subjunctive, and

(b) JUSSIVE, in the third person of the present subjunctive; these both correspond to English verbal phrases with *let*. For examples see 465.

(c) DELIBERATIVE, in questions of appeal, where the subjunctive (commonly in the first person of the present or imperfect tenses) is used to appeal for direction, and

thus comes to express perplexity or surprise and indignation; as, *What was I to do? Quid facerem? Are we to yield to him? Huic cēdāmus?**

(d) **CONCESSIVE.** The present and the perfect subjunctive may be used to concede for the sake of argument, corresponding to an English clause introduced by *granting* (or *granted*) *that*.

626. For the use of the OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE to express wish or desire, see 466. The present tense is used to express wishes conceived as practicable; the imperfect and pluperfect to express wishes viewed as impossible of fulfilment in present and past time respectively. Such clauses may be preceded by *utinam*, regularly so in the case of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses; as, *Would that he were present: Utinam adesset. Would that he had been present: Utinam adfuisset.*

627. The POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE is used of present and past time, and is generally to be translated by *could*, *would*, or *should*. The following varieties are found:

(a) Modest expressions of wish or regret with *velim* or *vellem* and their compounds, followed either by the infinitive or by another subjunctive (of desire) as object; as, *I should like to know: Velim scire.*

(b) With the indefinite second person singular; as, *You (or one) would have thought: Putārēs.*

(c) In softened assertions or questions; as, *It would scarcely seem probable: Vix vērissimile videātur. Some one may say: Aliquis dicat.*

(d) In rhetorical questions (virtually equivalent to a negative statement); as, *Who could doubt? Quis dubitet? Who would ever have thought? Quis umquam arbitrārētur?*

i. The indicative rather than the potential subjunctive is used with *possum*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, with the passive periphrastic conjugation, and with such phrases as *aequum est*, *melius est*, *satis est*, *difficile est*; as, *I might have said more: Plūra poteram dicere. It would be tedious to tell everything: Longum est omnia nārāre.* (Compare 560. ii.)†

* All questions which do not really ask for information but imply their own answer are known as *Rhetorical Questions*. (See also 627. d.) Such questions may also have the indicative mood; as, *Who doubts? Quis dubitat?*

† Latin emphasizes the fact of possibility, duty, etc.; English suggests the failure in realization.

628.

EXERCISE 18.

A.—1. Advance towards the shore; do not despair of safety. 2. Let us not take to flight; let us withstand the might of the enemy. 3. Would that men of such valour were not eager for a revolution. 4. May you not suffer defeat. 5. Fortify (defend, attack, move) the camp. 6. What was I to say? Who would have believed me? 7. Let all the states give hostages and be faithful to the Roman people. 8. Remember that you are all free; do not forget the wrong-doings of the barbarians. 9. It would have been better to be killed than to become slaves. 10. One would have thought that the cavalry did not wish to be recalled. 11. Let us set out at once and visit these islands. 12. Who could endure (patior) that all hope of freedom should be taken away? 13. Would that he would allow (had allowed) us to march through the province. 14. I should like you to inform me at once of his departure. 15. If they do not wish to be put to death, let them lay down their arms. 16. Do not give the enemy an opportunity of withdrawing. (*See also 468.*)

B.—1. Let him bring two hundred hostages with him. 2. Come to me with all your sons. 3. May we find everything ready for setting out. 4. Do not fear these uprisings. 5. Would that the ships had not set out. 6. You could have learned from what place he would set out. 7. Who would suppose it was of great importance? 8. Remain loyal; do not be deterred from this plan. 9. Let us return to the point from which we set out. 10. Would that Caesar were not absent. 11. It would have been easy (facilis) to compel them to assemble. 12. Let us take the rest of the hostages with us. 13. Tell us, Caesar, why you are spending (are going to spend, have spent) the summer in this harbour. 14. What were we to say? Who would be willing (volō) to be left as a hostage? 15. Let everything be ^{made} ready for war. 16. Do not be of an unfriendly disposition towards him. 17. May Caesar's influence among them not be lessened. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 4, 5.*)

XIX. VERBS OF FEARING. ~~USES OF QUĪN AND QUŌMINUS.~~

629. After verbs of fearing and such phrases as **metus est**, **periculum est**, *that* and *lest* are translated by **nē**, and *that not* by **ut** or **nē nōn**, followed by the subjunctive, the present being used after the primary tenses, and the imperfect after the secondary tenses; as, *I fear that he will do this* (or *I fear lest he do this*): **Vereor nē haec faciat.** *I feared (that) he would not do this*: **Verēbar ut** (or **nē nōn**) **haec faceret.**

i. To translate the English infinitive after the verb *fear*, Latin uses the complementary infinitive; as, *I fear to do this*: **Vereor haec facere.**

630. Verbs of *hindering* and *objecting* when negated, and negative verbs and phrases of *doubting*, *failing*, and *falling short*, are followed by **quīn** and the subjunctive to represent either a clause introduced by *that*, or the gerund in *-ing* with a preposition (especially *from*, *to*, *of*, *in*, and *without*).

With **quīn** the present subjunctive is used after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary tenses; as, *They cannot be restrained from fighting*: **Retinērī nōn possunt quīn pūgnent.** *They did not object to coming*: **Nōn recūsābant quīn venīrent.** *There was no doubt that they were* (or *of their being*) *most powerful*: **Nōn erat dubium quīn plūrimū possent.** *We must not delay in setting out*: **Nōn cunctandum est quīn proficiscāmur.** *He let no day pass without writing*: **Nūllum diem intermīsīt quīn scriberet.**

i. Such verbs and phrases include (a) *deterreō*, *impediō*, *contineō*, *retineō*, *obstō*, *temperō* (all meaning *hinder* or *restrain*); (b) *recūsō* (*object*); (c) *nōn dubitō* (*doubt*), *nōn est dubium*; (d) *facere nōn possum* (*I cannot help*, *I cannot but*), *nōn fieri potest* (*it is impossible that . . . not*),* *haud multum abest* (*little is lacking, be within a little of*), *intermittō* and *pruetermittō* (*omit*, *let . . . go by*), *cunctor* (*delay*).

* *Ut* is used instead of **quīn** with **nōn fieri potest** when no negative idea follows.

ii. Where, instead of a negative, we find *vix* or *aeqrē* (*scarcely*) or a rhetorical question which is a virtual negative (625. fn.), the same construction is used.

iii. *Prohibeō* regularly takes the present infinitive (518. i), as *dubitō* (when meaning *hesitate*) and *cunctor* usually do, and as *nōn recūsō* may do.

iv. For *quīn*, meaning *who not*, after *nēmō est*, etc., see 530. ii.

631. The verbs of *hindering* and *objecting* which when negated take *quīn*, are followed, when not negated, by *nē* and the subjunctive; and, whether negated or not, they may also take *quōminus* and the subjunctive. The tenses used are the same as with *quīn*; as, *They hinder the enemy from crossing*: *Hostēs impediunt nē* (or *quōminus*) *trāseant*. *They did not object to coming*: *Nōn recūsābant quōminus venīrent*.

632. Notice the values of *would* in the following sentences, and the different ways of translating it into Latin:

(a) *I thought he would come*: *Arbitrābar eum ventūrum esse* (327).

(b) *I asked what they would do*: *Rogāvī quid factūrī essent* (534).

(c) *He would not do this*: *Nōluit haec facere* (403) or *Negāvit sē haec factūrum* (327).

(d) *If he were alive, he would be present*: *Sī viveret, adesset* (477).

(e) *If you should do this, he would come*: *Sī haec faciās, veniat* (478. 2).

(f) *Would that he would come!* *Utinam veniat!* (626).

(g) *Would that he had come!* *Utinam vēnisset!* (626).

(h) *It would be better to do this*: *Melius est haec facere* (627. i).

(i) *Who would venture to do this?* *Quis haec facere audeat?* (627. d).

(j) *I was afraid he would come*: *Verēbar nē venīret* (629).

(k) *Whenever they came, he would do this*: *Ubi vēnerant, haec faciēbat* (678. b).

1, 4, 6, 9, 10, 11, 12, 15 B1, 2, 5

633.

EXERCISE 19.

A.—1. He feared that the enemy might attack our men in the rear. 2. There was no doubt that the soldiers were hesitating to leap down. 3. Nothing hinders you from finishing the work. 4. I fear the soldiers will not be able to take the place by storm. 5. They promised not to object to our adopting this plan. 6. ~~Caesar was afraid that they would renew (were about to renew)~~ ^{Caesar was} the war. 7. The Gauls could scarcely be deterred from hurling missiles at our men. 8. Who could doubt that the Romans are preparing (are going to prepare) for war. 9. There was great danger of the enemy's attacking the camp. 10. They believed that Caesar could prevent (prohibeō) the Germans from bringing over a large number of men. 11. There was no one but feared for the safety of the leader. 12. There is no one who does not know that we feared to disembark (feared we should have to disembark). 13. The soldiers objected (did not object) to pitching the camp. 14. Several vessels were kept (teneō) from reaching the same harbour. 15. We fear that he will be unwilling to treat with us concerning peace.

B.—1. They fear that they will be taken over to Britain. 2. They were afraid lest they should not gain their request. 3. We urged that no one should hinder our sending envoys. 4. There was no doubt that the Aedui were unaccustomed to sailing. 5. We feared the Aedui would feel this keenly. 6. There is no one but sees that Gaul is being robbed of her chief men. 7. It is not without reason that Caesar fears to prevent (prohibeō) my remaining. 8. Who would object to the royal power being conferred on Dumnorix? 9. The others objected to this being reported to Caesar. 10. We fear that they will not venture to sail. 11. Is there not fear that they will be put to death? 12. He begged (he feared, he hoped) that Caesar would not object to his remaining. 13. He hopes to hinder Caesar from sailing. 14. They were afraid that all hope would be taken away. 15. We fear (we deny, we do not doubt) that this is Caesar's design. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 6.*)

XX. DUTY, NECESSITY, POSSIBILITY, PERMISSION.

1 634. DUTY or OBLIGATION is expressed most frequently by the passive periphrastic conjugation (348), but may also be expressed by *dēbeō* with the present infinitive, or *oportet* (impersonal) with a subject accusative and the present infinitive;* as, *Caesar ought to come*: *Caesar venīre dēbet*, or *Caesarem venīre oportet*.

i. The present infinitive is retained with all tenses of *dēbeō* and *oportet*, which themselves change according to the time referred to; as, *Caesar ought to have come*: *Caesar venīre dēbēbat*, or *Caesarem venīre oportuit*.

2 635. NECESSITY is expressed most frequently by the passive periphrastic conjugation (348), but may also be expressed by *necesse est* with the dative† and the present infinitive;* as, *All men must die*: *Omnibus necesse est morī*.

i. *Necesse est* expresses rather what is inevitable or indispensable than what is obligatory or binding. With the verb *sum* (which can have no passive periphrastic) *necesse est* alone of the two constructions can be used.

3 636. POSSIBILITY or ABILITY is expressed by *possum* with the present infinitive; for examples, see 377.

i. The present infinitive is retained with all tenses of *possum* (compare 634. i); as, *We could (or might) have been useful friends*: *Poterāmus esse ūtilēs amīci*.

4 637. PERMISSION is expressed by *licet* with the dative† and the present infinitive;* as, *You may depart (or you are allowed to depart)*: *Licet vōbīs discēdere*.

i. The present tense is retained with all tenses of *licet* (compare 634. i); as, *You might have departed*: *Licēbat vōbīs discēdere*.

* The impersonal verbs *licet*, *necesse est*, and *oportet* may also take a subjunctive clause as subject; as, *You ought to do this*: *Hac faciās oportet*. With *necesse est* this subjunctive often has *ut*.

† A predicate noun or adjective referring to the dative with *necesse est* *licet* agrees with it in case; as, *We may be free*: *Nōbīs licet esse liberīs*.

638.

EXERCISE 20.

A.—1. You should reply that you are unable to restrain your friends. 2. We must not wait longer for the rest of the legion; we must set out at once. 3. They asked to be allowed to march through the province. 4. He was afraid this might not happen. 5. If Gaul ought to be free, the Roman people cannot allow the Germans to cross the Rhine. 6. In order that they might approach the enemy, the soldiers had to advance into the waves. 7. You might have left the camp at dawn. 8. The guide could not be persuaded to remain longer. 9. The tribunes should have secured supplies. 10. The Germans may be slaves if they wish, but the Belgians must be free. 11. The villages must be burned and all the cattle driven into the woods. 12. We feared we should have to make war. 13. In order that we may the more easily withstand the attack, the third legion must be sent to our support. 14. Who could believe that it was impossible for the Gauls to defend their own territories? 15. Our fields ought not to have been laid waste in sight of the Roman army. (*See also 351, 380.*)

B.—1. We must discover his plans; we cannot discover their plans. 2. Part of the cavalry ought to be sent, in order that he may be recalled. 3. He should have been brought back and put to death. 4. You could have pursued him. 5. The cavalry are not allowed (are not able) to return. 6. He asked whether he might depart. 7. He fears that the wind may hinder his sailing. 8. May they not injure the state! May they not offer violence? 9. They decide that their departure should be postponed. 10. It is impossible for me, in Caesar's absence, to retain Dumnorix. 11. We feared we should not get suitable weather. 12. Everything had to be disregarded. 13. He was injuring the state by whatever means he could. 14. He kept crying out 'the state must be free'. 15. The Aedui ought to have returned (*translate in the three possible ways*). 16. Who could suppose that orders had been given that he should be put to death? (*Caesar, B. G. V. 7.*)

Case: Quia + Ind.
Cum + Subj.

Uses of Cum. 404 LATIN SYNTAX AND COMPOSITION.

Thence = Cum + Subj.
XXI. CAUSAL SENTENCES. USES OF Cum.

When... in Just 4 preterite = Cum + Ind.
639. Causal sentences are introduced by *quia* or (less frequently) *quia*, because, for the reason that; *quoniam* or *quandō*, seeing that; *cum* or less frequently *quod*, since, inasmuch as, *quod*, *quod*, meaning since.

i. *Cum* clauses (as explaining the situation and attendant circumstances) usually precede the principal clause; *quod* clauses (as emphasizing the reason) generally follow 650. *Id.*

Present. *Propter* 9 Perfect & Present
Past. *Propter* 9 Perfect & Present

640. *Quod* takes the indicative to express a reason advanced by the writer (or speaker) himself; the subjunctive to quote some other person's reason; as, *They asked for aid, because they were hard pressed by the enemy: Auxilium petēbant, quod graviter ab hostibus premēbantur*, if the sentence is intended to state the reason why, according to the writer, the request was made; but *premerentur* would be used to quote the grounds which were advanced in making the request.

i. *Quia* and *quoniam* are similarly used, but chiefly with the indicative.

ii. *Quod* with the subjunctive may often be rendered *on the ground that*, or *alleging that*. The subjunctive does not cast doubt on the reason given, or refuse to vouch for its accuracy; it simply quotes what another puts forward as his reason, without expressing any opinion on the question, and is, in fact, identical with the subjunctive of virtual indirect discourse (672).

iii. *Quod* is commonly used after verbs of *accusation*, *complaint*, *praise*, and *blame*, and after verbs of *emotion* (*thanks*, *joy*, *grief*, *anger*, etc.); the indicative and subjunctive are used according to the distinction drawn above (the subjunctive being usually required); as, *He was accused of being unfriendly: Accūsātus est quod esset inimicus*.

iv. *Quod* with the indicative is often preceded by *propterea* (for this reason), *eā dē causā*, or by *eō* and *hōc* with comparatives.

v. *Nōn quod* (or *nōn quō*) is used with the subjunctive to reject a suggested reason, meaning *not because* (as one might suppose). So also *quam quod* (or *quam quō*) after an actual or virtual comparative.

vi. For the illogical *quod diceret*, see 672. i.

querere, queri, questus sum - complain

vii. *Quod* with the indicative is used in noun clauses with the force of *that*, *the fact that*, *in that*, or, in noun clauses, with the value of an adverbial accusative (571. i), *as to the fact that*; as, *There was added the fact that they were in distress: Accēdebat quod laborābant.*

641. *Cum*, with causal force, meaning *since* or *as*, takes the subjunctive. See 397, last example.

642. *Cum*, meaning *whenever* or *when*, in clauses denoting indefinite repetition, takes the *indicative*.*

When, as is usually the case, the action of the *cum* clause precedes that of the main verb, the perfect and pluperfect tenses are used (676. b). The main verb is regularly present or imperfect indicative; as, *Whenever our men attacked, the enemy fell back: Cum nostrī impetum fēcerant, hostēs pedem referēbant. Whenever they wage war, they fight bravely: Cum bellum gerunt, fortiter pūgnant.*

643. (a) *Cum*, meaning *when*, referring to present or future time, takes the indicative. For the frequent use of the future perfect representing an English present, see 224.

(b) *Cum* meaning *when*, referring to past time, takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. For examples, see 397.

644. Besides the uses described in 642 and 643. a, *cum* takes the indicative in the following cases:

(a) If identity of action or mere coincidence of time is expressed; as, *In yielding this, he yields everything: Cum hōc concēdit, omnia concēdit. When Caesar came to Gaul, Ariovistus was king of the Germans: Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, Ariovistus rēx erat Germānōrum.*

(b) If *cum* introduces a clause which logically would be the principal one. The principal clause often has *jam*, *vix*, or *nōndum*; as, *They were already departing, when suddenly they saw the enemy: Jam discēdebant, cum repente cōspiciunt hostēs.* (This usage is sometimes called *cum inversum*.)

(c) After *cum primum* meaning *as soon as*, usually with the perfect.

* Other words similarly used are *quotiens*, *quotienscumque*, *ut*, *ubi*, and *quando*.

645.

EXERCISE 21.

A.—1. We are unable to resist the enemy because we do not dare to leap down into the sea. 2. As we were unable to resist the enemy, we did not dare to disembark. 3. When they give up their arms, he will give back the hostages. 4. When (as soon as) our men discovered the extent of the danger, they immediately took to flight. 5. Whenever our men began to fall back, the enemy would attempt to surround them. 6. He asks to be left in the camp, on the ground that he has no experience in warfare. 7. When the ships were approaching the harbour, suddenly a great storm arose. 8. The ships were already approaching the island, when suddenly a great storm arose. 9. Whenever our men attack, the enemy retire. 10. Since he is aware that the Gauls are eager for a revolution, he is going to set out at once. 11. In making these promises, we are taking thought for the whole state. 12. Because they had made war without cause, he demanded hostages. 13. He demanded hostages on the ground that they had made war without cause. (*See also 260, 400.*)

B.—1. When they were coming in sight of the camp, he began to resist. 2. Whenever the wind began to blow, they begged Caesar to return. 3. When he finds this out, Caesar will keep the leading men with him because he is afraid to leave them in Gaul. 4. When (cum) this was reported, he perceived that all hope had been destroyed. 5. Since Dumnorix cannot be kept loyal, Caesar has determined to take him over to Britain. 6. Whenever Caesar is absent, they disregard his authority. 7. He keeps calling out that he must not be killed, because he is a free man. 8. When they found this out, they were greatly annoyed because the royal power had been conferred on Dumnorix. 9. When he offers violence, his folly goes too far. 10. As orders had been given not to bring him back, they had not ventured to pursue him. 11. When they surround him, they will put him to death, on the charge of being eager for supreme power. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 6, 7.*)

XXII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

646. WHEN, AFTER, AS SOON AS, are expressed by

(a) Cum or cum primum (see 643, 644).

(b) Postquam, posteaquam,* ut, ubi, simul ac (or simul atque) with the indicative (usually in narrative the perfect); as, *After Caesar reached that place, he determined to cross the Rhine: Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit. When they had been informed of his approach, they sent envoys to him: Ubi dē ejus adventū certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. As soon as they perceived this, they began to take up arms: Quae simul atque cōspexērunt, arma capere coepērunt.*

i. This idea may also be expressed by participial phrases in agreement or in the ablative absolute (541, 542, 546).

ii. For *when*, meaning *whenever*, see 642.

647. WHILE, meaning *within the time that*, is expressed by dum with the present indicative, even when the reference is to past time. For examples see 273.

i. This idea may also be expressed by the present participle (273) or by cum and the imperfect subjunctive (643. b). The latter often expresses contrast (*while* meaning *whereas*).

648. WHILE, meaning *as long as*, is expressed by dum, quoad or quamdiū† and the indicative; as, *While (or as long as) he could, he resisted: Quoad potuit, restitit.*

i. The tense of the two clauses will usually be the same.

ii. For *dum*, meaning *so long as, provided that*, where the temporal force no longer appears, see 565.

* Postquam and posteaquam are often written as two words, in which case post is sometimes treated as a preposition; sometimes also quam is used for postquam.

† Dōnec also is used in poetry and late prose, often with the subjunctive.

649. UNTIL is expressed by dum or quoad.*

(a) The indicative, usually the perfect, is used (chiefly with quoad) to denote mere limit of time; as, *Nor did they put an end to the pursuit, until they drove the enemy headlong*: *Neque finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad hostēs praecipitēs ēgērunt*.

(b) The subjunctive, present or imperfect, is used (chiefly with dum) to denote expectation or end in view; as, *He waited until the ships should assemble* (or, more freely, *he waited for the ships to assemble*): *Dum nāvēs convenīrent, exspectāvit*.

i. For *not until*, equivalent to *not before*, see 650. ii.

650. BEFORE is expressed by antequam or priusquam.†

(a) The indicative, usually the perfect, is used to denote mere priority of date or limit of time; as, *I was born a year before he died*: *Annō antequam est mortuus, nātus sum*.

(b) The subjunctive, present or imperfect, is used to denote the end in view (something anticipated or prevented) as, *Before they should* (or *could*) *recover from their panic, he led his army across*: *Priusquam sē ex terrōre recipērent, exercitum trānsdūxit*.

i. *Priusquam* is commoner than *antequam*, especially with the subjunctive.

ii. To express *not before*, meaning *not until*, both indicative and subjunctive are found, but after secondary tenses the perfect indicative is preferred, expressing an actual fact in narrative; as, *And they did not cease their flight before they reached the river Rhine*: *Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt*.

iii. The pluperfect subjunctive is occasionally found after *priusquam* or *antequam*, when it is in indirect discourse (actual or virtual) for the perfect or future perfect indicative of the direct.

* *Dōnec* also is used, but not often in the best prose.

† *Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written as two words, especially after a negative. See the example in 650. ii. (Compare 646. fn.)

651.

EXERCISE 22.

A.—1. After they had collected larger forces, they attacked the camp. 2. While larger forces were being collected, the camp was attacked. 3. He attacked the camp before the enemy could collect larger forces. 4. He did not attack the camp until he had collected larger forces. 5. As soon as the reinforcements came in sight a shout was raised. 6. For that reason I shall resist as long as I am able. 7. The enemy resisted bravely until they saw our cavalry approaching. 8. He should have waited until the cavalry returned. 9. While this was taking place, it was reported that the danger was increasing. 10. Before he reached the harbour, the cavalry had set sail. 11. After they had been informed of our approach, they hid in the nearest woods. 12. Before they should learn what was taking place, he crossed the river. 13. While he was waiting a few days to get supplies, frequent despatches were received. 14. They resolved to withstand the might of the enemy until the cavalry should come to their aid. (*See also 276.*)

P. 9 B.—1. After Dumnorix had departed for home, Caesar ordered the cavalry to bring him back. 2. He must be restrained until he is willing (*volō*) to obey. 3. As long as he disregards Caesar's authority, I shall take care that he does no harm to the state. 4. As soon as he began to offer violence, they determined that he must be put to death. 5. He was not put to death until he resisted the cavalry. 6. Before Caesar could get suitable weather, the enemy had learned his design. 7. While this was taking place, two thousand cavalry were guarding the harbour. 8. They held on their course until the wind fell at sunset. 9. Before he reached the shore, he learned that large forces had assembled. 10. The island was reached before the enemy's forces should assemble. 11. While the wind blows, sailing will be hindered. 12. While the war-ships were assembling, we withdrew from the higher ground. 13. Caesar should have put off his departure until he learned in what part of the island was the best landing-place. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 7, 8.*)

B, 2, 5 6 7 9 10

XXIII. PERSONAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, REFLEXIVE, AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

652. For the personal pronouns, *ego* and *tū*, see 267.

i. The third personal pronoun is supplied by *is*, *hic*, or the coordinating relative *quī* (667) or, if emphatic, by *ille*.

ii. *Nōs* is often used for *ego* (compare our 'editorial we'), but *vōs* should never be used for *tū*. So, too, *noster* is used for *meus*.

iii. In the partitive sense the genitives *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used; in the objective sense, the genitives *meī*, *tuī*, *sui*, *nostrī*, and *vestrī*; in the possessive and subjective senses, the adjectives *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*.

653. For the demonstrative pronouns, *hic*, *ille*, and *is*, see 293.

i. *Hic* is often used of something just mentioned or just about to be mentioned; as, *The character of this ground was as follows*: *Hūjus loci haec erat nātūra*.

ii. *Is* sometimes has the force of *tālis*, *such*.

iii. *Et is* and *neque is* are used to emphasize; as, *One cohort, and that too a small one*: *Ūna cohors et ea parva*.

iv. Where English uses *that of* or *those of* to avoid repeating a noun, Latin uses no pronouns, but the noun is either repeated or understood.

v. *Ille* may call attention to something as famous or well known; as, *The famous Alexander the Great*: *Māgnus ille Alexander*.

vi. *Ille* is often used, especially in the neuter *illud*, to point forward with emphasis to a following clause.

vii. A very common use of *ille* is to indicate a change of subject, where the new subject has been referred to in the preceding clause. In such cases it may be rendered by an emphatic *he* or *they*, or by *the other*, *the enemy*, *the latter*, or some similar phrase.

viii. *Hic* meaning *the latter* is often opposed to *ille*, *the former*.

654. *Iste*, *that* (the demonstrative of the second person*), denotes something near or belonging to the person addressed; as, *Those affairs of yours* (or *Those affairs you mention*): *Istae rēs*. It thus acquires at times a contemptuous force.

* Similarly, *hic* is the demonstrative of the first person, *ille* of the third.

655. For the pronouns *īdem* and *ipse*, see 307.

i. *Īdem* often has the force of *also* or *likewise*; as, *We wish brave men also to be good*: *Virōs fortēs eōsdem bonōs esse volumus.*

ii. *Ipse* often has the force of *very* or *mere*; as, *They were fighting on the very banks of the river*: *In ipsīs flūminis ripīs proeliābantur.*

iii. The genitive of *ipse* (with or without the possessive pronominal adjectives) may be used as the equivalent of *own*; as, *My own fault*: *Mea ipsius culpa.* *Their own tongue*: *Ipsōrum lingua.* (See 507. fn.)

iv. *Ipse*, when used to emphasize a reflexive pronoun, usually agrees with the subject rather than with the reflexive; as, *They kill themselves*: *Sē ipsī interficiunt.*

v. Occasionally, in indirect discourse, *ipse* is used for *sē*, either for the sake of emphatic contrast, or when *sē* would be ambiguous.

656. For the reflexive pronoun *sē*, see 278.

The reflexive *sē* is to be carefully distinguished from (a) the intensive or emphatic pronoun *ipse* and (b) the third personal pronoun referring to others than the subject of the verb.

i. When *sē* refers to the subject of the clause to which it belongs, it is called the 'direct reflexive'; but when, as often, *sē* belongs to a subordinate clause and refers to the subject of the principal clause, it is called the 'indirect reflexive'. In subordinate clauses expressing a thought, statement, wish, command, or question, the reflexive, as a rule, is indirect, referring to the one who thinks, commands, etc., but often, where there is no ambiguity, it may refer to the subject of its own verb. The two uses may even be found together; as, *They asked the king not to keep Hannibal with him, but to surrender him to them*: *Ab rēge petēbant nē Hannibalem sēcum habēret sibi que dēderet.*

ii. For the reflexives of the first and second persons, see 277. fn.

iii. For *inter sē*, meaning *each other* or *one another*, see 662. ii.

iv. The passive voice of some verbs is used with reflexive force; as, *They exercise themselves*: *Exercentur* or *Sē exercent.*

657. For the possessive pronouns *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, see 280, 281.

i. *Suus*, like *sē* (656. i), is used with both direct and indirect reflexive reference. When not reflexive, *his* and *their* are to be rendered by *eius* and *eōrum*.

ii. The personal pronouns often express what is characteristic of a person; as, *By his own peculiar methods*: *Suis artibus.*

EXERCISE 23.

March 10⁴ 1-10 658.
 A.—1. The enemy had hidden their own forces in these same woods. 2. Caesar had these two legions with him at that time. 3. To these he made the same answer, that he would grant them their freedom. 4. He himself put you in charge of us; he put you yourself in charge of them. 5. I set out with you, but he returned to his own territories. 6. After these matters had been determined, war suddenly broke out in the province itself. The cause of this war was as follows. 7. To this very lieutenant they surrendered themselves and all their possessions. 8. We have been persuaded not to surrender to you. 9. Are you willing to join us? 10. For the same reason, he feared our men would be a great hindrance to all of you. 11. Our cavalry, after encouraging one another, joined battle with the enemy. The latter at once betook themselves to their comrades. 12. The height of this mound seems to me to be greater than that of the wall itself. 13. The former had encamped on the bank of this same river; the latter were fortifying their own camp. (*See also 270, 284, 296, 310.*)

B.—1. He sent all of you with me. 2. For the same reasons he does not fear for himself. 3. He has left you to guard this place (this camp). 4. You have been put in charge of us. 5. I learned that the enemy had hidden themselves and all their possessions in these same woods. 6. In that place our men caught sight of the enemy's camp. These latter had begun to blockade the very entrances. 7. During these days the soldiers of this legion (of these legions, of those cohorts) will encamp in the same place. 8. On the same night they found out that their own vessel had been wrecked. 9. They announced that they had not been able to catch sight of those who were fleeing. 10. These same men had come from those who had fought with us. 11. These sailors reported to him that the nature of that place was as follows. 12. He himself forbade my advancing with him to that river. 13. You have repulsed the enemy, we shall prevent them from fleeing. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 9, 10.*)

XXIV. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

659. For the translation of *any* by *quis*, *quisquam* or *ullus*, and *quīvis*, see 457.

i. Instead of *nōn* followed by *quisquam* or *ullus*, Latin prefers *nēmō*, *nihil*, and *nūllus*; as, *They did not give any opportunity: Nūllam facultātem dabant.* On the other hand, instead of *et* followed by *nēmō*, *nihil*, or *nūllus*, Latin prefers *neque* followed by *quisquam* or *ullus*; as, *And they gave no opportunity: Neque ūllam facultātem dabant.*

ii. *Quilibet* is used with the same force as *quīvis*.

660. For the translation of *some* by *aliquis*, *nōnnūllī*, and *quīdam*, see 458.

i. *Quispiam* has the force of *aliquis*, but is much rarer.

ii. *Nesciō quis* means *some one or other* unknown to the speaker; often it implies contempt; as, *He is bringing somebody or other with him; Dūcit nesciō quem sēcum.* *Nesciō quis* in this sense is treated as a single word, and not as introducing an indirect question. Similarly, *nesciō quō modō* or *nesciō quō pactō*, *somehow or other*.

iii. *Sunt quī* with the subjunctive (530) means *there are some who*.

661. For the translation of *each* by *quisque* and *uterque*, see 459.

i. With pronouns, *quisque* and *uterque* are used substantively, taking the partitive genitive; but with nouns they are used adjectively.

ii. With superlatives and ordinal numerals *quisque* has the force of *every*; as, *Every man of noble birth: Nōbilissimus quisque.*

iii. *Utrique*, as a plural substantive, means *both parties, both sides*.

662. For the translation of *other* by *alius*, *alter*, *cēterī*, and *reliquī*, see 206.

i. In the same clause *alius* may be repeated in a different case, or accompanied by a derivative adverb (e.g., *aliūs, aliter*), with the meaning of *one . . . one, another . . . another*, or (in the plural) *some . . . one, others . . . another*; as, *Alii aliam in partem ferēbantur: Some were carried in one direction, others in another.*

ii. *One another*, or *each other*, is usually rendered by *inter* with the reflexive pronouns; as, *They fight with one another: Inter sē pūgnant;* but it may also be rendered by *alius* (or *alter*) repeated.

iii. After *alius* or *aliter* (and similarly after *contrā*), *ac* or *atque* is used to introduce a comparison (*other than*).

663.

EXERCISE 24.

A.—1. Nor did anyone see ^{quosdam} certain of our men leaping down from the other ship. 2. He saw there would be some opportunity of making an attack from both flanks. 3. Another plan must be adopted if any loss (any defeat) is suffered. 4. Scarcely anyone (any cohort) could be persuaded to wait for the others. 5. Some thought they could withstand any forces of the enemy without any danger. 6. They promised not to send any reinforcements. 7. If we capture any of (ex) the chief men, the rest will at once surrender. 8. Even if some portion has been taken, the rest of the town can easily be defended. 9. From a certain (each, the other, another) cohort we have lost some centurions. 10. Some will not venture to do anything, others are ready to endure anything. 11. The enemy were advancing, some from one direction, others from another. 12. Lest anything more serious should happen, he gave orders to all that each should return to his own home. 13. He trusted both chiefs, the one because he had long been faithful to him, the other because of (ob) many other reasons. (*See also 462.*)

B.—1. Scarcely any ships have been lost, but some few must be repaired. 2. Each ship should be drawn up, lest we lose any. 3. He put a certain Labienus in charge of the other legion; he had been put in charge of a certain legion. 4. If any ship was lost, he used to order another to be built. 5. He wrote that some were unwilling (nōlō) to build any ships, and that he had not learned anything else (alius). 6. Some said that anyone could see this, others will not say anything. 7. Others said that some place (some workmen) should be chosen. 8. If he summons any workmen, they will be ordered to repair the other vessels. 9. Scarcely any one had learned that a garrison was being left for both camps. 10. He orders the one legion to remain there, the other to make war. 11. ~~We~~ did not order any (the other, certain, some, both) legions to return. 12. Some one has said that there is timber in each part of the other island. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 11, 12.*)

XXV. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

664. For the relative pronoun *quī* and its agreement with its antecedent, see 255 and 510.

i. When two relatives, co-ordinate with each other, would be in different cases, sometimes the second relative is replaced by a demonstrative, or (if it would have been in the nominative or the accusative) is omitted.

ii. Where the same preposition would be used with both antecedent and relative, it is regularly omitted with the relative.

665. The relative is normally followed by the indicative,* but it may also be followed by the subjunctive when used to introduce clauses of *purpose* (388), clauses of *characteristic* (530), and also clauses of *cause* or *reason* and clauses of *concession*; as, *The enemy, who (or inasmuch as they) suspected nothing, had laid aside their arms: Hostēs, quī nihil suspicārentur, arma dēposuerant. On the seventh day Cicero, who (or although he) had been keeping the soldiers in the camp, sent five cohorts to forage: Cicerō, quī militēs in castrīs continuisset, septimō diē quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum mittit.*

i. For relative clauses in the subjunctive when put in indirect discourse, see 670.

666. The following peculiarities in the antecedent are of common occurrence :

(a) The antecedent is often omitted, especially if it would be the nominative or accusative of *is*; as, *He sent men to find out: Misit quī cōgnōscerent. Those who had fled: Quī fūgerant.*

(b) The antecedent is often incorporated into the relative clause:

i. Where the relative clause precedes; as, *He used the timber of the ships which had been wrecked: Quae afflictæ erant nāvēs, eārum materiā ūtēbātur.*

ii. When the antecedent is an appositive; as, *They inhabit Kent, a district which is on the coast: Cantium incolunt, quæ regio maritima est.*

* The indicative is regularly found also after relative adverbs, such as *unde, ubi, quō, ut*, relative adjectives such as *quālis, quantus*, and indefinite relatives such as *quisquis* and *quicumque*.

(c) The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause, especially the words *pars*, *rēs*, *locus*, and *diēs*; as, *In the direction towards which*: *In eā parte quam in partem.*

(d) The substance of a sentence may be referred to parenthetically by *quod* or *id quod*.

667. THE CO-ORDINATING RELATIVE. *Quī* is often used at the beginning of a sentence to introduce, not a subordinate clause, but a *new independent sentence*; as, *For this reason the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls*: *Quā dē causā Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt.* *Having carried out these plans, Caesar set out for Gaul*: *Quibus rēbus cōfectīs, Caesar in Galliam profectus est.* The connection with the preceding words is thus indicated more clearly than it would have been by a personal or demonstrative pronoun such as English uses.

i. The relative may even take the place of a personal or demonstrative pronoun in a subordinate adverbial clause at the beginning of a new sentence; as, *When they perceived this, they began to close the gates*: *Quod cum vidissent, portās claudere coepērunt.*

668. The relative pronoun *as* in correlative sentences is represented by several words, according to the antecedent. *Īdem* is followed by *quī*, or by *ac* (atque); *tālis*, *tantus*, and *tot*,* by *quālis*, *quantus*, and *quot* respectively; as, *He left the same forces as before*: *Eāsdem cōpiās quās ante reliquit.* *He will advance as far as he can*: *Tantum prōgrediētur quantum poterit.*

i. For *as many* (*large, quickly, etc.*) *as possible*, expressed by *quam* and the superlative, see 249. Often the proper form of *possum* is added; as, *They gather as many ships as possible*: *Quam plurimās possunt nāvēs cōgunt.*

ii. The antecedents *tālis*, *tantus*, and *tot* are often omitted before their relative. (Compare 666. a.)

* *Tālis* means *such, of such a kind*; *tantus*, *of such a size, as great, as much*; *tot* (like *quot*, indeclinable) *as many*.

669.

EXERCISE 25.

A.—1. When this was done, the ships (the cavalry) which he had procured were ordered to assemble as quickly as possible. 2. These allow the prisoners whom they have spared to go in whatever direction they wish. 3. On learning these facts, they fixed a day on which all were to assemble. 4. For this reason they put to death as many as possible of those whom they believed to be eager for a revolution. 5. Terrified by his arrival, the enemy did not display (ūtor) the same zeal (as great zeal) as our men. 6. Those who were pursuing us suddenly came in sight of the legion (the cohorts, the cavalry) Caesar had sent to our assistance. 7. Nor was there any vessel found on which they could be brought over. 8. Our men, who were inexperienced in this kind of fighting, were no match for the enemy. 9. This is the same tribe that we have often waged war with. 10. Influenced by this hope, he collected forces (an army) with which to lay waste the neighbouring territories as widely as possible. 11. To him they report everything they have heard. (*See also 258, 260.*)

B.—1. This is the length of the side which is opposite Ireland. 2. There are several sides, all of which are equal. 3. These sent (mittō) men to discover where the distance was the shortest possible. 4. In these islands there were found several who thought this. 5. This island is of the same circumference as Mona. 6. He had seen as large a portion as possible of the districts (the island) the Britons inhabit. 7. Are these islands as large as Britain? 8. When the ship was brought to land at this place, we found nothing. 9. The district which is on the sea some call Kent. 10. On the island of which I have written they have milk and flesh. 11. Those who inhabit this region are thought more civilized because their customs differ from ours as little as possible. 12. There was nothing with which to dye themselves; they have skins with which to clothe themselves. 13. The Britons, who dye themselves with woad, are of a hideous appearance. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 13, 14.*)

XXVI. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

670. For subordinate clauses put in the subjunctive when they are subordinate to a clause which is itself dependent on some verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving, ordering, asking, or fearing*, see 408.*

The indicative should never be used to express any portion of the quoted words or thoughts of another.

i. An apparent exception is found in clauses that really form no part of the quoted words or thoughts, but either are explanatory additions made by the writer, or are the writer's substitute for what was actually said or thought; as, *He ordered the cohorts which were on guard to set out with him: Cohortēs quae in stationibus erant secum proficisci iussit. Caesar suspected that that would happen which did occur: Caesar fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur.*

Here *quae in stationibus erant* formed no part of the order given, while *id quod accidit* could not possibly have been in Caesar's mind.

671. The sequence of tenses is observed in these subjunctive clauses (387 and 687. *b*). In narrative secondary sequence is the rule, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive representing all tenses of the indicative. But primary sequence also is sometimes used for the sake of vividness.

672. VIRTUAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to express the words or thoughts of another, where, without any formal or explicit statement to that effect, the idea of *saying* or *thinking* may be inferred from the context.† This is called the subjunctive of *virtual* (or *informal* or *implied*) *indirect discourse*; as, *He offered great rewards to those who should do this: Magna proposuit praemia iis qui haec fecissent. (Offered means promised that he would give.) The enemy were waiting, in case our men should*

* These clauses are sometimes called by the conveniently short term *sub-oblique*.

† Compare also the subjunctive with **quod** (640).

cross the marsh: Palūdem sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs expectābant. (This represents some such thought as *if they cross, we shall attack; sī trānsībunt, adoriēmur.*) This subjunctive is common after such verbs as *expectō*, where *sī* may be translated also by *in the hope that*, or *to see whether*.*

i. Sometimes after *quod*, meaning *on the ground that* (640), the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is expressed, and is itself put in the subjunctive by an illogical confusion or mistaken analogy; as, *He returned, because, as he said, he had forgotten something: Rediit, quod sē oblitum esse aliquid diceret* (instead of *quod aliquid oblitus esset*).

673. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.—Sometimes a clause dependent on a subjunctive, and forming an essential or integral part of the thought, is itself put in the subjunctive by attraction, without in any way being in virtual indirect discourse; as, *So great was their fear that envoys were sent to Caesar by the tribes which dwelt beyond the Rhine: Tantus erat metus, ut ab iis nātiōibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem* (where the mood of *incolerent* is attracted to the mood of *mitterentur*).

674. Notice the values of *should* in the following sentences and the different ways of translating it into Latin:

(a) *I said I should return at once: Dixi mē statim reditūrum esse* (327).

(b) *He did this so that I should not return: Haec fēcit nē redirem* (386).

(c) *If he had done this, I should not be returning: Sī haec fēcisset, nōn redirem* (477).

(d) *If he should do this (or Should he do this), I should return at once: Sī haec faciat, statim redeam* (478. 2).

(e) *It is best that he should return at once: Optimum est eum statim redire* (603. a).

(f) *You should return at once: Statim vōbīs est redeundum* (348).

(g) *I should like you to return: Velim redeās* (627. a).

(h) *He feared that I should not return: Veritus est ut (or nē nōn) redirem* (629).

(i) *He waited until they should return: Dum redirent expectāvit* (649. b).

(j) *I resolved to attack before he should return: Oppugnāre cōstitui, priusquam rediret* (650. b).

(k) *He promised money, if anyone should return: Sī quis rediisset, pecūniam pollicitus est* (672).

* Such a clause may seem to have the value of an indirect question, because of the free English rendering, but it is really a protasis in virtual indirect discourse, the apodosis being concealed.

675.

EXERCISE 26.

A.—1. He promised to send all the cavalry he had with him. 2. He ordered those whom he had put in charge of the camp to set out as soon as they could. 3. He perceived that although the cavalry had been thrown into confusion, the cohorts had not fallen back. 4. He hesitates to advance, on the ground that he has not learned the enemy's intentions. 5. He feared the same thing would happen as had happened the previous day. 6. He believed that if these tribes were crushed, the rest would return home. 7. He promised aid to all who should be overpowered when he himself was absent. 8. He urges the troops to spare the inhabitants whenever they capture a town. 9. They suspect that Caesar will send the cavalry in the same direction in which the legions are marching. 10. He asked why Caesar was unwilling to set sail, although everything was ready. 11. He had sent out cavalry to see whether (*sī*) they could discover any means of approach. 12. He has been put to death on the charge (*quod*) of being desirous of a revolution. (*See also 411.*)

B.—1. They promised to pursue those who had been driven into the hills. 2. He fears that several will be killed, though our men are superior. 3. He gave orders that those who had been placed on guard were to drive back the charioteers who were boldly breaking through the cavalry. 4. He observed that whenever our men engaged in battle, the cavalry never fought in close order. 5. He had not posted guards, on the ground that all were engaged in fortifying the camp. 6. He said that as soon as they leaped down, the enemy had retired. 7. He thinks that our men will not dare to attack, because they are not suited for this kind of fighting. 8. They were waiting to see whether (*exspectō sī*) our men would follow those who had retreated. 9. He fears that if the enemy are driven back our men will not follow. 10. He urged them to fight vigorously because the two cohorts which he had sent to reinforce our men were in great danger. (*Caesar, B.G. V. 15, 16.*)

XXVII. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

676. In the general use of the tenses Latin differs from English chiefly in two respects :

(a) There is no distinction in form corresponding to the English progressive, indefinite, and emphatic tenses, except that the Latin imperfect and perfect nearly correspond to the English past progressive and past indefinite respectively.*

(b) Especially in subordinate clauses, Latin is more exact than English in indicating not only the point of time (present, past, or future), but also priority of action in relation to the main verb. For examples see 224.

677. The PRESENT tense is used :

- (a) Of what is going on now at the present moment.
- (b) Of general truths, and of actions or states, repeated, habitual, or continued in present time.
- (c) As an historical present in animated narrative. (See p. 33. fn.)
- (d) To express an action attempted in present time (the conative present) ; as, *They are trying to avoid danger* : **Periculum vitant**.
- (e) With *jam* and its compounds to express action continued from the past into the present, where English uses the perfect ; as, *He has long been collecting troops* : **Jam diū cōpiās comparat**.
- (f) With *dum* (*while*), where we should expect the imperfect (647).

678. The IMPERFECT tense is used :

- (a) Of what was going on in past time.
- (b) Of actions or states, repeated, habitual, or continued in past time (119) ; as, *He would often remark* : **Saepe dicēbat**. *They would not come* : **Nōn veniēbant** (indicating a repeated refusal).

Hence it is used where English would use the simple past :

i. To express a usual way of thinking, or to describe a state of mind (a feeling or a thought), the perfect being used of coming to a decision or entering into the state of mind.

* In the subjunctive the perfect usually is equivalent to the English true perfect, while the English simple past is represented as a rule by the imperfect or (to indicate priority of action) the pluperfect.

ii. To explain the situation of affairs.

iii. To give the details of movements, or to describe a process, while the perfect makes a general statement of the action as a whole.

iv. To describe the scene of past operations.

(c) To express an action attempted in past time (the conative imperfect) or begun in past time (the inceptive imperfect); as, *They tried to prevent us*: **Nōs prohibēbant.** *He set about securing ships, or he proceeded to secure ships*: **Nāvēs parābat.**

(d) With *jam* and its compounds to express action continued from a still earlier time into the past time spoken of, where English uses the pluperfect. (Compare 677. e.)

(e) In the case of *possum*, *oportet*, *dēbeō*, and the periphrastic conjugations, to express what is contrary to fact (560. ii).

679. The FUTURE tense is used to denote what will take place at some future time. For its use in subordinate clauses where English has the present, see 224.

680. The PERFECT tense is used :

(a) Like the English present perfect, to denote something completed or attained by the present time.

(b) Like the English past indefinite, to state that something took place in past time.

(The perfect narrates ; the imperfect describes. The perfect sums up results ; the imperfect dwells upon the process or the details.)

(c) To denote a present state resulting from a previously completed action. For examples see 243. N.B.

(d) In subordinate clauses denoting indefinite repetition where the main verb is in the present (642).

(e) With *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul atque*, where we might have expected the pluperfect (646. b).

681. The PLUPERFECT tense is used :

(a) To denote an action or state prior to some point in past time mentioned or implied.

(b) To denote a past state resulting from a previously completed action (243. N.B.).

(c) In subordinate clauses denoting indefinite repetition where the main verb is in the imperfect (642).

682. The FUTURE PERFECT tense is used :

(a) To denote something completed or attained by some point in the future. For its use in subordinate clauses where English has the present or present perfect, see 224.

(b) To emphasize the completion of a future act ; as, *I at least shall be found to have done my duty* : *Ego certē meum officium praestiterō*.

683. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES.

(a) The active periphrastic conjugation (348) denotes intention in the present, past, or future.

(b) The passive periphrastic conjugation (348) denotes duty or necessity in the present, past, or future.

(c) *Habeō* with the perfect participle passive forms a sort of perfect, emphasizing the continuance of the result attained ; as, *He has large forces collected* : *Māgnās cōpiās coāctās habet*. Similarly for the pluperfect *habēbam* is used.

(d) The perfect participle passive with *fuī, fueram, fuerō* (instead of *sum, eram, erō*) is used to imply that the condition spoken of has (or had or will have) ceased to exist.

684. EXERCISE 27.

A.—1. He always had a large number of cavalry about him. 2. If a storm arises, the vessels will be lost. 3. We receive hostages and are not accustomed to give them. 4. After he had learned this, he felt that nothing could be done. 5. Unless they are able to retreat across the river, they will be driven into the hills. 6. They marched through a forest, which, as has been mentioned above, extended to the lower parts of the Rhine. 7. Whenever he observed his men in distress, he would send reinforcements. 8. While this was taking place, the enemy had reached our territories and were laying waste the lands. 9. On the following day the army is withdrawn two miles. 10. They tried to terrify our men and keep them from fortifying the camp. 11. Whenever he visits the island, he reports (he is accustomed to report) to Caesar whatever he hears. 12. For all these reasons Caesar wished (determined) to set out for Britain. 13. No opportunity should have been given the enemy of attacking. 14. He is about to pursue the enemy.

B.—1. The next day the enemy are repulsed and a large number slain. 2. Wherever they began to forage, the enemy would suddenly show themselves. 3. After midday, while the cavalry were foraging, the enemy withdrew. 4. The enemy are rallying; the enemy are taking to flight. 5. When Caesar learns this, he will send forward the legions. 6. The day before they had been contending with their full force. 7. The cavalry should not have made an end of their pursuit. 8. All their plans are known. 9. As soon as they had crossed the river they halted. 10. The river Thames was in their territory. 11. They are going to cross the river on foot if they can. 12. They used to trust in the speed of their chariots. 13. Whenever our men make an attack, the enemy take to flight. 14. They were unable to learn his plans. 15. Unless we are able to cross the river, we shall have to abandon the banks. 16. Whenever he perceived this, he would immediately order the troops drawn up. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 17, 18.*)

XXVIII. INDIRECT DISCOURSE—*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*.

685. Direct Discourse (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*) gives the words or thoughts of some person in their original form.

Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*) gives the substance of the words or thoughts of some person (oneself or another), in clauses dependent upon a verb of *stating, thinking, perceiving, ordering, or asking*.

The rules for changing Direct into Indirect Discourse are as follows :

CHANGES IN MOOD.

686. Principal Clauses.

(a) *Statements* have the *infinitive* with subject accusative (320).

(b) *Questions* have the *subjunctive* (362).

i. Rhetorical questions which are virtual denials (625. fn.) are often put in the accusative and infinitive.

(c) *Commands and prohibitions have the subjunctive.**

i. The hortatory subjunctive (465) is usually changed into the infinitive of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

Subordinate Clauses.

All kinds of subordinate clauses (relative, temporal, conditional, causal, etc.) have the *subjunctive* (670).

CHANGES IN TENSE.

687. (a) Clauses put in the *infinitive* change as follows:

| DIRECT DISCOURSE. | | INDIRECT DISCOURSE. | |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------|--|
| Present Ind. | | becomes Present Infinitive. | |
| Imperfect, Perfect | } | " Perfect " | |
| or Pluperfect Ind. | | | |
| Future Ind. | } | " Future " | |
| Present or Imperfect Subj.† | | | |
| Future Perf. Ind. | } | " Inf. in -ūrum fuisse. | |
| Imperf. or Pluperf. Subj.† | | | |

(b) Clauses put in the *subjunctive* as a rule observe the sequence of tenses (387) as follows:

| DIRECT DISCOURSE. | | | | INDIRECT DISCOURSE. | |
|-------------------------|---------|---------------|-------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| | | | | Primary Sequence | Secondary Sequence |
| Present Indic. or Subj. | becomes | Present Subj. | | Present Subj. | Imperfect Subj. |
| Future " | " | " | " | " | " |
| Imperfect " | " | " | Imperfect " | " | " |
| Perfect " | " | " | Perfect " | " | Pluperfect " |
| Fut. Perf. " | " | " | " | " | " |
| Pluperf. " | " | " | Pluperf. " | " | " |

i. In indirect questions, however, the future indicative becomes (according to sequence) the present or the imperfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (534).

ii. Instead of the regular secondary sequence the more vivid‡ primary is often found after historical tenses; or the reported speech may suddenly change from one sequence to the other. On the other hand, after the historical present (p. 33. fn.) secondary sequence may be used.

* The use of the subjunctive in reported commands is closely related to the substantive final clause (522. c) and is often indistinguishable from it, especially after *ut* or when *ut* is omitted (526. iii).

† In the apodosis of a conditional sentence.

‡ More vivid because presenting more exactly the original tenses.

688. The rules for the changes in tense are illustrated by the following forms which conditional sentences assume in indirect discourse :

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---|-----------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Sī quid habeo | dō, | { | dicit sē, | sī quid habeat, | dare. |
| | <i>becomes</i> | { | dixit sē, | sī quid habēret, | dare. |
| Sī quid habebam | | { | dicit sē, | sī quid habēret, | dedisse. |
| dabam, | <i>becomes</i> | { | dixit sē, | sī quid habēret, | dedisse. |
| Sī quid habui | dedi, | { | dicit sē, | sī quid habuerit, | dedisse. |
| | <i>becomes</i> | { | dixit sē, | sī quid habuisset, | dedisse. |
| Sī quid habebō | | { | dicit sē, | sī quid habeat, | datūrum esse. |
| dabō, | <i>becomes</i> | { | dixit sē, | sī quid habēret, | datūrum esse. |
| Sī quid habuerō | | { | dicit sē, | sī quid habuerit, | datūrum esse. |
| dabō, | <i>becomes</i> | { | dixit sē, | sī quid habuisset, | datūrum esse. |
| Sī quid habeam | | { | dicit sē, | sī quid habeat, | datūrum esse. |
| dem, | <i>becomes</i> | { | dixit sē, | sī quid habēret, | datūrum esse. |
| Sī quid habērem | | { | dicit sē, | sī quid habēret, | datūrum fuisse |
| darem, | <i>becomes</i> | { | dixit sē, | (or esse). | |
| Sī quid habuissem | | { | dicit sē, | sī quid habuisset, | datūrum fuisse. |
| dedissem, | <i>becomes</i> | { | dixit sē, | | |

CHANGES IN PRONOUNS.

689. When, as is generally the case in indirect discourse, the first and second persons of the original words are changed to the third person,

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------|--------------------------|---|
| <i>ego</i> and <i>nōs</i> | become | <i>sē</i> | (or if emphatic in the nominative, <i>ipse, ipsi</i>). |
| <i>meus</i> and <i>noster</i> | " | <i>suus</i> . | |
| <i>tū</i> and <i>vōs</i> | " | <i>ille, illi</i> | (sometimes <i>is, ei</i>). |
| <i>tuus</i> and <i>vester</i> | " | <i>illius, illorum</i> . | |
| <i>hic</i> and <i>iste</i> | " | <i>ille</i> or <i>is</i> | (or <i>hic</i> may remain unchanged). |

CHANGES IN ADVERBS.

690. Adverbs which are relative to the time or place of the original speaker, are, as a rule, adapted to the time and place of the reporter. Thus, *nunc, hodiē, hīc, hīnc, hūc, heri*, would (if changed) become respectively *tum* or *tunc, illō diē, ibi, inde, eō, hūc, pridē*.

691. The verb of *saying, thinking*, etc., on which the indirect discourse depends, is often not expressed, being sufficiently suggested by the context.

Further, where the indirect discourse includes more than one variety of reported utterance (statements, questions, commands, requests) Latin does not introduce each by an appropriate verb, as English often does; as, *Ariovistus sends envoys to Caesar (saying) that he wished to treat with him about these matters and (asking him) to appoint a day for an interview: Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē dē hīs rēbus agere cum eō: colloquiō diem cōstitueret.*

692. The following examples illustrate the rules for changing from direct to indirect discourse:

1. *Direct.*—I was unwilling to leave my people and come to you, that I might the more easily keep the state in its allegiance; accordingly the state is in my power, and if you permit it, I shall come to you in your camp and entrust my fortunes to your protection.

Indirect.—(He answered) that he had been unwilling to leave his people and come to him, that he might the more easily keep the state in its allegiance; accordingly the state was in his power, and if Caesar permitted it, he should come to him in his camp and entrust his fortunes to his protection.

2. *Direct.*—Do no harm to the Trinobantes, Cassivellaunus.

Indirect.—He orders Cassivellaunus to do no harm to the Trinobantes.

Idcirco ā meīs discēdere atque ad tē venire nōlēbam, quō facilius civitātem in officiō continērem; itaque est civitās in meā potestāte, atque si permittēs, ad tē in castra veniam, et meās fortunās tuae fidei permittam.

(Respondit) idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quō facilius civitātem in officiō continēret; itaque esse civitātem in suā potestāte, sēsēque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suās fortunās ejus fidei permissūrum.

Nōlī, Cassivellaune, Trinobantibus nocere.

Imperat Cassivellaunō nē Trinobantibus noceat.

(Observe how the vocative may be represented in indirect discourse.)

3. *Direct*.—Visit as many states as you can, and urge them to embrace the alliance of the Roman people, and announce that I shall quickly come thither. After examining everything, return to me as quickly as possible.

Indirect.—(He gives him orders) that he is to visit as many states as he can, and urge them to embrace the alliance of the Roman people, and announce that he will quickly come thither. After examining everything, he is to return to him as quickly as possible.

4. *Direct*.—Even if time fails, yet it will be of great service to me, if I merely visit the island.

Indirect.—(He thought) that, even if time failed, yet it would be of great service to him, if he merely visited the island.

5. *Direct*.—It is not without reason that Gaul is being robbed of all her nobility; this is Caesar's plan, to carry over to Britain and kill all those he fears to slay in sight of Gaul.

Indirect.—(He said) that it was not without reason that Gaul was being robbed of all her nobility; that this was Caesar's plan, to carry over to Britain and kill all those whom he feared to slay in sight of Gaul.

Quās poteris adī civitatēs, hortāreque ut populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur, mēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiā. Explōrātis omnibus rēbus, ad mē quam primum revertere.

(Huic imperat) quās possit adeat civitatēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Explōrātis omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam primum revertātur.

Sī tempus dēficiet, tamen māgnō mihi ūsuī erit, sī modo īnsulam adierō.

(Arbitrābātur) sī tempus dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore, sī modo īnsulam adiisset.

Nōn sine causā fit, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitātē spoliētur; hōc est cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necet.

(Dixit) nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitātē spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret.

(In all the sentences of the following exercise the rules of indirect discourse should be applied.)

693.

EXERCISE 28.

A.—1. They sent envoys to Caesar saying that they were bringing (would bring) the hostages whom he had demanded the previous day. 2. He urged the others not to set out; Caesar did not dare to harm them as long as they were in Gaul; but if they crossed over to Britain, he would kill them all. 3. He points out to us how great had been the danger of our men and what he thinks ought to be done by us. 4. They wrote that although they had fought fiercely they had suffered a great defeat, and unless fresh troops were sent to their assistance, they must ask for peace. 5. He begs that we spare him and restrain them. 6. What were they to do? they asked; it was impossible to defend the camp; let the order be given that each take thought for himself. 7. I shall go with you (he said) when you are ready to set out. 8. If the enemy learn your plans (he replied), I do not doubt that they will attempt to make an attack on you. 9. While larger forces are being collected (he wrote), let no attack be made; but if you are yourselves in danger, I advise you to return to me at once.

B.—1. He pointed out to the cavalry that if they were to wander too widely, the Britons would rush out from the woods, which were not far distant. 2. He points out that when the enemy rush out, the legionary soldiers will not endure the onset. 3. They fear that if Caesar allows the legions to leave the line of march, the enemy will seize those who are wandering too far. 4. He said this young man would have followed Caesar if he had not been slain. 5. They sent an embassy to Caesar saying that they had given up all hope, and promising that they would surrender whatever hostages he demanded, and begging him not to allow the soldiers to lay waste their lands. 6. He promised this young man the kingship if he should come to him in Gaul. 7. Do not put the young men to death, Caesar (they begged); we shall send you all the corn you have demanded, and promise to do whatever you wish (*volō*) done. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 19-21.*)

XXIX. NOUN, ADJECTIVE, AND ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

694. Noun (or substantive) clauses take the place and discharge the functions of a substantive, whether as *subject* or *object* of a verb or equivalent phrase, or as an *appositive* to some other word in the sentence.*

Noun clauses include the substantive clause of purpose (522. *c*), clauses after verbs of fearing (629), **quod** clauses after verbs of emotion, etc. (640. iii), and indirect questions (533).

The accusative and infinitive may be regarded as a noun clause because it represents an English noun sentence introduced by the conjunction *that*. In substantive clauses of result (528. *b*), and in clauses with *quā* and *quōminus* (630, 631), the original adverbial notion of result or purpose has become so weakened that they may properly be treated as noun clauses like their English equivalents.

i. Noun clauses, like infinitive phrases, are always regarded as neuter. (See for examples 697. *b* and *h*.)

695. Adjective clauses take the place and discharge the function of an adjective, and include simple relative clauses (255), relative clauses of purpose (522. *b*), relative clauses of characteristic (530), relative clauses of concession (665), and relative clauses of cause or reason (665).

696. Adverbial clauses take the place and discharge the function of an adverb, and include purpose clauses, (522. *a*), result clauses (528. *a*), temporal clauses (642, 643, 646-650), conditional clauses (475-478), concessive clauses (563), and causal clauses (640, 641).

* As examples of subject clauses see 697. *b, d, e*; of object clauses, 697. *a, c, g*; of appositive clauses, 697. *f*. The following is another example of an appositive clause: *It had this result, that a very large number of the enemy were wounded: Hunc habuit eventum, ut maximus hostium numerus vulnerārētur.* See also 640. vii.

697. Notice the values of the clauses introduced by *that* in the following sentences, and the different ways of translating them into Latin :

(a) *He perceived that his men were being hard pressed* : **Suōs premi animadvertit** (511. a).

(b) *Orders were given that he should not be left in Gaul* : **Imperātum est nē in Galliā relinquerētur** (522. c).

(c) *He fears that he may be deserted* . **Verētur nē dēserātur** (629).

(d) *It happened that there was a full moon* . **Accidit ut esset plēna lūna** (528. b).

(e) *There was also the fact that he had made these statements* : **Accēdēbat hūc quod haec dīxerat** (640. vii).

(f) *He had been put to death for the reason that he aimed at the throne* : **Ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, erat interfectus** (640).

(g) *He complained that they had made war* : **Questus est quod bellum intulissent** (640. iii).

(h) *There is no doubt that they are the most powerful* . **Nōn est dubium quā plūrimum possint** (630).

(i) *This he does (in order) that his plans may not be discovered* . **Hōc facit nē cōsilia cōgnōscantur** (522. a).

(j) *So great a storm arose that the ships were carried back* : **Tanta tempestās coorta est ut nāvēs referrentur** (528. a).

(k) *In spite of the fact that they have given hostages, they are making war* : **Etsī obsidēs dedērunt, bellum inferunt** (563. a).

(l) *They were waiting in the hope that our men would cross* : **Exspectābant si nostrī trānsirent** (672).

(m) *He sent all the cavalry that he had collected* : **Omnem equitātum quem cōēgerat mīsīt** (255).

(n) *There is no one that does not know this* : **Nēmō est quī haec cōgnōscat** (530).

(o) *Would that he were present* : **Utinam adesset** (626).

698. Even after the same verb, clauses introduced by *that* may be translated in more than one way, the difference of construction as a rule representing a difference of meaning.*

(a) *He writes that he has set out* : **Scribit sē profectum esse**.

He writes to Labienus that he is to build vessels : **Labiēnō scribit ut nāvēs instituat**. (See 526. ii.)

* Observe that the clause which follows verbs of *determining, announcing, telling, warning, persuading, writing, etc.*, will be in the infinitive or the subjunctive, according to the rules of indirect discourse (686).

(b) *They determine that these shall leave the town:* **Cōstituunt ut hi oppidō excēdant.**

They determine that it is best to return: **Cōstituunt optimum esse reverti.**

(c) *Word was brought that they were marching through the province:* **Nūntiātum est eōs per prōvinciam iter facere.**

Word was brought that they were not to attack the enemy: **Nūntiātum est nē hostēs aggrederentur.**

(d) *There was also the fact that they fought in small groups:* **Accēdebāt hūc ut rārī proeliārentur.** (Compare 697. e. In this case there is no apparent difference of meaning between the constructions.)

699. Notice the following different ways of translating the infinitive with *to* into Latin:

(a) *They tried to cross the Rhine:* **Rhēnum trānsire cōnābantur** (517).

(b) *The enemy were said to be approaching:* **Hostēs appropinquāre dicēbantur** (320).

(c) *They promised to surrender:* **Polliciti sunt sē in dēditionem ventūrōs** (328).

(d) *He led his troops across to attack the town:* **Cōpiās trādūxit ut oppidum oppugnāret** (522. a).

(e) *He sends scouts to choose a suitable place:* **Explorātōrēs mittit quī locum idōneum dēligant** (522. b).

(f) *They advance into the water to fight:* **In aquam progrediuntur pugnandī causā** (607).

(g) *They assemble from all sides to defend the camp:* **Undique conveniunt ad castra dēfendenda** (611).

(h) *One legion was sent to forage:* **Legiō ūna frumentātum missa est** (609. a).

(i) *They asked him not to move the camp nearer:* **Nē propius castra movēret, petiērunt** (522. c).

(j) *I am not so uncivilized as not to know this:* **Nōn tam barbarus sum ut nōn haec sciam** (528. a).

(k) *But I am not the man to be frightened by danger:* **Neque is sum quī periculō terrear** (530).

(l) *It is easy to do:* **Facile est factū** (609. b).

(m) *What are we to do?* **Quid faciāmus?** (625. c).

(n) *The soldiers had to leap down:* **Militibus dēsiliendum erat** (612)

700.

EXERCISE 29.

A.—1. The best thing to do is that he should announce to the soldiers that they are not to advance. 2. Thinking (fearing) that they would learn on what day he would set sail, he would not (nōlō) give orders that the ships should assemble. 3. They complain that the enemy are laying waste their lands. 4. Would that we had not lost all the baggage that we set out with. 5. In spite of the fact that the line of battle was not drawn up, no one doubts (all believe) that the signal for joining battle was given. 6. There was no one that did not fight so fiercely that he received many severe wounds. 7. He informs Caesar what he thinks should be done in order that no loss may be suffered. 8. He wrote that the forces that he had ordered to assemble should return home, on the ground that ships were lacking. 9. He sent messengers to announce that it had been determined that aid should not be sent. 10. There is no doubt (it happens, we fear, we know) that this is the most powerful of all the states. 11. He advised us to go; we promised to go; we prefer to go; we do not know where to go.

B.—1. It happened that Caesar was not aware what was taking place. 2. He sent messengers to order the four kings to collect all their forces. 3. So many losses had been suffered that they could not determine what to do. 4. There is no doubt (there is no one that is not aware) that they are going to waste the rest of the summer. 5. Would that he had given orders that they were not to harm the king. 6. He complained (queror) that they had not paid the tribute. 7. He feared (he hoped, he did not doubt) that they would make a sortie. 8. We fear that Caesar will determine that all the legions that have been sent to Britain shall winter in Gaul. 9. In spite of the fact that the equinox is at hand, he advises (moneō) that they wait for the other vessels. 10. He is waiting for calm weather that the army may be taken back in one trip. 11. Orders were given that the soldiers be disembarked, on the ground that the equinox was at hand. (*Caesar, B. G. V. 22, 23,*)

XXX. CONTINUOUS NARRATIVE PROSE.

701. In its simplest form, narrative prose consists of a succession of sentences similar to those in the previous exercises. But in Latin these sentences are not to be treated as so many independent units. While in English narrative prose it is the exception rather than the rule to give formal expression to the connection of thought, in Latin narrative prose the reverse holds true.

Hence, wherever possible, at the beginning of each new sentence in Latin some words should be used which will indicate the connection of the new matter with the previous context.

i. The usual means of expressing connection are:

(a) Words or phrases such as *interim* or *intereā*, *meanwhile*; *posterō diē*, *the next day*; *accēdit quod* or *ut*, *besides this*.

(b) Pronouns, especially *hic* and the co-ordinating relative *quī* (667); also *is* and *idem*.

(c) Pronominal adverbs, especially *hūc*, *eō*, *quō*, *to this place*; *ibi*, *there*; *ita*, *in this way*; *tum*, *thereupon*.

(d) Connecting particles, such as *itaque*, *therefore*; *at* or *sed*, *but*; *atque* or *ac*, *and*; *neque*,* *and not, nor*; *nam*, *for*.

ii. Where there is a change of subject in the new sentence, Latin is generally careful to mark the change early in the sentence, either by a substantive, or (where the new subject has been mentioned in the previous sentence) by *ille* (653. vii) or *quī* (667). Apparently the contrast afforded by the change of subject is felt to be a sufficient mark of connection, and other connectives are therefore often omitted.

702. English forms of expression are not always to be translated literally into Latin. The same thought may often be expressed in English in many different ways, and of these some are sure to be more, some less, like the form of expression a Roman would choose. In all cases it is the thought that is to be turned into Latin, rather than the precise words embodying the thought, or the syntactical relations used in expressing it.

* Latin prefers *neque* (or *nec*) as a connective to *et* followed by a negative. (See also 659. i.)

In this way, where the translation of an English sentence into Latin presents a difficulty because of some word or phrase it contains, it may often happen that the difficulty is easily solved by expressing the thought of the sentence in some other way.

703. In part these differences of phraseology are matters of detail, but in part they fall under general rules of wide application, rules that are themselves really various illustrations of one great principle: that the genius of the Latin language is, above all things, *direct, definite, and concrete*, like the Roman character itself, which was straightforward, business-like, practical, and unimaginative.

Hence the general rule for Latin narrative prose, in matters of phraseology, is: first, see clearly the exact meaning of the English phrase, and then express that meaning in the simplest and most direct manner.*

704. Among the most important applications of this general rule are the following:

(1) Figurative or metaphorical language should be avoided and the most direct simplicity preferred; as, *He took the field*: **Ad bellum profectus est.** *His prayers were answered*: **Quae petierat, impetravit.** *I shall not stand in your path*: **Nōn prohibēbō vōs haec facere.**

(b) Abstract forms of expression should be avoided. While Latin in narrative prose uses freely a few abstract nouns, such as *adventus, amicitia, auctoritas, celeritas, consilium, magnitudo, studium*, yet as a rule an English abstract expression should be turned by a concrete Latin phrase. See (c) and (d) below for examples.

(c) It is as a rule better to use verbs in Latin, where English has a phrase containing a corresponding verbal noun; as, *He took his departure*: **Discessit.** *On the receipt of this information*: **Quod cum nūntiātum esset.** (See also 535 and 556.)†

* It may often be of assistance to imagine that one is explaining the English phrase to a child for whom the form of expression is not quite simple enough.

† Similarly, Latin is deficient in class names which express the doer of an action, such as *fugitive, besieger, combatant*. These can generally be expressed by the verb; as, **Fugientēs** or **qui fugiebant.**

(d) Inanimate objects and abstract nouns should not be represented as doing or causing something. This is so common in English that often we are not conscious of any personification. Where something has taken place, as a rule some person has been acting, and Latin indicates this by using a personal subject; as, *Caesar's approach frightened them into submission*: **Caesaris adventū commōti, lēgātōs dē dēditionē mittunt.** *The darkness hid the fleet from the enemy*: **Propter tenebrās, hostēs classem nōn cōspiciātī sunt.**

705. Among the more important differences of phraseology which do not come under such general rules are the following:

(a) Cases where the English verb may be either transitive or intransitive. This seldom occurs in Latin; e.g., *to increase* if transitive is **augēre**, but if intransitive **augērī** or **crēscere**. See also 282. N.B.

(b) Cases where the same English word has widely different meanings according to the context; as, *ask*, **petō** and **quaerō**; *command*, **imperō** and **praesum**; *field*, **ager** and **aciēs** or **proelium**; *Rome*, **Rōma** and **populus Rōmānus**; *country*, **patria**, **rūs**, **rēspūblica**, **loca** and **finēs**.

(c) Cases where in the course of time an English derivative has taken on a meaning quite different from that of its Latin original; as, **occupō** means *seize*, while *occupy* is **obtineō**, and *obtain* is **nancīscor** or **cōsequor**.

(d) Cases where Latin uses an adjective while English would use an adverb or adverbial phrase; as, *They came unwillingly* (or *against their will*): **Invitī vēnerunt.** So **rārī**, *in detached groups*.

(e) Cases where English expresses emphasis by means of the verb *to be*, generally followed by a relative. Latin has nothing corresponding to this, but expresses emphasis by other means; as, *It was I who did it*: **Ego feci.** *Piso was the first to fall*: **Primus cecidit Pisō.**

EXERCISES IN CONTINUOUS PROSE.*

✓ **706.** Crossing the river with the rest of his army, he sent Marcus in advance to find out how large were the enemy's forces and in what direction they had retreated. The enemy, on learning of Caesar's approach, thought that an opportunity had now been given them of obtaining their freedom. They believed that if they could surround our column and prevent our men from returning, no one would venture to make war on them. The next day, Caesar set out about the third hour, and before midday reached the river, across which he had been

* The exercises which follow are of the simplest character (701), and do not require alterations in phraseology to adapt the passages to Latin idiom.

informed by scouts the enemy had taken up their position. While our men were pitching camp, suddenly the Germans rushed out of the woods, and before Caesar could draw up the line of battle they threw our men into confusion. Several, terrified by this attack, took to flight; the rest Caesar ordered to gather their baggage in one place, and quickly taking their arms to join battle.

707. After he had built a bridge over the Rhine and had taken his whole army across, he was informed that the Germans had collected all their forces in one place and were persuading their allies to send reinforcements of infantry and cavalry. On learning this, he left a sufficiently strong garrison, lest any attack should be made on the bridge, and set out with the rest of his forces and all the cavalry. After proceeding a few days' march, he chose a suitable place and ordered a camp to be fortified and supplies secured. At the same time he advised the neighbouring tribes to withdraw their cattle from the fields and to gather all their possessions into the towns, that the enemy might not be able to obtain any plunder, and he sent scouts into the enemy's territories to learn what was taking place there. These quickly did as they had been ordered and brought back word that as soon as they had been informed of the Romans' approach, the Germans had retreated with all the forces which they had collected into a forest of vast extent, and there they were awaiting our approach.

708. While vessels were being procured for the purpose of carrying the army across to Britain, certain of the Gauls, who had not done what they promised the previous year, sent an embassy to Caesar. Thinking it not a suitable time for waging war in Gaul, he dismissed the envoys after demanding hostages. Meanwhile, when all the vessels had assembled, he left several cohorts to hold the harbours, and warned the lieutenants whom he had put in charge of the war-ships to wait until they got suitable weather. After waiting a few days, he ordered the signal to be given about midnight. The cavalry, to

whom the transports had been assigned, were not able to set sail at the same time; the rest of the forces reached Britain before noon. There was very great difficulty in landing, because the Britons held all the higher ground, and their cavalry was drawn up on the shore in order to prevent our men from approaching the island. At first a few of our men, dismayed by the depth of the water, hesitated to leap down; the rest with the utmost zeal advanced through the waves, although they were greatly impeded on account of the heavy weight of the arms which they bore.

709. As soon as Caesar had given orders that as many vessels as possible be collected, he set out for Gaul that he might the more easily prepare for war. On his arrival he ordered the chief men of the whole province to assemble that he might point out what he wished done. From all those whom he suspected of being of an unfriendly spirit and desirous of a revolution, he demanded hostages, and he promised not to forget the zeal of those who had been faithful to the senate and Roman people. After collecting large forces, both of infantry and cavalry, he returned to his winter camp and found all the ships ready for sailing. He left ten thousand legionary soldiers and two thousand cavalry to find out what was taking place in Gaul; he himself then set sail for Britain with certain of the chiefs whom he was unwilling to leave behind, fearing lest, when he himself was absent, they should do the state some injury.

710. When Caesar saw that our men were being hard pressed, he advised that the seventh and twelfth legions unite and advance against the enemy. When this was done, being no longer afraid that they would be surrounded by the enemy, they began to resist more boldly and fight more bravely. At the same time, when Labienus saw from the higher ground what was taking place in our camp, he sent the tenth legion to the support of our men. On their arrival the spirits of our troops were so raised (*cōfirmō*) that even those who had been

exhausted by their wounds renewed the battle. Meanwhile the soldiers of the two legions which had been serving as guard for the baggage in the rear had been informed of the battle, and as they came to the assistance of their comrades they were observed by the enemy on the top of the hill. Although they now perceived that all hope of victory had been taken away, the enemy did not seek safety in flight, but nearly all were killed, fighting fiercely.

711. At the beginning of the winter, when after driving out the Germans, Caesar had set out for Italy, war suddenly arose among the Veneti. The cause of this war was as follows: The Veneti were very strong in number of men, valour, and experience in war; they had a great abundance of ships, in which they were accustomed to sail to Britain, and as there were few harbours in these regions suitable for larger vessels, all of which harbours they themselves held, they had great influence with the neighbouring tribes. Influenced by these facts, the other states joined the Veneti, and began to prepare for war. They all exhorted one another not to endure subjection any longer and promised not to make peace with the Romans except by common consent. They trusted much to the nature of the country, because they knew that the roads were difficult; and because of the small number of harbours and the scarcity of supplies they hoped they would easily prevent the Romans from doing them harm. Having adopted this plan, they set about fortifying their towns, obtaining a supply of grain and cattle, and collecting whatever was of service for equipping (instruō) their vessels.

712. Although Caesar was aware that, for the reasons I have mentioned, there would be the greatest difficulty in waging war, he determined that the Veneti must be crushed; he feared that if he allowed any state to renew the war after having given hostages, the same thing would happen throughout (in) the whole of Gaul. Accordingly, as soon as this report was brought, he

wrote to his lieutenants (because he was himself too far distant) to collect as many vessels as possible and procure sailors from the province. A few days after, he himself hastened thither with all his forces and waited for the fleet to assemble which he had ordered built. As soon as this arrived and was seen by the enemy, about two hundred vessels of theirs at once set out from harbour to engage battle. At first those who were in command of the fleet did not know what to do, being altogether inexperienced in this kind of fighting. But the Romans had so great a number of ships that several were able to surround a few, and the soldiers, with the utmost zeal, strove to board (*trāscendō* in) the enemy's vessels. After several vessels had been taken by storm, the enemy sought safety in flight, but on account of a sudden calm (*tranquillitās*) their ships were not able to move, so that very few out of the whole fleet reached land.

713. On learning that Caesar had determined to make war on the Germans, several states sent ambassadors to him to beg him not to form the plan of crossing the river Rhine. To this embassy Caesar answered: that if they wished to be friends of the Roman people, they must withdraw from Gaul; that he had learned that their cavalry had been sent across the Rhine for the purpose of (*ad*) laying waste the lands of the Gauls and burning their villages; that since the Gauls had many years before made peace with him and had always been faithful to him, he would not allow them any longer to be harassed, and when they had asked him to give aid he had promised to send three legions to prevent the Germans from injuring them. After he had ordered them to bring him a large number of hostages, the envoys were dismissed, and, on returning to their own territories, reported to the chief men what answer Caesar had made.

714. Having ascertained these facts from prisoners, Caesar sent all his cavalry in advance and himself followed closely with the rest of his forces. According to his custom, since he was approaching the enemy, he

was leading six legions in light marching order. Behind these, two legions served to guard the baggage of the whole army. After marching three miles, he crossed a river twenty feet wide, across which he had determined to encamp on the top of a hill. The place which he had chosen for a camp was protected by marshes and woods which extended from the river to the foot of the hill. As soon as the first legion reached this place, Caesar ordered the camp pitched. Before the camp he ran (*dūcō*) two trenches, fifteen feet wide and of the same depth, each of which he ordered filled with water, in order that the enemy might not be able to hurl missiles at the soldiers while busy at their work, or to make an attack suddenly by night on the camp. These trenches were forty feet apart. Fearing that he might be cut off from supplies, he also ran a double trench from the camp to the bridge by which he had crossed the river.

715. After this battle had been fought, that he might be able to pursue the remaining forces of the enemy, he orders that a bridge be built over the river, and so brings his army across. Dismayed by his approach, when they understood that what they themselves had with the greatest difficulty accomplished in twenty days he had done in one day, the Helvetians sent envoys to him to treat for peace. The chief of this embassy was Divico, who had been the leader of the Helvetians in the previous war. He said that if the Roman people would make peace with them, they would go wherever Caesar ordered them to go; but if he was unwilling to abandon his plan, the Helvetians would not forget their valour and their former victories. To this Caesar made answer, that although the Helvetians were attempting to march through the province by (*per*) force, and had made war on the Gauls without cause, yet, if they would give him hostages, so that he might believe that they would do what they were promising, and if they would make reparation (*satisfaciō*) to the Gauls for (*dē*) the wrongs they had inflicted on them themselves and on their allies, he would make peace with them.

APPENDIX.

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS.

NOUNS.

716.

First Declension.

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|--------------------|-----------|----------|
| <i>Nominative.</i> | mēnsa, f. | mēnsae |
| <i>Genitive.</i> | mēnsae | mēnsārum |
| <i>Dative.</i> | mēnsae | mēnsīs |
| <i>Accusative.</i> | mēnsam | mēnsās |
| <i>Vocative.</i> | mēnsa | mēnsae |
| <i>Ablative.</i> | mēnsā | mēnsīs |

Irregular Case Endings.

- i. Genitive singular in -āi (archaic and found in poetry), or in -ās (in the word *familiās*).
- ii. Genitive plural in -um (in Greek words and in poetry).
- iii. Dative and ablative plural in -ābus (in *dea* and *fília*).

717.

Second Declension.

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|----------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | servus, m. | puer, m. | ager, m. | vir, m. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | servī | puerī | agrī | virī |
| <i>Dat.</i> | servō | puerō | agrō | virō |
| <i>Acc.</i> | servum | puerum | agrum | virum |
| <i>Voc.</i> | serve | puer | ager | vir |
| <i>Abl.</i> | servō | puerō | agrō | virō |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|-------------|----------|----------|---------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | servī | puerī | agrī | virī |
| <i>Gen.</i> | servōrum | puerōrum | agrōrum | virōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | servīs | puerīs | agrīs | virīs |
| <i>Acc.</i> | servōs | puerōs | agrōs | virōs |
| <i>Voc.</i> | servī | puerī | agrī | virī |
| <i>Abl.</i> | servīs | puerīs | agrīs | virīs |

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | templum, n. | templa |
| <i>Gen.</i> | templī | templōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | templō | templīs |
| <i>Acc.</i> | templum | templa |
| <i>Voc.</i> | templum | templa |
| <i>Abl.</i> | templō | templī |

Irregular Case Endings.

i. Genitive singular contracted from -iī to -ī (regularly in *filius* and proper names, often with other words).

ii. Vocative singular contracted from -ie to -ī (regularly in *filius* and proper names).

iii. Genitive plural in -um (in Greek words and in poetry, and in words denoting money and measures).

iv. **Deus** is declined as follows :

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|-------------|-----------|-------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | deus | deī, (diī), dī |
| <i>Gen.</i> | deī | deōrum, deum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | deō | deīs, (diīs), dīs |
| <i>Acc.</i> | deum | deōs |
| <i>Voc.</i> | (deus) | deī, (diī), dī |
| <i>Abl.</i> | deō | deīs, (diīs), dīs |

718.

Third Declension.

(a) MUTE STEMS (without change of vowel).

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|-------------|---------|---------|------------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | rēx, m. | dux, m. | virtūs, f. | palūs, f. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | rēgis | ducis | virtūtis | palūdis |
| <i>Dat.</i> | rēgī | duci | virtūtī | palūdī |
| <i>Acc.</i> | rēgem | ducem | virtūtem | palūdem |
| <i>Voc.</i> | rēx | dux | virtūs | palūs |
| <i>Abl.</i> | rēge | duce | virtūte | palūde |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|-------------|---------|---------|------------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | rēgēs | ducēs | virtūtēs | palūdēs |
| <i>Gen.</i> | rēgum | ducum | virtūtum | palūdum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | rēgibus | ducibus | virtūtibus | palūdibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | rēges | ducēs | virtūtēs | palūdēs |
| <i>Voc.</i> | rēges | ducēs | virtūtēs | palūdēs |
| <i>Abl.</i> | rēgibus | ducibus | virtūtibus | palūdibus |

(b) MUTE STEMS (with change of vowel).

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | prīnceps, M. | obses, M. | miles, M. | caput, N. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | prīncipis | obsidis | militis | capitis |
| <i>Dat.</i> | prīncipī | obsidī | militī | capitī |
| <i>Acc.</i> | prīncipem | obsidem | militem | caput |
| <i>Voc.</i> | prīnceps | obses | miles | caput |
| <i>Abl.</i> | prīncipe | obside | milite | capite |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | prīncipēs | obsidēs | militēs | capita |
| <i>Gen.</i> | prīncipum | obsidum | militum | capitum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | prīncipibus | obsidibus | militibus | capitibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | prīncipēs | obsidēs | militēs | capita |
| <i>Voc.</i> | prīncipēs | obsidēs | militēs | capita |
| <i>Abl.</i> | prīncipibus | obsidibus | militibus | capitibus |

(c) LIQUID STEMS.

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|-------------|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | cōnsul, M. | pater, M. | genus, N. | tempus, N. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cōnsulis | patris | generis | temporis |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cōnsulī | patrī | generī | temporī |
| <i>Acc.</i> | cōnsulem | patrem | genus | tempus |
| <i>Voc.</i> | cōnsul | pater | genus | tempus |
| <i>Abl.</i> | cōnsule | patre | genere | tempore |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|-----------|------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | cōnsulēs | patrēs | genera | tempora |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cōnsulum | patrum | generum | temporum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cōnsulibus | patribus | generibus | temporibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | cōnsulēs | patrēs | genera | tempora |
| <i>Voc.</i> | cōnsulēs | patrēs | genera | tempora |
| <i>Abl.</i> | cōnsulibus | patribus | generibus | temporibus |

(d) NASAL STEMS.

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | hiems, F. | legiō, F. | homō, M. | nōmen, N. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | hiemis | legiōnis | hominis | nōminis |
| <i>Dat.</i> | hiemī | legiōnī | hominī | nōminī |
| <i>Acc.</i> | hiemem | legiōnem | hominem | nōmen |
| <i>Voc.</i> | hiems | legiō | homō | nōmen |
| <i>Abl.</i> | hieme | legiōne | homine | nōmine |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|-------------|----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | hiemēs | legiōnēs | hominēs | nōmina |
| <i>Gen.</i> | hiemum | legiōnum | hominum | nōminum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | hiemibus | legiōnibus | hominibus | nōminibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | hiemēs | legiōnēs | hominēs | nōmina |
| <i>Voc.</i> | hiemēs | legiōnēs | hominēs | nōmina |
| <i>Abl.</i> | hiemibus | legiōnibus | hominibus | nōminibus |

(e) I-STEMS.

SINGULAR.

| | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|----------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | nāvis, F. | mōns, M. | pars, F. | cīvitās, F. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | nāvis | montis | partis | cīvitātis |
| <i>Dat.</i> | nāvī | montī | partī | cīvitātī |
| <i>Acc.</i> | nāvem | montem | partem | cīvitātem |
| <i>Voc.</i> | nāvis | mōns | pars | cīvitās |
| <i>Abl.</i> | navī (e) | monte | parte | cīvitāte |

PLURAL.

| | | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | nāvēs | montēs | partēs | cīvitātēs |
| <i>Gen.</i> | nāvium | montium | partium | cīvitātum (ium) |
| <i>Dat.</i> | nāvibus | montibus | partibus | cīvitātibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | nāvēs (īs) | montēs (īs) | partēs (īs) | cīvitātēs (īs) |
| <i>Voc.</i> | nāvēs | montēs | partēs | cīvitātēs |
| <i>Abl.</i> | nāvibus | montibus | partibus | cīvitātibus |

Irregular Case Endings.

i. For the case-endings of *i*-stems, see 185-189.

The following words have the endings **-im**, **-ī**, **-ium** and (in neuters) **-ia**: (a) *vīs*, *sīs*, *febris*, *puppīs*, *secūris*, *turris*; (b) neuters in *-e*,* *al*, *ar*; (c) some proper names, such as *Tamesis*, *Tiberis*, *Neūpolis*.

The following have **-ī** and **-ium**: *īgnis*, *nāvis*, *continēns*.

The following have **-ium**: (a) nouns in *-is* or *-ēs* not increasing† in the genitive (but *juvenis* has only *-um*); (b) nouns in *-s* or *x* preceded by a consonant (except *parēs* and nouns in *-ps*, such as *prīnceps*); (c) *nox*, *carō*, *imber*, *lūter*.

* For the declension of *mare*, see 187. c.

† That is, not having a greater number of syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.

| ii. | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. | SING. |
|-------------|---------|---------|-----------|---------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | vīs, F. | vīrēs | bōs, M.F. | bovēs | Juppiter, M. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | | vīrium | bovis | boum (bovum) | Jovis |
| <i>Dat.</i> | | vīribus | bovī | būbus (bōbus) | Jovī |
| <i>Acc.</i> | vīm | vīrēs | bovem | bovēs | Jovem |
| <i>Voc.</i> | | vīrēs | bōs | bovēs | Juppiter |
| <i>Abl.</i> | vī | vīribus | bove | būbus (bōbus) | Jove |

719.

Fourth Declension.

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|-------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | frūctus, M. | frūctūs | cornū, N. | cornua |
| <i>Gen.</i> | frūctūs | frūctuū | cornūs | cornuum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | frūctuī | frūctibus | cornū | cornibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | frūctum | frūctūs | cornū | cornua |
| <i>Voc.</i> | frūctus | frūctūs | cornū | cornua |
| <i>Abl.</i> | frūctū | frūctibus | cornū | cornibus |

Irregular Case Endings.

- i. Dative singular in **-ū** (contracted for **-uī**).
- ii. Dative and ablative plural in **-ubus** (in dissyllabic words ending in **-cus**, as *lacus*, and in *artus*, *tribus*, *portus*, *genū*).
- iii. **Domus** has not only the forms of the fourth declension, but also those of the second declension which contain **-ō** (namely **-ō**, **-ōrum** and **-ōs**). *Domī* also occurs as the locative.

720.

Fifth Declension.

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|-------------|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | rēs, F. | rēs | diēs, M. | diēs |
| <i>Gen.</i> | reī | rērum | diēī | diērum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | reī | rēbus | diēī | diēbus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | rem | rēs | diem | diēs |
| <i>Voc.</i> | rēs | rēs | diēs | diēs |
| <i>Abl.</i> | rē | rēbus | diē | diēbus |

Irregular Case Endings.

- i. Genitive singular in **-ī** or **-ē** (instead of **-ēī**).

721.

Irregularities of Declension.

Besides the irregular case endings indicated under each declension, many nouns are defective or otherwise irregular in declension.

(a) Many nouns, from the nature of their meaning, are found only in the singular, especially proper names, names of materials, abstract nouns, and collective nouns. But even such words are found used in the plural to denote different instances, persons, or objects to which the name might be applied.

(b) Many nouns are found only in the plural; e.g., certain names of places, as *Athēnae*; names of festivals and days, as *Calendae*; names of groups, as *liberī*; and certain other words, such as *arma*, *castra*, *moenia*, *insidiae*, *divitiae*.

(c) Many nouns are found only in certain cases:

i. Nouns having but one case: (abl.) *noctū*, *jussū*, *injussū*, *nātū*.

ii. Nouns having but two cases: (nom. and abl.) *fors*, *forte*; (nom. and acc.) the indeclinable nouns, *fās*, *nefās*, *īnstar*, *nihil*, *opus* (*need*).

iii. Nouns having but three cases: (nom., dat., acc.) *nēmō*, *nēmīnī*, *nēmīnem*. (See 349. N.B.)

iv. *Impetus* has only nom., acc. and abl. singular and nom. and acc. plural.

v. *Opis* (gen.) lacks a nominative singular; *viciis* (gen.) lacks the nom. and dat. singular.

vi. Except *diēs* and *rēs*, the nouns of the fifth declension are defective in the plural; many have no plural forms; *aciēs*, *spēs* and a few others have the nom. and acc. plural only.

vii. *Rūs* and *jūs* have in the plural only the nom. and acc.

viii. Many monosyllabic nouns of the third declension lack the gen. plural; as, *lux*, *ōs* (*ōris*), *pāx*, *sōl*, *aes*.

(d) Heterogeneous nouns (that is, nouns with forms of different genders). Many nouns have different genders in the singular and the plural; as, *locus*, M., plural, *loca*, N. (also *locī*, M., meaning *passages in a book or topics*); *epulum*, N.; plural, *epulae*, F.

(e) Heteroclitite nouns (that is, nouns with forms of different declensions). The most important example is *domus* (719. iii).

722.

Rules for Gender.

(a) General Rules.

- i. Names of males are masculine; of females, feminine.
 ii. Names of *rivers, winds, and months* are masculine; names of *cities, islands, countries, trees, and abstract qualities* are feminine; indeclinable nouns are neuter.

(b) I. Declension. Nouns ending in **a** are feminine. **Exceptions:** nouns denoting males (e.g., *nauta, Belgae*) are masculine.

(c) II. Declension. Nouns ending in **us, er, ir** are masculine, in **um** neuter. **Exceptions:** *domus, humus, alvus* are feminine; *vulgus, pelagus, vīrus* are neuter.

(d) III. Declension. The rules and chief exceptions are as follows:

| MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | NEUTER. |
|--|---|---|
| ō | <i>carō</i> and nouns in <i>-dō, -gō, -iō</i> (except <i>ōrdō</i>) | |
| or | <i>arbor</i> | <i>aequor, cor</i> |
| ōs (os) | <i>dōs</i> | <i>ōs (ōris), os (ossis)</i> |
| er (ēr) | <i>linter</i> | <i>iter, vēr</i> |
| es | <i>seges</i> | <i>aes</i> |
| ēs increasing in gen. | <i>abiēs, quīēs, mercēs</i> | |
| <i>ās, ras (vadis)</i> | as, ās | <i>fās, nefās, vās (vāsīs)</i> |
| | ēs not increasing in gen. | |
| nouns in <i>-nis</i> (as <i>ignis</i>);
<i>collis, lapis, mēnsis, orbis, pulvis, sanguis</i> | is | |
| <i>dēns, fōns, mōns, pōns</i> | s preceded by a consonant | |
| most nouns in <i>-ex</i> (except <i>lēx, nex</i>) | x | |
| | us or ūs , with gen. in -dis or -tis | |
| <i>lepus, mūs</i> | <i>tellūs</i> | us or ūs , with gen. in -ris |
| <i>sāl, sōl</i> | | c, e, l, t, men |
| <i>lār, vultur, fūr</i> | | ar (ār), ur (ūr) |

(e) IV. Declension. Nouns ending in **us** are masculine, in **ū** neuter. **Exceptions:** *domus, manus, tribus, Idūs* (plural) are feminine.

(f) V. Declension. Nouns ending in **ēs** are feminine. **Exceptions:** *diēs* and *meridiēs* are masculine (but *diēs* in the singular is sometimes feminine, chiefly in the sense of *a set day*).

723. Declension of Greek Nouns.

(a) Many Greek nouns (chiefly proper names) were borrowed by the Latin writers, especially in poetry. These nouns sometimes are given the Latin endings in the various cases, but often retain their Greek endings.

(b) I. Declension. Greek nouns may end in **ē** feminine, or in **ās** or **ēs** masculine. The following Greek endings are found in the singular:

| | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> -ē | <i>Gen.</i> -ēs | <i>Acc.</i> -ēn | <i>Voc.</i> -ē | <i>Abl.</i> -ē |
| " -ās | | " -ān | " -ā | |
| " -ēs | | " -ēn | " -ē, -ā | " ē |

In the other cases (e.g., always in the dative singular and throughout the plural) the regular Latin endings are used.

(c) II. Declension. Greek nouns may end in **ōs** or **os** masculine, or in **on** neuter. The following Greek endings are found in the singular:

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> -ōs | <i>Gen.</i> -ō | <i>Acc.</i> -ōn, -ō | <i>Voc.</i> -ōs |
| " -os | | " -on | |
| " -on | | " -on | " -on |

(*Panthūs* also has the voc. *Panthū*.)

In the other cases (e.g., always in the dative and ablative singular and throughout the plural) the regular Latin endings are used.

(d) III. Declension. The Greek masculine and feminine nouns of this declension frequently have **-a** in the accusative singular, **-ēs** in the nominative plural, and **-ās** in the accusative plural (less frequently also **-os** in the genitive singular).

The other chief peculiarities are the retention of the following Greek endings in the singular:—

Nouns in **-ēs** may have gen. **-ī** and acc. **-ēn** (as well as **-is** and **-em**).

Nouns in **-is** and **-ys** have acc. **-in** and **-yn** (or **-ym**) respectively.

Nouns in **-eus** have voc. **-eu** and (rarely) gen. **-eōs**, dat. **-eī** or **-ī**.

Nouns in **-ō** have gen. **-ūs** and the other cases all **-ō**.

ADJECTIVES.

724. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

| SINGULAR. | MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | NEUTER. |
|-------------|------------|-----------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | bonus | bona | bonum |
| <i>Gen.</i> | bonī | bonae | bonī |
| <i>Dat.</i> | bonō | bonae | bonō |
| <i>Acc.</i> | bonum | bonam | bonum |
| <i>Voc.</i> | bone | bona | bonum |
| <i>Abl.</i> | bonō | bonā | bonō |
| PLURAL. | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | bonī | bonae | bona |
| <i>Gen.</i> | bonōrum | bonārum | bonōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | bonīs | bonīs | bonīs |
| <i>Acc.</i> | bonōs | bonās | bona |
| <i>Voc.</i> | bonī | bonae | bona |
| <i>Abl.</i> | bonīs | bonīs | bonīs |

| SINGULAR. | | | |
|-------------|-------|-------|-------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ūnus | ūna | ūnum |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ūnīus | ūnīus | ūnīus |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ūnī | ūnī | ūnī |
| <i>Acc.</i> | ūnum | ūnam | ūnum |
| <i>Voc.</i> | ūne | ūna | ūnum |
| <i>Abl.</i> | ūnō | ūnā | ūnō |

(The plural is regular, like the plural of *bonus*.)

| SINGULAR. | MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | NEUTER. |
|-------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | liber | libera | liberum |
| <i>Gen.</i> | liberī | liberae | liberī |
| <i>Dat.</i> | liberō | liberae | liberō |
| <i>Acc.</i> | liberum | liberam | liberum |
| <i>Voc.</i> | liber | libera | liberum |
| <i>Abl.</i> | liberō | liberā | liberō |
| PLURAL. | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | liberi | liberae | libera |
| <i>Gen.</i> | liberōrum | liberārum | liberōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | liberīs | liberīs | liberīs |
| <i>Acc.</i> | liberōs | liberās | libera |
| <i>Voc.</i> | liberī | liberae | libera |
| <i>Abl.</i> | liberīs | liberīs | liberīs |

| SINGULAR. | MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | NEUTER. |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>aeger</i> | <i>aegra</i> | <i>aegrum</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>aegrī</i> | <i>aegrae</i> | <i>aegrī</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>aegrō</i> | <i>aegrae</i> | <i>aegrō</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>aegrum</i> | <i>aegram</i> | <i>aegrum</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>aeger</i> | <i>aegra</i> | <i>aegrum</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>aegrō</i> | <i>aegrā</i> | <i>aegrō</i> |
| PLURAL. | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>aegrī</i> | <i>aegrae</i> | <i>aegra</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>aegrōrum</i> | <i>aegrārum</i> | <i>aegrōrum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>aegrīs</i> | <i>aegrīs</i> | <i>aegrīs</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>aegrōs</i> | <i>aegrās</i> | <i>aegra</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>aegrī</i> | <i>aegrae</i> | <i>aegra</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>aegrīs</i> | <i>aegrīs</i> | <i>aegrīs</i> |

| SINGULAR. | MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | NEUTER. |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>uter</i> | <i>utra</i> | <i>utrum</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>utrius</i> | <i>utrius</i> | <i>utrius</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>utrī</i> | <i>utrī</i> | <i>utrī</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>utrum</i> | <i>utram</i> | <i>utrum</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>utrō</i> | <i>utrā</i> | <i>utrō</i> |

(The plural is regular, like the plural of *aeger*.)

725. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

(a) of three terminations.

| SINGULAR. | MASCULINE. | FEMININE. | NEUTER. |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>ācer</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācre</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācris</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>ācrem</i> | <i>ācrem</i> | <i>ācre</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>ācer</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācre</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> | <i>ācrī</i> |
| PLURAL. | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācria</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>ācrium</i> | <i>ācrium</i> | <i>ācrium</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>ācrēs (īs)</i> | <i>ācrēs (īs)</i> | <i>ācria</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācrēs</i> | <i>ācria</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> | <i>ācribus</i> |

(b) of two terminations.

| SINGULAR. | | SINGULAR. | |
|--------------------|--------|----------------|-----------|
| MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. |
| <i>Nom.</i> fortis | forte | fortior | fortius |
| <i>Gen.</i> fortis | fortis | fortiōris | fortiōris |
| <i>Dat.</i> fortī | fortī | fortiōrī | fortiōrī |
| <i>Acc.</i> fortem | forte | fortiōrem | fortius |
| <i>Voc.</i> fortis | forte | fortior | fortius |
| <i>Abl.</i> fortī | fortī | fortiōre | fortiōre |

| PLURAL. | | PLURAL. | |
|-------------------------|----------|----------------|-------------|
| MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. |
| <i>Nom.</i> fortēs | fortia | fortiōrēs | fortiōra |
| <i>Gen.</i> fortium | fortium | fortiōrum | fortiōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> fortibus | fortibus | fortiōribus | fortiōribus |
| <i>Acc.</i> fortēs (is) | fortia | fortiōrēs (is) | fortiōra |
| <i>Voc.</i> fortēs | fortia | fortiōrēs | fortiōra |
| <i>Abl.</i> fortibus | fortibus | fortiōribus | fortiōribus |

(c) of one termination.

| SINGULAR. | | SINGULAR. | |
|---------------------|---------|----------------|----------|
| MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. |
| <i>Nom.</i> fēlix | fēlix | prūdēns | prūdēns |
| <i>Gen.</i> fēlicis | fēlicis | prūdētis | prūdētis |
| <i>Dat.</i> fēlici | fēlici | prūdētī | prūdētī |
| <i>Acc.</i> fēlicem | fēlix | prūdētem | prūdēns |
| <i>Voc.</i> fēlix | fēlix | prūdēns | prūdēns |
| <i>Abl.</i> fēlici | fēlici | prūdētī | prūdētī |

| PLURAL. | | PLURAL. | |
|--------------------------|-----------|----------------|------------|
| MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. |
| <i>Nom.</i> fēlicēs | fēlicia | prūdētēs | prūdēntia |
| <i>Gen.</i> fēlicium | fēlicium | prūdētium | prūdētium |
| <i>Dat.</i> fēlicibus | fēlicibus | prūdētibus | prūdētibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> fēlicēs (is) | fēlicia | prūdētēs (is) | prūdēntia |
| <i>Voc.</i> fēlicēs | fēlicia | prūdētēs | prūdēntia |
| <i>Abl.</i> fēlicibus | fēlicibus | prūdētibus | prūdētibus |

726. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs.

| (a) POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---------------|---------------------|---|
| bonus | melior | optimus |
| malus | pējor | pessimus |
| māgnus | mājor | māximus |
| parvus | minor | minimus |
| multus | plūs (197) | plūrimus |
| dives | divitior, dītior | divitissimus, dītissimus |
| juvenis | jūnior (minor nātū) | (minimus nātū) |
| senex | senior (mājor nātū) | (māximus nātū) |
| novus | (recentior) | { novissimus, <i>last</i> .
recentissimus, <i>newest</i> . |
| vetus | (vetustior) | veterrimus |
| exterus | exterior | extrēmus (extimus) |
| inferus | inferior | infimus, īmus |
| superus | superior | suprēmus, summus |
| posterus | posterior | postrēmus, postumus |
| | prior | prīmus |
| | propior | proximus |
| | ulterior | ultimus |
| | citerior | citimus |
| | dēterior | dēterrīmus |
| | interior | intimus |

i. Many adjectives (e.g. *ilōneus*, *necessārius*) express comparison by the positive with *magis* (*more*) and *māximē* (*most*).

| (b) POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---------------|--------------|------------------------|
| bene | melius | optimē |
| male | pējus | pessimē |
| māgnopere | magis | māximē |
| parum | minus | minimē |
| prope | propius | proximē |
| diū | diūtius | diūtissimē |
| saepe | saepius | saeppissimē |
| mātūrē | mātūrius | mātūrissimē, mātūrrimē |
| | potius | potissimum |
| | prius | prīmum |
| nūper | | nūperrimē |
| cito | citius | citissimē |

727.

Numerals.

(a) CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. ūnus
2. duo
3. trēs
4. quattuor
5. quīnque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quīndecim
16. sēdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodēvigintī
19. ūndēvigintī
20. vīgintī
30. trīgintā
40. quadrāgintā
50. quīnquāgintā
60. sexāgintā
70. septuāgintā
80. octōgintā
90. nōnāgintā
100. centum
200. ducentī, ae, a
300. trecentī, ae, a
400. quadringentī, ae, a
500. quīngentī, ae, a
600. sescentī, ae, a
700. septingentī, ae, a
800. octingentī, ae, a
900. nōngentī, ae, a
1000. mille
2000. duo milia

(b) ORDINAL NUMERALS.

- prīmus
- secundus *or* alter
- tertius
- quārtus
- quīntus
- sextus
- septimus
- octāvus
- nōnus
- decimus
- ūndecimus
- duodecimus
- tertius decimus
- quārtus decimus
- quīntus decimus
- sextus decimus
- septimus decimus
- duodēvicēsīmus
- ūndēvicēsīmus
- vicēsīmus
- tricēsīmus
- quadrāgēsīmus
- quīnquāgēsīmus
- sexāgēsīmus
- septuāgēsīmus
- octōgēsīmus
- nōnāgēsīmus
- centēsīmus
- ducentēsīmus
- trecentēsīmus
- quadringentēsīmus
- quīngentēsīmus
- sescentēsīmus
- septingentēsīmus
- octingentēsīmus
- nōngentēsīmus
- millēsīmus
- bis millēsīmus

(c) DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

| |
|---------------------|
| 1. singulī |
| 2. bīnī |
| 3. ternī |
| 4. quaternī |
| 5. quīnī |
| 6. sēnī |
| 7. septēnī |
| 8. octōnī |
| 9. novēnī |
| 10. dēnī |
| 20. vicēnī |
| 100. centēnī |
| 1000. singula milia |

(d) NUMERAL ADVERBS.

| |
|-----------|
| semel |
| bis |
| ter |
| quater |
| quīnquiēs |
| sexiēs |
| septiēs |
| octiēs |
| noviēs |
| deciēs |
| viciēs |
| centiēs |
| miliēs |

i. The distributives are adjectives declined like the plural of *bonus* (724) and are used to signify *one (two, three, etc.) each*, or *apiece*. They are also used with nouns found in the plural only, such as *castra* (except that here *ūnī* is used for *one*, and *trīnī*, not *ternī*, for *three*). In poetry the distributives are often used with the force of the cardinal numeral.

ii. In the adverbs the ending *-ēns* is often found instead of *-ēs*.

(e) MULTIPLICATIVES. 1. simplex (*single*); 2. duplex (*double, twofold*); 3. triplex (*triple, threefold*); 4. quadruplex (*fourfold*); and multiplex (*manifold*). These are adjectives of the third declension with the genitive in *-icis* (725. c).

728.

Declension of Numerals.

| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | M. AND F. | NEUT. | NEUT. |
|-------------|-----------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | duo | duae | duo | trēs | tria | milia |
| <i>Gen.</i> | duōrum | duārum | duōrum | trium | trium | mīlium |
| <i>Dat.</i> | duōbus | duābus | duōbus | tribus | tribus | mīlibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | duōs, duo | duās | duo | trēs | tria | mīlia |
| <i>Voc.</i> | duo | duae | duo | trēs | tria | mīlia |
| <i>Abl.</i> | duōbus | duābus | duōbus | tribus | tribus | mīlibus |

i. For *ūnus* see 724.

ii. For the other cardinal numerals see 216; for the ordinal numerals, 156.

PRONOUNS.

729. Personal, Reflexive, and Possessive Pronouns.

| | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
|-------------|-------|--------------------|-------|--------------------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ego | nōs | tū | vōs | — | — |
| <i>Gen.</i> | meī | {nostrum
nostrī | tuī | {vestrum
vestrī | suī | suī |
| <i>Dat.</i> | mihi | nōbīs | tibi | vōbīs | sibi | sibi |
| <i>Acc.</i> | mē | nōs | tē | vōs | sē (sēsē) | sē (sēsē) |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | tū | vōs | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | mē | nōbīs | tē | vōbīs | sē (sēsē) | sē (sēsē) |

For *meus*, *noster*, *tuus*, *vester* and *suus* see 279, page 175.

730. Demonstrative Pronouns.

| SING. | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
|-------------|----------|----------|----------|---------|---------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | hic | haec | hōc | ille | illa | illud |
| <i>Gen.</i> | hūjus | hūjus | hūjus | illius | illius | illius |
| <i>Dat.</i> | huic | huic | huic | illī | illī | illī |
| <i>Acc.</i> | hunc | hanc | hōc | illum | illam | illud |
| <i>Abl.</i> | hōc | hāc | hōc | illō | illā | illō |
| PLUR. | | | | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | hī | hae | hac | illī | illae | illa |
| <i>Gen.</i> | hōrum | hārum | hōrum | illōrum | illārum | illōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | hīs | hīs | hīs | illis | illis | illis |
| <i>Acc.</i> | hōs | hās | haec | illōs | illās | illa |
| <i>Abl.</i> | hīs | hīs | hīs | illis | illis | illis |
| SING. | | | | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | is | ea | id | ipse | ipsa | ipsum |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ējus | ējus | ējus | ipsius | ipsius | ipsius |
| <i>Dat.</i> | eī | eī | eī | ipsī | ipsī | ipsī |
| <i>Acc.</i> | eum | eam | id | ipsum | ipsam | ipsum |
| <i>Abl.</i> | eō | eā | eō | ipsō | ipsā | ipsō |
| PLUR. | | | | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | eī, īi | eae | ea | ipsī | ipsae | ipsa |
| <i>Gen.</i> | eōrum | eārum | eōrum | ipsōrum | ipsārum | ipsōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | eīs, īis | eīs, īis | eīs, īis | ipsis | ipsis | ipsis |
| <i>Acc.</i> | eōs | eās | ea | ipsōs | ipsās | ipsa |
| <i>Abl.</i> | eīs, īis | eīs, īis | eīs, īis | ipsis | ipsis | ipsis |

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|-----------|---------|---------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | īdem | eādem | īdem | {ēīdem,
īīdem | eaedem | eadem |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ēīusdem | ēīusdem | ēīusdem | eōrundem | eārundem | eōrundem |
| <i>Dat.</i> | eīdem | eīdem | eīdem | {eīsdem,
īīsdem | eīsdem,
īīsdem | eīsdem,
īīsdem |
| <i>Acc.</i> | eūndem | eandem | īdem | eōsdem | eāsdem | eadem |
| <i>Abl.</i> | eōdem | eādem | eōdem | {eīsdem,
īīsdem | eīsdem,
īīsdem | eīsdem,
īīsdem |

731. Relative Pronoun.

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|-----------|-------|-------|---------|--------|--------|
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | quī | quae | quod | quī | quae | quae |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cūjus | cūjus | cūjus | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cui | cui | cui | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | quem | quam | quod | quōs | quās | quae |
| <i>Abl.</i> | quō | quā | quō | quibus | quibus | quibus |

732. Interrogative Pronoun.

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|------------|-------|-------------|---------|--------|--------|
| | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. | MASC. | FEM. | NEUT. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | quis (quī) | quae | quid (quod) | quī | quae | quae |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cūjus | cūjus | cūjus | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cui | cui | cui | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | quem | quam | quid (quod) | quōs | quās | quae |
| <i>Abl.</i> | quō | quā | quō | quibus | quibus | quibus |

733. Indefinite Pronouns.

| | | | |
|----------------------|------------|-------------------|---------------|
| (a) quis (quī) | qua (quae) | quid (quod) | 455, page 307 |
| (b) aliquis (aliquī) | aliqua | aliquid (aliquod) | 456, " 308 |
| (c) quisquam | | quidquam | 456, " 308 |
| (d) quisque | quaeque | quidque (quodque) | 456, " 308 |
| (e) quīdam | quaedam | quiddam (quoddam) | 456, " 308 |
| (f) quīvis | quaevis | quidvis (quodvis) | 456, " 308 |
| (g) uterque | utraque | utrumque | 456, " 308 |

VERBS.

734.

Indicative Active.

PRESENT.

| <i>First Conjug.</i> | <i>Second Conjug.</i> | <i>Third Conjug.</i> | <i>Fourth Conjug.</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| amō | moneō | regō | audiō |
| amās | monēs | regis | audis |
| amat | monet | regit | audit |
| amāmus | monēmus | regimus | audīmus |
| amātis | monētis | regitis | auditis |
| amant | monent | regunt | audiunt |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---------|---------|----------|
| amābam | monēbam | regēbam | audiēbam |
| [amā-bam, -bās, -bat, amā-bāmus, -bātis, -bant] | | | |

FUTURE.

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|---------|----------|
| amābō | monēbō | regam | audiam |
| amābis | monēbis | regēs | audiēs |
| amābit | monēbit | reget | audiet |
| amābimus | monēbimus | regēmus | audiēmus |
| amābitis | monēbitis | regētis | audiētis |
| amābunt | monēbunt | regent | audient |

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| amāvī | monuī | rēxī | audīvī |
| amāvistī | monuistī | rēxisti | audīvistī |
| amāvit | monuit | rēxit | audīvit |
| amāvimus | monuimus | rēximus | audīvimus |
| amāvistis | monuistis | rēxistis | audīvistis |
| amāvērunt* | monuērunt* | rēxērunt* | audīvērunt* |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|----------|---------|-----------|
| amāveram | monueram | rēxeram | audīveram |
| [amāv-eram, -erās, -erat, amāv-erāmus, -erātis, -erant] | | | |

FUTURE PERFECT.

| | | | |
|--|---------|--------|----------|
| amāverō | monuerō | rēxerō | audīverō |
| [amāv-erō, -eris, -erit, amāv-erimus, -eritis, -erint] | | | |

* For **-ērunt**, **-ēre** also is found, especially in poetry.

735.

Indicative Passive.

PRESENT.

| <i>First Conjug.</i> | <i>Second Conjug.</i> | <i>Third Conjug.</i> | <i>Fourth Conjug.</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| amor | moneor | regor | audior |
| amāris* | monēris* | regeris* | audīris* |
| amātur | monētur | regitur | audītur |
| amāmur | monēmur | regimur | audīmur |
| amāminī | monēminī | regiminī | audīminī |
| amantur | monentur | reguntur | audiuntur |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---|---------|---------|----------|
| amābar | monēbar | regēbar | audiēbar |
| [amā-bar, -bāris*, -bātur, amā-bāmur, -bāminī, -bantur] | | | |

FUTURE.

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|----------|-----------|
| amābor | monēbor | regar | audiar |
| amāberis* | monēberis* | regēris* | audiēris* |
| amābitur | monēbitur | regētur | audiētur |
| amābimur | monēbimur | regēmur | audiēmur |
| amābiminī | monēbiminī | regēminī | audiēminī |
| amābuntur | monēbuntur | regentur | audientur |

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| amātus sum | monitus sum | rēctus sum | audītus sum |
| " es | " es | " es | " es |
| " est | " est | " est | " est |
| amātī sumus | monitī sumus | rēctī sumus | audītī sumus |
| " estis | " estis | " estis | " estis |
| " sunt | " sunt | " sunt | " sunt |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| amātus eram | monitus eram | rēctus eram | audītus eram |
| [amātus eram, erās, erat, amātī erāmus, erātis, erant] | | | |

FUTURE PERFECT.

| | | | |
|--|-------------|------------|-------------|
| amātus erō | monitus erō | rēctus erō | audītus erō |
| [amātus erō, eris, erit, amātī erimus, eritis, erunt.] | | | |

* For **-ris**, **-re** also is found, especially in the imperfect and future tenses.

736.

Subjunctive Active.

PRESENT.

| <i>First Conjug.</i> | <i>Second Conjug.</i> | <i>Third Conjug.</i> | <i>Fourth Conjug.</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| amem | moneam | regam | audiam |
| amēs | moneās | regās | audiās |
| amet | moneat | regat | audiat |
| amēmus | moneāmus | regāmus | audiāmus |
| amētis | moneātis | regātis | audiātis |
| ament | moneant | regant | audiant |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| amārem | monērem | regerem | audirem |
| amārēs | monērēs | regerēs | audirēs |
| amāret | monēret | regeret | audiret |
| amārēmus | monērēmus | regerēmus | audirēmus |
| amārētis | monērētis | regerētis | audirētis |
| amārent | monērent | regerent | audirent |

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| amāverim | monuerim | rēxerim | audiverim |
| amāveris | monueris | rēxeris | audiveris |
| amāverit | monuerit | rēxerit | audiverit |
| amāverimus | monuerimus | rēxerimus | audiverimus |
| amāveritis | monueritis | rēxeritis | audiveritis |
| amāverint | monuerint | rēxerint | audiverint |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| amāvissem | monuissem | rēxissem | audivissem |
| amāvissēs | monuissēs | rēxissēs | audivissēs |
| amāvisset | monuisset | rēxisset | audivisset |
| amāvissēmus | monuissēmus | rēxissēmus | audivissēmus |
| amāvissētis | monuissētis | rēxissētis | audivissētis |
| amāvissent | monuissent | rēxissent | audivissent |

738.

Gerund.

| | | | | |
|-------------|---------|----------|----------|-----------|
| <i>Gen.</i> | amandī | monendi | regendī | audiendi |
| <i>Dat.</i> | amandō | monendō | regendō | audiendō |
| <i>Acc.</i> | amandum | monendum | regendum | audiendum |
| <i>Abl.</i> | amandō | monendō | regendō | audiendō |

737.

Subjunctive Passive.

PRESENT.

| <i>First Conjug.</i> | <i>Second Conjug.</i> | <i>Third Conjug.</i> | <i>Fourth Conjug.</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| amer | monear | regar | audiar |
| amēris* | moneāris* | regāris* | audiāris* |
| amētur | moneātur | regātur | audiātur |
| amēmur | moneāmur | regāmur | audiāmur |
| amēminī | moneāminī | regāminī | audiāminī |
| aumentur | noneantur | regantur | audiantur |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|------------|
| amārer | monērer | regerer | audirer |
| amārēris* | monērēris* | regerēris* | audirēris* |
| amārētur | monērētur | regerētur | audirētur |
| amārēmur | monērēmur | regerēmur | audirēmur |
| amārēminī | monērēminī | regerēminī | audirēminī |
| amārentur | monērentur | regerentur | audirentur |

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| amātus sim | monitus sim | rēctus sim | auditus sim |
| " sīs | " sīs | " sīs | " sīs |
| " sit | " sit | " sit | " sit |
| amātī simus | monitī simus | rēctī simus | audītī simus |
| " sītis | " sītis | " sītis | " sītis |
| " sint | " sint | " sint | " sint |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| amātus essem | monitus essem | rēctus essem | auditus essem |
| " essēs | " essēs | " essēs | " essēs |
| " esset | " esset | " esset | " esset |
| amātī essēmus | monitī essēmus | rēctī essēmus | audītī essēmus |
| " essētis | " essētis | " essētis | " essētis |
| " essent | " essent | " essent | " essent |

739.

Supine.

| | | | |
|--------------------|---------|--------|---------|
| <i>Acc.</i> amātum | monitum | rēctum | audītum |
| <i>Abl.</i> amātū | monitū | rēctū | audītū |

* For **-ris**, **-re** also is found.

740.

Imperative Active.

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|-----------------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 2. | amā | monē | rege | audi |
| <i>Plur.</i> 2. | amāte | monēte | regite | audite |

FUTURE.

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 2. | amātō | monētō | regitō | auditō |
| 3. | amātō | monētō | regitō | auditō |
| <i>Plur.</i> 2. | amātōte | monētōte | regitōte | auditōte |
| 3. | amantō | monentō | reguntō | audiuntō |

742.

Infinitive Active.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| amāre | monēre | regere | audire |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|-----------|
| amāvisse | monuisse | rēxisse | audivisse |
|----------|----------|---------|-----------|

FUTURE.

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| amātūrus esse | monitūrus esse | rēctūrus esse | auditūrus esse |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|

744.

Participles Active.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|---------|
| amāns | monēns | regēns | audiēns |
|-------|--------|--------|---------|

-FUTURE.

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| amātūrus | monitūrus | rēctūrus | auditūrus |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|

746.

Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i> | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive</i> |
|------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| PRES. | capiō | capior | capiam | capiar |
| | capis | caperis | capiās | capiāris |
| | capit | capitur | capiat | capiātur |
| | capimus | capimur | capiāmus | capiāmur |
| | capitis | capiminī | capiātis | capiāminī |
| | capiunt | capiuntur | capiant | capiantur |
| IMPERF. | capiebam | capiebar | caperem | caperer |
| FUT. | capiam | capiar | | |
| PERF. | cēpī | captus sum | cēperim | captus sim |
| PLUPER. | cēperam | captus eram | cēpissem | captus essem |
| FUT. PERF. | cēperō | captus erō | | |

741. Imperative Passive.

PRESENT.

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 2. | amāre | monēre | regere | audire |
| <i>Plur.</i> 2. | amāmini | monēmini | regimini | audīmini |

FUTURE.

| | | | | |
|-----------------|---------|----------|----------|-----------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 2. | amātor | monētor | regitor | auditor |
| 3. | amātor | monētor | regitor | auditor |
| <i>Plur.</i> 3. | amantor | monentor | reguntor | audiuntor |

743. Infinitive Passive.

PRESENT.

| | | | |
|-------|--------|------|--------|
| amārī | monērī | regī | audirī |
|-------|--------|------|--------|

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| amātus esse | monitus esse | rēctus esse | auditus esse |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|

FUTURE.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| amātum irī | monitum irī | rēctum irī | auditum irī |
|------------|-------------|------------|-------------|

745. Participles Passive.

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|--------|---------|--------|---------|
| amātus | monitus | rēctus | auditus |
|--------|---------|--------|---------|

GERUNDIVE.

| | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|-----------|
| amandus | monendus | regendus | audiendus |
|---------|----------|----------|-----------|

747. Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō. (*continued*).

IMPERATIVE.

| | <i>Active.</i> | <i>Passive.</i> |
|------|----------------|-----------------|
| PRES | cape | capere |
| FUT. | capitō | capitor |

INFINITIVE.

| | | |
|-------|---------------|-------------|
| PRES. | capere | capī |
| PERF. | cēpisse | captus esse |
| FUT. | captūrus esse | captum irī |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|-------|----------|-------|----------|
| PRES. | capiens | PERF. | captus |
| FUT. | captūrus | GER. | apiendus |

GERUND.

capiendi

SUPINE.

captum

748.

DEPONENT VERBS.

Indicative, 314, page 199. Subjunctive, 370, page 241.

Infinitive, 334, page 213.

IMPERATIVE.

| | <i>First Conj.</i> | <i>Second Conj.</i> | <i>Third Conj.</i> | <i>Fourth Conj.</i> |
|-------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| PRES. | cōnāre | verēre | sequere | sortīre |
| FUT. | conātor | verētor | sequitor | sortitor |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | | |
|-------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| PRES. | cōnāns | verēns | sequēns | sortiēns |
| FUT. | cōnātūrus | veritūrus | secūtūrus | sortitūrus |
| PERF. | cōnātus | veritus | secūtus | sortitus |
| GER. | cōnandus | verendus | sequendus | sortiendus |

GERUND.

| | | | |
|---------|---------|----------|-----------|
| cōnandī | verendī | sequendī | sortiendī |
|---------|---------|----------|-----------|

SUPINE.

| | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|
| cōnātum | veritum | secūtum | sortitum |
|---------|---------|---------|----------|

IRREGULAR VERBS.

749.

Sum, esse, fuī.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT

| | | | |
|-----|-------|-----|-------|
| sum | sumus | sīm | sīmus |
| es | estis | sis | sitis |
| est | sunt | sit | sint |

IMPERFECT.

| | | | |
|------|--------|-------|---------|
| eram | erāmus | essem | essēmus |
| erās | erātis | essēs | essētis |
| erat | erant | esset | essent |

FUTURE.

| | |
|------|--------|
| erō | erimus |
| eris | eritis |
| erit | erunt |

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|--------|---------|--------|----------|
| fuī | fuimus | fuerm | fuerimus |
| fuistī | fuistis | fueris | fueritis |
| fuit | fuērunt | fuerit | fuerint |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|--------|----------|---------|-----------|
| fueram | fuerāmus | fuissem | fuissēmus |
| fuerās | fuerātis | fuissēs | fuissētis |
| fuerat | fuerant | fuisset | fuissent |

FUTURE PERFECT.

| | |
|--------|----------|
| fuerō | fuerimus |
| fueris | fueritis |
| fuerit | fuerint |

INFINITIVE.

| | |
|-------|-----------------------------|
| PRES. | esse |
| PERF. | fuisse |
| FUT. | futūrus esse <i>or</i> fore |

PARTICIPLE.

| | |
|------|---------|
| FUT. | futūrus |
|------|---------|

IMPERATIVE.

| | |
|-------|------------------------|
| PRES. | <i>Sing.</i> 2. es |
| | <i>Plur.</i> 2. este |
| FUT. | <i>Sing.</i> 2. estō |
| | 3. estō |
| | <i>Plur.</i> 2. estōte |
| | 3. suntō |

750.

Possum, posse, potuī.

INDICATIVE.

| | | |
|------------|----------|----------|
| PRES. | possum | possumus |
| | potes | potestis |
| | potest | possunt |
| IMPERF. | poteram | |
| FUT. | poterō | |
| PERF. | potuī | |
| PLUPERF. | potueram | |
| FUT. PERF. | potuerō | |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | |
|-----------|----------|
| possim | possimus |
| possis | possitis |
| possit | possint |
| possem | |
| potuerim | |
| potuissem | |

INFINITIVE.

| | |
|-------|----------|
| PRES. | posse |
| PERF. | potuisse |

PARTICIPLE.

| | |
|-------|-----------------|
| PRES. | potēns |
| | (<i>adj.</i>) |

751.

Volō, velle, voluī. Nōlō, nolle, nōluī.

Mālō, malle, māluī.

INDICATIVE.

| | | | |
|-------|---------|------------|----------|
| PRES. | volō | nōlō | mālō |
| | vis | nōn vis | māvis |
| | vult | nōn vult | māvult |
| | volumus | nolumus | mālumus |
| | vultis | nōn vultis | māvultis |
| | volunt | nolunt | mālunt |

263

| | | | |
|------------|----------|----------|----------|
| IMPERF. | volēbam | nōlēbam | mālēbam |
| FUT. | volam | nōlam | mālam |
| PERF. | voluī | nōluī | māluī |
| PLUPERF. | volueram | nōlueram | mālueram |
| FUT. PERF. | voluerō | nōluerō | māluerō |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| PRES. | velim | nōlim | mālim |
| IMPERF. | vellem | nōllem | māllem |
| PERF. | voluerim | nōluerim | māluerim |
| PLUPERF. | voluissem | nōluissem | māluissem |

INFINITIVE.

| | | | |
|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| PRES. | velle | nōlle | mālle |
| PERF. | voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

PARTICIPLE.

| | | |
|-------|--------|--------|
| PRES. | volēns | nōlēns |
|-------|--------|--------|

IMPERATIVE.

| | |
|-------|--------------|
| PRES. | nōlī, nōlite |
| FUT | nōlitō |

752.

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

INDICATIVE.

| | <i>Active.</i> | | <i>Passive.</i> | |
|------------|----------------|---------|-----------------|----------|
| PRES. | ferō | ferimus | feror | ferimur |
| | fers | fertis | ferris | ferimini |
| | fert | ferunt | fertur | feruntur |
| IMPERF. | ferēbam | | ferēbar | |
| FUT. | feram | | ferar | |
| PERF. | tulī | | lātus sum | |
| PLUPERF. | tuleram | | lātus eram | |
| FUT. PERF. | tulerō | | lātus erō | |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | |
|----------|-----------|-------------|
| PRES. | feram | ferar |
| IMPERF. | ferrem | ferrer |
| PERF. | tulerim | lātus sim |
| PLUPERF. | tulisseim | lātus essem |

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|-------|------------|--------|
| PRES. | fer, ferte | ferre |
| FUT. | fertō | fertor |

like rego. agere pres.

INFINITIVE.

| | | |
|-------|--------------|------------|
| PRES. | ferre | ferri |
| PERF. | tulisse | lātus esse |
| FUT. | lātūrus esse | lātum iri |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|-------|---------|-------|----------|
| PRES. | ferēns | PERF. | lātus |
| FUT. | lātūrus | GER. | ferendus |
| | GERUND. | | SUPINE. |
| | ferendī | | lātum |

753. Eō, ire, ii, itum.

754. Fīō, fieri, factus sum

INDICATIVE.

| | | | | |
|------------|-------|------|-------------|---------|
| PRES. | eō | imus | fīō | (fimus) |
| | īs | itis | fīs | (fitis) |
| | it | eunt | fit | fiunt |
| IMPERF. | ībam | | fiēbam | |
| FUT. | ibō | | fiam | |
| PERF. | ii | | factus sum | |
| PLUPERF. | ieram | | factus eram | |
| FUT. PERF. | ierō | | factus erō | |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | |
|----------|--------|--------------|
| PRES. | eam | fiam |
| IMPERF. | irem | fierem |
| PERF. | ierim | factus sim |
| PLUPERF. | iissem | factus essem |

IMPERATIVE.

| | | |
|-------|--------|----------|
| PRES. | ī, ite | fi, fite |
| FUT. | itō | |

INFINITIVE.

| | | |
|-------|-------------|-------------|
| PRES. | ire | fieri |
| PERF. | iisse | factus esse |
| FUT. | itūrus esse | factum iri |

PARTICIPLES.

| | | | |
|-------|--------------------------|-------|-----------|
| PRES. | iēns, <i>Gen.</i> euntis | PERF. | factus |
| FUT. | itūrus | GER. | faciendus |

GERUND.

eundī

SUPINE.

itum

755. Irregular Forms of the Regular Verb.

i. Contracted forms in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses:

(a) Perfects in *-āvi*, *-ēvi*, and also *mōvi* and *nōvi* (from *moveō* and *nōscō*), often drop *v* before *-is-*, *-er-* or *-ēr-*, and contract the two vowels thus brought together to *ā*, *ē*, *ō* respectively; as, *imperāisset* for *imperāvisset*, *cōnsuērunt* for *cōnsuēvērunt*.

(b) Perfects in *-īvi* also drop *v* before *-is-*, *-er-* or *-ēr-*. Before *-is-* the vowels thus brought together are contracted to *ī*; as, *adisset* for *adiisset*. Before *-er-* and *-ēr-*, *ī* is shortened to *i*; as, *audierat* for *audiverat*.

But *eō* and its compounds, as also *petō* and *dēsīnō*, drop *v* also in the first and third singular and first plural of the perfect indicative.

ii. The gerund and gerundive of the third and fourth conjugations have sometimes (especially after *i*) the endings *-undī* and *-undus* for *-endī* and *-endus*.

iii. In the imperative, *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō* have *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*. These forms are retained in compounds (except in those compounds of *faciō* which change to *-ficiō*).

iv. Archaic forms used in poetry:

(a) The present infinitive passive in *-ier* for *-ī*.

(b) Contracted forms of perfects in *-sī* or *-xī*, such as *dīxistī* for *dīxistī*.

(c) A future perfect indicative in *-sō* and a perfect subjunctive in *-sim*; as, *faxō* (for *faciō*) instead of *fēcerō*, and *ausim* instead of *ausus sim*.

v. *Orior*, though regularly of the fourth conjugation, has very commonly in the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive the forms of the third conjugation.

vi. The semi-deponents (see 313) are *audeō*, *ausus sum*; *gaudeō*, *gāvīsus sum*; *fīdō*, *fīsus sum*; *soleō*, *solitus sum*.

756. Compounds of the Irregular Verbs.

i. *Prōsum* has *prōd-*, not *prō-*, before all forms of *sum* beginning with *e*; as, *prōdest*, *prōderat*.

ii. A present participle occurs in the compounds *absum* and *praesum* (*absēns*, *praesēns*). *Possum* has *potēns*, used only adjectively (544. b).

iii. For the passive forms of the transitive compounds of *eō*, see 421. N.B.

iv. For the compounds of *ferō*, *tulī*, *lātum*, see 393. *b*.

v. The passive of compounds of *faciō* with prepositions is regularly in *-fīor*, not in *-fīō*. (See 420. *b*.) With other compounds, *-fīō* is used; as, *satisfieri* from *satisfaciō*.

757.

Defective Verbs.

i. *Coepī* (*I began*) is used only in the perfect tenses, the other tenses being supplied by *incipiō*. For *coeptus sum* with passive infinitives, see 518. ii.

ii. *Meminī* (*I remember*) and *ōdī* (*I hate*) are used only in the perfect tenses, but these have the force of the tenses of the Present System (present, imperfect, and future). For the imperative of *meminī*, see 623. i.

iii. *Āiō* (*I say*) has in common use only the present indicative, *āiō*, *āis*, *āit*, *āiunt*, and the imperfect, *āiebam*, etc.

iv. *Inquam* (*I say*) has in common use only the first and third persons singular of the present indicative, *inquam* and *inquīt*.

v. *Fārī* (*to speak, say*), a deponent of the first conjugation, has, in the indicative of the Present System, only *fātur*, *fābor*, and *fābitur*.

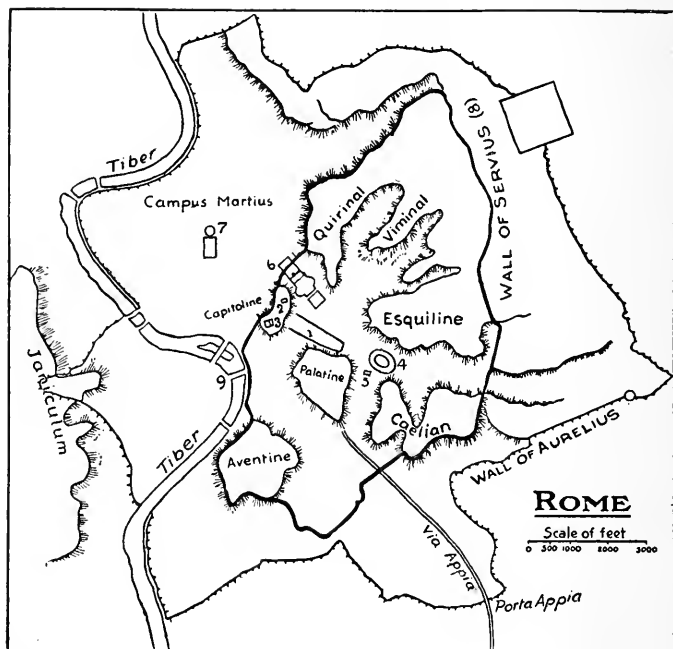
vi. *Quaesō* (*I beg*) has only the first person singular and plural of the present indicative, *quaesō* and *quaesumus*.

758.

Verbal Derivatives.

i. INCEPTIVES or INCHOATIVES, of the third conjugation, end in *-scō* and denote the *beginning* of an action or the *entrance* upon a condition; as, *cōnsuēscō*, *I become accustomed*.

ii. FREQUENTATIVES, INTENSIVES, or ITERATIVES, of the first conjugation, end in *-tō* or *-sō*, and denote *repeated* or *rigorous* action; as, *jactō*, *I brandish*, from *jaciō*, *I hurl*. They are formed from the supine stem, but when formed from the first conjugation end in *-itō* (not *-ātō*). Double frequentatives in *-titō* occur, based on other iteratives in *-tō*; as *ventitō*, *I keep coming*.



1. ROMAN FORUM (764).
2. ARX (319 and 353).
3. CAPITOL.
4. COLOSSEUM (763).
5. ARCH OF CONSTANTINE (766).
6. FORUM AND COLUMN OF TRAJAN (765).
7. PANTHEON (762).
8. WALL OF SERVIUS (184).
9. SUBLICIAN BRIDGE (221).

DESCRIPTION OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

759. The Appian Way (Via Appia). (Page 50.)

*"He drove abroad, in furious guise,
Along the Appian Way."*

The Romans were the most skilful builders of enduring roads the world has ever known. The most celebrated highway constructed by them is the Appian Way, which even at the present day well merits its ancient title "Queen of Roads." It was built by Appius Claudius Caecus about 312 B.C. and extends some 350 miles south-east from Rome to Brindisi, the ancient Brundisium, the regular port of departure for Greece. The road-bed is paved with stones, and is about 16 feet wide.

760. The Claudian Aqueduct. (Page 50.)

This famous aqueduct was built by the Emperor Claudius about 50 A.D. It was constructed for the purpose of conveying water to Rome from the lakes and springs in the Alban hills, a distance of about 45 miles. Its ruins are now a striking feature of the Roman Campagna. Between 300 B.C. and 300 A.D. fourteen aqueducts were built to supply Rome, and others were constructed in various parts of the Empire, such as the one at Nemausus (now Nîmes) in southern Gaul (page 239).

761. Tomb of Caecilia Metella. (Page 67.)

*"Thus much alone we know—Metella died,
The wealthiest Roman's wife: Behold his love or pride."*

On each side of the Appian Way, near Rome, were tombs of famous citizens. One of these tombs is that built in the time of Julius Caesar in honour of Caecilia Metella, the wife of the triumvir Crassus. It stands about two or three miles from the city gate, and is an immense circular pile about 70 feet in diameter, built of great blocks of hewn stone on a quadrangular foundation. The marble with which the basement was formerly coated was removed about three centuries ago to make the fountain of Trevi in Rome.

762. **The Pantheon.** (Page 115.)

*"Sanctuary and home
Of art and piety—Pantheon!—pride of Rome."*

The Pantheon (the temple of all the gods), the best preserved edifice of the ancient Romans, was built by Marcus Agrippa 27 B.C., as an inscription on the portico still bears witness. It is now the Church of Sta. Maria Rotonda and is used as the burial place of the kings of Italy. Its diameter is about 140 feet and its height practically the same. The vast rotunda is lighted by a circular opening, 27 feet in diameter, at the apex of the dome. In front is a splendid portico, 110 feet wide and 45 feet deep, composed of 16 Corinthian columns of granite 13 feet in circumference and 39 feet high.

763. **The Colosseum (Flavian Amphitheatre).** (Page 130.)

*"While stands the Coliseum, Rome shall stand,
When falls the Coliseum, Rome shall fall."*

The Colosseum, of which only about one-third remains, is the largest theatre and one of the most imposing structures in the world. It was begun by the Emperor Flavius Vespasianus, and completed by his son Titus in the year 80 A.D. Since the 8th century it has generally been called the Colosseum, after the colossal statue of Nero which formerly stood close by. It is more than 600 feet long and 500 wide. The arena was about 280 feet by 175. The encircling wall rises in four stories to the height of 156 feet. In the Colosseum took place gladiatorial combats and fights with wild beasts. It was capable of holding 87,000 spectators seated, or about 100,000 in all.

764. **The Roman Forum.** (Pages 211, 226.)

*"Now thy Forum roars no longer,
fallen every purple Caesar's dome."*

The Forum, originally the open tract lying between the Capitoline and Palatine hills, was afterwards closely surrounded by temples, shops, and basilicas. In the Forum the citizens assembled to discuss affairs of state and to transact private business; there justice was administered, and there, from the rostra, orators harangued the people. It was, in a word, the heart of the Roman Empire. According to an old tradition, it was in the Forum that the Sabine women, in the days of Romulus, intervened to make peace between the Romans and the Sabines (page 65).

765. Trajan's Column. (Page 291.)

This column, which stands at the western end of Trajan's Forum, is of marble, and was erected in 114 A.D. It is about 130 feet high, including the base, with a diameter of 11 feet at the bottom and 10 feet at the top. It was formerly crowned by a statue of Trajan, but this was replaced in the 16th century by one of St. Peter. A series of bas-reliefs, representing scenes in Trajan's Dacian campaign, forms a spiral, 3 feet wide and 660 feet long, round the shaft of the pillar. The reliefs are 2 feet high at the bottom and gradually increase in size as they go upward, thus making the figures at the top and bottom seem of equal size. One of these scenes is represented on page 269. It is said that the bones of Trajan were buried under the column. The broken granite columns which appear in the foreground of the picture belonged to the colonnade of a basilica which filled the western side of Trajan's Forum.

766. Triumphal Arches. (Pages 211, 306.)

These arches, so characteristic of the ancient Romans, were erected in the most frequented streets to commemorate the victories of generals or emperors. According to the space available, they had a single arch, or three arches, a large one in the centre for carriages, and two smaller ones for foot-passengers. Ancient writers mention 21 such arches in Rome. The arch of Septimius Severus (prominent in the north-west corner of the Roman Forum) is 75 feet high and 82 feet broad and was erected in honour of that emperor and his two sons in A.D. 203 to commemorate his victories over the Parthians and Arabians. The Arch of Constantine, the best preserved of these structures, was erected by the Senate and the people of Rome after the defeat of Maxentius in 311 A.D., when Constantine declared himself in favour of Christianity. At the eastern end of the Forum, spanning the Sacred Way, is the Arch of Titus, erected to commemorate the conquest of Judea by Vespasian and his son Titus in 70 A.D.

VOCABULARIES.

LATIN-ENGLISH.

[The numbers refer to sections.]

A

ā, ab, prep. with abl., from ; by ; on.

abdō, ere -didī, -ditum, hide, conceal.

addūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, carry away, carry off.

abjicō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw away.

abstinēō, ēre, nī, -tentum, hold aloof, abstain.

absum, abesse, āfuī, be away, be distant, be absent.

ac, conj., and, and also.

accēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, approach, draw near.

accidō, ere, -cidī, happen, befall.

accipō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive ; suffer.

Achillēs, is, M., Achilles, *the hero of Homer's Iliad.*

aciēs, ēī, F., line (of battle).

ācriter, adv., fiercely, vigorously.

ad, prep. with acc., to, towards, against ; with a view to, for ; until.

addūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, bring ; influence, induce, move.

adeō, ire, -tī, -itum, advance ; approach, visit.

aditus, ūs, M., approach, means of approach.

administrō, āre, āvī, ātum, manage, attend to.

adorior, irī, -ortus sum, attack, assault.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, be present, be at hand.

adulēscēns, -entis, M., young man.

adventus, ūs, M., arrival, approach.

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum, build.

Aedui, ōrum, M. plur., the Aedui, *a tribe in central Gaul.*

aegrē, adv., with difficulty, scarcely.

aequus, a, um, fair, right.

aestās, -tātis, F., summer.

afficō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, affect, visit, overcome.

affirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, declare.

Agamemūōn, -onis, M., Agamemnon, *a Grecian king.*

ager, agrī, M., land, field, territory.

agger, -eris, M., mound.

aggredior, ī, -gressus sum, attack.

agmen, -minis, N., line of march, column.

agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, move forward ; do ; treat, confer.

alacritās, -tātis, F., ardour, activity.

aliquantum, adv., some distance.

aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), someone, something [456].

aliter, adv., in another way ; **alter atque,** otherwise than.

alius, a, ud, other, another [207].

Alpēs, ium, F. plur., the Alps.

alter, era, erum, the other [207].

altitūdō, -dinis, F., height, depth.

altus, a, um, high, deep ; **N., altum, I, as noun,** the sea.

āmentia, ac, F., frenzy, madness.

amicitia, ac, F., friendship.

amicus, a, um, friendly ; *superl.,* closest or dearest friend.

amicus, I, M., friend.
amittō, ere, -misi, -missum, lose.
amplius, adv., comparative, further,
any more.
ancora, ae, F., anchor.
angustus, a, um, narrow, scanty.
animadvertō, ere, -ti, -sum, notice,
observe.
animus, I, M., spirit, heart.
annus, I, M., year.
ante, prep. with acc., before.
antē, adv., before, previously.
antequam, conj., before.
apertus, a, um, open, clear; un-
protected.
appāreō, ēre, ui, itum, be clear, be
evident.
appellō, āre, āvi, ātum, name, call.
appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum, ap-
proach, with dat.
apud, prep. with acc., with, among.
aqua, ae, F., water.
Arar, Araris, M., Arar, a river in
Gaul.
arbitror, āri, ātus sum, think,
consider.
ārdeō, ēre, ārsi, ārsu, burn, be
fired.
Arlovistus, I, M., Ariovistus, a Ger-
man king.
arma, ōrum, N. plur., arms.
armātus, a, um, armed.
ars, artis, F., art.
atque, conj., and, and also.
auctor, -tōris, M., advocate, adviser.
auctoritās, -tātis, F., influence,
weight.
audācter, adv., boldly.
audāx, -ācis, bold, daring.
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, venture,
dare [313].
audiō, ire, ivi, itum, hear.

augeō, ēre, auxi, auctum, in-
crease [225. N.B.].
aureus, a, um, golden.
aut, conj., or; aut . . aut, either . . or.
autem, conj., but, however.
autumnus, I, M., autumn.
auxillum, I, N., aid, help; plur.,
auxiliaries, reinforcements.
āvertō, ere, -ti, -sum, turn aside.

B

baculum, I, N., staff, wand.
barbarus, I, M., barbarian.
Belga, ae, M., Belgian.
bellicōsus, a, um, warlike.
bellō, āre, āvi, ātum, make war.
bellum, I, N., war.
bene, adv., well.
beneficium, I, N., kindness, favour.
benignē, adv., courteously, with
kindness.
benignitās, -tātis, F., kindness,
courtesy.
bibō, ere, bibi, drink.
bonus, a, um, good.
brevi, adv., soon, in a short time.
brevis, e, short, brief.
Britannia, ae, F., Britain.
Britannus, I, M., Briton.

C

cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsum, fall.
caecus, a, um, blind.
Caesar, -aris, M., Caesar, especially
Caius Julius Caesar, 100-44 B.C.
calamitās, -tātis, F., disaster, de-
feat.
calefactō, ere, -fēci, -factum, heat.
caplō, ere, cēpi, captum, take,
capture; take up; adopt, form.
captivus, I, M., prisoner, captive.
caput, capitlis, N., head.

carmen, -minis, N., song; charm, incantation.
carō, carnis, F., flesh.
carrus, ī, M., cart, wagon.
castra, ōrum, N. *plur.*, camp.
causa, ac, F., cause, reason; *abl. causā*, for the sake (of), for the purpose (of) [181].
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, give way, retire.
celer, eris, ere, swift, speedy.
celeritās, -tātis, F., swiftness, speed.
celeriter, *adv.*, quickly, swiftly, speedily, soon.
cēnō, āre, āvī, ātum, dine.
centum, a hundred.
centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion.
certus, a, um, fixed, certain; **certiōrem faciō**, inform.
cēteri, ae, a, the others, the rest.
cibus, ī, M., food.
Circē, ēs, F., Circe, *a sea-nymph and sorceress*.
circeiter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, about.
circum, prep. with acc., around, about.
circumdō, dare, -dedī, -datum, surround, enclose.
circumvenīō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum, surround.
citerior, -ōris, nearer; **Citerior Gallia**, hither Gaul, *south of the Alps and north of Italy*.
civis, is, M., citizen.
civitas, -tātis, F., citizenship; state, country.
clāmītō, āre, āvī, ātum, cry out.
clāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, shout, cry out.
clāmor, -ōris, M., shout, shouting, outcry.
classis, is, F., fleet.

cocpī, isse, began [125].
cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitum, learn, find out, ascertain; *perfect*, know.
cōgō, ere, cōgī, coactum, collect; compel, force.
cohors, cohortis, F., cohort.
cohortor, āri, ātus sum, encourage, urge, exhort.
collis, is, M., hill.
collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, station.
colloquium, ī, N., interview, conference.
colloquor, ī, -locūtus sum, have an interview, confer.
commeātus, ūs, M., supplies, provisions.
communus, adv., hand to hand, at close range.
committō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, join, engage; entrust.
commoveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, alarm, dismay, disturb, excite.
communis, e, common, general, public.
comparō, āre, āvī, ātum, get together, procure.
compellō, ere, -pullī, -pulsum, drive.
complector, ī, -plexus sum, embrace.
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, fill.
complūrēs, a (gen. -ium), several.
comportō, āre, āvī, ātum, bring together, collect.
comprehendō, ere, -hendī, -hēsum, seize, catch.
concedō, -ere, -cessī, cessum, grant, yield.
concilium, ī, N., meeting, council.
condō, ere, -didī, -ditum, store, put away; found.
conectō, ere, -nexūī, -nexum, fasten together.

cōnferō, ferre, contulī, collātum,
collect, gather, convey; **se, cōn-**
ferre, betake one's self, go.

cōnfielō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish,
accomplish; **cōnfectus,** exhausted.

cōnfidō, ere, -fisis sum, trust, *with*
dat. [313].

cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, strength-
en; encourage, arouse; establish;
declare.

cōnfuglō, ere, -fūgī, flee.

congregior, ī, -gressus sum, en-
gage, fight.

conicelō, ere, -jēcī, -iectum, hurl,
throw.

conjungō, ere, -jūnxī, -junctum,
unite, join [282. N.B.].

cōnor, āri, ātus sum, try, attempt.

conquirō, ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum,
look about for.

cōnscendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsuum,
climb; embark.

cōnscrībō, ere, -scrīpsī, -scriptum,
enrol, enlist.

cōnsequor, ī, -secūtus sum, over-
take; attain, acquire.

cōnsidō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, en-
camp.

cōnsiliū, ī, N., plan, design, pur-
pose; **commūnī cōnsiliō,** by com-
mon consent.

cōnsistō, ere, -stīti, take up posi-
tion; halt.

cōnspectus, ſis, M., sight, view.

cōnspiclō, ere, -spexī, -specum,
see, observe.

cōnstituō, ere, -uī, -ātum, deter-
mine; fix, appoint.

cōnsuēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum,
become accustomed [213. N.B.].

cōnsuētūdō, -dīnis, F., custom [213].

cōnsulō, ere, -uī, -tum, consult;
take thought.

cōnsūmō, ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum,
spend; exhaust, destroy.

contendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum,
strive; hasten; contend.

continēns, -entis, incessant, con-
tinual; unbroken, continuous.

continēns, -entis, F., mainland, con-
tinent [213].

continenter, adv., continually, con-
tinuously.

confinēō, ēre, uī, -tentum, confine,
restrain, hem in; enclose, bound.

continuus, a, um, successive.

contrā, prep. with acc., against.

contrōversia, ae, F., quarrel, dis-
pute.

conventō, īre, -vēmī, -ventum,
come together, assemble.

convertō, ere, -vertī, -versum,
turn, change [282. N.B.].

convivium, ī, N., feast, banquet.

convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call to-
gether, summon.

coorior, īrī, -ortussum, arise, break
out.

cōpla, ae, F., plenty, supply, abund-
ance; *plur.*, forces, troops.

cōplōsus, a, um, rich.

cornū, ſis, N., horn; wing.

corpus, -oris, N., body [384].

corripō, ere, -ripuī, -reptum,
snatch up, seize.

cotīdīānus, a, um, daily.

cotīdīē, adv., daily, every day.

Crassus, ī, M., Crassus, *a Roman*
name.

crēber, bra, hrum, frequent, numer-
ous.

crēdō, ere, -dīdī, -dītum, believe.

crūdēlis, e, cruel.

crūdēlīter, adv., cruelly, *with*
cruelty.

cum, prep. with abl., with.

cum, *conj.*, when ; since, as.
cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly.
cupiditās, **-tātis**, *F.*, eagerness, longing.
cupidus, **a**, **um**, desirous, eager, fond.
cūr, *adv.*, why.
cursus, **ūs**, *M.*, course.
custōs, **-ōdis**, *M.*, guard, keeper.
Cyclōps, **-ōpis**, *M.*, Cyclops, *one of a fabulous race of giants, in Sicily.*

D

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from, down ; concerning, about, of.
dēbitus, **a**, **um**, due, proper, well deserved.
dēcēdō, *ere*, **-cessi**, **-cessum**, withdraw.
decem, *ten*.
dēcernō, *ere*, **-crēvi**, **-crētum**, decree, assign.
decimus, **a**, **um**, tenth.
dēditō, **-ōtis**, *F.*, surrender [263].
dēdō, *ere*, **-didi**, **-ditum**, surrender [282. N.B.].
dēdūcō, *ere*, **-dūxi**, **-ductum**, lead off, withdraw ; draw down, launch.
dēfendō, *ere*, **-fendi**, **-fensum**, defend.
dēfēnsor, **-ōris**, *M.*, defender.
dēferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, carry down ; bring ; report.
dēficiō, *ere*, **-feci**, **-fectum**, fail, give out.
deinde, *adv.*, then, next.
dējiciō, *ere*, **-jēci**, **-jectum**, cast down ; dislodge ; disappoint [438].
dēligō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, tie, moor.
dēligō, *ere*, **-lēgi**, **-lēctum**, choose.
dēmōnstrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, point out, explain ; mention, make mention.
dēmum, *adv.*, at length.
dēnsus, **a**, **um**, thick, dense.
dēpellō, *ere*, **-puli**, **-pulsum**, drive away, drive, remove.
dēponō, *ere*, **-posui**, **-positum**, lay down ; deposit ; put away, abandon.
dēsiliō, **irē**, **-siliū**, **-sultum**, leap down.
dēsistō, *ere*, **-stiti**, **-stitum**, cease, abandon.
dēspērō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, despair.
dēstringō, *ere*, **-strinxi**, **-strictum**, draw, unsheathe.
dēsūm, **deesse**, **dēfui**, be wanting, be lacking.
dētercō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, deter, hinder.
dētineō, **ēre**, **uī**, **-tentum**, detain, delay.
deus, **I**, *M.*, a god.
dēvorō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, devour, eat.
dexter, **tra**, **trum**, right.
dīcō, *ere*, **dixi**, **-dictum**, say, speak ; appoint, fix.
dies, **ēi**, *M.*, day.
dificilis, **e**, difficult, hard.
difficultās, **-tātis**, *F.*, difficulty.
diligēns, **-entis**, careful, diligent.
diligenter, *adv.*, carefully.
diligentia, **ae**, *F.*, care, diligence.
dīmicō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, fight, engage.
dīmittō, *ere*, **-misi**, **-missum**, send out, despatch ; dismiss.
discēdō, *ere*, **-cessi**, **-cessum**, withdraw, depart, leave [125].
discessus, **ūs**, *M.*, departure, withdrawal.
disjiciō, *ere*, **-jēci**, **-jectum**, scatter.
dispōnō, *ere*, **-posui**, **-positum**, place (at intervals), post.
dissimilis, **e**, dissimilar, unlike.

distō, āre, be apart.
distribuō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, assign, distribute, allot; divide.
diū, adv., long, for a long time.
divellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsū, tear asunder.
dividō, ere, -visī, -vīsum, divide, separate.
dō, dare, dedī, datum, give.
doceō, ēre, nī, doctum, teach, explain.
dolor, -ōris, M., pain, grief.
dolus, ī, M., craft, cunning; trick.
domus, ūs, F., house, home; **domum**, home, towards home; **domo**, from home.
dormiō, Ire, īvī, Itum, sleep.
dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum, hesitate; have doubts.
ducentī, ac, a, two hundred.
ducō, ere, dūxī, ductum, lead.
dulcis, e, sweet, pleasant.
dum, conj., while [273].
duo, ac, o, two.
duodecim, twelve.
duodeviginti, eighteen.
duplex, -icis, twofold, double.
dux, ducis, M., leader, guide.

E

ē, ex, prep. with abl., out of, from, of.
ēbrius, a, um, drunken.
ēdūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out.
efficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, effect, accomplish, make; construct, build.
effugiō, ere, -fūgī, escape.
ēgī, from agō.
ego, meī, I.
ēgredior, ī, -gressus sum, go forth, issue forth; leave; disembark, land [438].
ēgregiē, adv., excellently.

ējiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw out; **sē ējicere**, rush out.
ēmittiō, ere, -misi, -missum, send out.
enim, conj., for.
eō, Ire, ī (īvī), Itum, go.
eō, adv., thither, there, thereon.
equēs, equitīs, M., horse-soldier; *plur.*, cavalry.
equester, trīs, tre, of cavalry, cavalry.
equitātus, ūs, M., cavalry.
equus, ī, M., horse.
errō, āre, āvī, ātum, wander.
ērupiō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break out, sally out.
ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., sally, sortie.
et, conj., and; **et . . et**, both . . and.
etiam, adv., even, also.
etsī, conj., although.
Eurylochus, ī, M., Eurylochus, *a companion of Ulysses*.
ēvādō, ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, escape.
ēveniō, Ire, -vēnī, -ventum, turn out.
ex, prep. with abl., out of, from, of.
excēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw.
excipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, welcome.
excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, arouse.
exēō, Ire, -ī, -Itum, go out, go forth, leave.
exercitus, ūs, M., army.
exauriō, Ire, -hausī, -haustum, drain.
existimō, āre, āvī, ātum, think, consider.
expediō, Ire, īvī, Itum, set free, make ready; **expeditus**, in light marching order.
expellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive out.

explōrātor, -tōris, M., scout.
explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, examine, reconnoitre.
expōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, put out; **in terram expōnō,** land, put ashore.
expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, storm, take by storm.
exsillum, ī, N., exile.
expectō, āre, āvī, ātum, await, wait (for); expect; wait.
extrēmus, a, um, outermost; most distant, remotest.

F

facile, adv., easily.
facilis, e, easy.
faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, do; make, build.
facultās, -tātis, F., opportunity; abundance.
falsus, a, um, false.
fāma, ae, F., rumour, report.
famēs, is, F., hunger.
ferē, adv., almost, nearly.
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear, carry, bring; endure, stand.
fessus, a, um, wearied.
fidēlis, e, faithful.
fidēs, eī, F., faith, faithfulness, fidelity.
figūra, ae, F., shape, figure.
fīlla, ae, F., daughter.
fīlius, ī, M., son.
fīnis, is, M., end; *plur.,* borders, territory.
fīntimū, a, um, neighbouring, adjacent; *as noun,* neighbour.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made; be done; happen.
fīrmō, āre, āvī, ātum, strengthen.
fīrmus, a, um, strong.

flēō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, weep, be in tears.
fluctus, ūs, M., wave.
flūmen, -minis, N., river.
fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum, flow.
fluvius, ī, M., river.
fōns, fontis, M., spring, fountain.
foris, adv., out of doors, outside.
fōrma, ae, F., form, appearance.
fōrmōsus, a, um, beautiful.
forte, adv., by chance, as it happened.
fortis, e, brave.
fortiter, adv., bravely, gallantly.
fortitūdō, -dinis, F., bravery.
fortūna, ae, F., fortune; *plur.,* resources, possessions, property.
fossa, ae, F., trench.
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, shatter; crush.
frāter, -tris, M., brother.
frōns, frontis, F., forehead.
frūctus, ūs, M., fruit.
frūmentārius, a, um, of grain [274].
frūmentor, āri, ātus sum, forage, get provisions.
frūmentum, ī, N., grain, corn.
frnor, ī, fructus sum, enjoy, *with abl.*
frūstrā, adv., in vain.
fuga, ae, F., flight [211, 289].
fuglō, ere, fūgī, fugitum, flee, escape.
furor, -ōris, M., rage, frenzy.

G

Gallia, ae, F., Gaul.
Gallus, ī, M., a Gaul.
gaudium, ī, N., joy, rejoicing.
genus, -eris, N., kind, sort.
Germānia, ae, F., Germany.
Germānus, ī, M., German.

gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, carry, conduct; carry on, wage; *passive*, be done, take place; **rēs gesta**, exploit, deed.

gigās, -antis, M., giant.

gladius, i, M., sword.

Græcia, æ, f., Greece.

Græcus, i, M., Greek.

grātia, æ, f., gratitude; **grātiā referō**, make a return.

gravis, e, heavy, severe, serious; deep.

graviter, adv., seriously, severely.

gravō, āre, āvi, ātum, overcome; **gravātus**, heavy.

gustō, āre, āvi, ātum, taste.

H

habēō, ēre, nī, itum, have; hold.

habitō, āre, āvi, ātum, dwell.

hasta, æ, f., spear.

hauriō, īre, hausī, haustum, drink off.

Hector, -oris, M., Hector, *the greatest of the Trojan warriors*.

Helena, æ, f., Helen, *the fairest woman of Greece*.

Helvētīi, ōrum, M. *plur.*, the Helvetians.

herba, æ, f., plant, herb.

hiberna, ōrum, N. *plur.*, winter camp, winter quarters.

hic, hæc, hōc, this; the following; he.

hic, adv., here.

hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum, winter, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, F., winter.

homō, -inis, M., man; *plur.*, people.

hōra, æ, f., hour.

horribilis, e, terrible, dreadful.

hortor, āri, ātus sum, encourage, urge.

hospitium, i, N., hospitality.

hostis, is, M., enemy.

hūc, adv., hither, here.

hūmānus, a, um, human.

humī, adv., on the ground.

I

ibi, adv., there.

īdem, eadem, idem, the same.

idōneus, a, um, fit, suitable.

igitur, adv., accordingly, therefore.

īgnārus, a, um, ignorant, not knowing.

īgnis, is, M., fire.

īgnorō, āre, āvi, ātum, not know, be ignorant (of).

īgnōtus, a, um, unknown, strange.

ille, a, ud, that, he.

impedimentum, i, N., hindrance; *plur.*, baggage.

impediō, īre, īvi, itum, hinder, impede.

im-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, incite, drive, impel.

imperātor, -toris, M., commander (in chief).

imperātum, i, N., command, order, bidding.

imperītus, a, um, inexperienced, unacquainted.

imperium, i, N., command, control, rule, sway, supremacy, sovereignty.

imperō, āre, āvi, ātum, give orders, command, order, rule, govern, *with dat.*; require, demand [181. N.B.].

impetrō, āre, āvi, ātum, obtain (a request).

impetus, ūs, M., attack, onset.

implorō, āre, āvi, ātum, beseech.

impōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place upon, place.

in, prep. with abl., in, on, among; *with acc.*, into, to, on.

incendō, ere, -cendi, -censum, burn; inflame.

incidō, ere, -cidi, -cāsum, fall into.

inclūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, shut up, imprison.

incognitus, a, um, unknown.

incola, ae, m., inhabitant.

incolō, ere, -colui, dwell, inhabit.

incolumis, e, safe, unharmed, intact.

incommodum, i, n., misfortune, loss, damage.

incredibilis, e, incredible.

inde, adv., thence; then.

incō, -ire, -ii, -itum, enter; enter upon, begin; adopt, form [42].

infectus, a, um, not done; **rē infectā, abl. absol.,** without accomplishing one's purpose.

inferior, -ōris, lower.

inferō, ferre, intuli, illatum, bring; cause, inflict; advance [39].

ingēns, -entis, huge, vast.

inimicus, a, um, unfriendly, hostile; *m., as noun,* enemy.

iniquus, a, um, unfair, unjust.

initium, i, n., beginning [44].

injiciō, ere, -jeci, -jectum, put in; impart (to), inspire, arouse (in), *with dat.*

injūria, ae, f., wrong doing, wrong, injury, violence.

ināscor, i, -nātus sum, spring up, be aroused.

inopia, ae, f., want, scarcity.

inquit, defective verb, said he.

insātia, ae, f., madness; **in insātiā incidō,** become mad.

insequor, i, -secutus sum, follow up, pursue.

insidiae, ārum, f. plur., ambush, treachery; **per insidiās,** treacherously.

instituō, ere, -ui, -utum, undertake; set about [39]; build, establish.

instruō, ere, -struxi, -structum, draw up, arrange; equip, furnish.

insula, ae, f., island.

intelligō, ere, -lēxi, -lectum, understand, be aware, perceive.

integer, gra, grum, fresh.

inter, prep. with acc., between, among.

intercludō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, cut off [43].

intereā, adv., meanwhile.

interficiō, ere, -fecī, -fectum, kill, slay, put to death.

interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

interior, -ōris, inner, interior.

intermittō, ere, -misi, -missum, put between; *passive,* elapse.

intervallum, i, n., interval, distance.

intrā, prep. with acc., within.

intrō, āre, āvi, ātum, enter.

introeō, -ire, -ii (-ivi) -itum, enter.

introitus, ūs, m., entrance.

inūtilis, e, useless.

invenio, ire, -veni, -ventum, find, come upon.

invictus, a, um, unconquered, invincible.

invitō, āre, āvi, ātum, invite, urge.

invitus, a, um, unwilling, against (one's) will.

ipse, a, um, himself, he himself.

ira, ae, f., anger, wrath.

irrupō, ere, -rupi, -ruptum, burst in, rush (in).

irruō, ere, -rui, rush (in).

is, ea, id, he; that, this, the.

ita, adv., thus, so, in such a way.

Italia, ae, f., Italy.

Itaque, *adv.*, accordingly, therefore.

Iter, **Itineris**, *N.*, road, route; march; passage, right of passing.

Iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.

Ithaca, *ae*, *F.*, Ithaca, *an island west of Greece.*

J

Jaciō, *ere*, **jēci**, **jactum**, hurl, throw, cast.

Jam, *adv.*, now, by this time, already.

Jānuā, *ae*, *F.*, door, entrance.

Jubeō, *ēre*, **jussī**, **jussum**, order.

Jungō, *ere*, **jūnxī**, **jūnctum**, join [349].

Jūra, *ae*, *M.*, Jura, *a range of mountains in Gaul.*

Jūs, **jūris**, *N.*, right, law.

Jūstus, *a*, *um*, just.

L

Labiénus, *I*, *M.*, Labienus, *one of Caesar's staff in Gaul.*

labor, *-ōris*, *M.*, toil, labour.

labōrō, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātum**, toil, struggle, be in distress.

Lāc, **lactis**, *N.*, milk.

laccēō, *ere*, **-lvi**, **-ltum**, harass.

lacrīma, *ae*, *F.*, tear.

lacus, *ūs*, *M.*, lake.

laetitia, *ae*, *F.*, joy, rejoicing.

lapis, *-idis*, *M.*, stone.

lātē, *adv.*, widely, extensively.

lateō, *ēre*, **ul**, be hidden.

lātitūdō, *-dinis*, *F.*, width.

lātus, *a*, *um*, broad, wide.

latus, *-eris*, *N.*, side, flank.

lēgātō, *-ōnis*, *F.*, embassy.

lēgātus, *I*, *M.*, lieutenant, staff-officer; ambassador, envoy.

legiō, *-ōnis*, *F.*, legion (6000 men).

legiōnārius, *a*, *um*, legionary.

levis, *e*, light, slight, unimportant.

liber, *era*, *erum*, free; undisturbed.

liberē, *adv.*, freely.

liberī, *ōrum*, *M. plur.*, children

liberō, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātum**, free.

libertās, *-tātis*, *F.*, freedom.

Libya, *ae*, *F.*, Libya, North Africa.

licet, *ēre*, **licuit**, it is permitted, *with dat. and infin.*; *render freely by may, might.*

ligneus, *a*, *um*, wooden.

littera, *ae*, *F.*, letter; *plur.*, despatch, letter.

litus, *-oris*, *N.*, shore, coast.

locus, *I*, *M.*, place, position; *plur.* **loca**, *N.*, places, ground, district.

locūtus, from **loquor**.

longē, *adv.*, far.

longitūdō, *-dinis*, *F.*, length.

longus, *a*, *um*, long.

loquor, *I*, **locūtus sum**, speak, say.

lōtus, *I*, *F.*, lotus.

Lūcius, *I*, *M.*, Lucius, *a Roman name.*

lūx, **lūcis**, *F.*, light; **prima lūx**, daybreak, dawn.

M

magis, *adv.*, more; rather.

magistrātus, *ūs*, *M.*, magistrate.

māgnificētia, *ae*, *F.*, splendour.

māgnificus, *a*, *um*, splendid, sumptuous.

māgnitūdō, *-dinis*, *F.*, greatness, extent, size.

māgnopere, *adv.*, greatly, exceedingly.

māgnus, *a*, *um*, great, large; forced [95]; loud [116]; strong [500].

male, *adv.*, badly.

mālō, **mālīte**, **mālul**, prefer, had rather [401].

maium, *ī*, *N.*, evil, mishap, misfortune.

malus, *a*, *um*, bad, evil.

maneō, *ēre*, *mānsī*, *mānsu*m, remain.

manus, *ūs*, *F.*, hand; band, force.

Mārcus, *ī*, *M.*, Marcus, *a Roman name*.

mare, *maris*, *N.*, sea.

māter, *mātris*, *F.*, mother.

mātrimōnium, *ī*, *N.*, marriage; **in mātrimōnium dācō**, marry.

mātūrē, *adv.*, early, soon.

mātūrō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, make haste.

medicāmentum, *ī*, *N.*, drug.

medlocris, *e*, moderate.

medius, *a*, *um*, middle, mid [175].

membrum, *ī*, *N.*, limb.

meminī, *isse*, remember [268].

memor, *-oris*, mindful.

memoria, *ae*, *F.*, memory [268].

Menelāus, *ī*, *M.*, Menelaus, *king of Sparta in Greece*.

mercātor, *-tōris*, *M.*, trader.

Mercurius, *ī*, *M.*, Mercury, *the messenger of the gods*.

meridiēs, *ēī*, *M.*, midday, noon; south.

meus, *a*, *um*, my, mine.

mīles, *militis*, *M.*, soldier.

militāris, *e*, military; of war [157].

minimē, *adv.*, least, by no means.

minitor, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, threaten.

minus, *adv.*, less; **sī minus**, if not.

mīror, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, wonder.

mīrus, *a*, *um*, wonderful.

miscēō, *ēre*, *miscuī*, *mixtum*, mix.

mittō, *ere*, *misi*, *missu*m, send.

modus, *ī*, *M.*, manner, fashion; kind, sort; means.

moneō, *ēre*, *ui*, *itum*, advise, warn.

mōns, *montis*, *M.*, mountain.

mōnstrō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, point out, show.

mōnstrum, *ī*, *N.*, monster.

mora, *ae*, *F.*, delay.

moror, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, delay, wait.

mors, *mortis*, *F.*, death.

moveō, *ēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*, move.

mox, *adv.*, soon.

muller, *-eris*, *F.*, woman.

multitūdō, *-dinis*, *F.*, large number, amount.

multō, *adv.*, much.

multum, *adv.*, much.

multus, *a*, *um*, much; *plur.*, many.

muniō, *ire*, *ivi*, *itum*, fortify, protect.

mūnitō, *-ōnis*, *F.*, fortification, fortifying.

mūnus, *-eris*, *N.*, gift, offering.

mūrus, *ī*, *M.*, wall.

N

nam, *conj.*, for.

nanciscor, *ī*, *nactus sum*, get, obtain, meet with.

nātiō, *-ōnis*, *F.*, tribe, nation.

nātūra, *ae*, *F.*, nature.

nauta, *ae*, *M.*, sailor.

nāvicula, *ae*, *F.*, boat.

nāvigō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, sail.

nāvis, *is*, *F.*, ship.

nē, *adv.*, lest, that . . not; not.

nec, *conj.*, nor, and not; **nec . . nec**, neither . . nor.

necessāriō, *adv.*, necessarily, of necessity.

neō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, kill, slay.

negō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, deny, say . . not.

negōtium, *ī*, *N.*, business, affair.

nēmō (*nēminis*), *M.*, no one, nobody; *in 493, 494, Noman* [349].

neque, conj., nor, and not; **neque . . neque**, neither . . nor.

neuter, tra, trum, neither [205].

nēve, conj., and not.

nihil, indeclinable, N., nothing.

nisi, conj., if not; unless, except.

nōbīlis, e, well-born, noble; famous.

nocēō, ēre, nī, itum, harm, injure, damage, *with dat.*

noctū, adv., by night.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, do not wish [464].

nōmen, -mīnis, N., name.

nōn, adv., not.

nōndum, adv., not yet.

nōnne, not, in questions [342].

nōnnūllī, ae, a, some, some few.

nōs, nostrum, we.

noster, tra, trum, our [282].

nōtūs, a, um, known, familiar.

novem, nine.

novitās, -tātis, F., novelty.

novus, a, um, new; **novae rēs**, change, revolution [171].

nox, noctis, F., night.

nūllus, a, um, no, none, not one [205].

num, in questions [342].

numerus, I, M., number.

numquam, adv., never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, announce, report; **nūntiātum est**, word was brought.

nūntius, I, M., messenger.

nūper, adv., lately.

O

ob, prep. with acc., on account of, because of.

oblīviscor, I, oblītus sum, forget, be forgetful, *with gen.*

obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, beg, beseech.

obses, obsidis, M., hostage.

obstruō, ere, -struī, -strūctum, barricade.

obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, obey.

obtinēō, ēre, uī, obtentum, hold, possess.

occāsiō, -ōnis, F., opportunity.

occāsus, ūs, M., setting.

occidō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, slay, kill.

occupātus, a, um, occupied, busy, engaged.

occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, seize, take possession of.

occurrō, ere, -currī, -cursum, meet, *with dat.*

ōceanus, I, M., ocean.

oculō, eight.

oculus, I, M., eye.

ōlīm, adv., once upon a time.

omnīnō, adv., in all, altogether; entirely; only; at all.

omnis, e, all, every.

onerārius, a, um, for burdens; **nāvis onerāria**, transport.

onus, -eris, N., burden, weight.

oppidum, I, N., town.

opprimō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, overpower, overcome, burden.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, F., attack, assault.

oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, attack, assault.

optimus, a, um, best [195].

opus, -eris, N., work, task.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., speech [300].

ōrdō, -dinis, M., order; rank, line.

orior, Irī, ortus sum, arise, rise.

orō, āre, āvī, ātum, beg, entreat.

ostendō, ere, -tendī, -tēsum or **-tentum**, show, disclose, declare.

ovis, is, F., sheep.

P

palūs, -ūdis, F., marsh.

pār, paris, equal [176].

parēō, ere, pepercī, parsum, spare, *with dat.*

pārēō, ēre, uī, itum, be obedient, obey, *with dat.*

Paris, -idis, M., Paris, *a prince of Troy.*

parō, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare, procure [349]; **parātus, a, um,** ready.

pars, partis, F., part; side, direction [365].

parvus, a, um, small.

passim, adv., in every direction.

passus, ūs, M., pace; **mille passūs,** mile [231. fn.].

pater, patris, M., father.

patior, ī, passus sum, allow; endure, suffer.

patria, ae, F., native land.

Patroclus, ī, M., Patroclus, *a Greek warrior.*

paucī, ae, a, few.

paucitās, -tātis, F., small number.

paulō, adv., a little, shortly, somewhat.

paulum, adv., a little, a short distance.

pāx, pācis, F., peace [99].

pecus, -oris, N., cattle, herd; flock.

pedes, peditis, M., foot-soldier; *plur.,* infantry.

pedester, -tris, -tre, of infantry.

peditātus, ūs, M., infantry.

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive; defeat.

Pēnelopē, ēs, F., Penelope, *the wife of Ulysses.*

per, prep. with acc., through, throughout; about [494].

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring; report; bear, submit to.

perficō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish.

periculōsus, a, um, dangerous.

periculum, ī, N., danger, risk.

perītus, a, um, skilful, skilled, acquainted, *with gen.* [432].

permovēō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, influence, affect, alarm.

perpaucī, ae, a, very few.

perpetuus, a, um, unbroken, lasting; **in perpetuum,** for ever.

perrumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through.

perspicō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, see clearly, perceive.

persuādēō, ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade, induce, *with dat.*

perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, terrify, frighten.

pertineō, ēre, uī, extend; tend.

perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, throw into confusion, confuse; alarm.

pervenīō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come, arrive, reach [125].

pēs, pedis, M., foot [394].

petō, ere, petīvī, petītum, seek; ask, request.

pīlum, ī, N., javelin.

pinguis, e, fat.

plānitīēs, ēī, F., plain.

plūrlimum, adv., most, very much.

plūs, plūris, more [197].

pōculum, ī, N., cup, goblet.

poena, ae, F., penalty.

polliceor, ērī, itus sum, promise.

Polyphēmus, ī, N., Polyphemus, *the famous Cyclops.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, place; pitch (camp); *passive,* depend (on).

pōns, pontis, M., bridge [349].

populus, ārī, ātus sum, devastate, lay waste.

populus, ī, M., people, nation.

porcus, ī, M., pig, swine.

porta, *ac*, *F.*, gate.
portō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, carry, bear.
portus, *ūs*, *M.*, harbour.
poscō, *ere*, *poposcī*, demand.
possessio, *-ōnis*, *F.*, possession, occupation.
possum, *posse*, *potuī*, be able, can [377].
post, *prep. with acc.*, after, behind.
postea, *adv.*, afterwards.
posterus, *a*, *um*, next, following.
postquam, *conj.*, after, when.
postulō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, demand, require, ask.
potēns, *-entis*, powerful.
potestas, *-tātis*, *F.*, power, opportunity [445].
praeacūtus, *a*, *um*, sharpened at the end.
praeceđō, *ere*, *-cessī*, *-cessum*, surpass.
praeda, *ac*, *F.*, plunder, booty [452].
praedicō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, announce, assert.
praedō, *-dōnis*, *M.*, robber, pirate.
praedor, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, plunder, pillage.
praefectus, *I. M.*, officer, commander.
praeficiō, *ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*, set over, put in command (charge) of [378. N.B.].
praemittō, *ere*, *-misi*, *-missum*, send in advance.
praesēns, *-entis*, immediate, instant.
praesidium, *I. N.*, garrison, guard.
praestō, *āre*, *-stitī*, *-stātum* or *-stitum*, be superior, surpass, *with dat.*; *praestat*, it is preferable or better.
praesum, *-esse*, *-fuī*, be over, be in command (charge) of, command, *with dat.*

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, past; except.

praeterea, *adv.*, besides, else.

premō, *ere*, *pressī*, *pressum*, press; harass, beset; *pass.*, be hard pressed.

Priamus, *I. M.*, Priam, *the last king of Troy*.

prīmō, *adv.*, at first.

primum, *adv.*, first, in the first place.

primus, *a*, *um*, first [308].

princeps, *-cipis*, *M.*, leading man, chief man, chief.

principatus, *ūs*, *M.*, leadership.

prius, *adv.*, earlier; **prius . . quam** until (*literally*, sooner . . than).

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; instead of, in return for.

probō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, test; approve, favour.

prōceđō, *ere*, *-cessī*, *-cessum*, advance, proceed.

procurrō, *ere*, *-curri*, *-cursum*, run forward, charge.

prōdeō, *ire*, *-ī*, *-itum*, come forth, come out.

prōdūcō, *ere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductum*, lead forth.

proellum, *I. N.*, battle.

profectio, *-ōnis*, *F.*, setting out, departure.

prōficiō, *ere*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*, accomplish.

proficiscor, *I.*, *-fectus sum*, set out. ~

profugio, *ere*, *-fūgī*, flee, make one's escape.

progredior, *I.*, *-gressus sum*, advance, proceed.

prohibeō, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*, keep, prevent [167. N.B.].

prōjiciō, *ere*, *-jēcī*, *-jectum*, throw down, throw.

prōmō, ere, prōmpsī, prōmptum,
bring out.

prope, adv., nearly, almost, near;
prep. with acc., near.

propter, prep. with acc., on account
of.

prōpulsō, āre, āvī, ātum, repel.

prōspiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum,
provide (for), attend (to), secure.

prōsternō, ere, -strāvī, -strātum,
stretch prostrate.

prōvehō, ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry
forward; *passive,* proceed.

prōvideō, ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, fore-
see; provide, secure.

prōvincia, ae, F., province.

proximus, a, um, nearest, next
[196].

prūdēns, -entis, discreet, prudent.

prūdētia, ae, F., prudence, sa-
gacity.

pūblicus, a, um, public, of the state.

Pūblius, ī, M., Publius, *a Roman*
name.

puella, ae, F., girl, maiden.

puer, erī, M., boy.

pūgna, ae, F., fight, fighting, battle.

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, fight.

pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful.

Q

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum,
ask, inquire (*ab=of*); seek.

quālis, e, of what sort, what.

quam, adv., than; *with superlatives*
as — as possible [249].

quantus, a, um, how great, how
large.

quārtus, a, um, fourth.

quasi, adv., as if, as it were.

quattuor, four.

-que, enclitic conj., and [62].

quī, quae, quod, who, which, what,
that [254].

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or
quoddam, certain [458].

quidem, adv., to be sure, indeed;
nē . . quidem, not even.

quīdecim, fifteen.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

quīnquāgintā, fifty.

quīnque, five.

quīntus, a, um, fifth.

quīs, quae, quid, who, which, what
[341].

quīs, qua, quid or quod, any [457].

quīscquam, quidquam, any [457].

quīsque, quaeque, quidque or
quodque, each [459].

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis or quod-
vis, any [457].

quō, adv., whither, where [343. N.B.].

quod, conj., because.

R

ratio, -ōnis, F., method; manner,
way.

recēns, -entis, recent, new.

recipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, regain,
recover; *with sē,* betake one's self,
retreat, recover, rally.

rēda, ae, F., wagon.

reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum, give
back, restore.

redeō, īre, -īī, -itum, return.

reditus, ūs, M., return.

redūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead
back; restore.

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum,
bring back, carry back; report
[394].

regiō, -ōnis, F., district, country,
region.

rēgnum, ī, N., kingdom, rule, sov-
ereignty.

rejiō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, hurl
back; throw away.

relinquō, ere, -liquī, -lictum,
leave behind, leave.

reliquus, a, um, remaining, rest
[75. fn.].

removeō, ēre, -movī, -mōtum, re-
move, withdraw.

rēmus, ī, M., oar.

renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, renew.

renūtiō, āre, āvī, ātum, report,
bring back word.

repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum,
drive back, repulse.

reperīō, īre, repperī, repertum,
find, discover.

replētus, a, um, filled.

reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry back,
bring back.

rēs, rei, F., thing, matter, affair,
circumstance; **rēs publica,** public
interest, state, public business.

resistō, ere, -stīī, resist, oppose,
with dat.

**respondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōn-
sum,** reply, answer.

respōnsū, ī, N., answer, reply.

restituō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, put back,
restore, replace; renew; rebuild.

retineō, ēre, uī, -tentum, restrain.

revertor, ī, return.

revocō, āre, āvī, ātum, recall.

rēx, rēgis, M., king.

Rhēnus, ī, M., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, ī, M., the Rhone.

ripa, ae, F., bank.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, ask.

Rōmānus, a, um, Roman.

Rōmānus, ī, M., a Roman.

rūmor, -ōris, M., rumour, report.

rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, break.

rūsus, adv., again.

S

saepe, adv., often.

salūs, -ūtis, F., safety [409].

salvus, a, um, safe, well.

Santonēs, um, M. plur., the San-
tones, *a tribe on the west coast of*
Gaul.

satis, adv. and indeclinable adj.,
enough, sufficiently; **satis faciō,**
satisfy, apologize, *with dat.*

saxum, ī, N., stone.

scīō, īre, īvī, ītum, know.

scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum,
write.

sed, conj., but.

sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit, sit
down.

semper, adv., always.

senātus, ūs, M., senate.

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēsum, feel, per-
ceive.

septem, seven.

septimus, a, um, seventh.

Sēquani, ōrum, M. plur., the Se-
quani, *a tribe of east central Gaul.*

sequor, ī, secūtus sum, follow.

servitūs, -ūtis, F., slavery.

servus, ī, M., slave.

sescenti, ae, a, six hundred.

sexagintā, sixty.

sī, conj., if.

sīc, adv., thus, so.

sīcut, adv., as.

signum, ī, N., signal; standard [282].

silva, ae, F., wood, forest.

similis, e, like, similar.

simul, adv., at the same time;
simul ac, as soon as.

simulō, āre, āvī, ātum, pretend.

sine, prep. with abl., without.

sinister, tra, trum, left.

socius, **I**, **M.**, ally; comrade.
sōl, **sōlls**, **M.**, sun; the Sun-god.
sōlum, *adv.*, only.
sōlus, **a**, **um**, only, alone [205].
solvō, **ere**, **solvi**, **solūtum**, loose, release; **nāvem solvō**, set sail; **poenam solvō**, pay a penalty.
somnus, **I**, **M.**, sleep.
sopor, **-ōris**, **M.**, sleep, stupor.
soror, **-ōris**, **F.**, sister.
sors, **sortis**, **F.**, lot; **ad sortem revocārī**, be decided by lot.
Sparta, **ae**, **F.**, Sparta, *a famous city of Greece*.
spatium, **I**, **N.**, space, distance; time.
speciēs, **ēi**, **F.**, appearance, form.
spectō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, look, face.
specus, **ūs**, **M.**, cave, cavern.
spelunca, **ae**, **F.**, cave, cavern.
spernō, **ere**, **sprēvī**, **sprētum**, despise, scorn.
spērō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, hope.
spēs, **ei**, **F.**, hope.
sponte, **F.**, *only in abl. sing.*, of (one's) own accord.
statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately.
statlō, **-ōnis**, **F.**, outpost, guard.
stō, **āre**, **stetī**, **statum**, stand.
studeō, **ēre**, **uī**, be eager, be zealous.
studium, **I**, **N.**, zeal, eagerness.
sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under; close to [438].
subducō, **ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, draw off.
subeō, **ire**, **-iī**, **-itum**, undergo.
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.
subjiciō, **ere**, **-jēcī**, **-jectum**, place beneath, *with acc. and dat.*
sublātus, **a**, **um**, *from tollō*.
subsequor, **I**, **-secūtus sum**, follow closely, follow after.
subsidiū, **I**, **N.**, support, reinforcements.

succēdō, **ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, come close up, advance.
sudis, **is**, **F.**, stake.
Suēbī, **ōrum**, **M. plur.**, the Suebi, *a tribe of north-western Germany*.
sui, **sibi**, himself, him [278].
summus, **a**, **um**, greatest, utmost, extreme, signal; top [198].
superior, **-ōris**, higher, upper; former [198].
superō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, conquer; surpass, excel.
supplicium, **I**, **N.**, punishment.
suprā, *adv.*, above.
suscipiō, **ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, undertake, incur.
suspīcor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, suspect.
sustineō, **ēre**, **uī**, **-tentum**, withstand, sustain, endure.
sustuli, *from tollō*.
suus, **a**, **um**, his, his own; their, their own [281. b].

T

tam, *adv.*, so.
tamen, *adv.*, still, yet, however.
Tamesis, **is**, **M.**, Thames.
tandem, *adv.*, at length, at last.
tangō, **ere**, **tetigī**, **tāctum**, touch.
tantus, **a**, **um**, so great, such great, such.
tēlum, **I**, **N.**, weapon, missile.
tempestās, **-tātis**, **F.**, storm, weather.
tempus, **-oris**, **N.**, time.
teneō, **ēre**, **uī**, **tentum**, hold, keep, restrain.
tergum, **I**, **N.**, back, rear [282].
terra, **ae**, **F.**, land; country.
terreō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itum**, frighten, terrify.
terror, **-ōris**, **M.**, terror, panic.
tetigī, *from tangō*.
Tiberis, **is**, **M.**, Tiber.

timeō, ēre, ul, fear, have fears.
timor, -ōris, M., fear.
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise; remove, take away; *with ancora*, weigh [489].
tōtus, a, um, whole, all [205].
trāctō, āre, āvi, ātum, handle, feel.
trādō, ere, -didī, -ditum, give up, surrender.
trādūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across, take across, lead, bring.
trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, draw.
trāns, prep. with acc., across.
trānsdūcō, see trādūcō.
trānsēō, ire, -ī, -itum, cross.
trānsfodiō, ire, -fodi, -fossūm, pierce.
trānsportō, āre, āvi, ātum, carry across, bring over.
trecentī, ae, a, three hundred.
tribūnus, I, M., tribune.
trīduum, I, N., three days.
triplex, -plēis, triple.
Trōja, ae, F., Troy, *a city in the north-west of Asia Minor.*
Trōjānus, I, M., Trojan, *an inhabitant of Troy.*
tū, tuī, you, thou.
tum, adv., then, thereupon.
tumultus, ūs, M., noise, uproar, commotion.
turris, is, F., tower.
tūtus, a, um, safe.
tuus, a, um, your, thy.

U

ubi, adv., when; where [343 N.B.].
ulciscor, I, ultus sum, avenge.
Ulixēs, is, M., Ulysses, *the shrewdest of the Greek kings before Troy, and the hero of Homer's Odyssey.*
ullus, a, um, any [205, 457].

ultimus, a, um, most distant, remotest; last.
ultrā, prep. with acc., beyond.
ūnā, adv., along, together.
unde, adv., whence, from which (what) place [343. N.B.].
undique, adv., on all sides, from all sides.
ūnus, a, um, one; alone, only [205].
urbs, urbis, F., city, *especially Rome.*
usque, adv., even (to), right up (to).
usus, ūs, M., experience; use, service [432].
ut, conj., that, in order that; so that; *with indicative*, as; when.
uter, utra, utrum, which (of two) [205].
ūter, ūtris, M., skin, leather bottle.
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two) [205, 459].
ūtīlis, e, useful.
ūtor, I, ūsus sum, use, *with abl.* [356].
uxor, -ōris, F., wife.

V

vagor, āri, ātus sum, wander, roam about.
valeō, ēre, ul, itum, be strong [416]; have power, be efficacious [499].
vāllum, I, N., wall, rampart.
vās, vāsis, N., vessel, jar.
vāstō, āre, āvi, ātum, lay waste, ravage.
vehementer, adv., exceedingly, greatly; vigorously.
vehō, ere, vexī, vectum, carry, *passive*, sail.
venēnum, I, N., drug; poison.
venīō, ire, vēnī, ventum, come.
venter, tris, M., belly.
vēr, vēris, N., spring.
verbum, I, N., word.

vereor, ērī, litus sum, fear.

vērō, adv., but, however.

vertō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn [282].

Vesontio, -ōnis, F., Vesontio, *a town in eastern Gaul.*

vesper, erī, M., evening.

vester, tra, trum, your.

vetus, veteris, old.

via, ae, F., way, road, route, journey.

viē, from vīeō.

victōria, ae, F., victory.

vīcus, ī, M., village.

videō, ēre, vidī, vīsum, sec; videor, seem.

vigilia, ae, F., watch.

viginti, twenty.

villa, ae, F., country-house.

vincō, īre, vīxī, vīctum, bind.

vincō, ere, vīcī, vīctum, conquer.

vīnum, ī, N., wine.

vir, virī, M., man.

virtūs, -tūtis, F., valour.

vīs, vim, vī, F., force, violence, might; power, virtue [500]; *plur.,*

vīrēs, ium, strength, vigour [472].

vīsūrus, from vīdeō.

vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum, live.

vīvus, a, um, alive.

vix, adv., scarcely, hardly.

vorō, āre, āvī, ātum, call.

volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing [401].

vōs, vestrum, you.

vōx, vōcis, F., voice; cry.

vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum, wound.

vulnus, -eris, N., wound.

ENGLISH-LATIN.

[For the principal parts of the verbs reference should be made to the Latin-English Vocabulary. The numbers refer to sections.]

A

abandon, dēsistō, ere (*abl.*).

able, **be**, possum, posse, potui [376].

about (= *concerning*), dē (*abl.*);
(= *around*), circum (*acc.*);
(*with numerals*), circiter.

about to—, [348].

above (*adv.*), suprā.

absent, **be**, absum, abesse, āfui.

abundance, cōpia, ae, f.

accomplish, cōficiō, ere.

according to, [415].

account, on—of, propter, ob (*acc.*).

accustomed, **be**, cōsuēvi [243].

acquire, cōsequor, i.

across, trāns (*acc.*).

adjacent, finitimus, a, um.

adopt (*plan*), capiō, ere; ineō, ire.

advance, prōgredior, i.

advance, send in, prae-mittō, ere.

advise, moneō, ēre.

advocate, auctor, -tōris, m.

affair, rēs, rei, f.

afraid, **be**, vereor, ēri.

after (*prep. and adv.*), post (*acc.*);
(*conj.*), postquam [646].

again, rursus.

against, contrā (*acc.*).

aid, auxilium, i, n.; **give, bring, lend—**, auxilium ferō, ferre;
send, come to—of, [431].

alarm, commoveō, ēre; permoveō, ēre.

all, omnis, e; **at all, in all**, omninō;
not at all, nihil.

allow, patior, i; **be allowed**, licet, ēre [637].

ally, socius, i, m.

almost, ferē; prope.

alone, sōlus, a, um; ūnus, a, um.

along (*with*), ūnā (*cum*).

already, jam.

also, etiam.

although, etsi, quamquam [563].

altogether, omninō.

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus, i, m.

among, inter, apud (*acc.*).

amount, multitūdō, -dinis, f.

and, et, -que, atque, ac [426]; **and not**, neque [701. fn.].

announce, nūntiō, āre.

another, alius, a, ud [205]; **one another**, inter sē [662. ii].

answer, make answer, respondeō, ēre.

any, anyone, anything, [457].

apart, **be**, distō, āre.

appoint, cōstituō, ere.

approach (*noun*), (= *coming*), adven-tus, ūs, m.; **means of approach**, aditus, ūs, m.

approach (*verb*), appropinquō, āre (*dat.*); accēdō, ere.

approve, probō, āre.

arise, orior, iri; coorior, iri.

arms, arma, ōrum, n.

army, exercitus, ūs, m.

arouse, cōfirmō, āre.

arrival, adventus, ūs, m.

arrive, veniō, ire; perveniō, ire.

art of war, rēs militāris, F.

as (= *since*), cum; (= *while*), dum, or cum; (= *according as*), ut; (*relative pronoun*), [668]; *of result*, [528]; *as if*, [566].

ascertain, cōgnōscō, ere.

ask (= *inquire*), quaerō, ere (*of* = ex or ab); rogō, āre.

ask (= *request*), petō, ere (ab); rogō, āre; **ask for**, petō, ere (*acc.*).

assault, oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, F.

assemble, conveniō, ire.

assign, distribuō, ere.

assistance, auxilium, ī, N.; **send to** —*of*, [431].

Athens, Athēnae, ārum, F.

attack (*noun*), impetus, ūs, M.; op-pūgnātiō, ōnis, F.

attack (*verb*), oppūgnō, āre; **adorior**, iri; impetum faciō, ere.

attain, cōnsequor, ī.

attempt, cōnor, āri.

attend to, administrō, āre (*acc.*).

autumn, autumnus, ī, M.

auxillaries, auxilia, ōrum, N.

await, expectō, āre.

aware, be, intellegō, ere.

away, be far, absum, abesse.

B

bad, malus, a, um.

baggage, impedimenta, ōrum, N.

bank, rīpa, ae, F.

barbarian, barbarus, ī, M.

battle, pūgna, ae, F.; proelium, ī, N.; *or use* pūgnātur [556].

be, sum, esse, fui [749].

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; perferō.

because, quod [640].

because of, propter, ob (*acc.*)

become, fiō, fieri, factus sum [420].

before (*prep. of time or place*), ante (*acc.*); (*of place*), prō (*abl.*)

before (*adv.*), ante.

before (*conj.*), priusquam, antequam [650].

beg, ōrō, āre.

began, coepī [125]; coeptus sum [518. ii].

begin battle, proelium committō, ere.

beginning, initium, ī, N. [308]; **at** — *of* (*spring*, etc.) [308, 421].

Belgian, Belga, ae, M.

believe, crēdō, ere (*dat.*).

beset, premō, ere.

best, optimus, a, um.

betake one's self, sē recipere.

better, melior, melius; **it is better**, praestat.

between, inter (*acc.*).

body, corpus, -oris, N.

bold, audāx, -ācis.

boldly, audācter.

booty, praeda, ae, F.

both . . and, et . . et.

both (*adj.*), [459].

boy, puer, erī, M.

brave, fortis, e.

bravely, fortiter.

bravery, fortitūdō, -dinis, F.

break, rumpō, ere; frangō, ere.

break out (= *arise*), coorior, iri.

break through, perrumpō, ere.

bridge, pōns, pontis, M. [349].

bring (*aid*), ferō, ferre; **bring** (*hos-tages*), addūcō, ere.

bring back word, renūntiō, āre.

bring over, trānsportō, āre.

Britain, Britannia, ae, F.

Briton, Britannus, ī, M.

broad, lātus, a, um.

brother, frāter, -tris, M.
build, efficiō, ere; **build bridge over**, [319].
burden (*noun*), onus, -eris, N.
burden (*verb*), opprimō, ere.
burn, incendō, ere.
business, negōtium, i, N.
busy, occupātus, a, um (*at* = *in and abl.*).
but, sed; **there is no one but**, [530].

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, M.
call, vocō, āre; appellō, āre.
camp, castra, ōrum, N. [60. N.B.].
can, possum, posse, potuī [376].
capture, capiō, ere.
care, diligentia, ae, F.
carefully, diligenter.
carry, portō, āre.
carry across, transportō, āre.
carry back, reportō, āre; referō, ferre.
carry down, dēferō, ferre.
carry on (*war*), gerō, ere.
carry out (*plans*), (rēs) cōficiō, ere.
cattle, pecus, -oris, N.
cause (*noun*), causa, ae, F.
cause (*verb*), (= *inflict*), inferō, ferre; (= *arrange for*) cūrō, āre [613].
cavalry (*noun*), equitēs, um, M.; equitātus, ūs, M.
cavalry (*adj.*), equester, tris, tre.
cease, dēsistō, ere.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
certain (= *sure*), certus, a, um; (*indefinite pron.*), quidam [458].
change, novae rēs.
charge, put **in**—**of**, praeficiō, ere (*dat.*) [378, N.B.].
chief, chief **man**, princeps, -cipis, M.

children, liberī, -ōrum, M.
choose, dēligō, ere.
circumstance, rēs, rei, F.
citizen, civis, is, M.
citizenship, civitās, -tātis, F.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
cohort, cohors, -tis, F.
collect, cōgō, ere; cōferō, ferre.
column, agmen, -minis, N.
come, veniō, īre.
command (*noun*), imperium, i, N.
command (*verb*), (= *order*), imperō, āre (*dat.*); (= *be in charge of*), praesum, esse (*dat.*).
command, **be in**—**of**, praesum, esse (*dat.*); **put in**—**of**, praeficiō, ere (*dat.*) [378, N.B.].
commander, praefectus, i, M.; imperātor, -tōris, M.; **commander-in-chief**, imperātor, -tōris, M.
common, communis, e.
commotion, tumultus, ūs, M.
compel, cōgō, ere.
complain, queror, i, questus sum.
comrades, thelr, suī, ōrum, M.
concerning, dē (*abl.*).
confusion, throw **into**, perturbō, āre.
conquer, superō, āre; vincō, ere.
consent, **by common**, commūni cōsiliō [416].
consider, arbitror, āri; existimō, āre.
consul, cōsul, -lis, M.
consulship, **in the**—**of**, [548].
consult, cōsulō, ere.
continent, continēns, -entis, F. [243].
continually, continenter.
continuously, continenter.
control, imperium, i, N.
corn, frūmentum, i, N.
council, concilium, i, N.

country (*as opposed to city*), rūs, rūris, N. [618]; (= *territory*), finēs, ium, M.

Crassus, Crassus, I, M.

cross, cross over, trāseō, ire.

crush, opprimō, ere.

custom, cōsuētūdō, -dinis, F.; **according to** —, [243, 415].

cut off, interclūdō, ere (*from* = *abl.*) [437. b].

D

daily, cotidiē.

danger, periculum, ī, N.

dangerous, periculōsus, a, um.

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum [313].

daring, audāx, -ācis.

date, *use* quandō (= *when*) [535].

daughter, filia, ae, F.

dawn, primālūx; **just before dawn**, sub lūcem.

day, diēs, ēi, M.

daybreak, *see* dawn.

death, mors, mortis, F.; **put to death**, interficiō, ere.

declare, ostendō, ere.

deed, rēs gesta, F.

deep, altus, a, um.

defeat (*noun*), calamitās, -tātis, F.

defeat (*verb*), pellō, ere.

defend, dēfendō, ere.

defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, M.

delay, moror, āri.

demand, postulō, āre; imperō, āre [181, N.B.].

dense, dēnsus, a, um.

deny, negō, āre.

depart, discēdō, ere.

departure, discessus, ūs, M.

deprive, dējiciō, ere (*of* = *abl.*) [437].

depth, altitūdō, -dinis, F.

design, cōnsilium, ī, N.

desirous, cupidus, a, um.

despair, dēspērō, āre (*of* = *dē*).

despatch (*noun*), litterae, ārum, F. [130].

despatch (*verb*), dimittō, ere.

detain, dētineō, ēre.

deter, dēterreō, ēre.

determine, cōstituō, ere.

difficult, difficilis, e.

difficulty, difficultās, -tātis, F.; **with** (*great*) **difficulty**, aegrē (*adv.*).

direction, pars, partis, F. [365].

disappoint, spē dējiciō, ere [458].

disaster, calamitās, -tātis, F.

disclose, ostendō, ere.

discover, reperiō, ire.

discreet, prūdēns, -entis.

disembark, nāvi ēgredior, ī.

dislodge, dējiciō, ere (*from* = *abl.*).

dismay, commoveō, ēre.

dismiss, dimittō, ere.

distance, spatium, ī, N.

distant, be, absum, esse.

distant, most, ultimus, a, um; *extremus*, a, um.

distress, be in, labōrō, āre.

district, regiō, -ōnis, F.

divide, dividō, ere.

do, faciō, ere; agō, ere; **be done**, fiō, fieri; geror, ī.

double, duplex, -icis.

doubt, have doubts, dubitō, āre; **there is no doubt that**, [630].

down from, dē (*abl.*).

draw (*sword*), dēstringō, ere.

draw up, instruō, ere.

drive, compellō, ere.

drive back, repellō, ere.

drive out, expellō, ere.

duty, [586. i].

dwell, habitō, āre; inēolō, ere.

E

each, [459].
eager, cupidus, a, um (**for** = *gen.*);
be eager, studeō, ēre (**for** = *dat.*).
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, e; **very easy**, perfacilis, e.
eight, octo.
eighth, octāvus, a, um.
either . . or, aut . . aut.
else (*adj.*), alius, a, ud.
embassy, lēgatiō, -ōnis, F.
encamp, cōnsidō, ere.
enclose, contineō, ēre; circumdō, dare.
encourage, hortor, āri; cohortor, āri;—**hearts** (*spirit*), cōfirmō animōs.
end (*noun*), finis, is, M.; **put an end to**, [445].
end (*verb*), cōfleiō, ere.
endure, ferō, ferre; patior, ī.
enemy, hostis, is, M.
engage, dimicō, āre; proelium committō, ere.
engaged, occupātus, a, um.
enough, satis.
enter, enter upon, ineō, ire.
entreat, orō, āre.
envoy, lēgātus, ī, M.
equal, pār, paris.
escape, fugiō, ere.
establish, cōfirmō, āre.
even, etiam; **not even**, nē . . quidem [503. e]; **even if, even though**, [563].
every, omnis, e; **every one, every thing**, [180].
examine, explōrō, āre.
example, set an, initium faciō, ere [445].
excel, superō, āre.

except (= *besides*), praeter (*acc.*); (= *if not*), nisi.

exhausted, cōfectus, a, um.

exhort, cohortor, āri.

experience, ūsus, ūs, M. (**in** = *gen.* or *in and ab?*).

explain, doceō, ēre; dēmōnstrō, āre.

exploit, rēs gesta, F.

exposed (*flank*), apertus, a, um.

extend, pertincō, ēre.

extent, māgnitūdō, -dinis, F.; or *use* quantus [535].

F

face, spectō, āre (*ad*).

fact, rēs, rei, F.

faithful, fidēlis, e.

faithfulness, fidēs, ei, F.

fall, cadō, ere.

fall back, pedem referō, ferre.

famous, nōbilis, e.

far, longē.

far, be, absum, abesse.

father, pater, -tris, M.

favour, studeō, ēre (*dat.*).

fear (*noun*), timor, -ōris, M.; **have fears**, timeō, ēre.

fear (*verb*), timeō, ēre; vereor, ēri.

feel, sentiō, ire.

few, pauci, ac, a; **very few**, per pauci, ac, a.

field, ager, agrī, M.

fiere, ācer, ācris, āere.

fierecely, ācriter.

fifteen, quindecim.

fifth, quīntus, a, um.

fifty, quīnquāgintā.

fight (*noun*), **fighting**, pūgna, ac, F.

fight (*verb*), pūgnō, āre; dimicō, -āre; **fight a battle**, proelium faciō, ere.

fill, compleō, ēre.

find, *inveniō*, *ire*; *reperiō*, *ire* [225. N.B.].

find out, *cōgnōscō*, *ere*.

finish, *cōficiō*, *ere*.

fire, *ignis*, *is*, *M*.

first (*adj.*), *primus*, *a*, *um*; **be first to**, [445].

first (*adv.*), **in the first place**, *primum*; **at first**, *primō*.

five, *quīque*; **five hundred**, *quingentī*, *ae*, *a*.

fix, *cōstituō*, *ere*.

flank, *latus*, *-eris*, *N*.; **on the —**, *ā latere*.

flee, *fugiō*, *ere*; **turn and flee**, *terga vertō*, *ere*.

flight, *fuga*, *ae*, *F*.; **put to flight**, *in fugam dō*, *dare*; **take to flight**, *terga vertō*, *ere*.

flow, *fluō*, *ere*.

follow, *sequor*, *i*; **follow closely**, *subsequor*, *i*; **as follows**, *hic* [653. i].

following, *posterus*, *a*, *um*.

fond, *cupidus*, *a*, *um*.

foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, *M*.; **foot** (*of hill, etc.*), *imū*, *a*, *um* [175]; **at foot of**, *sub* (*abl.*).

foot-soldier, *pedes*, *peditis*, *M*.

forage, *frūmentor*, *ārī*.

force, *vis*, *F*. [472].

forced (*march*), *māgnus*.

forces, *cōpiaē*, *ārū*, *M*.

foresee, *prōvideō*, *ēre*.

forest, *silva*, *ae*, *F*.

forget, *memoriam depōnō*, *ere*; *obliviscor*, *i* (*gen.*) [534].

form (*plan*), *capiō*, *ere*; *ineō*, *ire*.

former (= *previous*), *superior*, *ius*; **former, the**, *ille* [653. viii].

fortification, *mūnitiō*, *-ōnis*, *F*.

fortify, *mūniō*, *ire*.

forty, *quadrāgintā*.

four, *quattuor*; **four hundred**, *quadringentī*, *ae*, *a*.

fourth, *quārtus*, *a*, *um*.

free (*adj.*), *liber*, *era*, *erum*.

free (*verb*), *liberō*, *āre* (*from* = *abl.*).

freedom, *libertās*, *-tātis*, *F*.

freely, *liberē*.

frequent, *crēber*, *bra*, *brum*.

fresh, *integer*, *gra*, *grum*.

friend, *amicus*, *i*, *M*.; **their** (*his*)

friends, *suī*, *ōrum*, *M*. [180].

friendly, *amicus*, *a*, *um*.

friendship, *amicitia*, *ae*, *F*.

frighten, *terreō*, *ēre*.

from, *ab*, *ex*, (*abl.*) [437. b]; **be from** (= *be distant from*), *absum*, *abesse*.

fugitive, [544. a].

G

garrison, *praesidium*, *i*, *N*.

gate, *porta*, *ae*, *F*.

gather, *cōferō*, *ferre*; *cōgō*, *ere*.

Gaul (*country*), *Gallia*, *ae*, *F*.

Gaul (*native*), *Gallus*, *i*, *M*.

German, *Germānus*, *i*, *M*.

Germany, *Germānia*, *ae*, *F*.

get, *nanciscor*, *i*.

girl, *puella*, *ae*, *F*.

give, *dō*, *dare*.

give back, *reddō*, *ere*.

give up, *trādō*, *ere*.

go, *eō*, *ire*, *ii* (*ivi*), *itum* [419].

go forth, *exeō*, *ire*.

good, *bonus*, *a*, *um*; **goods**, [180].

govern, *imperō*, *āre* (*dat.*).

grain, *frūmentum*, *i*, *N*.

grant, *concedō*, *ere*.

great, *māgnus*, *a*, *um* (*māior*, *māximus*); **so great, such great**, *tantus*, *a*, *um*; **as great** (*as*), *quantus* (*quantus*); **how great, what great**, *quantus*, *a*, *um*.

greatly, *māgnopere*.

greatness, *māgnitūdō*, -*dinis*, F.

ground, *locā*, *ōrum*, N.; **open ground**, *apertus locus*, M.; **on the ground that**, *quod* [640].

guard (= *outpost*), *statiō*, -*ōnis*, F.; (= *protecting force*) *praesidium*, I, N. [431].

guide, *dux*, *ducis*, M.

H

halt, *cōsistō*, *ere*.

hand, *be nī*, *adsum*, *esse*.

happen, *accidō*, *ere*; *fiō*, *flerī*.

harass, *premō*, *ere*.

harbour, *portus*, *ūs*, M.

hard, *difficilis*, *e*.

harm, *do harm*, *noceō*, *ēre* (*dat.*).

hasten, *contendō*, *ere*.

have, *habeō*, *ēre*.

hear, *audiō*, *ire*.

heart, *animus*, I, M.

heavy, *gravis*, *e*.

height, *altitūdō*, -*dinis*, F.

heights, *superiōra loca*, N.

help, *auxilium*, I, N.

Helvetians, *Helvētīi*, *ōrum*, M.

hem in, *contineō*, *ēre*.

herd, *pecus*, -*oris*, N.

here, *hic*; *hūc* [343].

hesitate, *dubitō*, *āre*.

hide, *abdō*, *ere* [232, N.B.].

high, *altus*, *a*, *um*.

higher ground, *superiōra loca*, N.

hill, *collis*, *is*, M.

himself, [307].

hinder, *impediō*, *ire*; *dēterreō*, *ēre*; [630, 631].

hindrance, *impedimentum*, I, N.

hither, *hūc*.

hold, *teneō*, *ēre*; *obteneō*, *ēre*.

home, *domus*, *ūs*, F. [618].

hope (*noun*), *spēs*, *eī*, F.

hope (*verb*), *spērō*, *āre* [328]; **hope for**, [563. i].

horse, *equus*, I, M.

horseman, **horse-soldier**, *eques*, *equitis*, M.

hostage, *obses*, *obsidis*, M.

hostile, *inimicus*, *a*, *um*.

hour, *hōra*, *ae*, F.

how great, **how large**, **how much**, *quantus*, *a*, *um*.

however, [563. c].

haze, *ingēns*, -*entis*.

hundred, **one**, *centum*.

hurl, *conjiciō*, *ere* (*at=in and acc.*).

I

if, *sī*; **if**, . . . **not**, *nisi* [560. iv].

immediately, *statim*.

immense, *ingēns*, -*entis*.

impede, *impediō*, *ire*.

impossible, *be*, *nōn possum*, *posse*.

incessant, *continēns*, -*entis*.

increase, *augeō*, *ēre* [225, N.B.].

incredible, *incrēdibilis*, *e*.

induce, *persuādeō*, *ēre* (*dat.*).

inexperienced, *imperitus*, *a*, *um*, (*in = gen.*).

infantry (*noun*), *peditēs*, *um*, M.; *peditātus*, *ūs*, M.

infantry (*adj.*), *pedester*, *tris*, *tre*.

inlet, *inferō*, *ferre* (*on = dat.*)

influence (*noun*), *auctōritās*, -*tātis*, F.

influence (*verb*), *permoveō*, *ēre*; *adducō*, *ere*.

inform, *certiōrem faciō*, *ere* [171]. (*of = dē*).

inhabit, *incolō*, *ere*.

inhabitant, *incola*, *ae*, M.

injure, do injury, *noceō, ēre (dat.)*.

inquire, *quaerō, ere*.

intend, [348].

intentions, [535].

interest, [554. b].

interval of time, *spatium, ī, N.*

into, *in (acc.)*.

island, *insula, ae, F.*

Italy, *Italia, ae, F.*

J

join, *jungō, ere; conjungō, ere* [282, N.B.]; **join battle**, *proelium committō*.

Journey, *iter, itineris, N.*

K

keep, *teneō, ēre; keep (from)*, *prohibeō, ēre, and inf.* [167], *or abl.* [437]; *intercludō, ere (and abl.)* [437].

kill, *necō, āre; interficiō, ere*.

kind, *genus, -eris, N.; modus, ī, M.*

king, *rēx, rēgis, M.*

know, *sciō, īre; cognōvī* [243, N.B.].

known, *nōtus, a, um*.

L

lack (noun), *inopia, ae, F.*

lack (verb), *careō, ēre (abl.)* [555].

lacking, be, *dēsum, deesse*.

lake, *lacus, ūs, M.*

land (noun), *terra, ae, F.; ager, agrī, M.*

land (verb), *nāvī ēgredior, ī*.

large, *māgnus, a, um; so large*, *tantus, a, um; how large*, *quantus, a, um*.

latter, the, *hic* [653. viii].

lay down, *dēpōnō, ere*.

lead, *ducō, ere*.

lead across, *trādūcō, ere*.

lead back, *redūcō, ere*.

lead out, *ēdūcō, ere*.

leader, *dux, ducis, M.*

leadership, leading place, *prīncipātus, ūs, M.*

leading man, *prīnceps, -cipis, M.*

leap down, *dēsiliō, īre*.

learn, learn of, *cognōscō, ere*.

leave, leave behind, *relinquō, ere; (= depart from) discēdō, ere; exeō, īre (with ab or ex)*.

left, *sinister, tra, trum*.

legion, *legiō, -ōnis, F.*

legionary, of the legion, *legiōnārius, a, um*.

length, *longitūdō, -dinis, F.*

less, *minor, minus*.

lest, *nē; after verbs of fearing, ut* [629].

let, [465].

letter, *litterae, ārum, F.* [130].

lieutenant, *lēgātus, ī, M.*

light (noun), *lūx, lūcis, F.*

light (adj.), *levis, e; in light marching order*, *expeditus, a, um*.

like, *similis, c (dat.)*.

like, I should, [627. a].

line, line of battle, *aciēs, ēī, F.*

line of march, *agmen, -minis, N.*

long (adj.), *longus, a, um*.

long (adv.), *for a long time*, *diū; any longer*, *diūtius; as long as*, [648].

look, *spectō, āre*.

lose, *amittō, ere*.

loss, *incommodum, ī, N.*

loud (voice), *māgnus, a, um*.

lower, *inferior, ius*.

M

magistrate, magistrātus, ūs, M.
mainland, continēns, -entis, F.
make, faciō, ere; **made**, be, fiō, fieri, factus sum [420].
man, vir, viri, M.; **homō**, -inis, M.; **his men**, sui, ōrum, M.; **our men**, nostri, ōrum, M.
manage, administrō, āre.
manner, modus, i, M.; **ratio**, -ōnis, F.
many, multī, ae, a.
march (*noun*), iter, itineris, N.; **line of march**, agmen, -inis, N.
march (*verb*), iter faciō, ere.
marsh, palūs, -ūdis, F.
match, be—**for**, pār esse.
matter, rēs, rei, F.; **no matter how**, [563. c].
means, modus, i, M.
meantime, **in the**, interim.
meanwhile, interim.
meet, occurrō, ere (*dat.*).
meeting, concilium, i, N.
memory, memoria, ae, F.
mention, **make mention**, dēmōnstrō, āre (**of**=**dē**).
messenger, nūntius, i, M.
method, ratiō, -ōnis, F.
midday, meridiēs, ēi, M.
middle, medius, a, um [175].
midnight, media nox.
midst, medius, a, um [175].
might, vīs, F. [472].
mile, millo passūs [231].
military, militāris, e.
mindful, memor, -oris.
misfortune, incommodum, i, N.
missile, tēlum, i, N.
month, mēnsis, is, M.
more, plūs, plūris [197]; (*adv.*) magis.

mother, māter, -tris, F.
mountain, agger, -eris, M.
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, (*trans.*) moveō, ēre; (*intrans.*) sē movēre [705. a].
much (*adv.*), multum, *with comparatives*, multō.
much, **how**, quantus, a, um.
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, F.
must, [635].

N

name (*noun*), nōmen, -inis, N.
name (*verb*), appellō, āre.
nation, nātiō, -ōnis, F.; **populus**, i, M.
nature, nātūra, ae, F.; *or use* quālis [535].
near, prope (propior, proximus).
nearby, prope.
neighbouring, finitimus, a, um.
neighbours, finitimi, ōrum, M.
neither . . nor, neque . . neque.
neither (*adj.*), neuter, tra, trum [205].
never, numquam.
new, novus, a, um; **recens**, -entis [171. N.B.].
next, posterus, a, um; **proximus**, a, um.
night, nox, noctis, F.; **by night**, noctū.
nightfall, **at (towards)**, sub noctem.
nine, novem.
ninth, nōnus, a, um.
no, nullus, a, um [205]; nihil [571. i; 586. iii].
nobody, **no one**, nēmō [349. N.B.].
noble, nōbilis, e.
none, nullus, a, um [205].
noon, meridiēs, ēi, M.
nor, neque.
not, nōn; **nē**; **and not**, neque.

nothing, nihil, *indeclinable*, N.

notice, animadvertō, ere.

now, nunc; **by now**, jam.

number, numerus, ī, M.; **small**

number, paucitās, -tātis, F.; **large**

number, multitūdō, -dinis, F.;
māgnus numerus.

numerous, crēber, bra, brum;
multī, ae, a.

O

obedient, be, pāreō, ēre.

obey, pāreō, ēre (*dat.*).

object, recūsō, āre [630, 631].

object, with—of, causā.

observe, cōspiciō, ere; animadver-
tō, ere.

obtain, nancīscor, ī; **obtain a re-
quest**, impetrō, āre; **obtain plun-
der**, praedam faciō.

occupied, occupātus, a, um.

ocean, ōceanus, ī, M.

officer, praefectus, ī, M.

often, saepe.

on, in (*abl.* and *acc.*).

one, ūnus, a, um [205]; **the one**, alter
[206].

once, at, statim.

only (*adv.*), solum; (= *alone*), ūnus, a,
um; sōlus, a, um.

onset, impetus, ūs, M.

open, apertus, a, um.

opportunity, facultās, -tātis, F.; po-
testās, -tātis, F.; **give**—, [445].

oppose, resistō, ere (*dat.*).

or, aut.

order (*noun* = *arrangement*), ōrdō,
-dinis, M.

order (*verb*), jubeō, ēre; imperō, āre
(*dat.*).

orders, give, imperō, āre.

other, alius, a, ud [205]; **the other**,
alter, era, erum; **the others**, cēterī,
ae, a.

ought, [634].

our, noster, tra, trum.

out of, ex (*abl.*).

outer, exterior, ius.

outpost, statio, -ōnis, F.; **on outpost
duty**, in statione.

overcome, superō, āre.

overpower, opprimō, ere.

overtake, cōsequor, ī.

own, his (their), suus, a, um.

P

pace, passus, ūs, M.

panic, timor, -ōris, M.

part, pars, partis, F.

peace, pāx, pācis, F.

people, (= *nation*), populus, ī, M.;
(= *persons*), hominēs.

perceive, sentiō, īre; perspicio, ere.

peril, periculum, ī, N.

permit, patior, ī.

persuade, persuādeō, ēre (*dat.*).

pillage, praedor, āri.

pitch camp, castra pōnō, ere.

plty, misereor, ēri (*gen.*) [554].

place (*noun*), locus, ī, M.

place (*verb*), pōnō, ere.

plan, cōsillium, ī, N.

plenty, cōpia, ae, F.

plunder, praeda, ae, F.; **obtain
plunder**, praedam faciō.

point, be on—of, [348].

point out, dēmōnstrō, āre.

Pompey, Pompēius, ī, M.

portion, pars, partis, F.

position, use ubi = *where* [535].

position, take up, cōsistō, ere.

possess, obtineō, ēre.

possessions, *their*, sua, ōrum, N. [281. b].

possible, *be*, possum, posse; *as* (*large*, etc.) *as possible*, [249].

post, dispōnō, ere.

power, potestās, -tātis, F.

powerful, potēns, -entis.

preceding, superior, ius.

prefer, mālō, mälle, mālui.

preferable, *it is*, praestat (*it*, quam) [243].

prepare, *prepare for*, parō, āre, (*acc.*) [349. N.B.]; **better prepared**, [261. d].

present, *be*, adsum, adesse.

press, premō, ere; **be hard pressed**, premor, i; *graviter* premor.

prevent, prohibeō, ēre [167. N.B.].

previous, superior, ius.

prisoner, captivus, i, M.

proceed, prōgredior, i.

procure, parō, āre; *comparō*, āre.

promise, *make a promise*, polliceor, ēri [328].

property, *their*, sua, ōrum, N. [281. b].

protect, mūniō, ire.

provide, provideō, ēre.

provided that, [565].

province, prōvincia, ae, F.

provisions, rēs frūmentāria, F.; *comneātus*, ūs, M.

prudent, prūdēns, -entis

public business, rēs pública, F.

purpose, cōsiliū, i N.; *for the* —*of*, causā (*gen.*) [451].

pursue, insequor, i.

Q

question, *ask*, quaerō, ere.

quickly, eeleriter.

quickness, celeritās, -tātis, F.

R

raise, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum.

rally, sē recipere.

rampart, vāllum, i, N.

rank, ōrdō, -dinis, M.

rather, *had*, mālō, mälle.

reach, perveniō, ire (*ad or in*).

ready, parātus, a, um; **make** (*get*)

ready, expediō, ire.

rear, **rearguard**, novissimum agmen [171]; **in the rear**, post tergum.

reason, causā, ae, F. (*for* = *dē or ob*).

recall, revocō, āre.

receive, accipiō, ere.

recent, recēns, -entis.

reconnoitre, explōrō, āre.

recover, recipiō, ere.

regain, recipiō, ere.

region, regiō, -ōnis, F.

reinforcements, auxilia, ōrum, N.; *subsidiū*, i, N.

release, solvō, ere.

remain, moror, āri.

remaining, reliquus, a, um.

remember, memini [268; 534; 623. i]; *memoriam* retineō, ēre.

remotest, extrēmus, a, um; *ultimus*, a, um.

remove, removeō, ēre; tollō, ere.

renew, renovō, āre.

reply, respondeō, ēre.

report (*noun*), fāma, ae, F.; **bear** (*bring*) **a report**, fāmam perferō, ferre.

report (*verb*), renūntiō, āre; *dēferō*, ferre; *referō*, ferro [391]; *fāmam* perferō.

repulse, repellō, ere.

request, petō, ero (*ab*); **gain a request**, impetrō, āre.

require, imperō, āre [181. N.B.].

resist, resistō, ere (*dat.*).

resolve, cōstituō, ere.
rest, the—of, reliquus, a, um [175];
the rest, cēteri, reliqui [206. a].
restore, reddō, ere.
restrain, retineō, ēre; contineō, ēre.
retire, cēdō, ere.
retreat, sē recipere.
return, redeō, ire; revertor, ī.
revolution, novae res, F.
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, M.
right (of direction), dexter, tra-
 trum; (= *just*), aequus, a, um.
rise, orior, īrī.
risk, periculum, ī, N. (**at —**, = cum).
river, flūmen, -minis, N.; fluvius,
 ī, M.
road, iter, itineris, N.; via, ae, F.
Roman (noun), Rōmānus, ī, M.
Roman (adj.), Rōmānus, a, um.
Rome, Rōma, ae, F.
route, via, ae, F.
rule, imperium, ī, N.
rumour, fāma, ae, F.
rush (out), sē ējicere (**out of** = ex).

S

safe, incolumis, e.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, F.
sail, nāvigō, āre (**for** = in); **set sail**,
 nāvem or nāvēs solvō, ere [211].
sailor, nauta, ae, M.
sake, for the—of, causā (*gen.*).
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, F.
sally out, ērumpō, ēre.
same, the, idem, eadem, idem; **at**
the same time, simul.
satisfy, satisfaciō, ere (*dat.*) [405].
say, dicō; ere; **say . . not**, negō, āre.
scarcely, vix; aegrē.
scarcity, inopia, ae, F.
scout, explorātor, -tōris, M.

sea, mare, is, N. [187. c].
season, tempus annī, N.
second, secundus, a, um
secure, provideō, ēre.
see, videō, ēre; cōspiciō, ere.
seek, petō, ere.
seem, videor, ērī.
seize, occupō, āre.
senate, senātus, ūs, M.
send, mittō, ere.
send out, ēmittō, ere; dimittō, ere
 [225].
send in advance, praemittō, ere.
serious, gravis, e.
seriously, graviter.
serve (as guard), sum, esse [431].
service, be of, ūsuī sum [432].
set about, instituō, ere [398].
set out, proficiscor, ī (**for** = ad, in).
set over, praefficiō, ere [378. N.B.].
set sail, nāvem or nāvēs solvō, ere.
settle, cōstituō, ere.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, a, um.
seventy, septuāgintā.
several, complūrēs, a [197].
severe, gravis, e.
severely, graviter.
shatter, frangō, ere.
ship, nāvis, is, F.
shore, litus, -oris, N.
short, brevis, e; **in a short time**,
 brevī.
shout, shouting, clāmor, -ōris, M.
show, ostendō, ere.
side, latus, -eris, N.; **on . . side**, ex
 . . parte; **from (on) all sides**,
 undique.
sight, cōspectus, ūs, M. [282].
signal (noun), signum, ī, N.
signal (adj.), summus, a, um.

similar, *similis*, *e*.
since, *cum* [641].
sister, *soror*, -*ōris*, *F*.
six, *sex*; **six hundred**, *sescenti*, *ae*, *a*.
sixth, *sextus*, *a*, *nm*.
sixty, *sexāgintā*.
size, *māgnitūdō*, -*dinis*, *F*.; *or use*
quantus [535].
skillful, **skilled**, *peritus*, *a*, *um*
(In = gen.).
slave, *servus*, *i*, *M*.
slavery, *servitūs*, -*tūtis*, *F*.
slay, *necō*, *āre*; *interficiō*, *cre*.
slight, *levis*, *e*.
small, *parvus*, *a*, *um* (*minor*, *mini-*
mus); **smaller**, *minor*, *us*; **small**
number, *paucitās*, -*tātis*, *F*.
so, *sic*, *ita*, *tam* [372].
so great, *tantus*, *a*, *um*.
soldier, *miles*, *militis*, *M*.
some, **some one**, [458].
son, *filius*, *i*, *M*.
soon, *brevi*, *celeriter*; **as** — **as**, *simul*
atque [646]; **as** — **as possible**, [249].
sort, *genus*, -*eris*, *N*.
sortle, *ēruptiō*, -*ōnis*, *F*.
space, *spatium*, *i*, *N*.
spare, *parcō*, *ere* (*dat.*).
speak, *dīcō*, *ere*.
spear, *hasta*, *ae*, *F*.
speech, *ōrātiō*, -*ōnis*, *F*.; **deliver**
(make) a speech, *ōratiōnem habeo*.
speed, *celeritās*, -*tātis*, *F*.
speedily, *celeriter*.
spirit, *animus*, *i*, *M*.
spite, **in** — **of the fact that**, [563].
spring, *vēr*, *vēris*, *N*.
staff officer, *légātus*, *i*, *M*.
stand, *stō*, *stāre*; (= *endure*) *ferō*,
ferre.
standard, *signum*, *i*, *N*.

state, *civitas*, -*tātis*, *F*.; *rēs pública*,
rei publicae, *F*. [176].
station, *collocō*, *āre*.
stature, *māgnitūdō corporis*, *F*.
storm (*noun*), *tempestās*, -*tātis*, *F*.
storm (*verb*), **take by storm**, *ex-*
pūgnō, *āre*.
strength, *virēs*, *ium*, *F*.
strengthen, *firmō*, *āre*; *cōfirmō*,
āre.
strong, *firmus*, *a*, *um*; **be** (**very**)
strong, *valeō*, *ēre* [416] (*with* = *apud*).
subjection, *servitūs*, -*tūtis*, *F*.
submit to, *perferō*, *ferre* (*acc.*).
such, **such great**, *tantus*, *a*, *um*.
sudden, *subitus*, *a*, *um*.
suddenly, *subitō*.
suffer (*loss*, *defeat*), *accipiō*, *ere*.
sufficient, **sufficiently**, *satis*.
suitable, *idōneus*, *a*, *um*.
summer, *aestās*, -*tātis*, *F*.
summon, *convocō*, *āre*.
superior, **be**, *praestō*, *āre*.
supply, *cōpia*, *ae*, *F*.; **supplies**, *rēs*
frumentāria, *F*.; *comineātus*, *ūs*, *M*.
support, *subsidiūm*, *i*, *N*.; **send to**
—, [431].
supremacy, *imperium*, *i*, *N*.
surpass, *praestō*, *āre* (*dat.*); *superō*,
āre.
surrender (*noun*), *dēditiō*, *ōnis*, *F*.
surrender (*verb*), *trādō*, *ere*; *dēdō*,
ere [282. *N.B.*]; *dēditiōnem faciō*;
in dēditiōnem veniō.
surround, *circumveniō*, *ire*; *circu-*
cundō, *dare*.
suspect, *suspīcor*, *āvī*.
sustain, *sustineō*, *ēre*.
swift, *celer*, *eris*, *ere*.
swiftly, *celeriter*.
swiftness, *celeritās*, -*tātis*, *F*.
sword, *gladius*, *i*, *M*.

T

take, capiō, ere.
take across, trādūcō, ere.
take away, tollō, ere.
take place, geror, ī.
take up (arms), capiō, ere.
teach, doceō, ēre.
tell, dicō, ere [576, i].
ten, decem.
tend, pertineō, ēre.
tenth, decimus, a, um.
terrify, terreō, ēre; perterreō, ēre.
territory, ager, agrī, m.; finēs, ium, m. [191].
Thames, Tamesis, is, m.
than, quam [242].
that (pron.), is, ea, id; ille, a, ud.
that (conj.), [697].
there, ibi, eō [343].
there (introductory), [118].
thick, dēnsus, a, um.
thing, rēs, rei, f.
think, existimō, āre; arbitror, ārī.
third, tertius, a, um.
thirty, trigintā.
this, hīc, haec, hōc; quī, quae, quod [667].
thither, eō.
though, etsī, quamquam [563].
thought, take, cōsulō, ere [405].
thousand, mille [228-230].
three, trēs, tria [217]; **three hundred**, trecentī, ae, a.
three days, triduum, ī, n.
through, per (acc.).
throw, jaciō, ere; conjiciō, ere.
throw away, abjiciō, ere.
thus, sic, ita.
Tiber, Tiberis, is, m.

time, tempus, -oris, n.; spatium, ī, n.;
by this time, jam.
together (with), ūnā (cum).
toil, labor, -ōris, m.
too (far, etc.), [593. iii].
top, summus, a, um [175].
towards, ad (acc.).
tower, turris, is, f.
town, oppidum, ī, n.
transport, nāvis onerāria, f.
treat (with), agō, ere (cum).
treat, to—for, dē [99].
trench, fossa, ac, f.
tribe, nātiō, -ōnis, f.
tribune, tribūnus, ī, m.
troops, cōpiae, ārum, f.
trust, cōfidō, ere (dat.).
try, eōnor, ārī, [or 678. c].
turn, vertō, ere; convertō [282. N.B.];
turn and flee, terga vertō.
twelfth, duodecimus, a, um.
twenty, vigintī.
two, duo, ae, o [217]; **two hundred**, ducentī, ae, a.

U

unable, be, nōn possum, posse.
unacquainted, imperitus, a, um
 (with=gen. [432]).
unbroken, continēns, -entis.
uncertain, incertus, a, um.
under, sub (acc. and abl.).
understand, intellegō, ere.
unfair, inīquus, a, um.
unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.
unite, conjungō, ere [282. N.B.].
unknown, incōgnitus, a, um.
unless, nisi [559].
unlike, dissimilis, e (dat.).
unprotected (flank), apertus, a, um.

until, [649].

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

upper, superior, ius.

urge, hortor, ārī; cohortor, ārī.

use, ūtor, ī (*abl.*).

useful, ūtilis, e.

useless, inūtilis, e.

utmost, summus, a, um.

V

valour, virtūs, -tūtis, F.

vast, ingēns, -entis.

venture, audeō, ēre, ausus sum [313].

vessel, nāvis, is, F.

victory, victōria, ae, F.

vigorously, ācriter.

vigour, virēs, ium, F.

village, vīcus, ī, M.

violence, vis, F. [472].

visit, adeō, ire.

voice, vōx, vōcis, F.

W

wage (war), gerō, ere.

walt, moror, ārī.

walt (for or until), expectō, āre
(for = *acc.* [568. i]).

wall, mūrus, ī, M.; vāllum, ī, N.

wanting, be, dēsum, deesse.

war, warfare, bellum, ī, N.; **art of war**, rēs militāris, F.; **make war**, bellō, āre; bellum inferō, ferre; **make war on**, bellum inferō, ferre (*with dat.*).

war-ship, war-galley, ship of war, nāvis longa, F.

warn, moneō, ēre.

waste, lay, vāstō, āre.

watch, vigilia, ae, F.

water, aqua, ae, F.

wave, fluctus, ūs, M.

way, via, ae, F.

way, give, cēdō, ere; **pedem referō**, ferre.

weapon, tēlum, ī, N.

weather, tempestās, -tātis, F.

weep, fleō, ēre.

weight, onus, -eris, N.

whatever (= *what*), quod, quac.

wheel about, signa convertō, ere.

when, cum [642, 643].

whence, unde.

whenever, [642].

where, wherever, ubi, quō [343];

where from, unde; **where to**, quō.

whether, [533. i]; **whether . . or**, [560. iii; 536].

which (of two), uter, tra, trum [721].

while, dum, cum, *or pres. partic.* [647, 648].

whither, quō.

whole, tōtus, a, um [205].

why, cūr.

wide (adj.), lātus, a, um.

wide (adv.), widely, lātē.

width, lātitudō, -dinis, F.

willing, be, volō, velle, volui.

wing (of army), cornū, ūs, N. [134].

winter (noun), hiems, hiemis, F.

winter (verb), **pass the winter**, hiemō, āre.

winter-quarters, winter camp, hiberna, ōrum, N.

wish, volō, velle, volui.

with, cum (*abl.*); apud (*acc.*).

withdraw (trans.), dēdūcō, ere; **removeō**, ēre; (*intrans.*) **excēdō**, ere; **discēdō**, ere.

within, intrā (*acc.*); [*or* 621].

without, sine (*abl.*).

withstand, sustineō, ēre.
wood, silva, ae, f.
word, bring back, renūntiō, āre.
work, opus, eris, n.
worthy, dignus, a, um (*of=abl.*).
 [600].
wound (*noun*), vulnus, -eris, n.
wound (*verb*), vulnerō, āre.
write, scribō, ere.
wrong, wrong-doing, injūria, ae, f.

Y

year, annus, ī, m.
yet, not, nōndum (*adv.*).
yield, concēdō, ere; cēdō, ere.
young man, youth, adulēscēns,
 -entis, m.

Z

zeal, studium, ī, n.

INDEX.

(The references are to sections.)

Ablative case, uses of the, 592-600; threefold force and origin of, 592; absolute, 298, 299; 303-305; 546-550; of accompaniment, 596. iii; of agent, 144; of cause, 595; of comparison, 212; 593. ii, iii; of manner, 415; 596. iii; of means, 145; of measure of difference, 598; of place where and from which, 618; of price, 597; of quality, 383; of separation, 437; 593. i; of source, 591; of specification, 414; of time when, 620; of time within which, 621; with special verbs and adjectives, 555; 596. ii; 600.

Accent, 14, 15.

Accusative and infinitive construction, 320-335; 511-514.

Accusative case, uses of the, 568-573; adverbial, 571. i; cognate, 571; of direct object, 32; of duration of time, 159; of exclamation, 573; of extent of space, 231; predicate accusative, 570; of specification, 572; as subject of infinitive, 123; 320; retained with passive voice, 569. i-iv.

Adjective clauses, 695.

Adjectives, agreement, 508; of first and second decl., 724; of third decl., 725; with gen. in *-ius*, 205, 207; possessive pronominal, 279-281; with gen., 589; with dat., 173; with abl., 600; used as substantives, 180; instead of partitive gen., 175; with force of adverbs, 795. *d*.

Adverbial clauses, 696.

Adverbs, formation, 237; 246-248; comparison, 238; 217, 248; 726.

Agent, abl. of, 144; dat. of, 581; secondary, 596. i.

Agreement, rules of, 507-510.

Alliquis, 456. *c*; 458.

Allus, after, 205-207; 682.

Antecedent, agreement with, 510; of relative, 666.

Apposition, 507.

As, in correlative sentences, 638.

Attributive words, 508.

Causal sentences, 639; with *quod*, 640; with *cum*, 397; 641; with *qui*, 665.

Characteristic, relative clauses of, 530.

Commands, 623; indirect, 686. *c*.

Comparative, meaning *too* or *rather*, 593. iii.

Comparison (of adjectives), regular, 169; irregular, 193-196; 726; (of adverbs) 238; 217, 248; 726; expressed by *quam* or abl., 242; 593. ii; conditional clauses of, 566.

Complementary infinitive, 516-519.

Conative pres. and imperf., 677. *d*; 678. *c*.

Concessive clauses, 563; relative clauses, 665; independent subjunctive, 625. *d*.

Concords, 507-510.

Conditional clauses, 475-479; 559-561; alternative, 560. iii; general, 561; in indirect discourse, 688; of comparison, 566.

Connection of sentences, 502. *b*; 701.

Consecutive clauses, 528, 529.

Continuous narrative prose, 701-705.

Co-ordinating relative, 667.

Correlatives, 668.

Cum clauses, 224; 397; 639; 641-644.

Dative case, uses of the, 575-583; of agent, 351; 581; ethical, 580; of indirect object, 39; 576; of interest, 401; 431; 578; of possessor, 582; of purpose, 401; 431; 583; of reference, 579; with adjectives, 173; with compound verbs, 577; with special intransitive verbs, 355; 553.

- Dēbeō**, use of, 634.
 Declension, combinations for practice in, 116; 204; 209; 359.
 Deponent verbs, 311, 312; 748.
Dō, compounds of, 409. N.B.
Doubting, construction with verbs of, 630.
Dum clauses, 273; 565; 647-9.
 Duty, how expressed, 634.
 Emphasis, 502. *a*; 705. *e*.
 Enclitics, 342. *fn*.
Eō, conjugation of, 419; 421. N.B.; 753.
 Exclamations, accus. in, 573; dat. in, 579. *d*; infin. in, 605.
 Extent of space, 619.
Fearing, construction with verbs of, 629.
Ferē, conjugation of, 392-394; 752; compounds of, 393. *b*.
 Final clauses, 521-526.
Fiō, conjugation of, 420; 754; 756. *v*.
For, introductory, 124.
Fore ut, periphrasis with, 529. *iv*.
 Frequentative verbs, 758. *ii*; frequentative clauses, 642.
 Future indicative, uses of, 679.
 Future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising*, 328.
 Future perfect indicative, uses of, 682.
 Gender, natural and grammatical, 61; rules for, 722.
 Genitive case, uses of the, 585-590; of definition, 588; objective, 429. *d*; 586. *ii*; partitive, 174; 586. *iii-vi*; possessive, 429. *b*; 586. *i*; of price, 587; of quality, 383; 586. *vii*, *viii*; subjective, 429. *c*; with adjectives, 589; with verbs, 554; 590.
 Gerund, uses of the, 444; 606, 607; various ways of translating English gerund in *-ing*, 616.
 Gerundive with **sum**, 346-348; 612; gerundive construction, 448-450; 611.
 Greek nouns, declension of, 723.
 Heteroclite nouns, 721. *c*.
 Heterogeneous nouns, 721. *d*.
Hindering, construction with verbs of, 630, 631.
 Historical infinitive, 604; historical present, page 33. *fn*.; historical tenses and sequence, 387.
 Hortatory subjunctive, 465; in indirect discourse, 636. *c. i*.
I-stems of third declension, 185-189.
 Imperative, forms and use of the, 463, 464; 623.
 Imperfect indicative, uses of the, 678.
 Impersonal passive, 556, 557; 612. *i*.
 Impersonal verbs, 554. *b*; 590. *d*; 603. *a. i*.
 Inceptive or inchoative verbs, 758. *i*.
 Indicative for potential or conditional subjunctive, 560. *ii*; 627. *i*.
 Indirect discourse, 320-335; 685-692; subordinate clauses in, 408; 670-672; virtual, 672; moods in, 636; tenses in, 671, 687; pronouns in, 689; adverbs in, 690.
 Infinitive, uses of the, 602-605; accusative and, 511-514; complementary, 516-519; historical, 604; in exclamations, 605; various ways of translating English infinitive with *to*, 699.
Inquam, 514. *vi*; 757. *iv*.
 Instrumental ablative, 592; 596-598.
Interest, construction with, 554. *b*.
 Interrogative particles, **-ne**, **nōne**, **num**, 339, 342; 532. *b*; **utrum**, **an**, 536.
 Intransitive verbs corresponding to English transitive verbs, 355; 552-555; used impersonally in passive, 556, 557; 612. *i*.
-iō, verbs of third conjugation in, 287, 288; 746, 747.
 Irregular declension of nouns, 721; comparison of adjectives, 193-196; 726; comparison of adverbs, 247, 248; 726; verbs, 749-754, 756; forms of the regular verb, 755.
It, as representative subject, 124.
 Iterative verbs, 758. *ii*.
-ius, adjectives with genitive in, 205; 207.
Licet, use of, 637.

- Locative case, 618; locative use of ablative, 592; 599.
- Māiḥ**, conjugation of, 401; 751.
- Mille, mīlla**, declension and syntax of, 228-231.
- Modal verbs, 516, 517; list of, 519.
- Necesse est**, use of, 635.
- Necessity, how expressed, 635.
- Neque** preferred to **et** and negative, 603. *fn.*; 659. *i.*
- Nōiḥ**, conjugation of, 401; 751.
- Noun clauses, 691.
- Nouns, declension of, 716-723; Greek, 723; defective, 721.
- Numerals, lists of, 727; cardinal, 214-216; 228-230; ordinal, 156; distributive, 727. *c* and *i.*
- Objecting*, construction with verbs of, 630, 631.
- Obligation, how expressed, 631.
- Oportet**, use of, 631.
- Ōrātiō obliqua**, see Indirect discourse.
- Order of words, 501-503; of clauses, 504-506.
- V** Participles, uses of present and perfect, 261; 273; **538-544**; future, 614; gerundive, 611-613; circumstantial, 541; as substantives, 544. *a*; as adjectives, 544. *b*; as predicative complement, 544. *c*; English equivalents for, 542; Latin equivalents for, 543.
- Passive, impersonal use of, 556, 557; 612. *i*; reflexive use of, 656. *iv*.
- Perfect indicative, uses of the, 680; formation of the, 105, 106.
- Period, periodic structure, 506.
- Periphrastic conjugations, active, 348; 615; passive, 348; 612; periphrastic tenses, 683.
- Permission, how expressed, 637.
- Phraseology, differences of, 702-705.
- Place, expressions of, 618.
- Pluperfect indicative, uses of the, 681.
- Plūs**, declension of, 197.
- Possibility, how expressed, 377; 636.
- Possum**, conjugation of, 750; use of, 377; 636.
- Predicate, agreement of, 509; nominative (noun or adjective), 54; 146; accusative, 54; 570; genitive, 586. *i* and *viii*; ablative, 596. *iv*; dative, page 402. *fn.*
- Prefixes, force of, **con-** (**com-**, **col-**) 49; **dē**, 181; **dis-**, **dī-**, 225; **ē**, **ex**, 147; **in-**, 120; **per**, 125; **prae**, 243; **re-**, 41; 409. *fn.*; **trāns**, **trā-**, 257.
- Prepositions, with accusative, 435; with ablative, 436.
- Present indicative, uses of the, 677.
- Primary tenses and sequence, 387.
- Principal parts, 138; 469. *b*.
- Prisquam** clauses, 650.
- Prohibeō**, infinitive with, 518. *i*.
- Prohibitions, 623; in indirect discourse, 686. *c*.
- Pronouns, demonstrative (**hic**, **ille**, **is**), 292, 293; 653; (**ipse**, **idem**) 306, 307; 655; (**iste**) 654; indefinite, 455-459; 659-662; interrogative, 340, 341; personal, 206, 267; 652; possessive, 279-281; 657; reflexive, 277, 278; 656; relative, 254, 255; 664-668; in indirect discourse, 689; 323. *b*.
- Pronunciation, 6-9; English method, 18, 19.
- Purpose clauses, 521-526; adverbial, 386; relative, 388; substantive, 424; with **quō**, 525. *b*; purpose expressed by gerund or gerundive, 451; by supine, 470.
- Quam**, with comparatives, 242; with superlatives, 249; 668. *i*.
- Questions, direct, 339-342; indirect, 362; 533-535; tenses in indirect, 534; disjunctive, 536; rhetorical, 625. *fn.*; 627. *d*; rhetorical, in indirect discourse, 686. *b*, *i*; deliberative, 625.
- Quidam**, 456. *c*; 458.
- Quin**, with verbs of *hindering*, *objecting*, *doubting*, 630; in relative clauses of characteristic, 530. *ii*.
- Quis**, indefinite, 455; 457; interrogative, 341.
- Quisquam**, 456. *c*; 457.
- Quisque**, 456. *c*; 459.
- Quivis**, 456. *c*; 457.

Quoad clauses, 648; 649.

Quod clauses, 640.

Quōminus clauses, 631.

Reciprocal pronouns, substitutes for, 662. ii.

Reflexive, direct and indirect, 656. i; force of passive, 656. iv.

Relative clauses, 255; of purpose, 388; of characteristic, 530; of cause or reason, 665; of concession, 665; coordinating, 667.

Result, clauses of, 371; 528-529.

Secondary tenses and sequence, 387.

Semi-deponents, 313; 755. vi.

Sequence of tenses, 387; in purpose clauses, 524; in result clauses, 528. c; in indirect questions, 534; in indirect discourse, 671; 687. b.

Should, various ways of translating, 674.

Stems, of third declension nouns, 81; of verbs, 138. b.

Subjunctive, independent uses of, 624-627; concessive, 625. d; deliberative, 625. c; hortatory, 465; jussive, 465; optative, 466; 626; potential, 627; volitive, 465; 625.

Subjunctive, dependent uses of, 360 and fn.; by attraction, 673; in causal clauses, 640; 641; 665; in concessive clauses, 563; 665; in conditional clauses, 477, 478; in conditional clauses of comparison, 566; subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 408; 672; indirect commands, 686. c; indirect questions, 362; 533-535; in clauses of proviso, 565; in purpose clauses, 522; in result clauses, 528; in temporal clauses, 643. b; 649. b; 650. b; with verbs of *fearing*, 629; with **cum**, 397; with **dum**, 649. b; with **nē**, 386; 424; 629; 631; with **priusquam** (or **antequam**), 650. b; with **quī**, 388; 530; 665; with **quā**, 530. ii; 630; with **quod**, 640; with **quōminus**, 631; with **ut**, 371; 386; 424; 629.

Substantive clauses, 694.

Suffixes, force of, **-ārlus**, 274; **-tās**, 202; **-itō**, 263; **-tor (-sor)**, 232; **-tūdō**, 130.

Sum, conjugation of, 749; compounds of, 375; 378; 756.

Superlative, force of, 169. b; with **quam**, 249.

Supine, 469, 470; 608, 609.

Temporal clauses, 642-644; 646-650.

Tenses, forces of various, 676-683; exactness in, 676. b; see also under *Sequence*.

That, various ways of translating, 697.

There, introductory, 118.

Time, expressions of, 620, 621.

To, various ways of translating infinitive with, 699.

Transitive and intransitive verbs, 282. N.B.; 552; 568.

Ūlus, declension of, 205, 207; use of, 457.

Uterque, 456. d; 459.

Utinam, use of, 626.

Utrum . . . an, in questions, 536.

Verbs, conjugation of, 471; 734-758; archaic forms of, 755. iv.; contracted forms of, 755. i; defective, 757; weakening of vowels in compound, 289. N.B.; taking accusative and infinitive, 513; taking complementary infinitive, 519; taking substantive clause of purpose, 523; taking dative, 553; taking genitive, 554; taking ablative, 555.

Vocative case, 53.

Volō, conjugation of, 401; 751.

Wishes, how expressed, 466; 626.

Word lists, English, 81; 136; 183; 252; 318; 381; 441.

Word lists, Latin, 58; 110; 162; 220; 285; 352; 412; 483.

Would, various ways of translating, 632.

Pres. Jefferson - to act out.
Rep. Jefferson - to have out
Fut. Jefferson - to be about to. about

1897

and general disease

of the lungs

and general disease

of the lungs

of the lungs

of the lungs

of the lungs

of the lungs

of the lungs

Nov 15.

| Mon | Tues. | Wed. | Thur. | Frid. |
|---------|-------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| Latin | Latin | Latin | English | Latin |
| English | French | English | German | Arith |
| Physics | German | English | Latin | German |
| Arith | Physics | Arith | French | Physics |
| French | German | French | German | German |

H. L. McAlpine
 Lower b.
 h. b. d.

Lower
 f. C. S.

CLARANCE
 711

{ Could I hold your Palm a
 not on your Life boy (out i
 rocks)

H. L. McAlpine
 London
 AC A) PJN Rats
 Free-hu

H. L. McAlpine
 Summer School
 London

(C)

CLARANCE

London - to de.

London

W. L. McAlpine
Barrow

sub-closets
practically except
obj. on a point
intra-within
circum-around about
apud - with, among
the Eng.

sub-lat/put?
sub-pug-de

ab. from
cum with
de about
ex out of
in in
sine without

rd to
ante before
contra against
in into
inter between
per through
post after
propter on acc. of
trans across

Rispon
interne
Russet

Heaven
me
person

instance lack.
26/10/11

Glady Sharp
M. V. 11

more over - more - more

